POLESTAR

Polestar 1

Owner's Manual · Model year 2020 · US

Compiled from the online Owner's Manual published at https://www.polestar.com/us/manual/polestar-1/2020/ (retrieved 2026-10-01). This compilation is not an official Polestar publication. The manual in the vehicle's center display is always the most up-to-date version for your car.

Contents

Manual information

- Manual information
- Polestar support
- Reading the manual
- Manual in center display
- Navigating in the center display Manual

Your Polestar

- Polestar's innovation areas
- Polestar ID
- Type approval and licenses
- Displays and controls near the driver
- Technician certification
- Connecting equipment to the vehicle's data link connector
- Driver distraction
- Viewing the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
- Data recording
- Accessory installation
- Polestar Structural Parts Statement
- Contact Polestar
- Software Updates
- Important information on accessories and extra equipment

Safety

- Seat belts
- Airbags
- Child safety
- Safety mode
- Safety
- Recall information
- Occupant safety
- Safety during pregnancy
- Reporting safety defects
- Whiplash Protection System

Displays and voice control

- Instrument panel
- Center display
- Head-up display
- Symbols and messages
- Voice recognition
- Displays and controls near the driver

Lighting

- Exterior lighting
- Interior lighting
- Adjusting light functions via the center display
- Lighting control and panel

Windows, glass and mirrors

- Rearview and door mirrors
- Windshield and rear window
- Side windows and panoramic roof/sunroof
- Windows, glass and mirrors
- Pinch protection for windows
- Reset procedure for pinch protection
- Activating and deactivating max defroster

Seats and steering wheel

- Front seat
- Steering wheel

Climate control

- Climate controls
- Air distribution
- Air quality
- Parking climate
- Heater
- Climate
- Climate control system voice commands
- Climate control system service
- Climate control sensors
- Climate zones

Perceived temperature

Key, locks and alarm

Key
Locking and unlocking
Alarm

Driver support

Cruise Control functions
Speed limiter functions
Distance Alert
Blind Spot Information
Cross Traffic Alert
Rear Collision Warning
City Safety
Driver Alert Control
Lane Keeping Aid
Steering assistance during collision risks
Electronic Stability Control
Road Sign Information
Parking functions
Camera and radar sensor
Driver support systems
Driver support safety check at start
Driver support warnings
Speed-dependent steering wheel resistance
Drive modes when using time interval to vehicle ahead
IntelliSafe – driver support and safety
Braking assist after a collision

Electric motor and charging

Charging hybrid battery
Hybrid battery gauge
Hybrid gauge
Drive systems
Starting and stopping the gasoline engine
Hold and Charge functions
Drive modes
General information about hybrid operation
Hybrid-related symbols and messages in the instrument panel
Recommendations for long-term storage
Using the electric motor only
Factors affecting electric motor range
Battery recycling
Hybrid batteries

Starting and driving

Starting and switching off vehicle
Transmission
Brakes
Drive systems
Drive modes
Driving recommendations
Fuel
Refueling
Emission control system
Electric motor and charging
HomeLink
Compass
Towing
Suspension
Spoiler

Audio, media and Internet

Radio
Media player
Phone
Apps
Internet connection
Audio, media and Internet
License agreement for audio and media
Tips for handling Internet connection problems
Hard disk storage space
Sound settings
Sound Experience
Customer Privacy Policy
Sensus - connection and entertainment
Terms and Conditions for Services

Polestar Connect

Polestar Connect services
Practical information about Polestar Connect
Polestar Connect app
Polestar Connect
Polestar Connect subscription
Polestar Connect messages

Navigation

Entering a destination
Itinerary and route
Traffic information
Navigation settings
Map updates
Voice control commands for Sensus Navigation
Sensus Navigation
Activating and deactivating the navigation system
Voice control for navigation system
Frequently Asked Questions regarding the navigation system
Navigation system symbols and buttons
Navigation license agreements
Navigation system in center display
Navigation system in the instrument panel
Activating and deactivating the navigation system in the instrument panel
Navigation system in head-up display
Suggest new map information with Map Creator

Wheels and tires

Changing a wheel
Tires
Tire inflation pressure
Temporary tire sealing
Driving in winter
Tires
Determining the vehicle's permitted weight

Loading, storage and passenger compartment

Loading
Cargo compartment/trunk
Storage and passenger compartment

Maintenance and service

Vehicle care
Wiper blades and washer fluid
Replacing bulbs
Engine compartment
Tools and accessories
Fuses
Battery
Service
Vehicle status
Download Center
Recommended camera and radar sensor maintenance
Maintenance of the brake system
Recommendations for long-term storage
Data transfer between vehicle and workshop over Wi-Fi
Hoisting the vehicle

Specifications

Dimensions and weights
Engine specifications
Specifications for fluids and lubricants
Specifications for wheels and tires
Type designations

Services

Data sharing for services
Polestar Assistance – a friend on the road
Other terms and conditions for Polestar Assistance

Manual information

This section contains information about where you can find and read the Manual, how to navigate in the Manual and in the center display, and how to read the Manual.

Manual information

Manual information is available in several different formats, both digital and printed. The Manual is available on the vehicle's center display and on Polestar's support website. There is also an Intro Manual and a Supplement to the Manual containing information about e.g. fuses, specifications.

Vehicle's center display[1]

In the center display, pull down Top view and tap Manual. This gives you access to visual navigation with exterior and interior images of the vehicle. The information is searchable and is divided into categories.

Printed information

The glove compartment contains a printed Supplement to the Manual[1] which contains information on fuses and specifications as well as a summary of important and practical information.

There is also a printed Intro Manual with useful information about the most commonly used features and functions in your vehicle.

Manual information is available as a printed book.

Other printed information may also be provided in the vehicle, depending on equipment level, market, etc.

> **IMPORTANT**
>
> The driver is always responsible for operating the vehicle in a safe manner and adhering to all applicable laws and regulations. It is also important that the vehicle is operated, maintained and serviced according to Polestar's recommendations provided in the Manual.
>
> If the information in the center display differs from the printed information, the printed information always takes precedence.

> **NOTE**
>
> Changing languages in the center display could mean that some information in the Manual will not comply with national or local laws and regulations.

1 For markets without Manuals in the center display, a complete Manual is provided along with the vehicle.

Polestar support

The support site contains information about e.g. logging in to the Polestar website, contact information and map downloads.

Downloadable information

Maps

On the Support page, you can download updates that you can load into your car with a USB stick. Examples of updates include new maps and improvements to the voice control system.

Polestar Customer Support

Contact information for Polestar Customer Support is available on the support site.

They can be contacted by phone or via the online form or chat feature on the website.

You can find all available phone numbers for Support on the support pages for each market at polestar.com.

Polestar Assistance

Polestar Assistance can offer assistance in the event of a breakdown or if your vehicle unexpectedly becomes immobilized. Polestar Assistance is available 24 hours a day, 7 days a week.

Press the ON CALL button in the vehicle or use the Polestar 1 app to contact Polestar Assistance.

Website

Create a personal Polestar ID and go to polestar.com, where it is possible to get an overview of service, agreements and warranties, among other things.

You can also access information on model-specific extras and software for your vehicle.

Reading the manual

To get to know your new vehicle, read the Manual before driving it for the first time.
Reading your Manual is a way to familiarize yourself with new features and functions, get advice on how to handle the vehicle in different situations, and to learn how to take advantage of everything it has to offer. Pay particular attention to the safety warnings and important information provided in the Manual. The various sections should be read in full.

The intention of this Manual is to explain all of the possible features, functions, options and accessories included in a Polestar vehicle. It is not intended as an indication or guarantee that all of these features, functions and options are included in every vehicle. Some terminology used may not exactly match terminology used in sales, marketing and advertising materials.

Polestar continuously works to develop and improve our products. Modifications can mean that information, descriptions and illustrations in the Manual differ from the equipment in the vehicle. We reserve the right to make changes without prior notice.

© Polestar

Option/accessory

In addition to standard equipment, the Manual also describes options (factory-installed equipment) and certain accessories (extra retrofitted equipment).

All, at the time of publication known, options and accessories are marked with an asterisk: *.

The equipment described in the Manual is not available in all vehicles. Vehicles may be equipped differently depending on market requirements and national or local laws and regulations.

For questions regarding what is standard and what is an option/accessory, please contact Polestar Customer Support. for additional information.

Decals

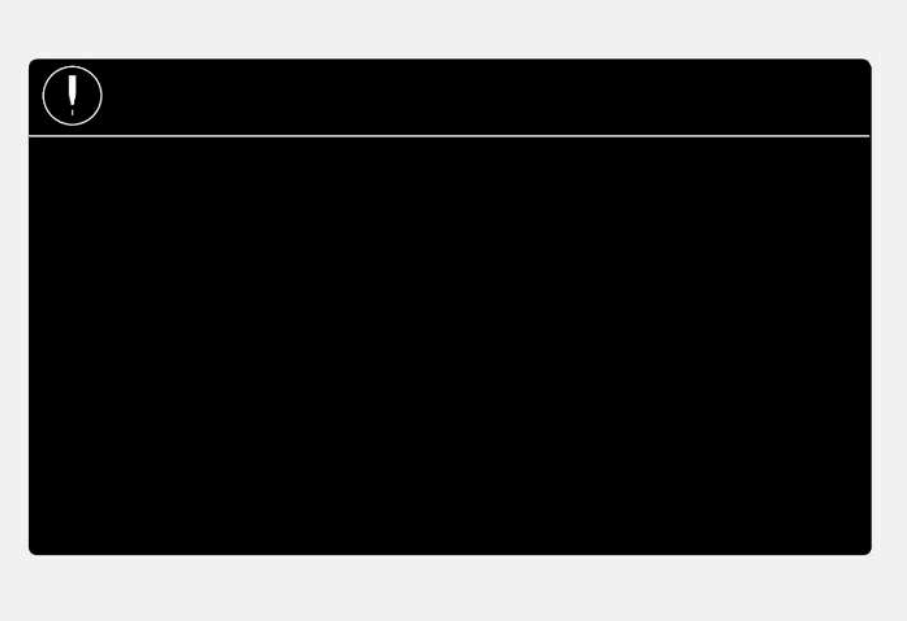
There are various types of decals affixed in the vehicle to communicate important information in a clear manner. The importance of these decals is explained as follows, in descending order of importance.

Risk of injury



Black ISO symbols on a yellow warning field, white text/image on a black message field. Used to indicate potential danger. Ignoring a warning of this type could result in serious injury or death.

Risk of damage



White ISO symbols and white text/image on a black or blue warning field and message field. Used to indicate potential danger. Ignoring a warning of this type could result in damage.

Information



White ISO symbols and white text/image on a black message field.

> **NOTE**
> The decals shown in the Manual do not claim to be exact reproductions of those found in the vehicle. The purpose is to show approximately how they look and about where they are located. The information that applies for your vehicle in particular is found on the decal on the vehicle.

Illustrations, images and video clips

Illustrations, images and video clips used in the Manual are sometimes generic and are intended to provide an overview or an example of a certain function or feature. They may vary depending on equipment level and market and may differ from the appearance of your vehicle.

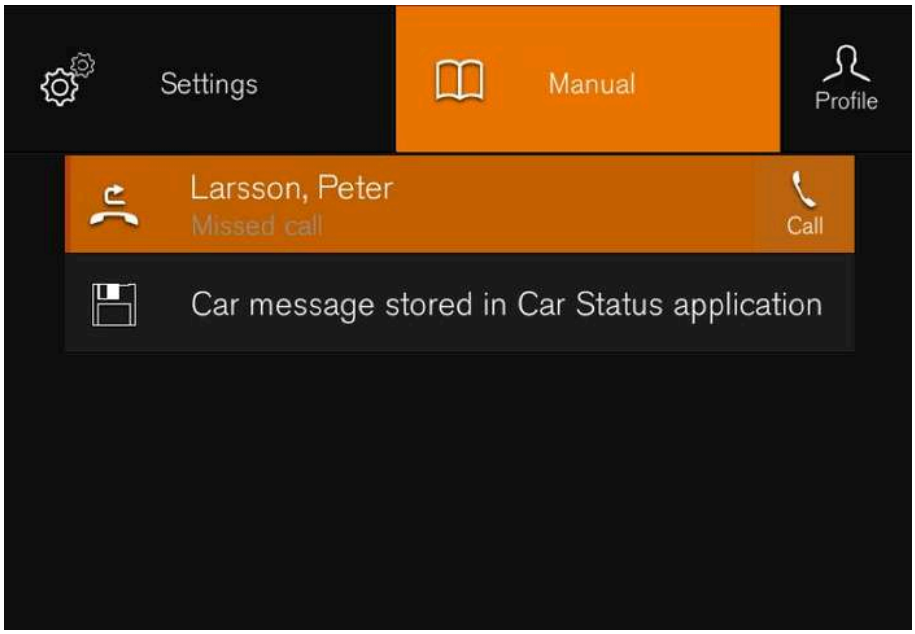
* Option/accessory.

Manual in center display

A digital version of the Manual is available in the vehicle's center display.
The digital Manual can be accessed from Top view and in certain cases, the contextual Manual can also be accessed from Top view.

> **NOTE**
> The digital Manual is not available during driving.

Manual

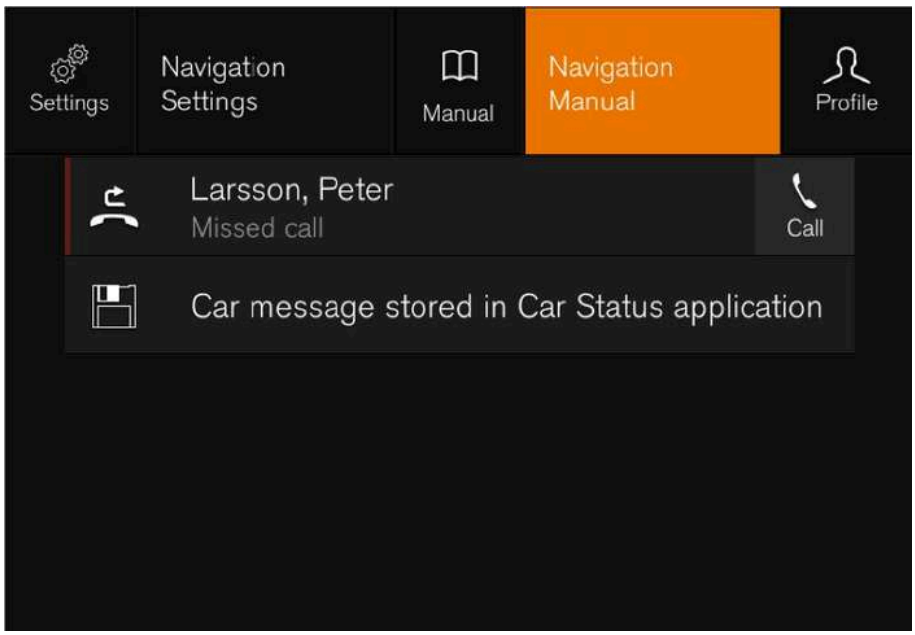


Top view with button for the Manual.

To open the Manual, pull down Top view in the center display and tap Manual.

The information in the Manual can be accessed directly via the Manual start page or via its Top menu.

Contextual Manual



Top view with button for the contextual Manual.

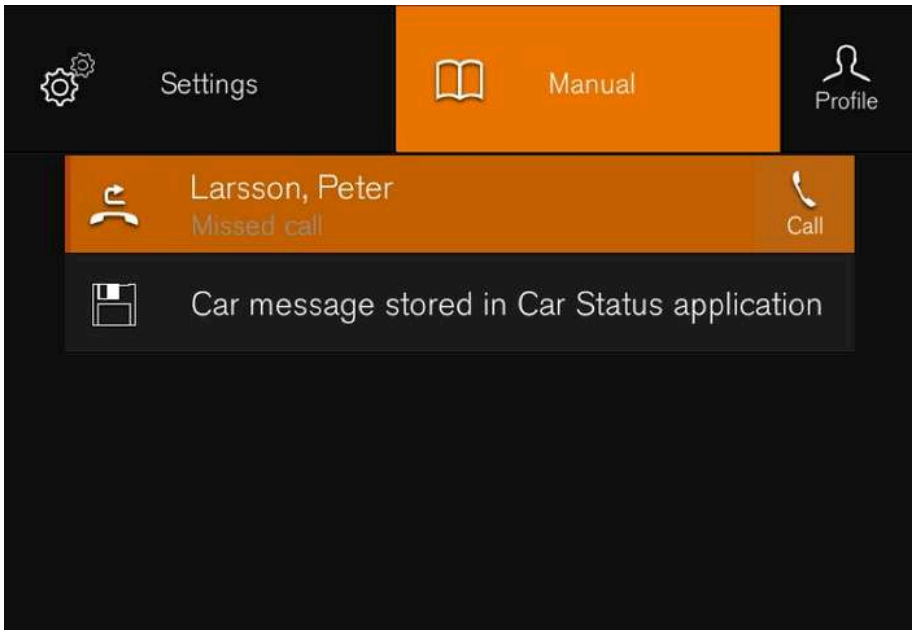
The contextual Manual is a shortcut to an article in the Manual describing the active function displayed on the screen. When the contextual Manual is available, it will be shown to the right of Manual in Top view.

Tap the contextual Manual to open an article in the Manual related to the information displayed on the screen. For example, tap Navigation Manual to open an article related to navigation.

Certain apps in the vehicle only. For downloaded third-party apps, it is e.g. not possible to access app-specific articles.

Navigating in the center display Manual

The digital Manual can be accessed from the center display's Top view. The contents are searchable and the sections are designed to be easy to navigate.



The Manual is accessed from Top view.

To open the Manual, pull down Top view in the center display and tap Manual.
There are a number of ways to find information in the Manual. The options can be accessed from the Manual's start page and from the Top menu.

Opening the menu in the Top menu

Tap ☰ in the upper list in the Manual.
A menu will open, displaying different options for finding information:

Start page

Tap the symbol to return to the Manual's start page.

Categories

The articles in the Manual are structured into main and sub-categories. The same article may appear in several relevant categories in order to help make them easier to find.

Tap Categories.
The main categories are listed.
Tap a main category ( ).
A list of sub-categories ( ) and articles ( ) will appear.
Tap an article to open it.
To go back, tap the left arrow.

Featured articles

Tap the symbol to go to a page with links to a selection of useful articles about the vehicle's more commonly used features and functions. The articles can also be accessed via categories, but have been collected here for quicker access. Tap an article to read it in its entirety.

Exterior and interior hotspots

Exterior and interior overviews of the vehicle are shown. Hotspots are provided for certain functions, components, etc. Tap a hotspot to come to a relevant article.

Press Exterior or Interior.
Exterior or interior images of the vehicle are shown with hotspots. The hotspots lead to articles about the corresponding function, component, etc. Swipe the screen horizontally to scroll between the images.
Tap a hotspot.
The title of a relevant article will be displayed.
Tap the title to open the article.
To go back, tap the left arrow.

Favorites

Tap the symbol to go to articles saved as favorites. Tap an article to read it in its entirety.

Saving or deleting favorite articles

Save an article as a favorite by tapping the ☆ at the upper right when the article is open. When an article has been saved as a favorite, the star symbol will be filled in: ★.

To remove an article from the list of favorites, tap its star again.

Video

Tap the symbol to go to brief instructive videos for various functions in the vehicle.

Information

Tap the symbol for information about the current version of the Manual in your vehicle and other useful information.

Using the search function in the Top menu

Tap ⌕ in the Manual's Top menu. A keyboard will appear at the bottom of the screen.
Enter a search word, e.g. "seat belt".
Suggested articles and categories will be displayed as characters are entered.
Tap the article or category to read it.

Your Polestar

This section contains information about how to create and register a Polestar ID, IntelliSafe, Sensus, installation of accessories, how to find the vehicle identification number (VIN), etc.

Polestar's innovation areas

Environmental efficiency

Polestar has committed to helping improve the environment by offering a range of products that are clean, efficient and have the least possible environmental impact.

Optimized powertrain

Polestar 1 has a powertrain that is specifically designed to minimize pollutants and maximize efficiency. These powertrains, called Drive-E™ in the Volvo world, have been optimized to be more efficient and pollute less.

Better environment, both inside and out

Polestar's environmental commitment also extends to the inside of the vehicle, which is cleaned by the climate control system. Volvo's Interior Air Quality System (IAQS) consists of an air filter in the air intake for preventing the entry of pollen and dust, along with the vehicle's air cleaning system. The IAQS forms part of the Clean Zone Interior Package (CZIP). It also cleans hydrocarbons, ground-level ozone, and nitrogen oxides from the air in the vehicle's interior. You can even "air out" the vehicle before driving via the Polestar 1 app. The materials used in the interior have been selected for their durability and sustainability and have been tested to ensure that they do not emit any strong odors or other contaminants.

Cooperation for a cleaner future

All Polestar vehicles meet strict international environmental requirements, as do our manufacturing facilities (which are ISO 14001-certified) and all Polestar partners and employees. This ensures that environmental laws and regulations are met, while also guaranteeing continuous improvements.

IntelliSafe – driver support and safety

IntelliSafe is Polestar's philosophy regarding vehicle safety. IntelliSafe consists of a number of systems1 that are designed to help make driving safer, prevent accidents and protect passengers and other road users.

> **WARNING**
>
> The functions are supplementary aids – they cannot manage all situations in all conditions.
>
> The driver is always responsible for ensuring that the vehicle is driven in a safe manner and in accordance with applicable traffic rules and regulations.

Support

IntelliSafe has the following functions designed to help the driver operate the vehicle more safely.

- Active high beam
- Tunnel detection
- Electronic Stability Control

- Traffic sign information
- Cruise control
- Adaptive Cruise Control*
- Pilot Assist*
- Cross Traffic Alert*
- Blind Spot Information
- Rear Collision Warning
- Driver Alert Control
- Park Assist System
- Park assist camera

Prevention

IntelliSafe has the following functions designed to help the driver prevent accidents.

- City Safety
- Distance Alert*
- Lane Keeping Aid
- Collision Avoid. Assistance

Protection

IntelliSafe has the following interacting functions to help protect the driver and passengers in certain situations in the event of an accident.

- Whiplash Protection System
- Seat belt with seat belt tensioner
- Airbags

> **NOTE**
> Read the individual parts about each system to fully understand the functions and be notified of important warnings.

1 Some of these systems are standard, while others are options. This may vary depending on market, vehicle model and model year.

***** Option/accessory.

Sensus - connection and entertainment

Sensus makes it possible to use apps and turn your vehicle into a Wi-Fi hotspot.

This is Sensus

Sensus provides an intelligent interface and Internet connection to the digital world. An intuitive navigation structure offers access to relevant assistance, information and entertainment when it is needed, without distracting the driver.

Sensus includes all of the solutions in the vehicle related to entertainment, Internet connection and navigation, and serves as the user interface between the driver and the vehicle. Sensus is what makes communication between you, the vehicle and the world around you possible.

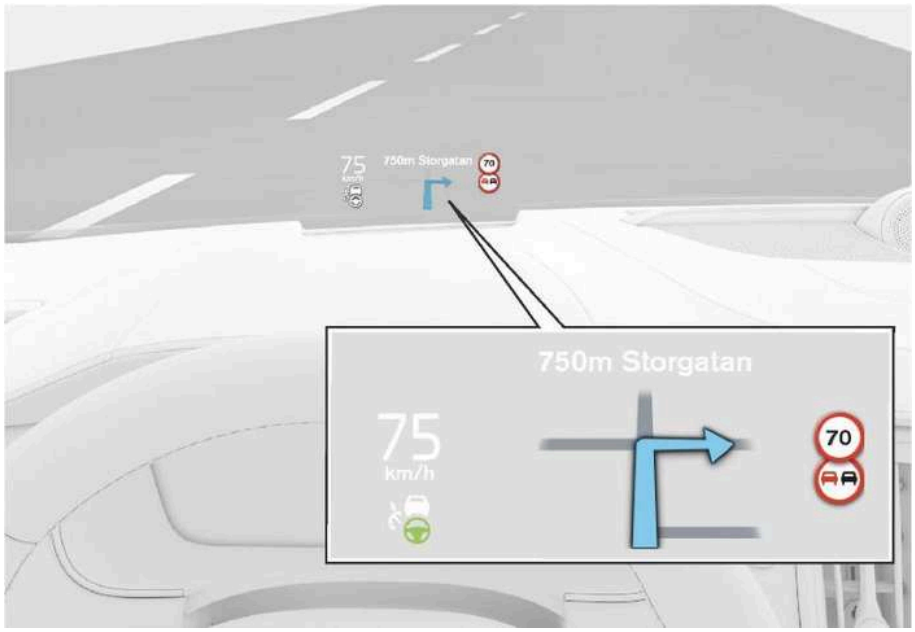
Information when it's needed, where it's needed

The vehicle's displays present the right information at the right time. Information is presented in different displays depending on how it should be prioritized by the driver.



Different types of information are shown in different displays depending on how the information should be prioritized.

Head-up-display



The head-up display presents information that the driver should react to immediately. For example, traffic warnings, speed information and navigation messages. Road sign information and incoming phone calls are also shown in the head-up display. These can be handled using the right-side steering wheel keypad or the center display.

Instrument panel



The instrument panel displays information such as speed, incoming phone calls or the track currently playing. It is controlled using the steering wheel keypads.

Center display



Many of the vehicle's main functions are controlled from the center display, a touchscreen that reacts to taps and other gestures. This minimizes the number of physical buttons and controls needed in the vehicle. The screen can also be operated while wearing gloves.

The center display is used to control e.g. the climate and entertainment systems and to adjust the power seats. The information presented in the center display can be handled by the driver or by someone else in the vehicle.

Voice control system



The voice control system enables the driver to control certain vehicle functions without taking their hands off the wheel. The system can understand natural speech. Use voice commands to e.g. play a song, make a phone call, increase the temperature in the passenger compartment or have a text message read aloud.

Polestar ID

Polestar ID

Polestar ID is a personal ID that gives you access to a range of services using a single username and password.

> **NOTE**
> The available services can vary over time and depend on equipment level and market.

Your Polestar ID is required if you want to monitor the vehicle via your phone using the Polestar 1 app. The app can be used to precondition the vehicle, check the driving journal and lock the vehicle remotely.

> **NOTE**
> If the username/password for a service (e.g. Polestar Connect) is changed, the change will also automatically be applied to other services.

You can create your Polestar ID on the website polestar.com or in the apps Polestar and Polestar 1.

Create a Polestar ID

A Polestar ID can be created in various ways.

Creating a Polestar ID with the Polestar or Polestar 1 apps

A Polestar ID can be created before the vehicle is delivered using the Polestar app. Once the vehicle is delivered, the Polestar 1 app is used.
Download the latest version of Polestar or Polestar 1 to a smartphone via e.g. App Store or Google Play.

Select to create a Polestar ID.
The website for creating a Polestar ID will open. Fill in the requested information.
Check the box to accept the terms and conditions.
Tap the button to create a Polestar ID.
An email/text message will be sent to the address/cellular phone number you have provided. Follow the steps listed in the message to confirm.
Your Polestar ID is now ready to use.

Creating a Polestar ID on the Polestar website

Go to polestar.com.
Select to create a Polestar ID.
The website for creating a Polestar ID will open. Fill in the requested information.
Check the box to accept the terms and conditions.
Tap the button to create a Polestar ID.
An email/text message will be sent to the address/cellular phone number you have provided. Follow the steps listed in the message to confirm.
Your Polestar ID is now ready to use.

Problems logging in with Polestar ID

This article describes problems that may arise when logging in with Polestar ID. For example, if you have forgotten your password or the username linked to your Polestar ID.

Common problems

Below is a list of common problems and solutions when logging in with Polestar ID.

Forgotten your password

To reset your password, follow the instructions below:

Via the Polestar website
Go to polestar.com.
Select Sign in.
Select Forgotten password.
Fill in the username for your Polestar ID (email address or cell phone number).
You will receive an email/text message with a link you can use to specify a new password.
In the Polestar 1 app.
Start the Polestar 1 app.
Select "Sign in"
Press "Forgotten password?" and follow the instructions.

Login error after creating a new account

Sometimes there may be a delay in the process that can result in an account not being available directly after it has been created. Try again after 24 hours and if the problem persists, contact Polestar Customer Support for further assistance.

What is my Polestar ID (username)?

Your Polestar ID is either an email address or a cell phone number.

Unlock your Polestar ID

Your account will be locked after 5 failed attempts to log in. You can unlock your account by clicking Forgotten password? in the login screen.

Login error after changing Polestar ID (username)

Make sure you have received a confirmation email or text message and confirmed your new username. When this has been done, you should be able to log in using the new username. If you did not receive the confirmation message (email or text message), your old username will remain. Log in and try again to change your username.

Login error after changing password

Try logging in with your previous password. If this doesn't work, try to reset your password.

Account registered to another market

An account is registered to a specific market and cannot be moved to a different market. To be able to reuse the same username (email address or cell phone number), we advise you to first delete your account for the old market and then create a new account for the new market.

Email error

If you did not receive a confirmation message after registration, check that you provided a valid email address and that the message was not stopped by a junk mail filter. Try to register your email address again.

Further assistance

If you haven't found a solution to a problem concerning your Polestar ID and need additional assistance, contact Polestar Customer Support.

Change of market when importing or relocating

If you import a vehicle or move to another country with your vehicle, you should contact Polestar Customer Support for assistance registering the vehicle in your new country. If you do not do this then you may experience that apps, the Polestar 1 app, software downloads and other online services are affected and do not work correctly.

Creating a new Polestar ID in your new home market

If you relocate to another country, you should create a Polestar ID in the new country. If you have already created a Polestar ID in another country and want to use the same email address, you must first delete your Polestar ID in the region you originally created it. You can also create a new Polestar ID with another email address.

Download the Polestar 1 app

Download the Polestar 1 app from the country in which the vehicle will be used and then link the app to your vehicle.

> **NOTE**
>
> Contact Polestar Customer Support if you have imported or relocated with your vehicle to a new country.
>
> Available services may vary depending on market.

Type approval and licenses

Instrument panel licenses

A license is an agreement on the right to conduct a certain activity or the right to use someone else's right according to terms and conditions specified in the agreement. The following text is Polestar's agreement with the manufacturer or developer.

Boost Software License 1.0

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person or organization obtaining a copy of the software and accompanying documentation covered by this license (the "Software") to use, reproduce, display, distribute, execute, and transmit the Software, and to prepare derivative works of the Software, and to permit third-parties to whom the Software is furnished to do so, all subject to the following: The copyright notices in the Software and this entire statement, including the above license grant, this restriction and the following disclaimer, must be included in all copies of the Software, in whole or in part, and all derivative works of the Software, unless such copies or derivative works are solely in the form of machine-executable object code generated by a source language processor.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS OR ANYONE DISTRIBUTING THE SOFTWARE BE LIABLE FOR ANY DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

BSD 4-clause "Original" or "Old" License

Copyright (c) 1982, 1986, 1990, 1991, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.

2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement: This product includes software developed by the University of California, Berkeley and its contributors.
4. Neither the name of the University nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE REGENTS AND CONTRIBUTORS ``AS IS'' AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE REGENTS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

BSD 3-clause "New" or "Revised" License

Copyright (c) 2011-2014, Yann Collet.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. Neither the name of the organisation nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derive from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

BSD 2-clause “Simplified” license

Copyright (c) <YEAR>, <OWNER> All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE

COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

The views and conclusions contained in the software and documentation are those of the authors and should not be interpreted as representing official policies, either expressed or implied, of the FreeBSD Project.

FreeType Project License

1. 1 Copyright 1996-1999 by David Turner, Robert Wilhelm, and Werner Lemberg Introduction The FreeType Project is distributed in several archive packages; some of them may contain, in addition to the FreeType font engine, various tools and contributions which rely on, or relate to, the FreeType Project. This license applies to all files found in such packages, and which do not fall under their own explicit license. The license affects thus the FreeType font engine, the test programs, documentation and makefiles, at the very least. This license was inspired by the BSD, Artistic, and IJG (Independent JPEG Group) licenses, which all encourage inclusion and use of free software in commercial and freeware products alike. As a consequence, its main points are that: o We don't promise that this software works. However, we are be interested in any kind of bug reports. (`as is' distribution) o You can use this software for whatever you want, in parts or full form, without having to pay us. (`royalty-free' usage) o You may not pretend that you wrote this software. If you use it, or only parts of it, in a program, you must acknowledge somewhere in your documentation that you've used the FreeType code. (`credits') We specifically permit and encourage the inclusion of this software, with or without modifications, in commercial products, provided that all warranty or liability claims are assumed by the product vendor. Legal Terms 0. Definitions Throughout this license, the terms `package', `FreeType Project', and `FreeType archive' refer to the set of files originally distributed by the authors (David Turner, Robert Wilhelm, and Werner Lemberg) as the `FreeType project', be they named as alpha, beta or final release. `You' refers to the licensee, or person using the project, where `using' is a generic term including compiling the project's source code as well as linking it to form a `program' or `executable'. This program is referred to as `a program using the FreeType engine'. This license applies to all files distributed in the original FreeType archive, including all source code, binaries and documentation, unless otherwise stated in the file in its original, unmodified form as distributed in the original archive. If you are unsure whether or not a particular file is covered by this license, you must contact us to verify this. The FreeType project is copyright (C) 1996-1999 by David Turner, Robert Wilhelm, and Werner Lemberg. All rights reserved except as specified below. 1. No Warranty THE FREETYPE ARCHIVE IS PROVIDED `AS IS' WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. IN NO EVENT WILL ANY OF THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DAMAGES CAUSED BY THE USE OR THE INABILITY TO USE, OF THE FREETYPE PROJECT. As you have not signed this license, you are not required to accept it. However, as the FreeType project is copyrighted material, only this license, or another one contracted with the authors, grants you the right to use, distribute, and modify it. Therefore, by using, distributing, or modifying the FreeType project, you indicate that you understand and accept all the terms of this license.
2. Redistribution Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met: o Redistribution of source code must retain this license file (`licence.txt') unaltered; any additions, deletions or changes to the original files must be clearly indicated in accompanying documentation. The copyright notices of the unaltered, original files must be preserved in all copies of source files. o Redistribution in binary form must provide a disclaimer that states that the software is based in part of the work of the FreeType Team, in the distribution documentation. We also encourage you to put an URL to the FreeType web page in your documentation, though this isn't mandatory. These conditions apply to any software derived from or based on the FreeType code, not just the unmodified files. If you use our work, you must acknowledge us. However, no fee need be paid to us.

3. Advertising The names of FreeType's authors and contributors may not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission. We suggest, but do not require, that you use one or more of the following phrases to refer to this software in your documentation or advertising materials: `FreeType Project', `FreeType Engine', `FreeType library', or `FreeType Distribution'.
4. Contacts There are two mailing lists related to FreeType: o freetype@freetype.org Discusses general use and applications of FreeType, as well as future and wanted additions to the library and distribution. If you are looking for support, start in this list if you haven't found anything to help you in the documentation. o devel@freetype.org Discusses bugs, as well as engine internals, design issues, specific licenses, porting, etc. o http://www.freetype.org Holds the current FreeType web page, which will allow you to download our latest development version and read online documentation. You can also contact us individually at: David Turner <david.turner@freetype.org> Robert Wilhelm <robert.wilhelm@freetype.org> Werner Lemberg <werner.lemberg@freetype.org>

Libpng License

This copy of the libpng notices is provided for your convenience. In case of any discrepancy between this copy and the notices in the file png.h that is included in the libpng distribution, the latter shall prevail.

COPYRIGHT NOTICE, DISCLAIMER, and LICENSE:

If you modify libpng you may insert additional notices immediately following this sentence.

libpng versions 1.0.7, July 1, 2000, through 1.0.13, April 15, 2002, are Copyright (c) 2000-2002 Glenn Randers-Pehrson and are distributed according to the same disclaimer and license as libpng-1.0.6 with the following individuals added to the list of Contributing Authors

Simon-Pierre Cadieux

Eric S. Raymond

Gilles Vollant

and with the following additions to the disclaimer:

There is no warranty against interference with your enjoyment of the library or against infringement. There is no warranty that our efforts or the library will fulfill any of your particular purposes or needs. This library is provided with all faults, and the entire risk of satisfactory quality, performance, accuracy, and effort is with the user.

libpng versions 0.97, January 1998, through 1.0.6, March 20, 2000, are Copyright (c) 1998, 1999 Glenn Randers-Pehrson, and are distributed according to the same disclaimer and license as libpng-0.96, with the following individuals added to the list of Contributing Authors:

Tom Lane

Glenn Randers-Pehrson

Willem van Schaik

libpng versions 0.89, June 1996, through 0.96, May 1997, are Copyright (c) 1996, 1997 Andreas Dilger Distributed according to the same disclaimer and license as libpng-0.88, with the following individuals added to the list of Contributing Authors:

John Bowler

Kevin Bracey

Sam Bushell

Magnus Holmgren

Greg Roelofs

Tom Tanner

libpng versions 0.5, May 1995, through 0.88, January 1996, are Copyright (c) 1995, 1996 Guy Eric Schalnat, Group 42, Inc.

For the purposes of this copyright and license, "Contributing Authors" is defined as the following set of individuals:

Andreas Dilger

Dave Martindale

Guy Eric Schalnat

Paul Schmidt

Tim Wegner

The PNG Reference Library is supplied "AS IS". The Contributing Authors and Group 42, Inc. disclaim all warranties, expressed or implied, including, without limitation, the warranties of merchantability and of fitness for any purpose. The Contributing Authors and Group 42, Inc. assume no liability for direct, indirect, incidental, special, exemplary, or consequential damages, which may result from the use of the PNG Reference Library, even if advised of the possibility of such damage.

Permission is hereby granted to use, copy, modify, and distribute this source code, or portions hereof, for any purpose, without fee, subject to the following restrictions:

1. The origin of this source code must not be misrepresented.
2. Altered versions must be plainly marked as such and must not be misrepresented as being the original source.
3. This Copyright notice may not be removed or altered from any source or altered source distribution.

The Contributing Authors and Group 42, Inc. specifically permit, without fee, and encourage the use of this source code as a component to supporting the PNG file format in commercial products. If you use this source code in a product, acknowledgment is not required but would be appreciated.

A "png_get_copyright" function is available, for convenient use in "about" boxes and the like:

printf("%s",png_get_copyright(NULL));

Also, the PNG logo (in PNG format, of course) is supplied in the files "pngbar.png" and "pngbar.jpg (88x31) and "pngnow.png" (98x31).

Libpng is OSI Certified Open Source Software. OSI Certified Open Source is a certification mark of the Open Source Initiative.

Glenn Randers-Pehrson randeg@alum.rpi.edu April 15, 2002

MIT License

Copyright (c) <year> <copyright holders>

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR

OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

zlib License

The zlib/libpng License Copyright (c) <year> <copyright holders>

This software is provided 'as-is', without any express or implied warranty. In no event will the authors be held liable for any damages arising from the use of this software.

Permission is granted to anyone to use this software for any purpose, including commercial applications, and to alter it and redistribute it freely, subject to the following restrictions:

1. The origin of this software must not be misrepresented; you must not claim that you wrote the original software. If you use this software in a product, an acknowledgment in the product documentation would be appreciated but is not required.
2. Altered source versions must be plainly marked as such, and must not be misrepresented as being the original software.
3. This notice may not be removed or altered from any source distribution.

SGI Free Software B License Version 2.0.

SGI FREE SOFTWARE LICENSE B (Version 2.0, Sept. 18, 2008)

Copyright (C) [dates of first publication] Silicon Graphics, Inc. All Rights Reserved. Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions: The above copyright notice including the dates of first publication and either this permission notice or a reference to http://oss.sgi.com/projects/FreeB/ shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL SILICON GRAPHICS, INC. BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

Except as contained in this notice, the name of Silicon Graphics, Inc. shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in this Software without prior written authorization from Silicon Graphics, Inc.

Type approval for HomeLink®

Type approval for HomeLink® is shown below.

Country/Area	Type approval
USA and Canada	This device complies with FCC rules part 15 and Industry Canada RSS-210. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference that may be received including interference that may cause undesired operation.
Europe	Gentex Corporation hereby declares that HomeLink® Model UAHL5 complies with the Radio equipment directive 2014/53/EU. Wavelengths within which the radio equipment operates: • 433.05MHz-434.79MHz <10mW E.R.P. • 868.00MHz-868.60MHz <25mW E.R.P.

Country/Area	Type approval
	• 868.70MHz-868.20MHz <25mW E.R.P. • 869.40MHz-869.65MHz <25mW E.R.P. • 869.70MHz-870.00MHz <25mW E.R.P. Certificate holder address: Gentex Corporation, 600 North Centennial Street, Zeeland MI 49464, USA

For more information, see polestar.com/manual

WARNING

The transmitter has been tested and complies with FCC and IC rules. Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the device.[1]

1 The term "IC:" before the certification/registration number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

License agreement for audio and media

A license is an agreement on the right to conduct a certain activity or the right to use someone else's right according to terms and conditions specified in the agreement. The following texts are Polestar's agreements with manufacturers/developers.

Bowers & Wilkins



Bowers & Wilkins and B&W are trademarks of the B&W Group Ltd. Nautilus is a trademark of B&W Group Ltd. Kevlar is a registered trademark of DuPont.

Dirac Unison®

Dirac Unison co-optimizes the loudspeakers in frequency, time and space for the best possible bass integration and clarity. It enables a faithful reproduction of the acoustic characteristics of specific performance venues. Using advanced algorithms, Dirac Unison controls all loudspeakers digitally based on acoustic high-precision measurements. Like a conductor of an orchestra, it guarantees that the loudspeakers perform in perfect unison.

DivX®

DivX®, DivX Certified® and associated logos are trademarks of DivX, LLC and are used under license.

This DivX Certified® device can play DivX® Home Theater video files up to 576p (including .avi, .divx). Download free software at www.divx.com to create, play and stream digital video.

ABOUT DIVX VIDEO-ON-DEMAND: This DivX Certified® device must be registered in order to play purchased DivX Video-on-Demand (VOD) movies. To obtain your registration code, locate the DivX VOD section in your device setup menu. Go to vod.divx.com for more information on completing the registration process.

Patent number

Covered by one or more of the following patents in the US: 7,295,673; 7,460,668; 7,515,710; 8,656,183; 8,731,369; RE45,052.

Gracenote®



Portions of the content are copyright © of Gracenote or its providers.

Gracenote, the Gracenote logo and logotype, "Powered by Gracenote" and Gracenote MusicID are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Gracenote, Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.

Gracenote® End User License Agreement

This application or device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. in Emeryville, California, United States ("Gracenote"). The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this application to perform disc and/or file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers or embedded databases (collectively "Gracenote Servers") and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End-User functions of this application or device.

You agree that you will use Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive license to use the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your license terminates, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers. Gracenote reserves all rights in all Gracenote Data, all Gracenote Software, and all Gracenote Servers, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide. You agree that Gracenote, Inc. may enforce its rights under this Agreement against you directly in its own name.

The Gracenote service uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow the Gracenote service to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page for the Gracenote Privacy Policy for the Gracenote service.

The Gracenote Software and each item of Gracenote Data are licensed to you "AS IS." Gracenote makes no representations or warranties, express or implied, regarding the accuracy of any Gracenote Data from in the Gracenote

Servers. Gracenote reserves the right to delete data from the Gracenote Servers or to change data categories for any cause that Gracenote deems sufficient. No warranty is made that the Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers are error-free or that functioning of Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers will be uninterrupted. Gracenote is not obligated to provide you with new enhanced or additional data types or categories that Gracenote may provide in the future and is free to discontinue its services at any time.

GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. GRACENOTE DOES NOT WARRANT THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES.

© Gracenote, Inc. 2009

Sensus software

This software uses parts of sources from clib2 and Prex Embedded Real-time OS - Source (Copyright (c) 1982, 1986, 1991, 1993, 1994), and Quercus Robusta (Copyright (c) 1990, 1993), The Regents of the University of California.All or some portions are derived from material licensed to the University of California by American Telephone and Telegraph Co. or Unix System Laboratories, Inc. and are reproduced herein with the permission of UNIX System Laboratories, Inc. Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met: Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution. Neither the name of the <ORGANIZATION> nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission. THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

This software is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group.

This software uses parts of sources from "libtess". The Original Code is: OpenGL Sample Implementation, Version 1.2.1, released January 26, 2000, developed by Silicon Graphics, Inc. The Original Code is Copyright (c) 1991-2000 Silicon Graphics, Inc. Copyright in any portions created by third parties is as indicated elsewhere herein. All Rights Reserved. Copyright (C) [1991-2000] Silicon Graphics, Inc. All Rights Reserved. Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions: The above copyright notice including the dates of first publication and either this permission notice or a reference to http://oss.sgi.com/projects/FreeB/ shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software. THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL SILICON GRAPHICS, INC. BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE. Except as contained in this notice, the name of Silicon Graphics, Inc. shall not be

used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in this Software without prior written authorization from Silicon Graphics, Inc.

This software is based in parts on the work of the FreeType Team.

This software uses parts of SSLeay Library: Copyright (C) 1995-1998 Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com). All rights reserved

Linux software

This product contains software licensed under GNU General Public License (GPL) or GNU Lesser General Public License (LGPL), etc.

You have the right of acquisition, modification, and distribution of the source code of the GPL/LGPL software.

You may download Source Code from the following website at no charge: http://www.embedded-carmultimedia.jp/linux/oss/download/TVM_8351_013

The website provides the Source Code "As Is" and without warranty of any kind.

By downloading Source Code, you expressly assume all risk and liability associated with downloading and using the Source Code and complying with the user agreements that accompany each Source Code.

Please note that we cannot respond to any inquiries regarding the source code.

camellia:1.2.0

Copyright (c) 2006, 2007

NTT (Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation). All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer as the first lines of this file unmodified.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY NTT ``AS IS'' AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL NTT BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Unicode: 5.1.0

COPYRIGHT AND PERMISSION NOTICE

Copyright c 1991-2013 Unicode, Inc. All rights reserved. Distributed under the Terms of Use in http://www.unicode.org/copyright.html.

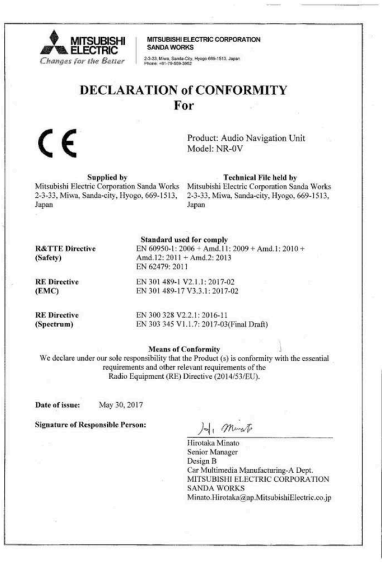
Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of the Unicode data files and any associated documentation (the "Data Files") or Unicode software and any associated documentation (the "Software") to deal in the Data Files or Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, and/or sell copies of the Data Files or Software, and to permit persons to whom the Data Files or Software are furnished to do so, provided that (a) the above copyright notice(s) and this permission notice appear with

all copies of the Data Files or Software, (b) both the above copyright notice(s) and this permission notice appear in associated documentation, and (c) there is clear notice in each modified Data File or in the Software as well as in the documentation associated with the Data File(s) or Software that the data or software has been modified.

THE DATA FILES AND SOFTWARE ARE PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER OR HOLDERS INCLUDED IN THIS NOTICE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, OR ANY SPECIAL INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER TORTIOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE DATA FILES OR SOFTWARE.

Except as contained in this notice, the name of a copyright holder shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in these Data Files or Software without prior written authorization of the copyright holder.

Declaration of Conformity



MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC
Changes for the Better

MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC CORPORATION
SANDA WORKS

DECLARATION of CONFORMITY
For

CE

Product: Audio Navigation Unit
Model: NR-0V

Supplied by	Technical File held by
Mitsubishi Electric Corporation Sanda Works 2-3-33, Miwa, Sanda-city, Hyogo, 669-1513, Japan	Mitsubishi Electric Corporation Sanda Works 2-3-33, Miwa, Sanda-city, Hyogo, 669-1513, Japan

Standard used for comply

R&TTE Directive (Safety)	EN 60950-1: 2006 + Amd.11: 2009 + Amd.1: 2010 + Amd.12: 2011 + Amd.2: 2013 EN 62479: 2011
RE Directive (EMC)	EN 301 489-1 V2.1.1: 2017-02 EN 301 489-17 V3.3.1: 2017-02
RE Directive (Spectrum)	EN 300 328 V2.2.1: 2016-11 EN 303 345 V1.1.7: 2017-03(Final Draft)

Means of Conformity
We declare under our sole responsibility that the Product (s) is conformity with the essential requirements and other relevant requirements of the Radio Equipment (RE) Directive (2014/53/EU).

Date of issue: May 30, 2017

Signature of Responsible Person:

Hirotaka Minato
Senior Manager
Design B
Car Multimedia Manufacturing-A Dept.
MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC CORPORATION
SANDA WORKS
Minato.Hirotaka@ap.MitsubishiElectric.co.jp

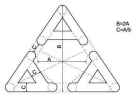
USA

FCC CAUTION

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. This transmitter must not be co-located or operated in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

Canada

This device complies with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standards. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Country/Area	
EU:	 И 011 14 Manufacturer: Mitsubishi Electric Corporation Sanda Works 2-3-33, Miwa, Sanda-city. Hyogo, 669-1513, Japan Mitsubishi Electric Corporation hereby declares that this type of radio equipment [Audio Navigation Unit] conforms with directive 2014/53/EU. For more information, see support.polestar.com.
China:	1. ■ 使用频率：2.4 - 2.4835 GHz ■ 等效全向辐射功率(EIRP)： 天线增益 < 10dBi 时：≤100 mW 或≤20 dBm ① ■ 最大功率谱密度： 天线增益 < 10dBi 时：≤20 dBm / MHz(EIRP) ① ■ 载频容限：20 ppm ■ 带外发射功率(在 2.4-2.4835GHz 频段以外) ≤-80 dBm / Hz (EIRP) ■ 杂散发射(辐射)功率(对应载波±2.5 倍信道带宽以外)： • ≤-36 dBm / 100 kHz (30 - 1000 MHz) • ≤-33 dBm / 100 kHz (2.4 - 2.4835 GHz) • ≤-40 dBm / 1 MHz (3.4 - 3.53 GHz) • ≤-40 dBm / 1 MHz (5.725 - 5.85 GHz) • ≤-30 dBm / 1 MHz (其它1 - 12.75 GHz) 2.不得擅自更改发射频率、加大发射功率(包括额外加装射频功率放大器)，不得擅自外接天线或改用其它发射天线； 3.使用时不得对各种合法的无线电通信业务产生有害干扰；一旦发现有干扰现象时，应立即停止使用，并采取措施消除干扰后方可继续使用； 4.使用微功率无线电设备，必须忍受各种无线电业务的干扰或工业、科学及医疗应用设备的辐射干扰； 5.不得在飞机和机场附近使用。

Type approval Radio Equipment Directive 2014/53/EU

Below you can find links to type approval Radio Equipment Directive 2014/53/EU.
CE_DECL_Telestart_EN_DE

Declaration of Conformity (ALCOGUARD) 22 September 2017

Declaration of Conformity (DY-1VW0F-T)

Declaration of Conformity (TU-6)

Declaration of Conformity_UAHL5_English

DoC (Declaration of Conformity)_for_NR-0V

DoC_RED2014_RS4 - Hella radar

DoC-RED-L2C0054TR

DoC-RED-L2C0055TR

DoC-RED-V03-134TRX

DoC_Volvo_Ref_31438104_NB1948_ZS170654004021_signed

DoC_Volvo_Ref_31472201_NB1948_ZS170654004023_signed

DoC_Volvo_Ref_31483411_NB1948_ZS170654004010_signed

DoC_Volvo_Ref_31483412_NB1948_ZS170654004022_signed

DoC_Volvo_Ref_31483416_NB1948_ZS170654004011_signed

EU-Konformitätserklärung_L538_RHS_V3.0

HUF8423_EU

HUF8432_EU

Start and lock system type designations

The following information contains type designations for the start and lock system.

Alarm system

USA FCC ID: MAYDA 5823(3)

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Canada IC: 4405A-DA 5823(3)

This device is subject to the following conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Keys

USA

Polestar Standard Key FCC ID: YGOHUF8423

Polestar Tag ID FCC ID: YGOHUF8432

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and

(2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Any changes or modification not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

Canada

Polestar Standard Key IC: 4008C-HUF8423

Polestar Tag ID IC: 4008C-HUF8432

This device complies with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standards. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Immobilizer and Passive Entry/Passive Start systems

USA-FCC ID: LTQVO3134

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and

(2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Any changes or modification not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

Canada-IC:3659A-VO3134

This device complies with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standards. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Customer Privacy Policy

Polestar respects and safeguards the personal privacy of everyone who visits our websites.
This policy refers to the handling of customer data and personal information. The purpose is to give current, past and potential customers a general understanding of:

- The circumstances in which we collect and process your personal data.
- The types of personal data we collect.
- Why we collect your personal data.
- How we process your personal data.

The policy can be read in its entirety at support.polestar.com.

Terms and Conditions for Services

Polestar offers services that help enhance the vehicle's safety and comfort.
These services comprise everything from assistance in emergencies to navigation and various maintenance services.

Before using the services, it is important to read the Terms and Conditions for the services at support.polestar.com.

Navigation license agreements

The following is information for the end-user of the Sensus Navigation system.

END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT FOR DISTRIBUTION BY HERE

FOR THE AMERICAS/ASIA PACIFIC

END-USER TERMS

The content provided (“Data”) is licensed, not sold. By opening this package, or installing, copying, or otherwise using the Data, you agree to be bound by the terms of this agreement. If you do not agree to the terms of this agreement, you are not permitted to install, copy, use, resell or transfer the Data. If you wish to reject the terms of this agreement, and have not installed, copied, or used the Data, you must contact your retailer or HERE North America, LLC (as defined below) within thirty (30) days of purchase for a refund of your purchase price. To contact HERE, please visit www.here.com. The Data is provided for your personal, internal use only and may not be resold. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms (this “End User License Agreement”) and conditions which are agreed to

by you, on the one hand, and HERE and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand. For purposes of these terms, “HERE” shall mean

(a) HERE North America, LLC with respect to Data for the Americas and/or the Asia Pacific region and (b) HERE Europe B.V. for Data for Europe, the Middle East and/or Africa. The Data includes certain information and related content provided under license to HERE from third parties and is subject to the applicable supplier terms and copyright notices set forth at the following URL:

here.com/supplierterms

TERMS AND CONDITIONS

License Limitations on Use: You agree that your li¬cense to use this Data is limited to and conditioned on use for solely personal, noncommercial purposes, and not for service bureau, timesharing or other similar purposes. Except as otherwise set forth herein, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

License Limitations on Transfer: Your limited license does not allow transfer or resale of the Data, except on the condition that you may transfer the Data and all accompanying materials on a permanent basis if: (a) you retain no copies of the Data; (b) the recipient agrees to the terms of this End User License Agreement; and (c) you transfer the Data in the exact same form as you purchased it by physically transferring the original media (e.g., the CDROM or DVD you purchased), all original packaging, all Manuals and other documentation. Specifically, Multidisc sets may only be transferred or sold as a complete set as provided to you and not as a subset thereof.

Additional License Limitations: Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by HERE in a separate written agreement, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, your license is conditioned on use of the Data as prescribed in this agreement, and you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with, or in communication with, including without limitation, cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

Warning: This Data may contain inaccurate or incom¬plete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic Data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

No Warranty: This Data is provided to you “as is”, and you agree to use it at your own risk. HERE and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error free.

Disclaimer of Warranty: HERE AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NONINFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Disclaimer of Liability: HERE AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THIS DATA; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS DATA, ANY DEFECT IN THIS DATA, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CON¬DITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF HERE OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE

POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

Export Control: You agree not to export from any¬where any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and ap¬provals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. De¬partment of Commerce. To the extent that any such export laws, rules or regulations prohibit HERE from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.

Entire Agreement: These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between HERE (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Severability: You and HERE agree that if any portion of this agreement is found illegal or unenforceable, that portion shall be severed and the remainder of the Agreement shall be given full force and effect.

Governing Law: The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois (for Data for the Americas and/or the Asia Pacific region) or The Netherlands (for Data for Europe, the Middle East and Africa), without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. For any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data (“Claims”), you agree to submit to the personal juris¬diction of (a) the State of Illinois for Claims related to Data for the Americas and/or the Asia Pacific region pro¬vided to you hereunder, and (b) The Netherlands for Data for Europe, the Middle East and/or Africa provided to you hereunder.

Government End Users: If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a “commercial item” as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. (“FAR”) 2.101, is licensed in accordance with this End User License Agreement, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following “Notice of Use”, and be treated in accordance with such Notice:

NOTICE OF USE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER) NAME:

HERE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER) ADDRESS:

425 West Randolph Street, Chicago, IL 60606.

This Data is a commercial item as defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to the End User License Agreement under which this Data was provided.

© 1987-2015 HERE. All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify HERE prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

© 1987-2015 HERE. All rights reserved.

(Canadian models) ACCORD DE LICENCE D'UTILISATEUR FINAL DESTINÉ À LA DISTRIBUTION

PAR HERE EN LES AMÉRIQUES / ASIE PACIFIQUE

MODALITÉS D'UTILISATION FINALE

Le contenu (« Données ») est livré en mode licence et non de vente. L'ouverture, l'installation, la copie du produit ou autre emploi des Données impliquent le consentement aux modalités de licence. En cas de désaccord avec les modalités de la licence, il est interdit d'installer, copier, utiliser ou transférer les Données. S'il n'y a pas consentement à certaines des modalités de la licence et que les Données ne sont pas déjà installées, copiées ou utilisées le titulaire peut obtenir le rem¬boursement du prix d'achat, en en faisant part dans les trente (30) jours au détaillant HERE North America, LLC (« HERE ») où l'achat a été fait. Pour les coorDonnées de HERE, consulter www.here.com Le disque de Données cartographiques (« Données »), est prévu pour une utilisation personnelle, un usage uniquement interne et ne peut en aucun cas être revendu. Il est protégé par les droits d'auteurs et assujetti aux modalités suivantes du présent « Accord de licence d'utilisateur final », ainsi qu'aux conditions convenues entre l'acquéreur du produit et HERE North America, LLC (« HERE ») ou ses concédants (comprenant concédants et fournisseurs). Aux fins des présentes, "Here" signifie

(a) Here North America, LLC pour ce qui concerne des Données pour les régions Amériques et/ou Asie Pacifique et (b) Here Europe B.V. pour ce qui concerne des Données pour l'Europe, le Moyen¬Orient et/ou l'Afrique. Les Données incluent certaines informations et contenus concédés sous licence à HERE par des tiers. Les Données font l'objet des conditions de fourniture applicables ainsi que des mentions de copyright indiquées sous l'URL suivant:

here.com/supplierterms

MODALITÉS

Restrictions de la licence d'utilisation : Le titulaire de la licence consent à utiliser les Données en question à des fins exclusivement personnelles, non commer¬ciales pour lesquelles la licence a été accordée et non à des fins d'offre de services informatiques, d'exploitation partagée ou autres fins du même type. Le titulaire de la licence consent également à ne reproduire, ne copier, ne modifier, ne décompiler, ne désassembler ou ne concevoir à rebours aucune partie de ces Données et à ne les transférer ni les distribuer sous quelque forme ni à aucune autre fin, sauf dans la mesure permise par les lois prescrites en cette matière.

Restrictions du transfert de la licence : Cette licence restreinte ne permet pas de transférer ou de revendre les Données, sauf à la condition où le transfert des Données et de tous les outils associés est permis sur une base définitive lorsque : (a) aucune copie des Données n'est conservée par le titulaire de la licence; (b) le bénéficiaire accepte les modalités de l'accord de licence de l'utilisateur final; (c) les Données sont transférées sous strictement la même forme qu'à l'achat par cession physique du média original (par ex. le CD-ROM ou DVD d'origine), de l'emballage d'origine, de tous les manuels et autres documents. Les séries multidisques ne peu¬vent être transférées ou vendues que sous leur forme intégrale d'origine et non comme une partie de celle-ci.

Restrictions additionnelles de la licence : Sous réserve des consignes particulières d'utilisation transmises par HERE dans la licence et sans limiter la portée du paragraphe précédent, l'utilisation des Données de la licence est sujette aux conditions du présent accord qui prévoit que l'utilisateur ne peut en aucun cas (a) utiliser les Données avec les produits, les systèmes ou les applications faisant l'objet d'une installation sur des véhicules dotés d'un système de navigation, de positionnement, de répartition, de radioguidage routier en temps réel, de gestion de parcs automobiles et d'applications semblables ou (b) les utiliser avec des dispositifs de positionnement et des appareils électroniques ou informatiques mobiles ou sans fil, y compris les téléphones cellulaires, les ordinateurs de poche ou portables, les téléavertisseurs et les assistants numériques personnels ou PDA.

MISE EN GARDE : Ces Données peuvent comporter des informations inexactes ou incomplètes en raison du passage du temps, de l'évolution des circonstances, des sources utilisées et des difficultés par nature de la collecte exhaustive de Données géographiques, de tout ce qui peut conduire à des résultats incorrects.

No Warranty: This Data is provided to you "as is", and you agree to use it at your own risk. HERE and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness,

reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error free.

Non-garantie : Ces Données sont fournies « telles quelles», l'acquéreur de cette licence accepte de l'u¬tiliser à ses risques et périls. HERE et ses titulaires de licences (et leurs concédants et fournisseurs) n'offrent aucune garantie ou déclaration de quelque nature que ce soit, expresse ou implicite, issue du droit ou autrement, quant au contenu, à la qualité, à l'utilité, à l'exactitude, à l'intégralité, à l'efficacité, à la fiabilité, à l'aptitude à l'emploi, à l'usage ou aux résultats découlant de l'emploi des Données, et ne garantissent pas non plus que ces dernières ou le serveur en assurant la transmission fonctionneront sans interruption et sans erreur.

Exonération de garantie : HERE ET SES TITULAIRES DE LICENCES (Y COMPRIS LEURS PROPRES CONCÉDANTS ET FOURNISSEURS) DÉCLINENT TOUTE GARANTIE, EXPRESSE OU IMPLICITE, DE QUALITÉ, DE PERFORMANCE, DE VALEUR MARCHANDE, D'ADÉQUATION À UN USAGE PARTICULIER OU DE NON-CONTREFAÇON. Certains États, territoires et pays n'autorisent pas certaines exclusions de garantie, et, dans cette mesure, les exclusions ci-dessus pourraient ne pas s'appliquer.

Exonération de responsabilité : HERE ET SES CONCÉDANTS (Y COMPRIS LEURS PROPRES CONCÉDANTS ET FOURNISSEURS) NE PEUVENT ÊTRE TENUS RESPONSABLES PAR LE TITULAIRE DE LA LICENCE À L'ÉGARD DE TOUTE RÉCLAMATION, DEMANDE OU ACTION, QUELLE QUE SOIT LA NATURE DE LA CAUSE DE LA REVENDICATION, DEMANDE OU ACTION ALLÉGUANT TOUTE PERTE, BLESSURE OU DES DOMMAGES, DIRECTS OU INDIRECTS, QUI POURRAIENT RÉSULTER DE L'UTILISATION OU LA POSSESSION DE CES DONNÉES, OU DE TOUTE PERTE DE BÉNÉFICES, REVENUS, CONTRATS OU ÉCONOMIE ATTENDUE OU DE TOUT AUTRE DOMMAGE DIRECT, INDIRECT, ACCESSOIRE, PARTICULIER OU CONSÉCUTIF, DÉCOULANT DE L'UTILISATION DU TITULAIRE OU DE L'IMPOSSIBILITÉ D'UTILISER CES DONNÉES, DE TOUT DÉFAUT DE CES DONNÉES, OU DE LA VIOLATION DE CES MODALITÉS OU CONDITIONS, QUE CE SOIT DANS UNE ACTION EN RESPONSABILITÉ CONTRACTUELLE OU DÉLICTUELLE OU FONDÉE SUR UNE GARANTIE, MÊME SI HERE OU SES CONCÉDANTS DE LICENCE ONT ÉTÉ AVISÉS DE LA POSSIBILITÉ D'UN TEL DOMMAGE. Certains États, territoires et pays n'autorisent pas certaines exclusions de responsabilité ou limitations des dommages-in-térêts, dans cette mesure, la disposition ci-dessus pourrait ne pas s'appliquer.

Contrôle des exportations : Le titulaire de la licence accepte, où qu'il soit, de n'exporter aucune partie des Données de tout produit direct des présentes sauf en conformité, ainsi qu'à toutes les licences et autorisations requises ci-après, aux lois applicables relatives à l'exportation, aux règles et règlements, y compris, mais pas uniquement aux lois, règles et règlements administrés par le Bureau du contrôle des avoirs étrangers du département du Commerce des États-Unis et le Bureau de l'industrie et de la sécurité du département du Com¬merce des États¬Unis. HERE est dispensée de ses ob¬ligations en vertu des présentes dans la mesure ou de telles lois, règles ou règlements relatifs à l'exportation de cette nature l'empêcheraient de s'y conformer.

Intégralité de l'accord : Ces modalités constituent l'intégralité de la licence entre HERE (et ses concédants, y compris leurs concédants et fournisseurs) et le titulaire de la licence eu égard à l'objet des présentes et remplace la totalité de toutes les ententes écrites ou orales antérieures conclues entre les parties concernant l'objet des présentes.

Divisibilité : Le titulaire de la licence et HERE reconnaissent que toute partie de l'accord jugée illégale ou inexécutable devra être enlevée et que le reliquat de l'accord restera entièrement en vigueur.

Droit Applicable : les termes et conditions ci-dessus sont assujetties aux lois de l'Etat du Illinois (pour les Données pour les régions Amériques et/ou Asie Pacifique) ou au droit néerlandais (pour les Données pour l'Europe, le Moyen-Orient et/ou l'Afrique), à l'exclusion

(i) des dispositions de conflit des lois, (ii) de la Conven¬tion des Nations Unies sur les Contrats de Vente Internationale de Marchandises, qui est expressément exclue.

Tout litige, réclamation, ou action découlant ou survenant en relation avec les Données (« Réclamations ») sera soumis à la compétence exclusive (a) des tribunaux de l'Etat de l'Illinois pour toutes Réclamations concernant les Données qui vous sont fournies au titre des présentes pour les régions Amériques et/ou Asie Pacifique et, (b) des

tribunaux néerlandais pour les Données qui vous sont fournies au titre des présentes pour l’Europe, le Moyen-Orient et/ou l’Afrique.

Utilisateurs finaux du gouvernement : Si les Don¬nées sont en cours d'acquisition par ou pour le compte du gouvernement des États-Unis ou toute autre personne qui cherche à obtenir ou à appliquer des droits similaires à ceux habituellement réclamés par le gouvernement des États-Unis, ces Données sont considérées comme « article commercial » tel que ce terme est défini dans la réglementation 48 CFR (« FAR ») 2,101, dont l’usage est autorisé conformément à la présente licence de l'utilisateur final. Chaque copie de Données livrée ou fournie par d’autres moyens doit être marquée et inscrite, le cas échéant, avec le texte suivant « Avis d'utilisation » et devra être traitée conformément aux Avis de ce type:

AVIS D'UTILISATION

NOM DE L‘ENTREPRENEUR (FABRICANT/FOURNISSEUR) :

HERE

ADRESSE :

425 West Randolph Street, Chicago, IL 60606.

Ces Données commerciales sont des éléments tels que définis dans la FAR 2.101 qui sont soumis à la licence de l'utilisateur final en vertu de laquelle ces Données ont été fournies.

© 1987 – 2015 HERE. Tous droits réservés.

Si l'agent de négociation des contrats, un organisme du gouvernement fédéral, ou tout autre fonctionnaire fédéral refuse d'utiliser la légende fournie dans les présentes, le responsable des marchés, l’organisme du gouvernement fédéral, ou tout autre fonctionnaire fédéral doit en aviser HERE avant de rechercher des moyens supplémentaires ou autres droits dans les Données.

© 1987 – 2015 HERE. Tous droits réservés.

Spotify license agreement

Polestar provides a wide range of services, apps and programs with the aim of making it more convenient, more pleasant and safer for you to use your Polestar. Some of the apps and programs are made by third party companies, and contain software licensed by the third party manufacturer.

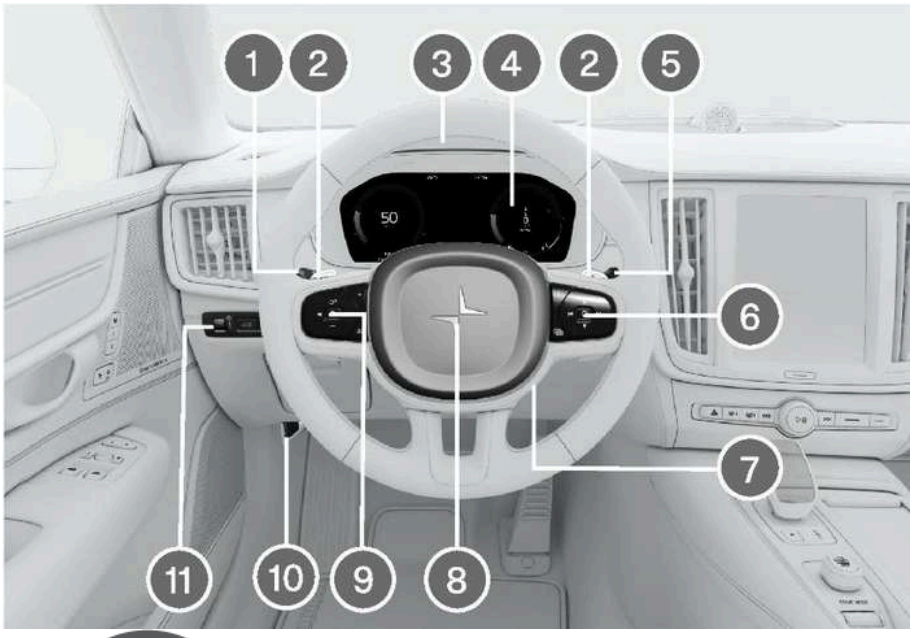
Spotify license agreement

This product contains third party software licensed by Spotify: www.spotify.com/connect/third-party-licenses.

Displays and controls near the driver

The overviews show the location of the vehicle's displays and controls.

Steering wheel and dashboard



1. Parking lights, daytime running lights, low beams, high beams, turn signals, rear fog light, trip computer reset
2. Steering wheel paddles for manual shifting of automatic transmission
3. Head-up-display
4. Instrument panel

5. Wipers and washers, rain sensor



6. Right-side steering wheel keypad



7. Steering wheel adjustment



8. Horn



9. Left-side steering wheel keypad



10. Hood open



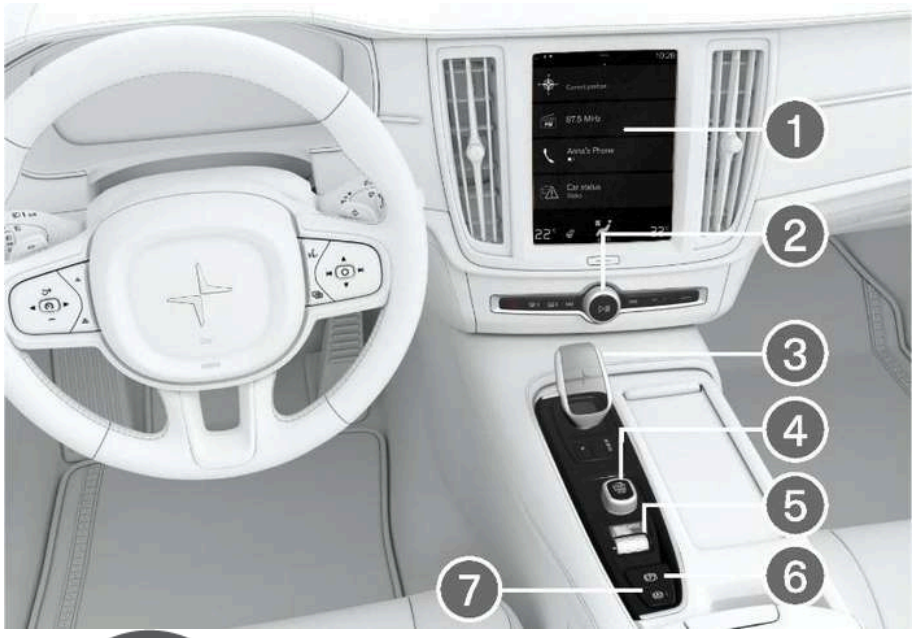
11. Display lighting, unlocking/opening/closing of trunk

Ceiling console



1. Front reading lights and courtesy lighting
2. Ceiling console display ON CALL button
3. HomeLink®*

Center and tunnel console



1. Center display

2. Hazard warning flashers, defrosting, media

3. Gear selector

4. Start knob

5

5. Drive modes

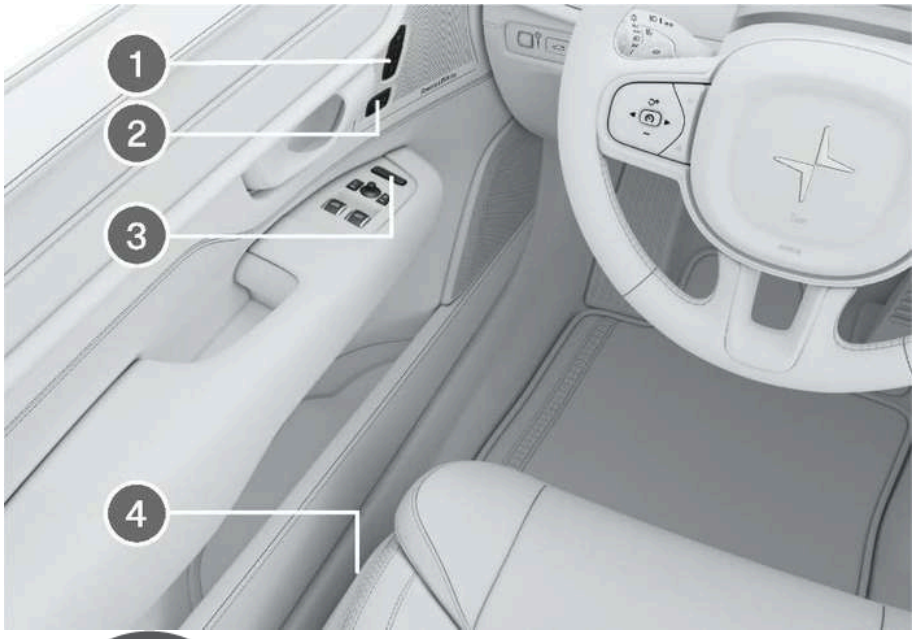


6. Parking brake



7. Auto-hold brakes

Driver's door



1. Memory for power front seat settings, door mirrors and head-up display
2. Central locking
3. Power windows, power door mirrors, active spoiler
4. Controls for front seat

* Option/accessory.

Technician certification

In addition to Polestar factory training, Polestar supports certification by the National Institute for Automotive Service Excellence (A.S.E.).
Certified technicians have demonstrated a high degree of competence in specific areas. Besides passing exams, each technician must also have worked in the field for two or more years before a certificate is issued. These professional technicians are best able to analyze vehicle problems and perform the necessary maintenance procedures to keep your Polestar in peak operating condition.

Hybrid vehicles

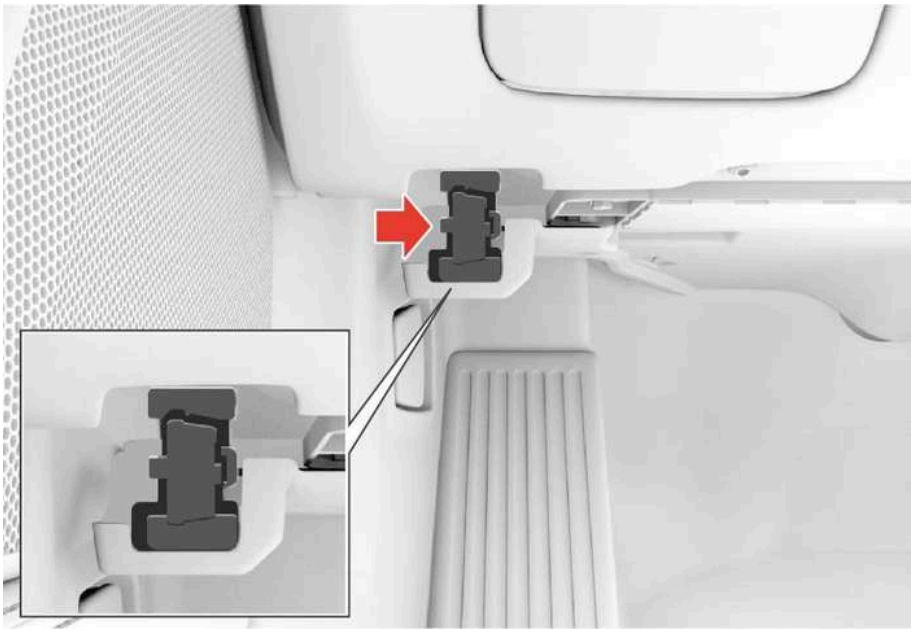
Technicians performing work on a vehicle with electrification should also have the necessary training and specialized certification required for performing repairs and/or maintenance on a vehicle with electrification.

WARNING

A number of electrical components in hybrid vehicles use high-voltage current and can be extremely dangerous if handled incorrectly. Contact Polestar Customer Support for more information about proper handling of these components and all orange cables in the vehicle.

Connecting equipment to the vehicle's data link connector

Incorrectly connected or installed software or diagnostic tools may have an adverse effect on the vehicle's electronics. We strongly recommend that Polestar owners only install Polestar-approved original accessories. Contact Polestar Customer Support for more information about installing accessories. Certain functions only work when the associated software is installed in the vehicle's computer system.



On-board Diagnostic (OBDII) socket under the dashboard on the driver's side.

NOTE

Polestar takes no responsibility for the consequences of connecting non-authorized equipment to the On-board Diagnostic (OBDII) socket. Contact Polestar Customer Support for more information.

Type approval

USA

FCC ID: 2AGKKACUII-06

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and

(2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

> **WARNING**
> Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Canada

IC: 20839-ACUII06

This device complies with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standards. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) this device may not cause interference, and

(2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Driver distraction

A driver has a responsibility to do everything possible to ensure his or her own safety and the safety of passengers in the vehicle and others sharing the roadway. Part of this responsibility is avoiding distractions, including performing activities that are not directly related to controlling the vehicle in the driving environment.
Your new Polestar is, or can be, equipped with feature-rich entertainment and communication systems. These include hands-free cellular telephones, navigation systems, and multipurpose audio systems. You may also own other portable electronic devices for your own convenience. When used properly and safely, they enrich the driving experience. Improperly used, any of these could cause a distraction.

For all of these systems, we want to provide the following warning that reflects the strong Polestar concern for your safety. Never use these devices or any feature of your vehicle in a way that distracts you from the task of driving safely. Distraction can lead to a serious accident. In addition to this general warning, we offer the following guidance regarding specific new features that may be found in your vehicle:

> **WARNING**
> - Never use a hand-held cellular telephone while driving. Some jurisdictions prohibit cellular telephone use by a driver while the vehicle is moving.
> - If your vehicle is equipped with a navigation system, set and make changes to your travel itinerary only with the vehicle parked.
> - Never program your audio system while the vehicle is moving. Program radio presets with the vehicle parked, and use your programmed presets to make radio use quicker and simpler.
> - Never use portable computers or personal digital assistants while the vehicle is moving.

Viewing the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

When contacting Polestar Customer Support about e.g. Polestar Connect, you will need your vehicle identification number (VIN1).
Tap Settings in the Top view in the center display.
Proceed to System → System Information → Vehicle Identification Number.
The vehicle identification number will be displayed.

The VIN can also be found:

- on the first page in Status and Warranty
- on the vehicle's registration card
- by looking at the dashboard through the vehicle's windshield.



1 Vehicle Identification Number

Data recording

As part of Polestar's commitment to safety and quality, certain information is recorded regarding vehicle operation, functionality and incidents.
US market only:

EDR

This vehicle is equipped with an "Event Data Recorder" (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur. NOTE: EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

ASDR

This vehicle is equipped with an Active Safety Data Recorder (ASDR). This data recorder can record information related to the usage of the car, functional errors and active safety actuations (e.g. auto brake). The information saved is used by technicians for service and maintenance to diagnose and repair possible faults that has occurred in the vehicle and to fulfil certain legal requirements. The registered data can also, in congregated form, be used for research- and product development –purposes to continuously improve the safety and quality of Polestar. For more information contact your local Polestar retailer.

Canadian market only:

This vehicle is equipped with an "Event Data Recorder" (EDR). The main purpose of the EDR is to register and record data in traffic accidents or accident-like situations, e.g. if an airbag deploys or if the vehicle hits an obstacle in the road. This data is recorded in order to help understand how the vehicle's systems perform in these types of situations. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, usually 30 seconds or less.

The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record data in traffic accidents or accident-like situations such as:

- How the various systems in the vehicle performed;
- Whether the driver and passenger seat belts were tightened/buckled;
- The driver's use of the accelerator/brake pedal;
- How fast the vehicle was moving.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which traffic accidents and injuries occur. The EDR records data only if a non-trivial accident situation occurs. EDR does not record any data during normal driving conditions. The system also never registers data on who is driving the vehicle or the geographical location of the accident or near-accident. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifiable information that is routinely acquired during an accident investigation. Special equipment and access to either the vehicle or the EDR is required to read this recorded data.

In addition to the EDR, the vehicle is equipped with a number of computers that continuously control and monitor the vehicle's performance. These computers may record data during normal driving conditions, particularly if they detect a fault relating to the vehicle's operation and functionality or upon activation of the vehicle's active driver support functions (e.g.City Safety or the auto-brake function).

Some of this recorded data is required by technicians performing service and maintenance in order to diagnose and rectify any faults that may have occurred in the vehicle. The recorded information is also needed to enable Polestar to fulfill legal and other regulatory requirements. Information registered in the vehicle is stored in its computers until the vehicle is serviced or repaired.

In addition to the above, the recorded information may be used in aggregated form for research and product development purposes in order to continuously improve the safety and quality of Polestar vehicles.

Polestar will not provide this information to any third parties without the vehicle owner's consent. However, national legislation and regulations may require Polestar to disclose this type of information to law enforcement or other authorities that can claim a legal right to the information. Special technical equipment, which Polestar and workshops that have entered agreements with Polestar have access to, is required to read and interpret the recorded data. Polestar is responsible for ensuring that information provided to Polestar in conjunction with service and maintenance is stored and handled securely and in compliance with applicable legal requirements. For further information, contact Polestar Customer Support.

Accessory installation

Contact Polestar Customer Support for more information about installing accessories.

- In all cases, please consult a trained and qualified Polestar service technician before installing any accessory in or on your vehicle.
- Accessories that have not been approved by Polestar may or may not be specifically tested for compatibility with your vehicle.
- Any of your vehicle's performance and safety systems could be adversely affected if you install accessories that Polestar has not tested, or if you allow accessories to be installed by someone unfamiliar with your vehicle.
- Damage caused by unapproved or improperly installed accessories may not be covered by your new vehicle warranty. Additional warranty information is provided in the Status and Warranty booklet. Polestar assumes no responsibility for death, injury or expenses that may result from the installation of accessories.

Polestar Structural Parts Statement

Polestar engineers and manufactures vehicles designed to help protect vehicle occupants in the event of a collision. Polestar vehicles are designed to absorb the impact of a collision. This energy absorption system including, but not limited to, structural components such as bumper reinforcement bars, bumper energy absorbers, frames, rails, fender aprons, A-pillars, B-pillars and body panels must work together to maintain cabin integrity and protect the vehicle occupants.

The supplemental restraint system including but not limited to air bags, side curtain air bags, and deployment sensors work together with the above components to provide proper timing for air bag deployment.

Due to the above, Polestar does not support the use of aftermarket, alternative or anything other than original Polestar parts for collision repair.

Polestar also recommends using only Polestar-approved replacement glass. The use of aftermarket glass, particularly a windshield, can have an adverse effect on collision avoidance and advanced lighting systems.

In addition, Polestar does not support the use or re-use of structural components from an existing vehicle that has been previously damaged. Although these parts may appear equivalent, it is difficult to tell if the parts have been previously replaced with non-OE parts or if the part has been damaged as a result of a prior collision. The quality of these used parts may also have been affected due to environmental exposure.

Contact Polestar

Use the following contact information if you would like to get in touch with Polestar in the United States or Canada.

In the USA:

Polestar Automotive USA Inc.

Customer Care Center

1 Volvo Drive,

P.O. Box 914

Rockleigh, New Jersey 07647

1-800-806-2504

www.polestar.com/us

In Canada:

Polestar Automotive Canada Inc.

5200, Boulevard des Laurentides

Laval, QC

H7K 2J8

1-800-806-2507

polestar.com/en-ca/

polestar.com/fr-ca/

Software Updates

Polestar is continuously developing vehicle systems and offered services to give Polestar customers the best possible vehicle ownership experience.
You can update the software in your Polestar to the latest version when your vehicle is serviced. With the latest software update, you can take advantage of available improvements, including those that came with previous software updates. Contact Polestar Customer Support for more information.

> **NOTE**
> Functionality after updating may vary depending on market, model, model year and options.

Important information on accessories and extra equipment

Incorrectly connected or installed accessories or extra equipment may have an adverse effect on the vehicle's electronics.
We strongly recommend that Polestar owners install only genuine, Polestar-approved accessories, and that accessory installations be performed only by a trained and qualified service technician. Certain functions only work when the associated software is installed in the vehicle's computer system. Contact Polestar Customer Support for more information.

The equipment described in the Manual is not available in all vehicles. Vehicles may be equipped differently depending on market requirements and national or local laws and regulations.

Optional or accessory equipment described in the Manual are marked with an asterisk. For questions regarding what is standard and what is an option/accessory, please contact Polestar Customer Support. for additional information.

> **NOTE**
> Do not export your Polestar to another country before investigating that country's applicable safety and exhaust emission requirements. In some cases it may be difficult or impossible to comply with these requirements. Modifications to the emission control system may render your Polestar not certifiable for legal operation in the U.S., Canada and other countries.

> **WARNING**
> CALIFORNIA proposition 65
>
> Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain or emit chemicals known to the state of California to cause cancer, and birth defects or other reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer, and birth defects or other reproductive harm.

WARNING

Certain components of this vehicle such as air bag modules, seat belt tensioners, adaptive steering columns, and button cell batteries may contain Perchlorate material. Special handling may apply for service or vehicle end of life disposal.

See www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate.

WARNING

The driver is always responsible for operating the vehicle in a safe manner and for complying with current statutes and regulations.

It is also essential to maintain and service the vehicle according to Polestar's recommendations as stated in the Manual and in the Status and Warranty booklet.

If the on-board information differs from the printed Manual, the printed information always takes precedence.

Safety

This section contains information on the various safety systems your vehicle is equipped with, such as airbags, the Whiplash Protection System (WHIPS), child seats, etc. and how you can enable and disable the passenger airbags.

Seat belts

Seat belts

Seat belts should always be worn by all occupants in your vehicle. Children should be properly restrained using an infant seat, adjustable child seat or booster cushion as determined by age, weight and height.

Most states and provinces make it mandatory for occupants of a vehicle to use seat belts.

Seat belt maintenance

Check periodically that the seat belts are in good condition. Use water and a mild detergent for cleaning. Check the seat belt mechanism's function as follows: attach the seat belt and pull rapidly on the strap.

WARNING

- Never attempt to repair the belt on your own; contact Polestar Customer Support.
- Any device used to induce slack into the shoulder belt portion of the three-point belt system will have a detrimental effect on the amount of protection available in the event of a collision.
- The seat back should not be tilted too far back. The shoulder belt must be taut in order to function properly.
- Do not use any type of child restraint in the front passenger seat. We recommend that children who have outgrown these devices sit in the rear seat with the seat belt properly fastened.

Buckling and unbuckling seat belts

Make sure that all passengers have buckled their seat belts before starting to drive.

Buckling seat belts

If the seat belt is not already in the seat belt guide fitted to the front seats, open the belt guide at the head restraint, insert the belt and close the belt guide again.
Pull out the belt slowly and make sure it is not twisted or damaged.

NOTE

The seat belt is equipped with a seat belt retractor that will lock up in the following situations:

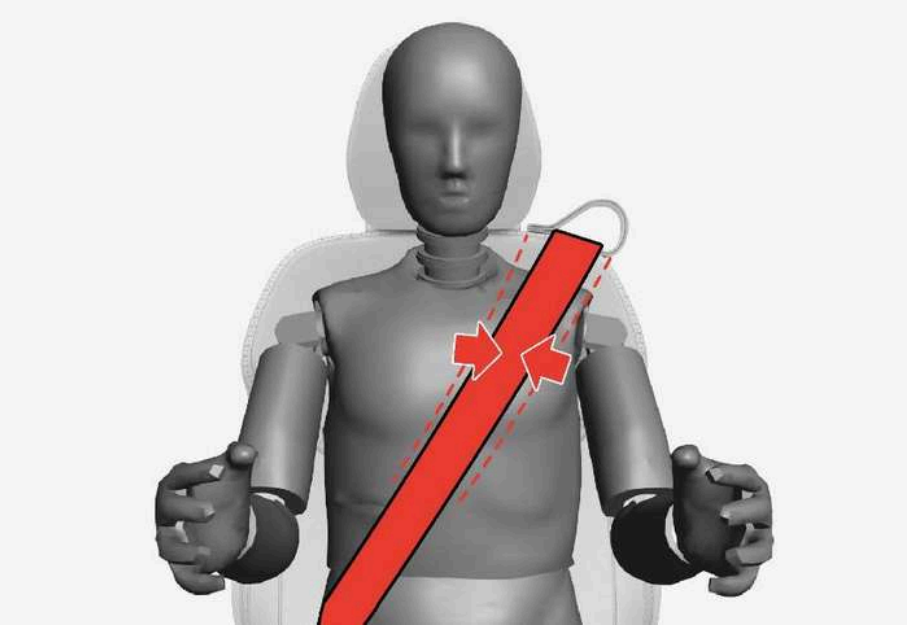
- if the belt is pulled out too quickly.
- during braking and acceleration.
- if the vehicle is leaning excessively.
- when driving in turns.
- if the automatic locking retractor/emergency locking retractor (ALR/ELR) is activated. Each seat belt (except for the driver's) is equipped with an ALR function, which is designed to keep the seat belt taut when installing a child restraint. ALR is activated when the seat belt is pulled out as far as possible. If this is done, a sound from the seat belt retractor will be audible, which is normal. The seat belt can now only be fed into the retractor, not pulled out. This function is automatically disabled when the seat belt is unbuckled and fully retracted.

Buckle the seat belt by pushing the latch plate into the receptacle.
A distinct "click" indicates that the belt is locked into place.

WARNING

Always insert the seat belt latch plate into the belt buckle on the correct side. Failure to do so could cause the seat belts and belt buckles to malfunction in a collision. There is a risk of serious injury.

Check the belt is properly positioned in the seat belt guide for the front seats.

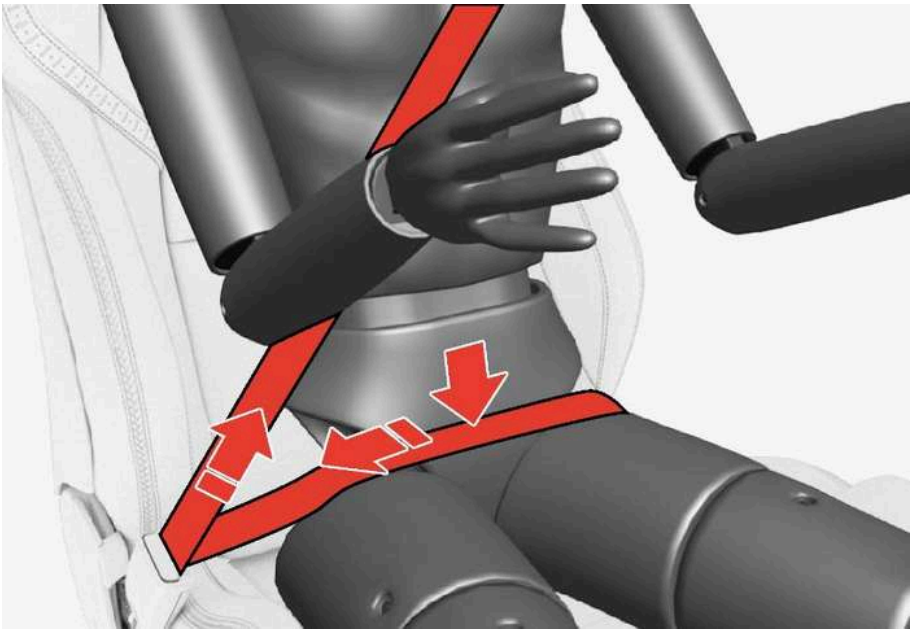


The belt should be positioned in the belt guide and over the shoulder (not down over the arm).

WARNING

The seat belt should always be placed in the belt guide. If the belt guide is not used, this may lead to serious injury.

Tighten the lap section of the seat belt over the hips by pulling the diagonal section upward toward the shoulder.



The lap section of the seat belt should be positioned low on the hips (not against the abdomen).

WARNING

Never use a seat belt for more than one occupant. Never wear the shoulder portion of the belt under the arm, behind the back or otherwise out of position. Such use could cause injury in the event of an accident. As seat belts lose much of their strength when exposed to violent stretching, they should be replaced after any collision, even if they appear to be undamaged.

WARNING

Do not use clips or fasten the belts around hooks or other parts of the interior. This will prevent the seat belt from fitting properly.

WARNING

Never damage the seat belts and never insert any foreign objects into the belt buckle. This may cause the seat belts and belt buckles to malfunction in a collision. There is a risk of serious injury.

Unbuckling seat belts

Press the red button on the seat belt receptacle and make sure the seat belt retracts fully into the retractor slot. If it does not fully retract, guide the belt manually into the slot and make sure it does not hang loose.

WARNING

Never use the front seat belt guides for other purposes, such as hanging up objects or as handles when getting in and out of the vehicle.

Seat belt tensioners

The vehicle is equipped with standard and electric seat belt tensioners that can help tension the seat belt in a critical situation or collision.

Standard seat belt tensioners

All seat belts are equipped with a standard seat belt tensioner.

In a collision of sufficiently violent force, the seat belt tensioners will tension the seat belts in order to more effectively restrain the occupants.

Electric seat belt tensioners

The driver's and front passenger's seat belts are equipped with electric seat belt tensioners.

The seat belt tensioners interact and can be activated in conjunction with the City Safety driver support system. In critical situations, such as if the vehicle begins to skid or runs off the road (e.g if the vehicle rolls into a ditch or hits an obstacle in the road), or if there is a risk of collision, the seat belts can be pulled taut by the seat belt tensioner's electric motor.

The electric seat belt tensioner helps to position the occupant more effectively in the seat, which reduces the risk of the occupant striking the interior of the passenger compartment and improves the effect of other safety systems such as the airbags.

When a critical situation has passed, the seat belt and the electric seat belt tensioner are reset automatically. However, they can also be reset manually.

> **WARNING**
>
> Never attempt to alter or repair the seat belt on your own. Contact Polestar Customer Support.
>
> If the seat belt has been exposed to extreme forces, e.g. in conjunction with a collision, the entire seat belt must be replaced. Even if the seat belt appears undamaged, some of its protective properties may have been lost. Also replace the seat belt if it is worn or damaged. The new seat belt must be type approved and intended for the same seating position as the replaced seat belt.

Resetting the electric seat belt tensioners

The electric seat belt tensioners are designed to be reset automatically, but if the seat belt remains taut it can be reset manually.
Stop the vehicle in a safe location.
Unbuckle the seat belt and then rebuckle it.
The seat belt and the electric seat belt tensioner will be reset.

> **WARNING**
>
> Never attempt to alter or repair the seat belt on your own. Contact Polestar Customer Support.
>
> If the seat belt has been exposed to extreme forces, e.g. in conjunction with a collision, the entire seat belt must be replaced. Even if the seat belt appears undamaged, some of its protective properties may have been lost. Also replace the seat belt if it is worn or damaged. The new seat belt must be type approved and intended for the same seating position as the replaced seat belt.

Door and seat belt reminders

This system is intended to remind occupants to buckle their seat belts and to alert the driver if a door, hood or other opening (trunk, sunroof, etc.) is open.

Graphics in the instrument panel



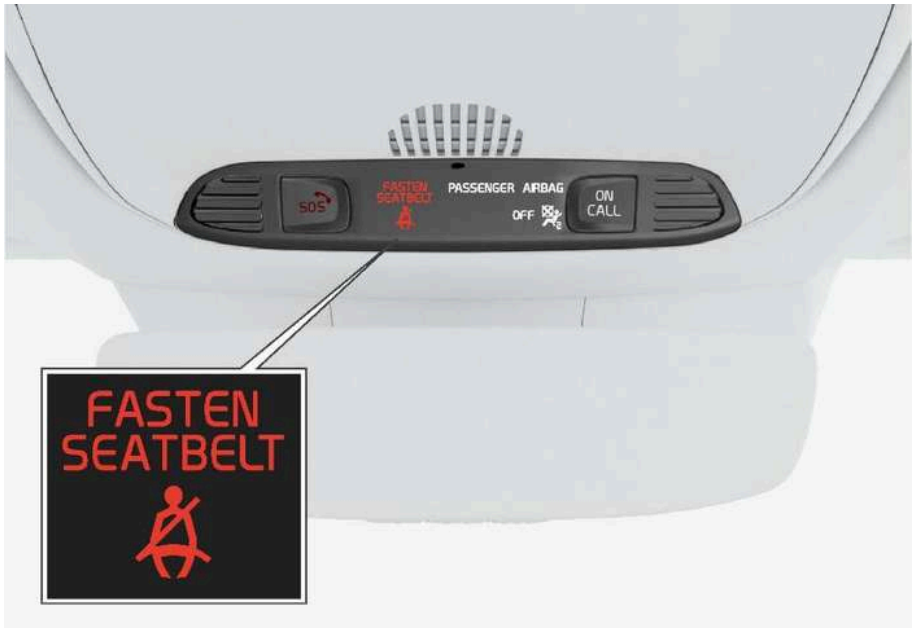
Graphics in the instrument panel with various types of warnings. The warning colors for the doors/trunk lid vary depending on the vehicle's speed.

The instrument panel graphic shows the seats where seat belts are buckled and not buckled.

The same graphic also indicates if the hood, trunk lid, fuel filler door or any door is open.

Confirm the graphic by briefly pressing the O button on the right-side steering wheel keypad.

Seat belt reminder



Reminder light in ceiling console.

A seat belt reminder light illuminates in the ceiling console and a warning symbol is displayed in the instrument panel.

The audible reminder varies depending on the vehicle's speed, driving time and distance driven.

A seat belt status graphic in the instrument panel indicates when the driver's or a passenger's seat belt is buckled or unbuckled.

Child seats are not included in the seat belt reminder system.

Front seats

An audible signal and an indicator light remind unbuckled occupants to fasten their seat belts.

Rear seat

The rear seat belt reminder has two functions:

- To indicate which seat belts are buckled in the rear seats. This will also be displayed in an instrument panel graphic.
- To provide audio and visual reminders if any seat belt in the rear seat is removed while the vehicle is in motion. The reminder will stop when the seat belt has been rebuckled.

Door/hood/trunk lid and fuel filler door reminder

If the hood, trunk lid, fuel filler door or any door is not properly closed, this will be indicated by a graphic in the instrument panel. Stop the vehicle safely and close the open door, hood, etc.



If the vehicle is moving at a speed under approx. 10 km/h (6 mph), the information symbol will illuminate in the instrument panel.



If the vehicle is moving at a speed above approx. 10 km/h (6 mph), the warning symbol will illuminate in the instrument panel.

Airbags

Airbags

The vehicle is equipped with airbags and inflatable curtains for the driver and passengers.

WARNING

- If the warning light for the airbags remains illuminated after the engine is started or if it lights up while you are driving, contact Polestar Customer Support as soon as possible.
- Never attempt to alter or repair any of the vehicle's safety systems yourself. Incorrectly performed repairs to any system could impair function and lead to serious injury. Contact Polestar Customer Support.

WARNING

If your vehicle has become water-damaged in any way (e.g., soaked floor mats/standing water on the floor of the vehicle), do not attempt to start the engine. This may cause airbag deployment, which could result in serious injury. Contact Polestar Customer Support.

Before attempting to tow the vehicle:

1. Switch off the ignition for at least 10 minutes and disconnect the battery.
2. Follow the instructions for manually overriding the shiftlock system.

Deployed airbags

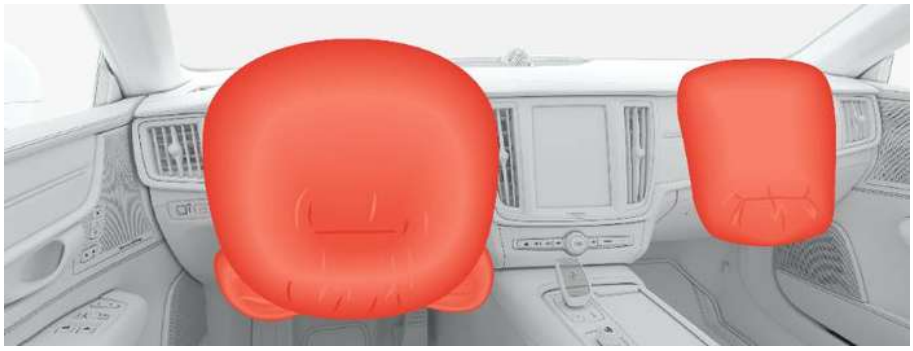
WARNING

If any of the airbags have deployed:

- Do not attempt to drive the vehicle. Contact Polestar Customer Support.
- If necessary, seek medical attention.

Driver/passenger side front airbags

As a supplement to the seat belts, the vehicle is equipped with driver and passenger side front airbags.



Driver/passenger side front airbags.

In a frontal collision, the airbags help protect the driver's and passenger's head, neck, face and chest and the driver's knees and legs.

A collision of a sufficiently violent force will trigger the sensors and one or more airbags will inflate. The airbag helps cushion the initial impact of the collision for the passenger. The airbag deflates when compressed by the collision. A small amount of powder will also be released from the airbag. This may appear to be smoke and is normal. The entire process, from inflation to deflation of the airbag, occurs within tenths of a second.

NOTE

The sensors react differently depending on the circumstances of the accident and whether or not the seat belt is used. This applies to all belt positions.

In some accident situations, only one (or none) of the airbags will be deployed. The sensors monitor the impact of the collision and react accordingly to deploy one, several or no airbags.

WARNING

The seat belt and the airbag work together. If the seat belt is not used or is used incorrectly, the airbag may not provide the intended protection in a collision.

To help prevent injury in the event the airbag is deployed, passengers should sit as upright as possible, with their feet on the floor and their backs against the seat backrest.

WARNING

Contact Polestar Customer Support for repairs. Incorrectly performed repairs to the airbag system could impair function and lead to serious injury.

The front airbag system

The front airbag system includes gas generators surrounded by the airbags, and deceleration sensors that activate the gas generators, causing the airbags to be inflated with nitrogen gas.

As the movement of the seats' occupants compresses the airbags, some of the gas is expelled at a controlled rate to provide better cushioning. The belt tensioners minimize slack in the seat belts and are activated for occupants wearing their seat belts. The entire process, from inflation to deflation of the airbag, occurs within tenths of a second.

The location of the front airbags is indicated by SRS AIRBAG embossed on the steering wheel pad and above the glove compartment, and by decals on both sun visors and on the front and far right side of the dash.

The **driver's side front airbag** is folded and located in the steering wheel hub.

The **knee airbag** is folded on the underside of the dashboard on the driver's side. The text AIRBAG is embossed on the panel.

The **passenger's side front airbag** is folded behind a panel located above the glove compartment.

WARNING

- The airbags in the vehicle are designed to be a SUPPLEMENT to-not a replacement for-the three-point seat belts. For maximum protection, wear seat belts at all times. Be aware that no system can prevent all possible injuries that may occur in an accident.
- Never drive with your hands on the steering wheel pad/airbag housing.
- The front airbags are designed to help prevent serious injury. Deployment occurs very quickly and with considerable force. During normal deployment and depending on variables such as seating position, one may experience abrasions, bruises, swellings, or other injuries as a result of deployment of one or both of the airbags.
- When installing any accessory equipment, make sure that the front airbag system is not damaged. Any interference in the system could cause malfunction.

Front airbag deployment

- The front airbags are designed to deploy during certain frontal or front-angular collisions, impacts, or decelerations, depending on the crash severity, angle, speed and object impacted. The airbags may also deploy in certain non-frontal collisions where rapid deceleration occurs.
- The airbag system's sensors, which trigger the front airbags, are designed to determine if the collision is powerful enough to activate the belt tensioners and/or the airbags.

However, not all frontal collisions activate the front airbags.

- If the collision involves a nonrigid object (e.g., a snow drift or bush), or a rigid, fixed object at a low speed, the front airbags will not necessarily deploy.
- Front airbags do not normally deploy in a side impact collision, in a collision from the rear or in a rollover situation.
- The amount of damage to the bodywork does not reliably indicate if the airbags should have deployed or not.

NOTE

- Deployment of front airbags occurs only one time during an accident. In a collision where deployment occurs, the airbags and seat belt tensioners activate. Some noise occurs and a small amount of powder is released. The release of the powder may appear as smoke-like matter. This is a normal characteristic and does not indicate fire.
- Polestar's front airbags use special sensors that are integrated with the front seat belt buckles. The point at which the airbag deploys is determined by whether or not the seat belt is being used, as well as the severity of the collision.
- Collisions can occur where only one of the airbags deploys. If the impact is less severe, but severe enough to present a clear injury risk, the airbags are triggered at partial capacity. If the impact is more severe, the airbags are triggered at full capacity.

WARNING

- Do not use child safety seats or child booster cushions/backrests in the front passenger's seat. We also recommend that occupants under 140 cm (4 feet 7 inches) in height who have outgrown these devices sit in the rear seat with the seat belt fastened. See also the Occupant Weight Sensor information.
- Never drive with the airbags deployed. The fact that they hang out can impair the steering of your vehicle. Other safety systems can also be damaged.
- The smoke and dust formed when the airbags are deployed can cause skin and eye irritation in the event of prolonged exposure.

If you have questions about any component in the supplemental restraint system, contact Polestar Customer Support or:

In the USA:

Polestar Automotive USA Inc.

Customer Care Center

1 Volvo Drive

P.O. Box 914

Rockleigh, New Jersey 07647

1-800-806-2504

www.polestar.com/us

In Canada:

Polestar Automotive Canada Inc.

9130 Leslie Street, Suite 101

Richmond Hill, ON L4B 0B9

1-800-806-2507

www.polestar.com/ca

Airbag decals



Airbag decal on the outside of both sun visors.



Passenger's side airbag decal.

WARNING

- Children must never be allowed in the front passenger's seat.
- Occupants in the front passenger's seat must never sit on the edge of the seat, sit leaning toward the instrument panel or otherwise sit out of position.
- The occupant's back must be as upright as comfort allows and be against the seat back with the seat belt properly fastened.
- Feet must be on the floor, e.g., not on the dash, seat or out of the window.

WARNING

- No objects or accessory equipment, e.g. dashboard covers, may be placed on, attached to, or installed near the air bag cover (the area above the glove compartment) or the area affected by airbag deployment.
- There should be no loose articles, such as coffee cups on the floor, seat, or dashboard area.
- Never try to open the airbag cover on the steering wheel or the passenger's side dashboard. This should only be done by a trained and qualified service technician.
- Failure to follow these instructions can result in injury to the vehicle's occupants.

Occupant weight sensor

The Occupant Weight Sensor (OWS) is designed to meet the regulatory requirements of Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208 and is designed to disable (will not inflate) the passenger's side front airbag under certain conditions.



Occupant Weight Sensor (OWS) indicator light

Disabling the passenger's side front airbag

Polestar recommends that all occupants (adults and children) shorter than 140 cm (4 feet 7 inches) be seated in the rear seat of any vehicle with a front passenger side airbag and be properly restrained for their size and weight.

The OWS works with sensors that are part of the front passenger's seat and seat belt. The sensors are designed to detect the presence of a properly seated occupant and determine if the passenger's side front airbag should be enabled (may inflate) or disabled (will not inflate).

The OWS will disable (will not inflate) the passenger's side front airbag when:

- the front passenger's seat is unoccupied, or has small/medium objects in the front seat,
- the system determines that an infant is present in a rear-facing infant seat that is installed according to the manufacturer's instructions,
- the system determines that a small child is present in a forward-facing child restraint that is installed according to the manufacturer's instructions,
- the system determines that a small child is present in a booster seat,
- a front passenger takes his/her weight off of the seat for a period of time,

- a child or a small person occupies the front passenger's seat.

The OWS uses a PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp which will illuminate and stay on to remind you that the passenger's side front airbag is disabled. The PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp is located in the overhead console, near the base of the rearview mirror.

> **NOTE**
> When the ignition is switched on, the OWS indicator light will illuminate for several seconds while the system performs a self-diagnostic test.

However, if a fault is detected in the system:

- The OWS indicator light will stay on
- The SRS warning light will come on and stay on and a text message will be displayed.

> **WARNING**
> If a fault in the system is detected and indicated as described, be aware that the passenger's side front airbag will not deploy in the event of a collision. In this case, the SRS system and Occupant Weight Sensor should be inspected by a trained and qualified service technician as soon as possible.

> **WARNING**
> - Never try to open, remove or repair any components in the OWS system. This could cause the system to malfunction. Maintenance or repairs should only be carried out by a trained and qualified service technician.
> - The front passenger's seat should not be modified in any way. This could reduce pressure on the seat cushion, which might interfere with the OWS system's function.

Passenger's seat occupancy status	OWS indicator light status	Passenger's side front airbag status
Seat unoccupied	OWS indicator light lights up	Passenger's side front airbag disabled
Seat occupied by low weight occupant/object1	OWS indicator light lights up	Passenger's side front airbag disabled
Seat occupied by heavy occupant/object	OWS indicator light is **not** lit	Passenger's side front airbag enabled

The OWS is designed to enable (may inflate) the passenger's side front airbag in the event of a collision anytime the system senses that a person of adult size is sitting properly in the front passenger's seat. The PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp will be off and remain off.

If a person of adult size is sitting in the front passenger's seat, but the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp is on, it is possible that the person isn't sitting properly in the seat. If this happens:

- Turn the vehicle off and ask the person to place the backrest in an upright position.
- Have the person sit upright in the seat, centered on the seat cushion, with the person's legs comfortably extended.
- Restart the vehicle and have the person remain in this position for about two minutes. This will allow the system to detect that person and enable the passenger's frontal airbag.
- If the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp remains on even after this, the person should be advised to ride in the rear seat.

This indicates limitations in OWS classification capability. It does not indicate OWS malfunction.

Modifications

If you are considering modifying your vehicle in any way to accommodate a disability, for example by altering or adapting the driver's or front passenger's seat(s) and/or airbag systems, please contact Polestar Customer Support or:

In the USA:

Polestar Automotive USA Inc.

Customer Care Center

1 Volvo Drive

P.O. Box 914

Rockleigh, New Jersey 07647

1-800-806-2504

www.polestar.com/us

In Canada:

Polestar Automotive Canada Inc.

9130 Leslie Street, Suite 101

Richmond Hill, ON L4B 0B9

1-800-806-2507

www.polestar.com/en-ca

www.polestar.com/fr-ca

WARNING

- No objects that add to the total weight on the seat should be placed on the front passenger's seat. If a child is seated in the front passenger's seat with any additional weight, this extra weight could cause the OWS system to enable the airbag, which might cause it to deploy in the event of a collision, thereby injuring the child.
- The seat belt should never be wrapped around an object on the front passenger's seat. This could interfere with the OWS system's function.
- The front passenger's seat belt should never be used in a way that exerts more pressure on the passenger than normal. This could increase the pressure exerted on the weight sensor by a child, and could result in the airbag being enabled, which might cause it to deploy in the event of a collision, thereby injuring the child.

WARNING

- Keep the following points in mind with respect to the OWS system. Failure to follow these instructions could adversely affect the system's function and result in serious injury to the occupant of the front passenger's seat:
- The full weight of the front seat passenger should always be on the seat cushion. The passenger should never lift him/herself off the seat cushion using the armrest in the door or the center console, by pressing the feet on the floor, by sitting on the edge of the seat cushion, or by pressing against the backrest in a way that reduces pressure on the seat cushion. This could cause OWS to disable the front, passenger's side airbag.

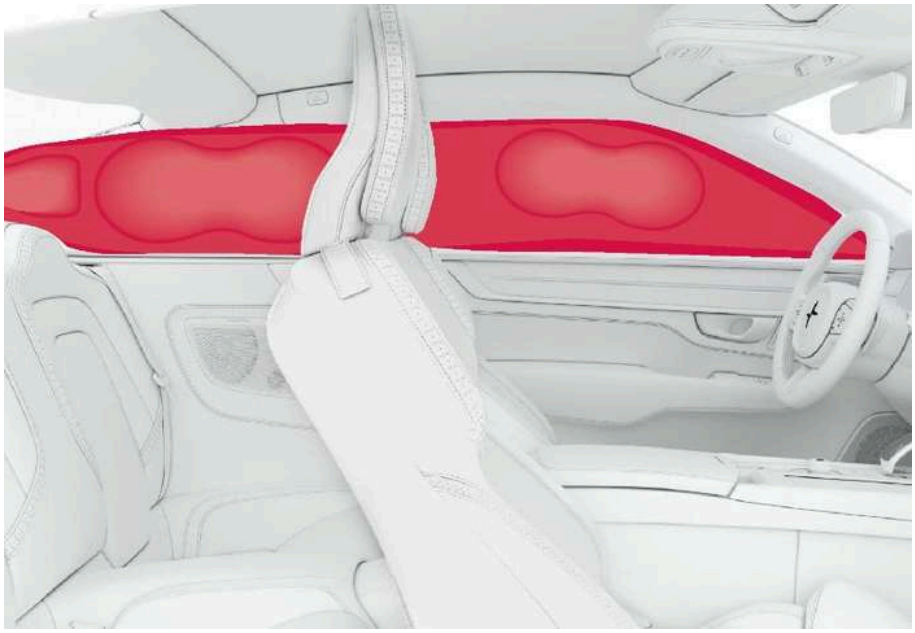
WARNING

- Do not place any type of object on the front passenger's seat in such a way that jamming, pressing, or squeezing occurs between the object and the front seat, other than as a direct result of the correct use of the Automatic Locking Retractor/Emergency Locking Retractor (ALR/ELR) seat belt.
- No objects should be placed under the front passenger's seat. This could interfere with the OWS system's function.

1 Polestar recommends that children always be properly restrained in appropriate child restraints in the rear seats. Do not assume that the passenger's side front airbag is disabled unless the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp is lit. Make sure the child restraint is properly installed. If there is any doubt as to the status of the passenger's side front airbag, move the child restraint to the rear seat.

Inflatable curtain

The inflatable curtain, Inflatable Curtain (IC), helps to prevent the driver and passengers from striking their heads on the inside of the vehicle during a collision.



The inflatable curtains are installed along both sides of the inside of the roof and help protect the driver and passengers. IC AIRBAG is embossed on the panels.

A collision of a sufficiently violent force will trigger the sensors and the inflatable curtain will inflate.

WARNING

Contact Polestar Customer Support for repairs. Incorrectly performed repairs to the inflatable curtain system could impair function and lead to serious injury.

WARNING

Never screw or mount anything to the vehicle's headlining, door pillars or side panels. This could impair the intended protective properties. Polestar recommends only using original Polestar parts that are approved for placement in these areas.

WARNING

If objects are loaded higher than the upper edge of the side windows, leave a 10 cm (4 in.) space between the objects and the window. Objects placed closer to this could impede the function of the inflatable curtain concealed inside the headlining.

WARNING

The inflatable curtain is a supplement to the seat belt. Always wear your seat belt.

Side airbags

The side airbags, on the driver's and passenger sides, protect the chest and hip in a collision.



The side airbags are located in the front seats' outer backrest frames and help protect the driver and front seat passenger.

A collision of a sufficiently violent force will trigger the sensors and one or more side airbags will inflate. The side airbags inflate between the seat occupant and the door panel to help cushion the initial impact of the collision. The airbag deflates when compressed by the collision. The side airbags are normally only deployed on the side of the vehicle impacted by the collision.

WARNING

Contact Polestar Customer Support for repairs. Incorrectly performed repairs to the side airbag system could impair function and lead to serious injury.

WARNING

Do not place any objects in the area between the outer edges of the seats and the door panels, as this could impair the function of the side airbags.

Polestar recommends only using Polestar-approved seat covers. Other seat covers could prevent the side airbags from functioning properly.

WARNING

The side airbag is a supplement to the seat belt. Always wear your seat belt.

Child safety

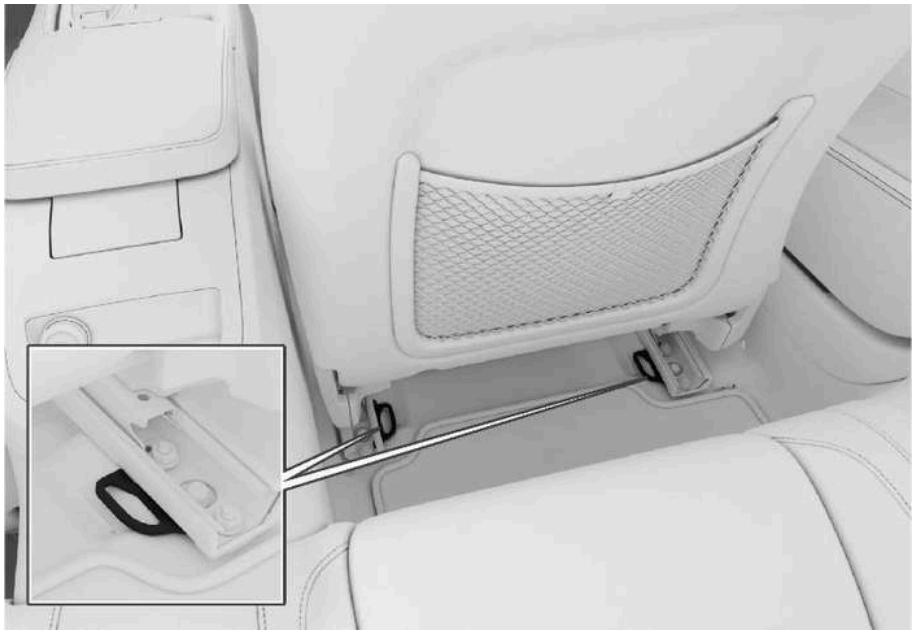
Attachment points for child seats

Lower child seat attachment points

The rear seats are equipped with lower child seat attachment points.
The lower child seat attachment points are intended for use with certain rear-facing child restraints.

Always follow the manufacturer's installation instructions when attaching a child seat to the lower child seat attachment points.

Location of child seat attachment points



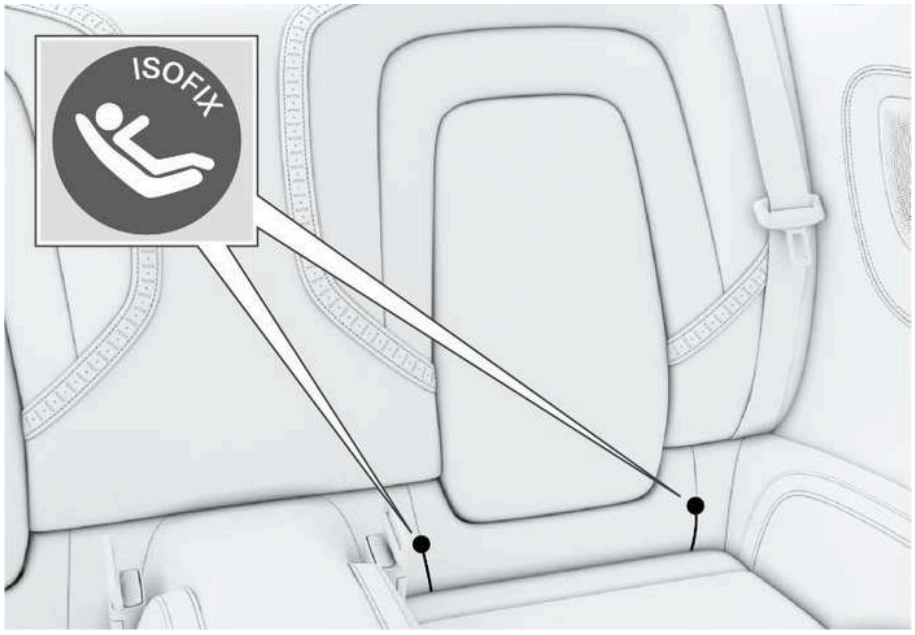
Location of child seat attachment points in the rear seat.

The child seat attachment points in the rear seat are located on the rear section of the front seat floor rails.

ISOFIX/LATCH lower anchors

Lower anchors for ISOFIX/LATCH-equipped child seats are located in the rear seating positions, hidden behind zippers.

Using the ISOFIX/LATCH lower child seat anchors



Location of the ISOFIX/LATCH anchors

Symbols on the zipper pull tabs indicate the ISOFIX/LATCH anchor positions, as shown in the illustration. Always follow your child seat manufacturer's installation instructions, and use both ISOFIX/LATCH lower anchors and top tethers whenever possible.

To access the anchors

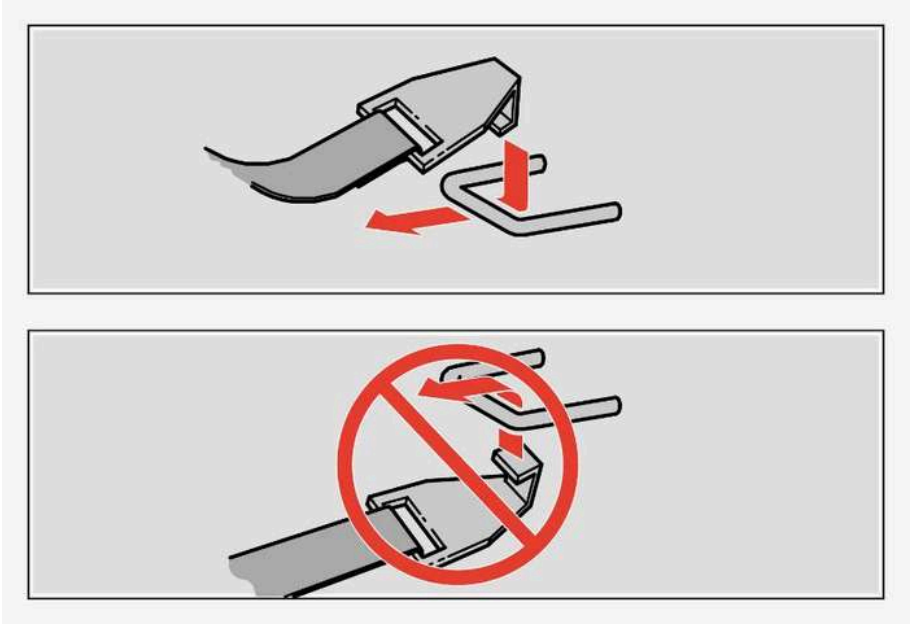
Put the child restraint in position.
Locate the anchors by unzipping the zipper.
Fasten the attachment on the child restraint's lower straps to the ISOFIX/LATCH lower anchors.
Firmly tension the lower child seat straps according to the manufacturer's instructions.

WARNING

Polestar's ISOFIX/LATCH anchors conform to FMVSS/CMVSS standards. Always refer to the child restraint system's manual for weight and size ratings.

NOTE

Always follow your child seat manufacturer's installation instructions, and use both ISOFIX/LATCH lower anchors and top tethers whenever possible.



Fasten the attachment correctly to the ISOFIX/LATCH lower anchors

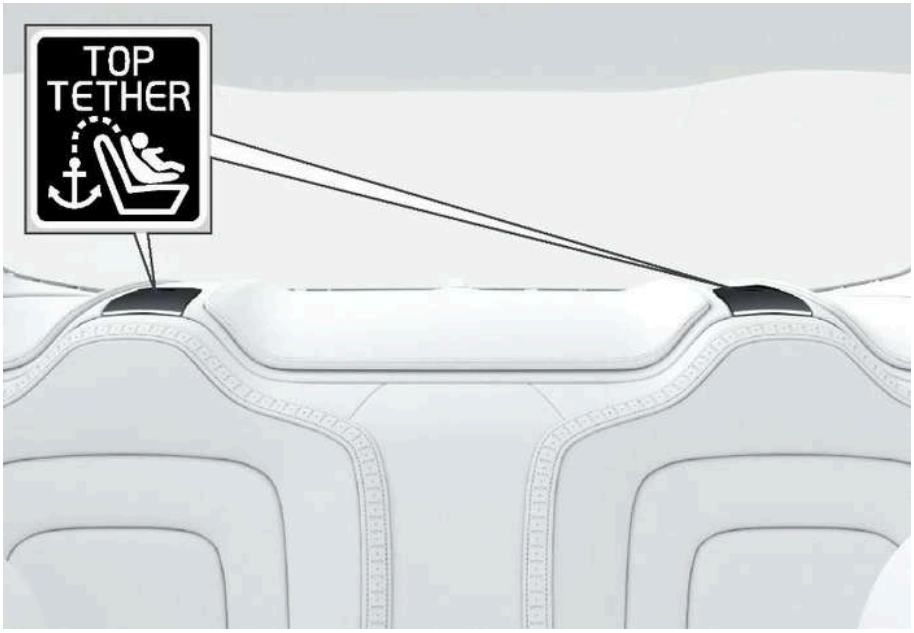
WARNING

Be sure to fasten the attachment correctly to the anchor (see the illustration). If the attachment is not correctly fastened, the child restraint may not be properly secured in the event of a collision.

Top tether anchors

The vehicle is equipped with upper tether anchors for child seats in the rear seat.

Child restraint anchorages



Top tether anchors and symbols on the rear parcel shelf.

Securing a child seat

Place the child restraint on the rear seat.
Route the top tether strap over the head restraint and attach it to the anchor.

Attach the strap for the lower tether anchors in the lower ISOFIX/LATCH attachment points. If the child restraint is not equipped with straps for the lower tether anchors, follow the instructions for attaching a child restraint using the automatic locking seat belt.
Firmly tension all straps.
Refer also to the child seat manufacturer's instructions for information on securing the child seat.

WARNING

- Always refer to the recommendations made by the child restraint manufacturer.
- Polestar recommends that the top tether anchors be used when installing a forward-facing child restraint.
- Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts or harnesses. The anchorages are not able to withstand excessive forces on them in the event of collision if full harness seat belts or adult seat belts are installed to them. An adult who uses a belt anchored in a child restraint anchorage runs a great risk of suffering severe injuries should a collision occur.
- Do not install rear speakers that require the removal of the top tether anchors or interfere with the proper use of the top tether strap.

Child safety

Children should always be seated safely when traveling in the vehicle.

General information

Polestar recommends the proper use of restraint systems for all occupants including children. Remember that, regardless of age and size, a child should always be properly restrained in a vehicle.

Your vehicle is also equipped with ISOFIX/LATCH attachments, which make it more convenient to install child seats.

Some restraint systems for children are designed to be secured in the vehicle by lap belts or the lap portion of a lap-shoulder belt. Such child restraint systems can help protect children in vehicles in the event of an accident only if they are used properly. However, children could be endangered in a crash if the child restraints are not properly secured in the vehicle. Failure to follow the installation instructions for your child restraint can result in your child striking the vehicle's interior in a sudden stop.

Holding a child in your arms is NOT a suitable substitute for a child restraint system. In an accident, a child held in a person's arms can be crushed between the vehicle's interior and an unrestrained person. The child could also be injured by striking the interior, or by being ejected from the vehicle during a sudden maneuver or impact. The same can also happen if the infant or child rides unrestrained on the seat. Other occupants should also be properly restrained to help reduce the chance of injuring or increasing the injury of a child.

All states and provinces have legislation governing how and where children should be carried in a vehicle. Find out the regulations existing in your state or province. Recent accident statistics have shown that children are safer in rear seating positions than front seating positions when properly restrained. A child restraint system can help protect a child in a vehicle. Here's what to look for when selecting a child restraint system:

It should have a label certifying that it meets applicable Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (FMVSS 213) - or in Canada, CMVSS 213.

Make sure the child restraint system is approved for the child's height, weight and development - the label required by the standard or regulation, or instructions for infant restraints, typically provide this information.

In using any child restraint system, we urge you to carefully look over the instructions that are provided with the restraint. Be sure you understand them and can use the device properly and safely in this vehicle. A misused child restraint system can result in increased injuries for both the infant or child and other occupants in the vehicle.

When a child has outgrown the child safety seat, you should use the rear seat with the standard seat belt fastened. The best way to help protect the child here is to place the child on a cushion so that the seat belt is properly located on the hips. Legislation in your state or province may mandate the use of a child seat or cushion in combination with the seat belt, depending on the child's age and/or size. Please check local regulations.



WARNING

- Do not use child safety seats or child booster cushions/backrests in the front passenger's seat. We also recommend that children under 140 cm (4 feet 7 inches) in height who have outgrown these devices sit in the rear seat with the seat belt fastened.
- Keep vehicle doors and trunk locked and keep remote controls out of a child's reach. Unsupervised children could lock themselves in an open trunk and risk injury. Children should be taught not to play in vehicles.
- On hot days, the temperature in the vehicle interior can rise very quickly. Exposure to these high temperatures for even a short period of time can cause heat-related injury or death. Small children are particularly at risk. Never leave children unattended in a vehicle.

WARNING

Only children up to 125 cm (4 feet 1 inch) may ride in the rear seat in a child restraint.

Child seats should always be registered.

Polestar's recommendations

Why does Polestar believe that no child should sit in the front seat of a vehicle? It's quite simple really. A front airbag is a very powerful device designed, by law, to help protect an adult.

Because of the size of the airbag and its speed of inflation, a child should never be placed in the front seat, even if he or she is properly belted or strapped into a child safety seat. Please remember to put your children in the back seat, and buckle them up.

WARNING

A child restraint should never be reused if:

- The vehicle has been involved in a collision, no matter how minor
- Its history is unknown
- It is older than the manufacturer's expiration date

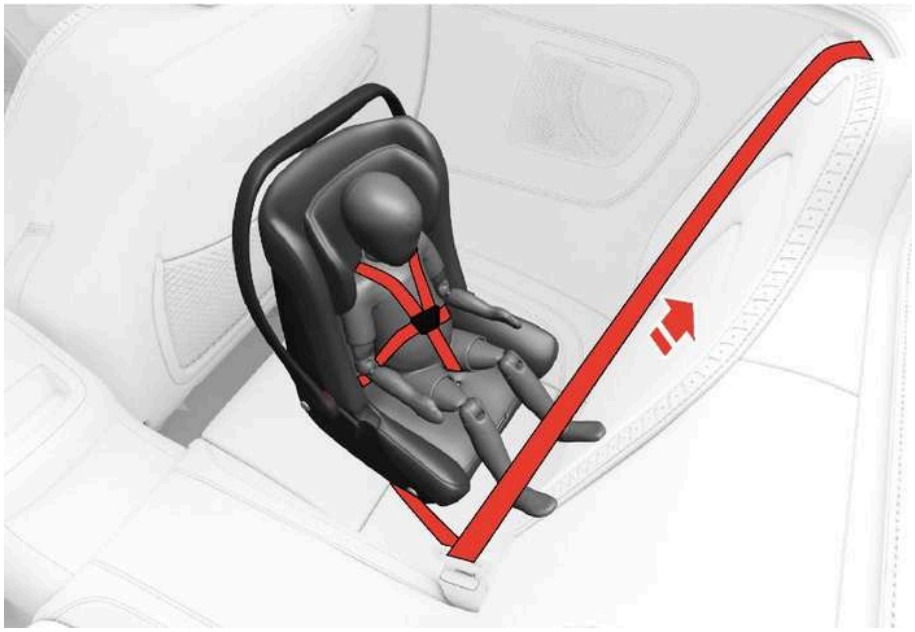
Polestar has some very specific recommendations

- Always wear your seat belt.
- Airbags are a SUPPLEMENTAL safety device which, when used with a three-point seat belt can help reduce serious injuries during certain types of accidents. Polestar recommends that you do not disconnect the airbag system in your vehicle.
- Polestar strongly recommends that everyone in the vehicle be properly restrained.
- Polestar recommends that ALL occupants (adults and children) shorter than 140 cm (4 feet 7 inches) be seated in the rear seat of any vehicle with a front passenger side airbag.
- Drive safely!

Child restraints

Suitable child restraints should always be used when children travel in the vehicle.

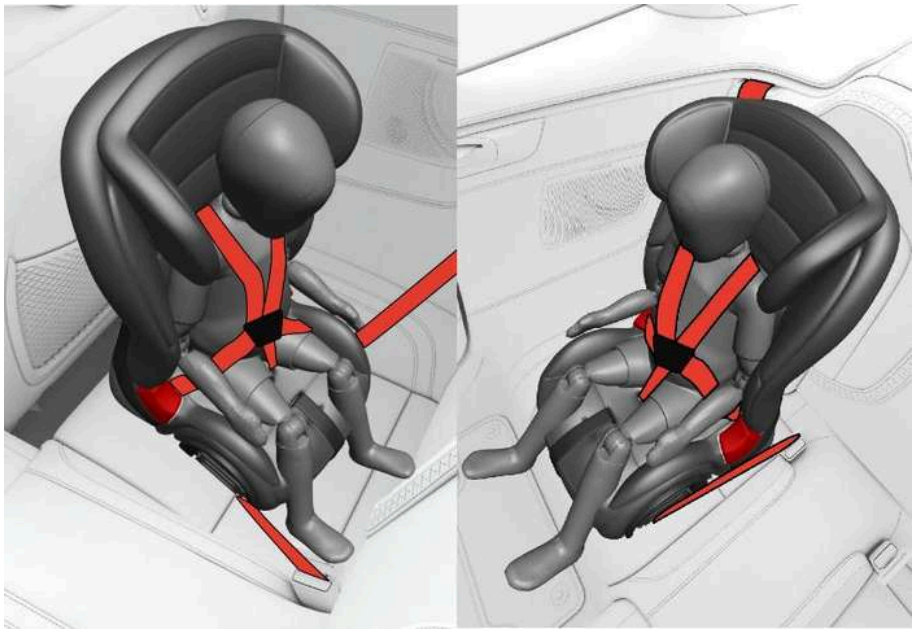
Child restraint systems



Infant seat

There are three main types of child restraint systems: infant seats, convertible seats and booster cushions. They are classified according to the child's age and size.

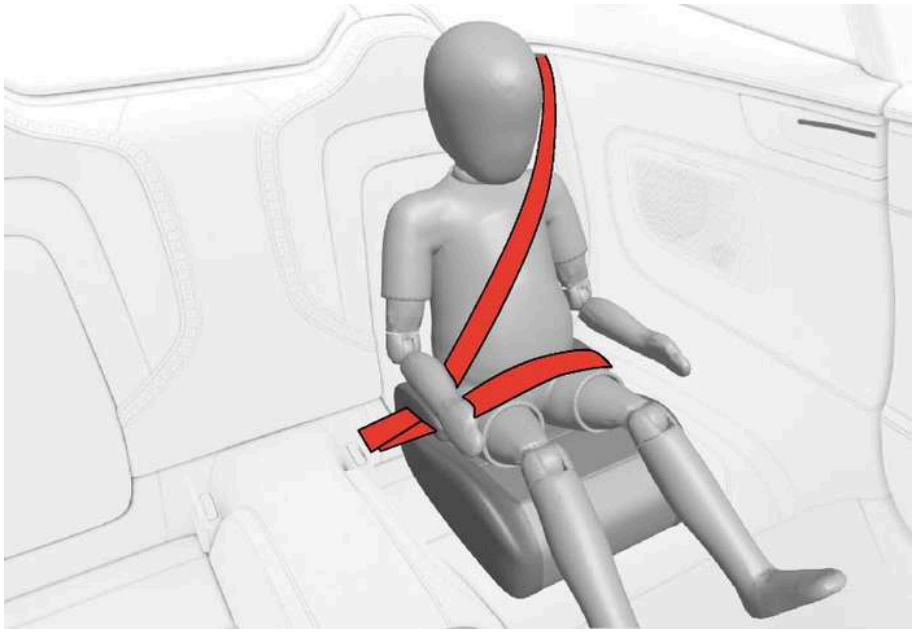
The child restraint should be secured using a three-point seat belt, ISOFIX/LATCH anchors or top tether anchors.



Convertible seat

WARNING

A child seat should never be used in the front passenger seat of any vehicle with a front passenger airbag - not even if the "Passenger airbag off" symbol near the rear-view mirror is illuminated. If the severity of an accident were to cause the airbag to inflate, this could lead to serious injury or death to a child seated in this position.



Booster cushion

WARNING

Always refer to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions for detailed information on securing the restraint.

WARNING

- When not in use, keep the child restraint system secured or remove it from the passenger compartment to help prevent it from injuring passengers in the event of a sudden stop or collision.
- A small child's head represents a considerable part of its total weight and its neck is still very weak. Polestar recommends that children up to age 4 travel, properly restrained, facing rearward. In addition, Polestar recommends that children should ride facing rearward, properly restrained, as long as possible.

NOTE

Prolonged installation and use of child restraints may damage the vehicle's interior.

Automatic Locking Retractor/Emergency Locking Retractor (ALR/ELR)

To make child seat installation easier, each seat belt (except for the driver's belt) is equipped with a locking mechanism to help keep the seat belt taut.

When attaching the seat belt to a child seat:

Attach the seat belt to the child seat according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions.
Pull the seat belt out as far as possible.
Insert the seat belt latch plate into the buckle (lock) in the usual way.
Release the seat belt and pull it taut around the child seat.
A sound from the seat belt retractor will be audible at this time and is normal. The belt will now be locked in place. This function is automatically disabled when the seat belt is unlocked and the belt is fully retracted.

WARNING

Do not use child safety seats or child booster cushions/backrests in the front passenger's seat. We also recommend that children who have outgrown these devices sit in the rear seat with the seat belt properly fastened.

Child restraint registration and recalls

Child restraints could be recalled for safety reasons. You must register your child restraint to be reached in a recall. To stay informed about child safety seat recalls, be sure to fill out and return the registration card that comes with new child restraints.

Child restraint recall information is readily available in both the U.S. and Canada. For recall information in the U.S., call the U.S. Government's Auto Safety Hotline at 1-800-424-9393 or go to http://www-odi.nhtsa.dot.gov/cars/problems/recalls/register/childseat/index.cfm. In Canada, visit Transport Canada's Child Safety website at http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety/childsafety/menu.htm.

Infant seats

Suitable child restraints should always be used when children (depending on their age/size) are seated in the vehicle.

Securing an infant seat with a seat belt



Do not place the infant seat in the front passenger's seat

Place the infant seat in the rear seat of the vehicle.
Attach the seat belt to the infant seat according to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.



Route the seat belt through the infant seat.

WARNING

- An infant seat must be in the rear-facing position only.
- The infant seat should not be positioned behind the driver's seat unless there is adequate space for safe installation.

WARNING

A child seat should never be used in the front passenger seat of any vehicle with a front passenger airbag - not even if the "Passenger airbag off" symbol near the rear-view mirror is illuminated. If the severity of an accident were to cause the airbag to inflate, this could lead to serious injury or death to a child seated in this position.



Fasten the seat belt.

Fasten the seat belt by inserting the latch plate into the buckle (lock) until a distinct click is audible.



Pull out the shoulder section of the seat belt.

Pull the shoulder section of the seat belt out as far as possible to activate the belt's automatic locking function.

NOTE

The locking retractor will automatically release when the seat belt is unbuckled and allowed to retract fully.

Press the infant seat firmly in place, let the seat belt retract and pull it taut. A sound from the seat belt retractor's automatic locking function will be audible at this time and is normal. The seat belt should now be locked in place.



Check that the infant seat is properly secured.

Press and pull the infant seat along the direction of the seat belt to check that it is properly held in place by the seat belt.

WARNING

It should not be possible to move the child restraint more than 2.5 cm (1 in.) in any direction along the seat belt path.



When installing infant seats in the rear seat, Polestar recommends maintaining a distance of at least 50 mm (2 inches) from the front-most part of the infant seat to the rearmost part of the seat in front.

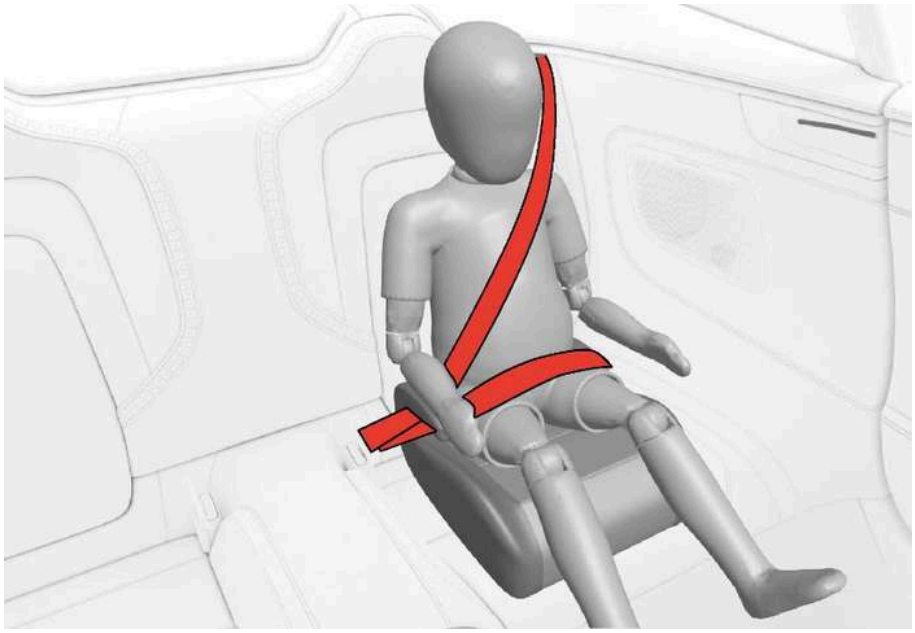
The infant seat can be removed by unbuckling the seat belt and letting it retract completely.

Booster cushions

Suitable child restraints should always be used when children (depending on their age/size) are seated in the vehicle.

Securing a booster cushion

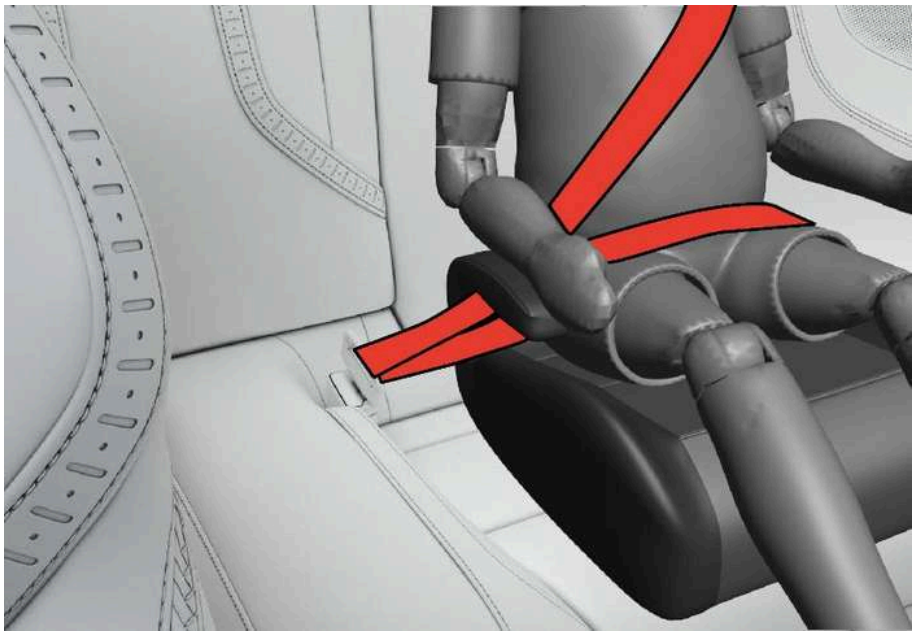
> **WARNING**
> Only children up to 125 cm (4 feet 1 inch) may ride in the rear seat in a child restraint.



Position the child correctly on the booster cushion.

Booster cushions are recommended for children who have outgrown convertible seats.

Place the booster cushion in the rear seat of the vehicle.
With the child properly seated on the booster cushion, attach the seat belt to or around the cushion according to the manufacturer's instructions.
Fasten the seat belt by inserting the latch plate into the buckle (lock) until a distinct click is audible.



Positioning the seat belt.

Ensure that the seat belt is pulled taut and fits snugly around the child.

WARNING

- The hip section of the three-point seat belt must fit snugly across the child's hips, not across the stomach.
- The shoulder section of the three-point seat belt should be positioned across the chest and shoulder.
- The shoulder belt must never be placed behind the child's back or under the arm.

Convertible seats

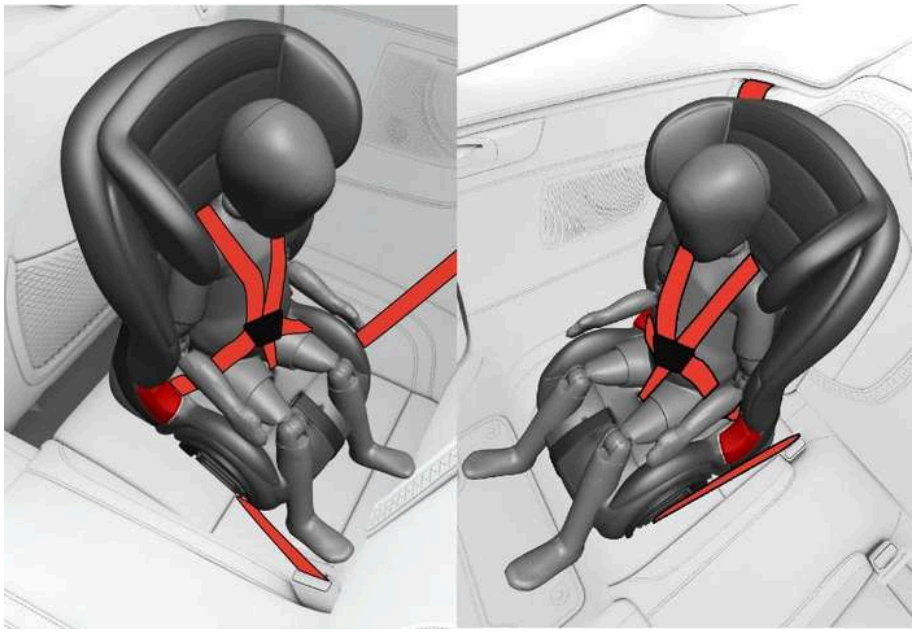
Suitable child restraints should always be used when children (depending on their age/size) are seated in the vehicle.

Securing a convertible seat with a seat belt



Do not place the convertible seat in the front passenger's seat.

Convertible seats can be used in either a forward or rearward-facing position, depending on the age and size of the child.



Route the seat belt through the convertible seat.

WARNING

Always use a convertible seat that is suitable for the child's age and size. See the convertible seat manufacturer's recommendations.

Place the convertible seat in the rear seat of the vehicle.

WARNING

- A small child's head represents a considerable part of its total weight and its neck is still very weak. Polestar recommends that children up to age 4 travel, properly restrained, facing rearward. In addition, Polestar recommends that children should ride facing rearward, properly restrained, as long as possible.
- Convertible child seats should be installed in the rear seat only.
- A rear-facing convertible seat should not be positioned behind the driver's seat unless there is adequate space for safe installation.

Attach the seat belt to the convertible seat according to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.



Fasten the seat belt.

Fasten the seat belt by inserting the latch plate into the buckle (lock) until a distinct click is audible.
Pull the shoulder section of the seat belt out as far as possible to activate the belt's automatic locking function.

> **NOTE**
> The locking retractor will automatically release when the seat belt is unbuckled and allowed to retract fully.

Press the convertible seat firmly in place, let the seat belt retract and pull it taut. A sound from the seat belt retractor's automatic locking function will be audible at this time and is normal. The seat belt should now be locked in place.



Pull out the shoulder section of the seat belt.

Push and pull the convertible seat along the seat belt path to ensure that it is held securely in place by the seat belt.

> **WARNING**
> It should not be possible to move the child restraint more than 2.5 cm (1 in.) in any direction along the seat belt path.

The convertible seat can be removed by unbuckling the seat belt and letting it retract completely.



Ensure that the convertible seat is securely in place.

WARNING

A child seat should never be used in the front passenger seat of any vehicle with a front passenger airbag - not even if the "Passenger airbag off" symbol near the rear-view mirror is illuminated. If the severity of an accident were to cause the airbag to inflate, this could lead to serious injury or death to a child seated in this position.

Occupant weight sensor

See Occupant weight sensor.

Safety mode

Safety mode

Safety mode is a feature that is triggered after a collision if there is potential damage to an important function in the vehicle, such as the fuel lines, sensors for one of the safety systems, the brake system, etc.
If the vehicle has been involved in a collision, the text Safety modeSee Manual may appear in the instrument panel along with the warning symbol if the panel is undamaged and the vehicle's electrical system is intact. The message indicates that one or more of the vehicle's functions may be reduced.

WARNING

Never attempt to restart the vehicle if you smell fuel fumes when the message Safety modeSee Manual is displayed in the instrument panel. Leave the vehicle immediately.

If safety mode has been set, it may be possible to reset the system in order to start and move the vehicle a short distance, for example, if it is blocking traffic.

WARNING

Never attempt to perform repairs or reset electrical components on your own after the vehicle has been in safety mode. This could result in injury or prevent the vehicle from functioning properly. Contact Polestar Customer Support for assistance checking and restoring the vehicle to normal status after Safety modeSee Manual is displayed.

WARNING

When the vehicle is in safety mode, it should not be towed behind another vehicle. It should be towed from the site on a tow truck. Contact Polestar Customer Support.

Starting and moving the vehicle when it is in safety mode

If safety mode has been set, it may be possible to reset the system in order to start and move the vehicle a short distance, for example, if it is blocking traffic.

Starting the vehicle when it is in safety mode

Check the vehicle for damage, particularly for fuel leakage. Make sure you do not detect any gasoline fumes.

If the damage to the vehicle is minor and there is no fuel leakage/fumes, you may attempt to start the engine.

WARNING

Never attempt to restart the vehicle if you smell fuel fumes when the message Safety modeSee Manual is displayed in the instrument panel. Leave the vehicle immediately.

Switch off the ignition.
Then try to start the vehicle.
The vehicle's electrical system will perform a system check and then attempt to reset to normal operating mode. The message Vehicle startSystem check, wait will be displayed on the instrument panel during the check. This may take up to a minute.
When Vehicle startSystem check, wait is no longer displayed in the instrument panel, try again to start the vehicle.

IMPORTANT

If the message Safety modeSee Manual is still displayed, the vehicle should not be driven or towed behind another vehicle. If the vehicle needs to be moved, it must be towed on a tow truck. Even if no damage is apparent, there may be hidden damage that could make the vehicle impossible to control.

Moving the vehicle when it is in safety mode

If the message Normal modeThe car is now in normal mode is displayed after attempting to start the engine, the vehicle may be moved carefully from its present position if, for example, it is blocking traffic.
Do not move the vehicle farther than absolutely necessary.

WARNING

When the vehicle is in safety mode, it should not be towed behind another vehicle. It should be towed from the site on a tow truck. Contact Polestar Customer Support.

Safety

The vehicle is equipped with a number of safety systems that work together to help protect the vehicle's driver and passengers in the event of an accident.
The vehicle is equipped with a number of sensors that may react in the event of an accident and activate different safety systems, such as the airbag system and seat belt tensioners. Depending on the specific conditions of the accident, e.g. collisions at certain angles, overturning or swerving, the systems react differently to help provide good protection.

There are also mechanical safety systems such as the Whiplash Protection System. The vehicle is also built so that a large part of the force of a collision is distributed to the vehicle's members, pillars, floor, roof and other parts of the body.

After an accident, the vehicle's safety mode may be activated if any important function in the vehicle has been damaged.

Warning symbol in the instrument panel



The warning symbol in the instrument panel illuminates when the vehicle's electrical system is in ignition mode **II**. The symbol will go out after approx. 6 seconds if no faults are detected in the vehicle's safety systems.

WARNING

If the warning symbol remains illuminated or switches on while driving and the message SRS airbagService urgent Drive to workshop is displayed in the instrument panel, this indicates that something in the safety system is not functioning properly. Contact Polestar Customer Support.

WARNING

Never attempt to alter or repair any of the vehicle's safety systems yourself. Incorrectly performed repairs to any system could impair function and lead to serious injury. Contact Polestar Customer Support.



If this dedicated warning symbol is not functioning, the general warning symbol will illuminate instead and the same message will be displayed in the instrument panel.

Recall information

To determine if there are any open recalls associated with the vehicle, please contact Polestar Customer Support and provide the vehicle identification number (VIN), which can be found at the base of the windshield.

In the US, you can also enter the Vehicle Identification Number in the search field on the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration's (NHTSA) website at: www.nhtsa.gov.

In Canada, you can also search in the recall database on Transport Canada's website at: www.tc.gc.ca.

Occupant safety

All Polestar vehicles are designed to offer an unparalleled driving experience. Part of this experience is safety, and this is planned with the same attention to detail as all other aspects of the vehicle.

We have developed a number of safety features, and have incorporated many of the effective safety features from Volvo (such as the approaches and systems included in IntelliSafe) to ensure that all Polestar occupants travel in the safest environment possible.

Please don't hesitate to contact Polestar Customer Support if you have any safety-related questions.

Occupant safety reminders

How safely you drive doesn't depend on how old you are but rather on:

- How well you see.
- Your ability to concentrate.
- How quickly you make decisions under stress to avoid an accident.

The following suggestions are intended to help you cope with the ever changing traffic environment.

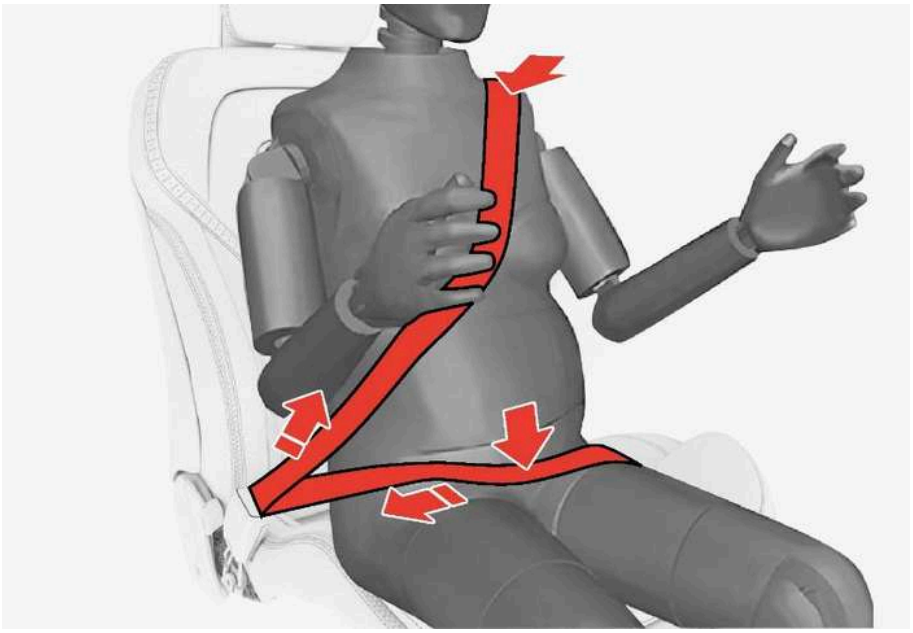
- Never drink and drive.
- If you are taking any medication, consult your physician about its potential effects on your driving abilities.
- Take a driver-retraining course.

- Have your eyes checked regularly.
- Keep your windshield and headlights clean.
- Replace wiper blades when they start to leave streaks.
- Take into account the traffic, road, and weather conditions, particularly with regard to stopping distance.
- Never text while driving.
- Refrain from using or minimize the use of a cell phone while driving.

Safety during pregnancy

It is important that seat belts are worn correctly during pregnancy and that pregnant drivers adjust their seating position accordingly.

Seat belt



The seat belt should fit closely against the shoulder, with the diagonal section between the breasts and to the side of the stomach.

The lap section of the seat belt should lie flat over the thighs and as far as possible under the stomach. Never let it ride upward. Remove unnecessary slack and make sure the seat belt fits as close as possible to the body. Make sure there are no twists in the seat belt.

Seating position

As pregnancy progresses, pregnant drivers should adjust the seat and steering wheel to a position that allows them to retain full control of the vehicle (which means they should be able to easily reach the steering wheel and foot pedals). Try to maintain as much distance as possible between the stomach and the steering wheel.

Reporting safety defects

The following information will help you report any perceived safety-related defects in your vehicle.

Reporting safety defects in the U.S.

If you think your vehicle has a defect that could cause an accident, injury or fatality, immediately notify the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) and Polestar Automotive USA Inc. If the NHTSA receives similar

complaints, an investigation may be opened and if any safety defects are found to exist in a group of vehicles, the NHTSA may order a recall and rectification campaign. However, the NHTSA cannot become involved in individual issues between you, the retailer or Polestar Automotive USA Inc. You can contact the NHTSA by either calling the toll-free number for vehicle safety:

1-888-327-4236

(TTY: 1-800-424-9153) or write to: NHTSA, U.S. Department of Transportation, Washington D.C. 20590.

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov, where you can also enter your vehicle's VIN (Vehicle Identification Number) to see if it has any open recalls.

Polestar strongly recommends that if your vehicle is included in a service campaign, safety or emission recall or similar action, it should be completed as soon as possible. Please check with your local retailer or Polestar Automotive USA, Inc. to see if your vehicle is included in these actions.

NHTSA can be reached at:

Internet:

http://www.nhtsa.gov

Telephone:

1-888-DASH-2-DOT (1-888-327-4236).

Reporting safety defects in Canada

If you think your vehicle has a defect that could cause an accident, injury or fatality, immediately notify Transport Canada and Polestar Automotive Canada Inc.

Transport Canada can be contacted at:

1-800-333-0510

Teletypewriter (TTY): 613 990-4500

Fax: 1-819-994-3372

Mailing Address: Transport Canada - Road Safety, 80 rue Noël, Gatineau, (Quebec) J8Z 0A1

Whiplash Protection System

The Whiplash Protection System (WHIPS) is designed to help reduce the risk of whiplash-type injuries. The system consists of energy absorbing backrests and seat cushions as well as specially designed head restraints in the front seats.
WHIPS is activated in the event of a rear-end collision and adapted to the angle and speed of the collision and to the characteristics of the colliding vehicle.

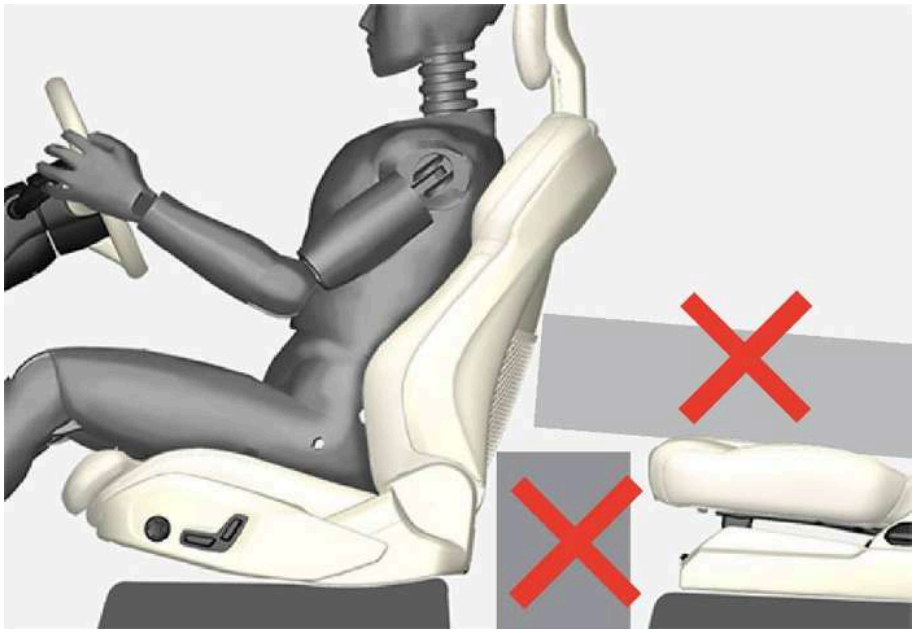
When WHIPS is activated, the front seat backrests move rearward and the seat cushions move downward to change the seating positions of the driver and front seat passenger. This movement helps absorb some of the forces that could result in whiplash.

> **WARNING**
> WHIPS is a supplement to the seat belt. Always wear your seat belt.

WARNING

Do not attempt to alter or repair the seat or WHIPS on your own. Contact Polestar Customer Support.

If the front seats have been subjected to severe stress, e.g. in a collision, the seats must be replaced. Even if the seats appear undamaged, some of their protective properties may have been lost.



Do not place any objects on the floor behind or under the front seats or on the rear seat that could prevent WHIPS from functioning correctly.

WARNING

Do not squeeze box-like cargo between the rear seat cushion and the front seat backrest.

WARNING

If a rear-facing child restraint is used in the rear seat, the seat in front of it must be moved forward so that it does not come in contact with the child restraint.

Seating position

For WHIPS to provide good protection, the driver and passenger must be seated correctly and the system's function must not be impeded in any way.

Set the front seat to the correct seating position before starting to drive.

The driver and the front seat passenger should sit in the center of the seat with their heads as close as possible to the head restraints.

Displays and voice control

This section contains information about the vehicle's instruments and controls, the instrument panel (with gauges, indicator and warning symbols, etc.), the center display (handling, navigating, symbols, etc.), and voice control and how to use it.

Instrument panel

Gauges and instruments in the instrument panel

Fuel gauge

The fuel gauge in the instrument panel shows the fuel level in the tank.

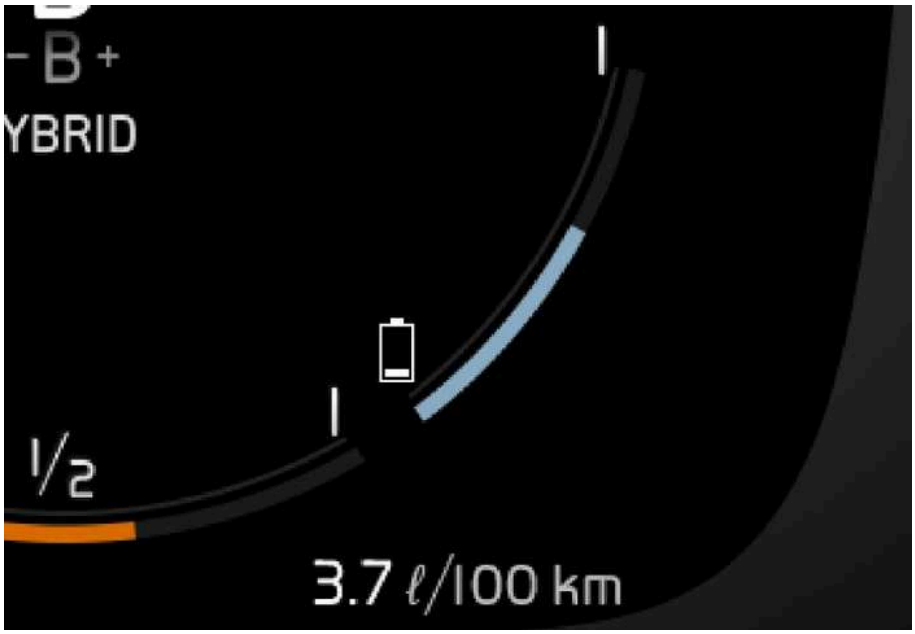


The beige area in the fuel gauge indicates the amount of fuel left in the tank.

When the fuel level is low and it is time to refuel, the fuel pump symbol will illuminate with an amber-colored light. The trip computer also indicates the approximate distance driven on the fuel remaining in the tank.

Hybrid battery gauge

The hybrid battery gauge shows how much current is left in the hybrid battery.



The current in the hybrid battery is used to power the electric motors, but can also be used to heat or cool the vehicle. The trip computer calculates an approximate driving distance with the remaining current in the hybrid battery.

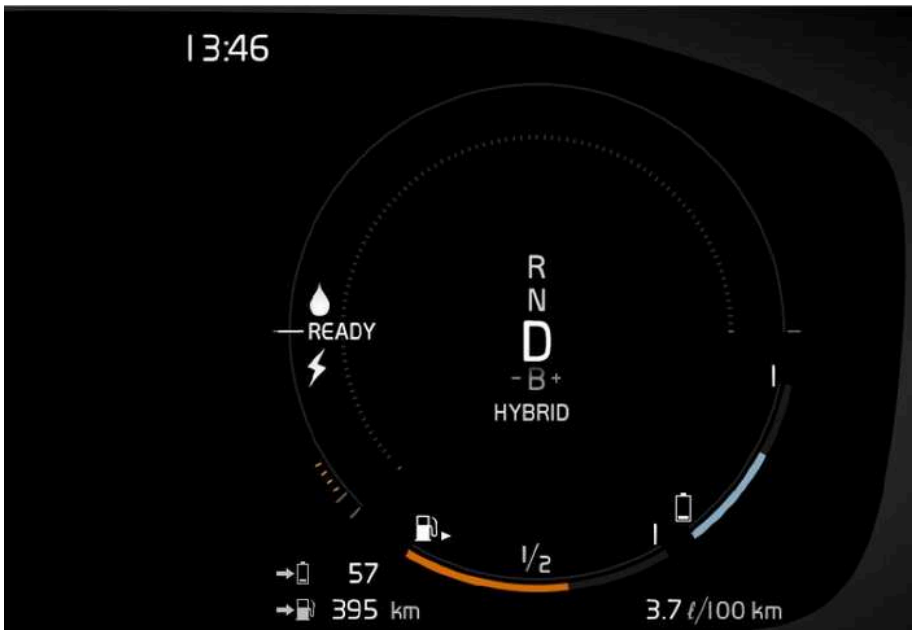
Symbols in the hybrid battery gauge



The symbol in the hybrid battery gauge indicates that the Hold function is activated. The symbol indicates that the Charge function is activated.

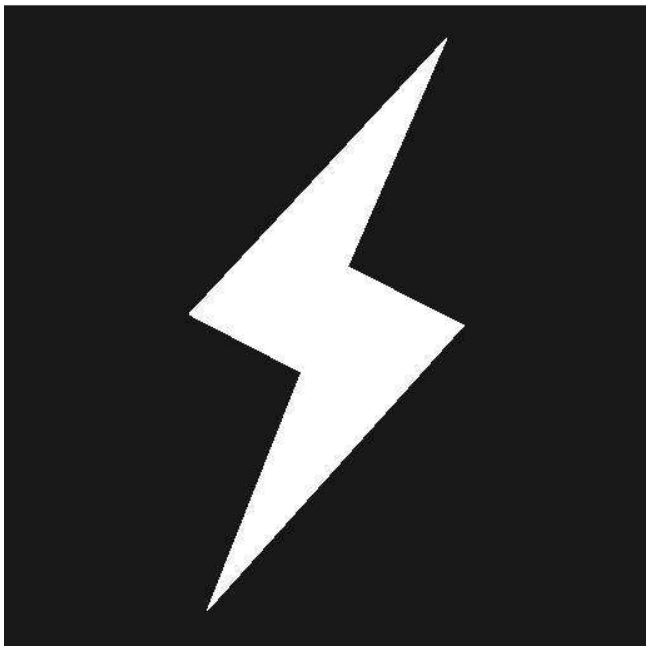
Hybrid gauge

In Hybrid drive mode, the instrument panel will display a hybrid gauge, which can help the driver achieve more efficient driving economy.

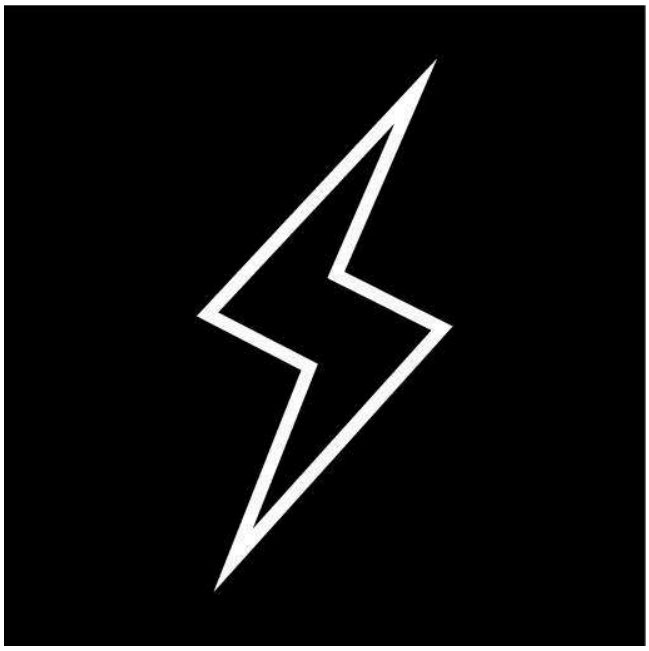


The hybrid gauge shows the ratio between the electric motors' current power consumption and the remaining available power. This information is shown in various ways.

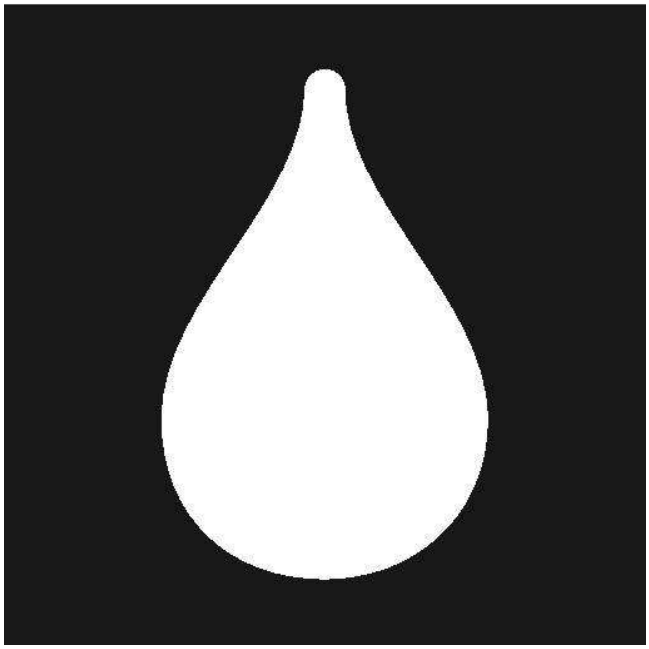
Symbols in the hybrid gauge



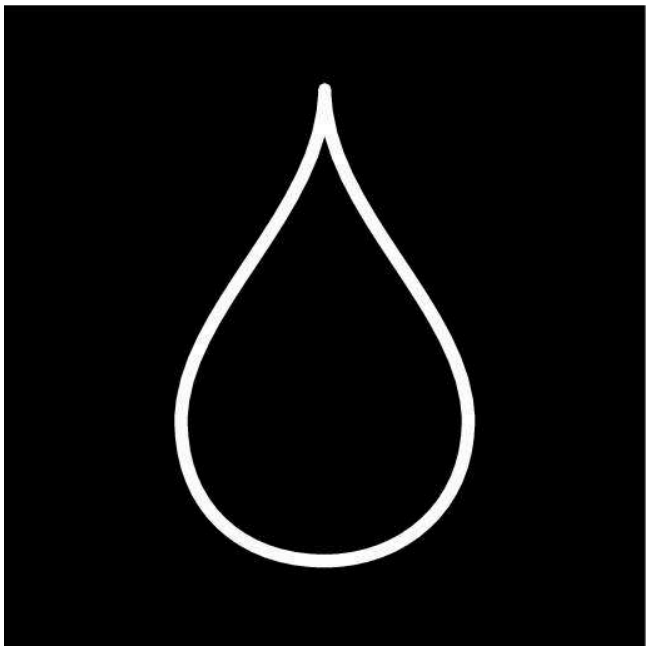
Indicates the current available power from the electric motor. A solid symbol indicates that the electric motors are being used.



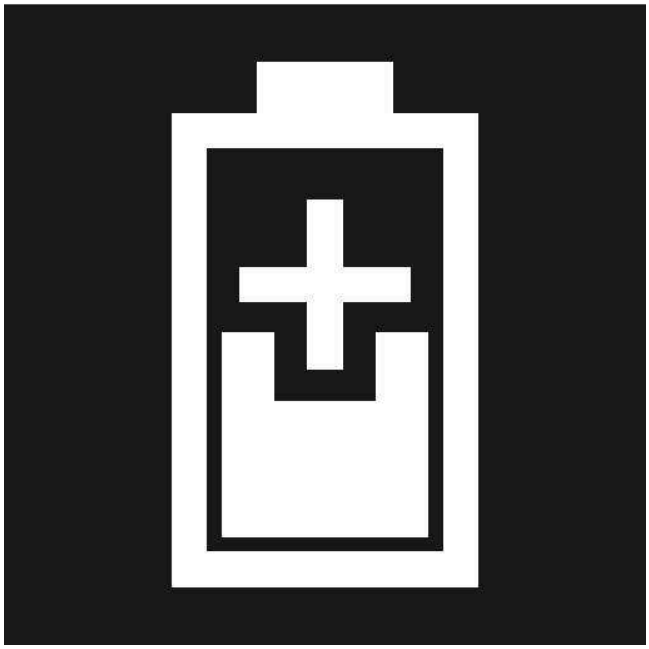
An outlined symbol indicates that the electric motors are not being used.



Indicates the power level when the internal combustion engine starts. A solid symbol indicates that the internal combustion engine is being used.



Indicates the power level when the internal combustion engine will start. A hollow symbol indicates that the internal combustion engine is not being used.

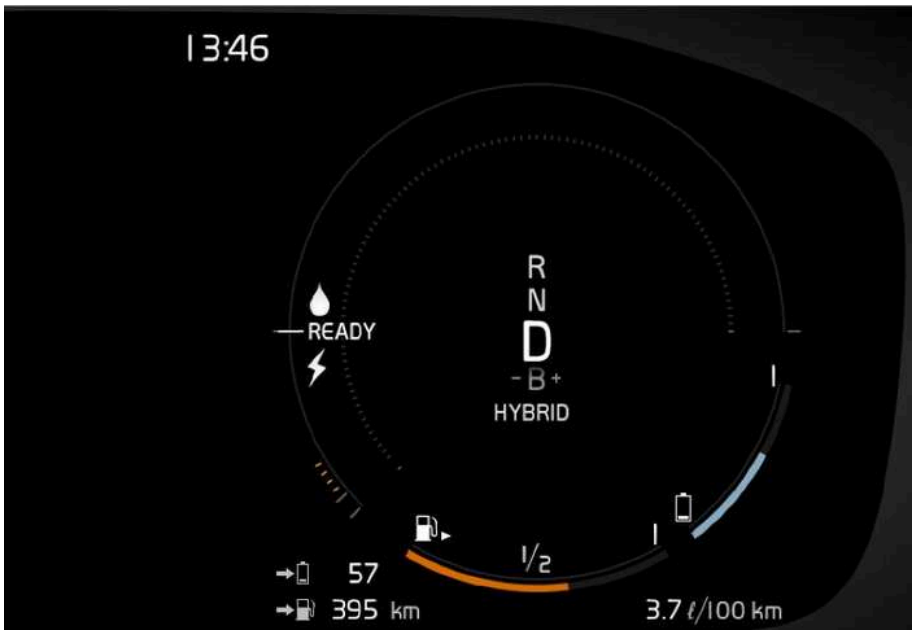


Indicates that the hybrid battery is being charged, e.g. by lightly pressing the brake pedal.

Driver-requested power

The hybrid gauge displays the amount of power requested (utilized) by the driver through pressure on the accelerator pedal. The higher the reading on the scale, the more power utilized in the current gear. The mark between the lightning symbol and the drop symbol indicates the point at which the combustion engine will start.

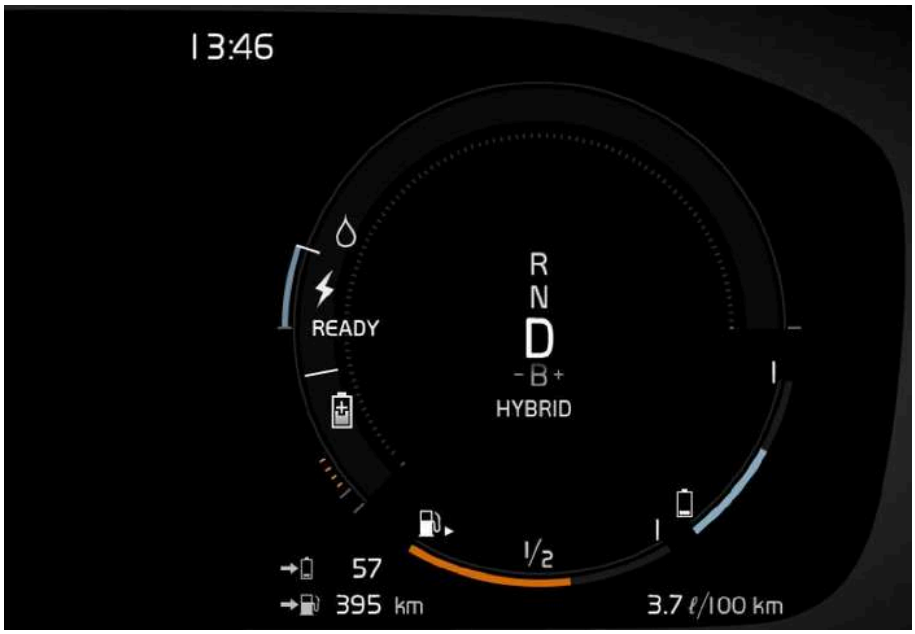
For example:



The vehicle has been started, but is stationary and no power is being requested.



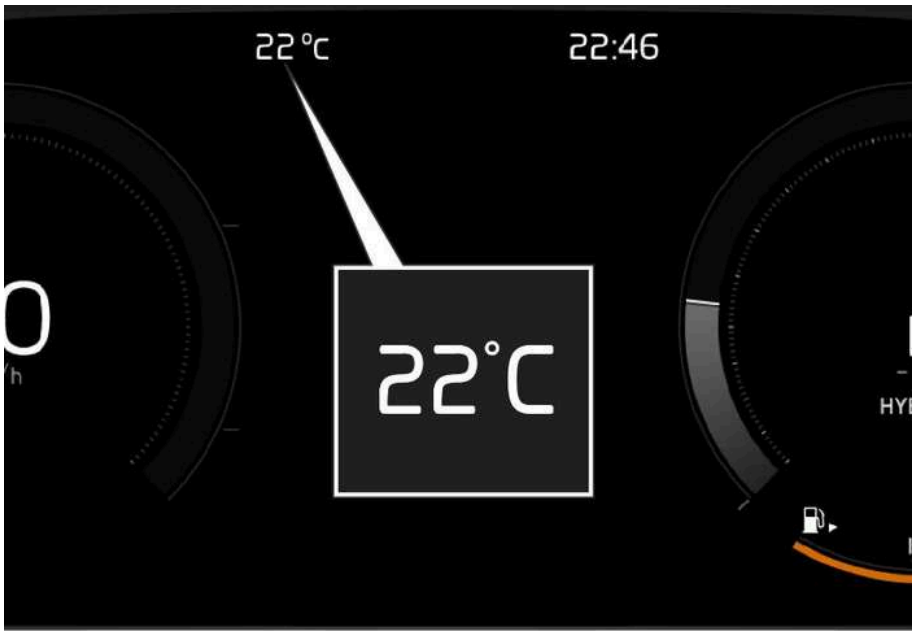
The electric motor cannot supply the requested power and the internal combustion engine will start.



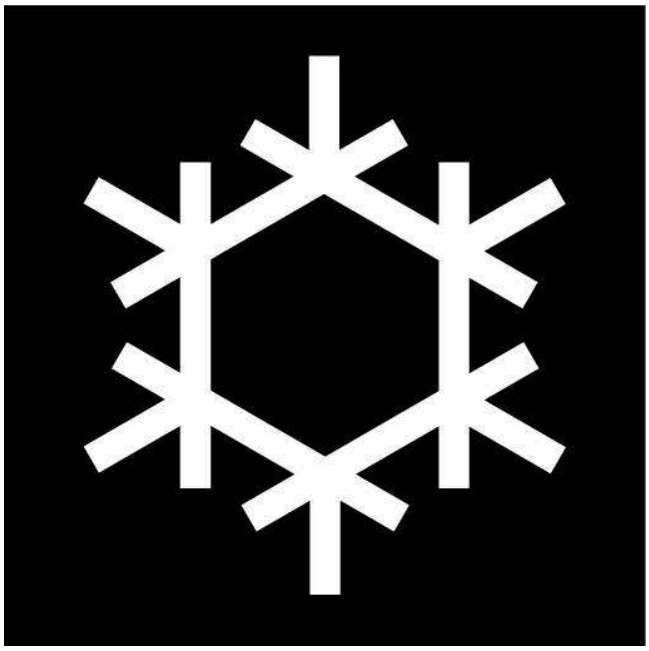
The vehicle is generating current to recharge the battery, e.g. during light braking or engine braking on a downslope.

Ambient temperature sensor

The ambient temperature is shown in the instrument panel.
The sensor detects the temperature outside the vehicle.



If the vehicle has been stationary, the sensor reading may be higher than the actual temperature.



When the ambient temperature is between –5 °C and +2 °C (23 °F and 36 °F), a snowflake symbol will illuminate to alert the driver of the risk of slippery conditions.

The symbol is also temporarily lit in the head-up display if the vehicle is equipped with one.

Change the measurement standard for the temperature sensor etc. via system settings in the center display's Top view.

Trip computer

Trip computer

The vehicle's trip computer registers data while driving such as mileage, fuel consumption and average speed.
To help promote fuel-efficient driving, data is recorded on both current and average fuel consumption. Data from the trip computer can be displayed in the instrument panel.



Example of trip computer information in the instrument panel.

The trip computer includes the following gauges:

- Trip odometer
- Odometer
- Current fuel consumption
- Distance to empty tank
- Distance to discharged battery
- Tourist - alternative speedometer

Unit standards for distance, speed, etc. can be changed via system settings in the center display.

Trip odometer

There are two trip odometers: TM and TA.

TM can be reset manually and TA is reset automatically if the vehicle is not used for four hours.

During a drive, the trip odometer registers data on:

- Mileage
- Driving time
- Average speed
- Average fuel consumption

The readings since the trip odometer's last reset are displayed.

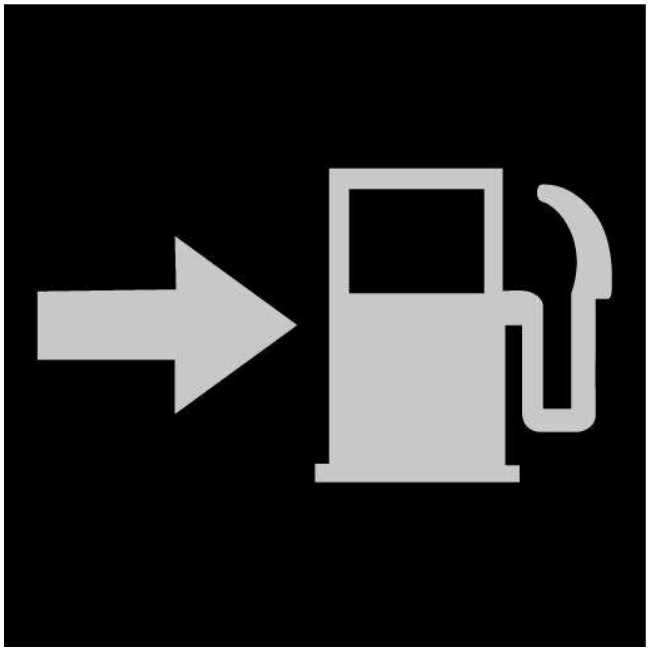
Odometer

The odometer records the vehicle's total mileage. This reading cannot be reset.

Current fuel consumption

This gauge shows the vehicle's fuel consumption at that moment. The reading is updated about once a second.

Distance to empty tank



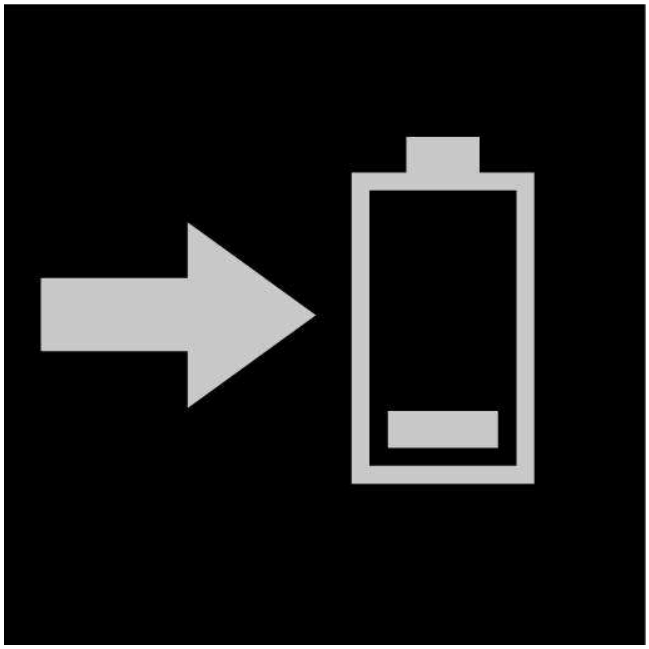
The trip computer calculates the distance that can be driven on the fuel remaining in the tank.

This calculation is based on average fuel consumption during the last 30 km (20 miles) and the amount of fuel remaining in the tank.

When the gauge displays "----", there is not enough fuel remaining to calculate the remaining mileage. Refuel as soon as possible.

An economical driving style will generally increase how far you can drive on a certain amount of fuel.

Distance to discharged battery



This gauge shows the approximate distance that can be driven with the remaining current in the hybrid battery.

This calculation is based on average consumption with a normally loaded vehicle in normal driving conditions, and takes into account whether the air conditioning is on or off.

When the gauge displays "----", there is little charge remaining in the battery and electric motor range cannot be reliably calculated.

> **NOTE**
> The information will change based on your driving style.

An economical driving style will generally increase how far you can drive on a certain amount of fuel.

Starting values for fully charged hybrid battery

Because it is difficult to predict driving style and other factors that affect the range of electric motors, Polestar uses a starting value when the vehicle is fully charged. This starting value provides an "up to" amount instead of a prediction on the range of the electric current in the motor.

Mileage when using electric motor

To achieve the longest possible mileage when using the electric motor, the driver of an electric vehicle also needs to think about conserving electricity. The more electricity consumers (stereo, heated windows/mirrors/seats, very cold air from climate control system, etc.) that are active, the shorter the potential mileage.

> **NOTE**
> In addition to high electrical consumption in the passenger compartment, rapid acceleration, sudden braking, high speeds, heavy loads, low ambient temperatures and driving up hills can reduce possible driving distance.

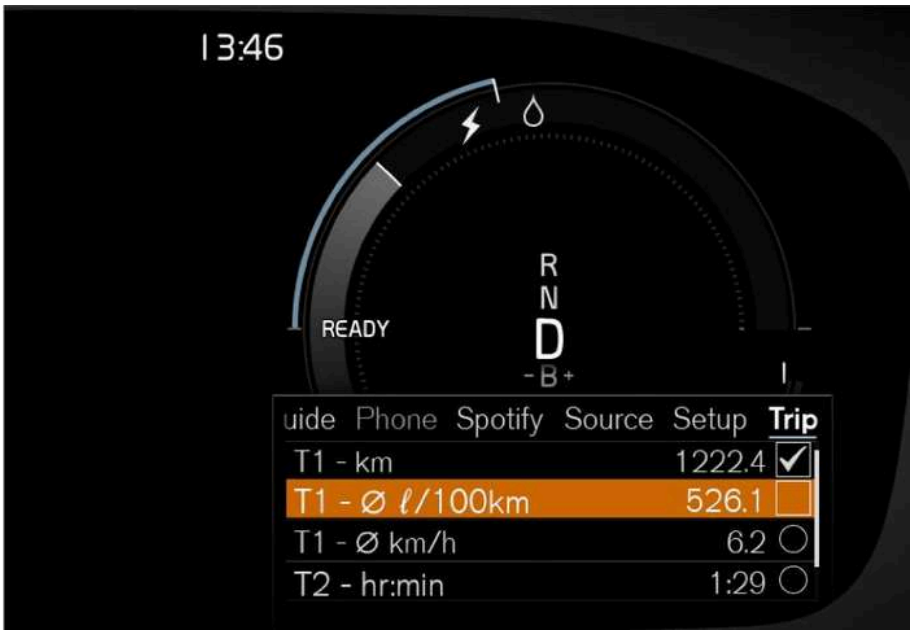
Tourist - alternative speedometer

The alternative digital speedometer makes it easier to drive in countries where speed limit signs are shown in a different measurement unit than the one shown in the vehicle's gauges.

When used, the digital speed is displayed in the opposite unit to that shown in the analog speedometer. If mph is used in the analog speedometer, the equivalent speed in km/h will be shown in the digital speedometer.

Displaying trip data in the instrument panel

Data recorded and calculated by the trip computer can be displayed on the instrument panel.
This data is stored in a trip computer app. You can choose which information the instrument panel will display in the app menu.



Open and navigate in the app menu using the right-hand steering wheel keypad.

1. App menu
2. Left/right
3. Up/down
4. Confirm

Open the app menu in the instrument panel by pressing (1).

(The App menu cannot be opened while there is an unacknowledged message in the instrument panel. The message must be acknowledged by pressing the O button (4) before the App menu can be opened).

Navigate to the trip computer app by moving left or right using (2).

The top four menu rows show measured values for trip odometer TM. The next four menu rows show measured values for trip odometer TA. Scroll up or down in the list using (3).
Scroll down to the option buttons to choose which information to show in the instrument panel:

- Odometer
- Distance to empty tank
- Distance to discharged battery
- Tourist (alternative speedometer)
- Mileage for trip odometer TM, TA or no display of mileage
- Current fuel consumption, average fuel consumption for TM or TA, or no display of fuel consumption

Select or clear a selection using the O button (4). The change will apply immediately.

Resetting the trip odometer

Resetting the trip odometer using the left-side steering wheel lever.



Reset all information in trip odometer TM (i.e. mileage, average fuel consumption, average speed and driving time) by pressing and holding the RESET button on the left-hand steering wheel lever.

Tapping the RESET button only resets the distance driven.

The TA trip odometer can not be manually reset. It resets automatically if the vehicle is not used for four hours or more.

Displaying trip statistics in the center display

Trip computer statistics can be displayed graphically in the center display, providing an overview that facilitates more fuel-efficient driving.

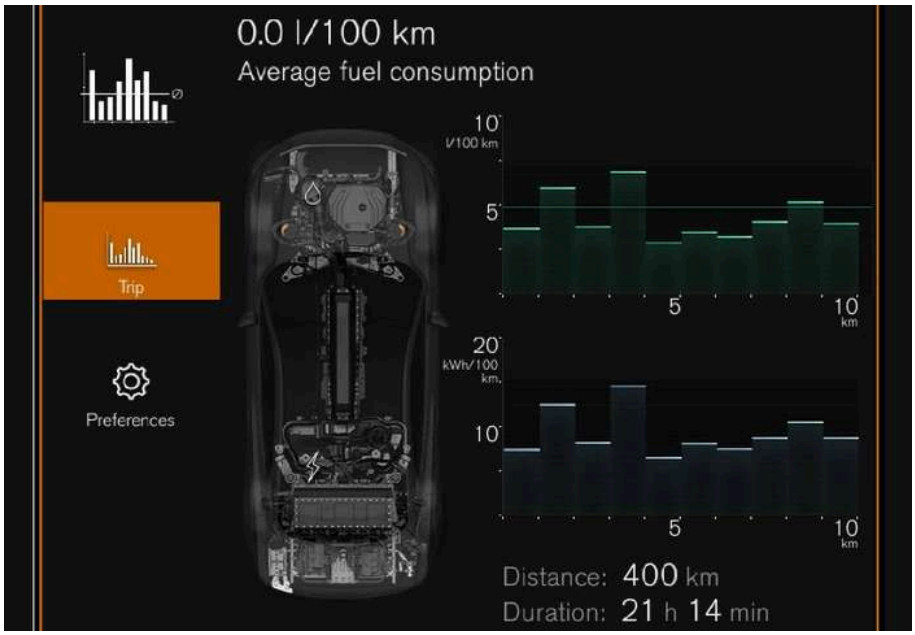


Open the Driver performance app in the App view to display trip statistics.

Each bar in the graph represents a driving distance of 1 kilometers, 10 kilometers or 100 kilometers (or miles). The bars are added from the right as you drive. The bar at the far right shows the data for the current trip.

Average fuel consumption and total driving time are calculated from the most recent reset of the trip statistics.

Fuel and electricity consumption are shown in separate graphs. The electricity consumption shows "net" consumption, i.e. consumed current minus regenerated current generated by braking.



Trip computer statistics.

Trip statistics settings

Trip statistics settings can be reset or adjusted.
Open the Driver performance app in the App view to display trip statistics.



Tap Preferences to

- change the graph scale. Select 1, 10 or 100 km/miles for the bar.
- reset data after each trip. Performed when the vehicle remains stationary for more than 4 hours.
- reset data for current trip.

Trip statistics, calculated average consumption, and total driving time are always reset simultaneously.
Unit standards for distance, speed, etc. can be changed via system settings in the center display.

Instrument panel

The instrument panel displays information related to the vehicle and driving.
The instrument panel contains gauges, indicators and monitoring and warning symbols. What is shown in the instrument panel varies depending on the equipment, settings and functions currently active.

The instrument panel is activated as soon as a door is opened, i.e. in ignition mode 0. The panel will power down after a short period of time if it is not used. To reactivate it, do one of the following:

- Activate ignition mode I.
- Open one of the doors.

WARNING

If the instrument panel turns off, does not illuminate on activation/start, or part/all of the panel cannot be read, do not drive the vehicle. Contact Polestar Customer Support.

WARNING

If the instrument panel is not functioning properly, information about brakes, airbags or other safety-related systems may not be displayed. The driver will then not be able to check the status of the vehicle systems or receive relevant warnings and information.



Location in the instrument panel:

Left side	In the center	Right side
Speedometer	Indicator and warning symbols	Tachometer/Hybrid gauge1
Trip odometer	Ambient temperature sensor	Gear indicator
Odometer2	Clock	Drive Mode

Left side	In the center	Right side
Cruise control/speed limiter information	Message (also graphics in some cases)	Fuel gauge
Road sign information	Door and seat belt status	Hybrid battery gauge
–	Hybrid battery's charge level	Distance to empty tank
–	Media player	Distance to discharged battery
–	Navigation system map	Current fuel consumption
–	Phone	App menu (activated using steering wheel keypad)
–	Voice control	–

1 Depends on selected drive mode.

2 Total distance.

Instrument panel settings

Display settings for the instrument panel can be set via the instrument panel's App menu and via the center display's Settings menu.

Settings via instrument panel's app menu



The app menu will open and can be controlled using the right-side steering wheel keypad.

The app menu can be used to set what information will be displayed in the instrument panel

- trip computer
- media player
- phone
- navigation system.

Settings via center display

Selecting type of information

Tap Settings in the center display's Top view.
Tap My Car → Displays → Driver Display Information.
Select a background:

- Show no information in the background
- Show information for current playing media
- Show navigation even if no route is set

Select theme

Tap Settings in the center display's Top view.
Tap My Car → Displays → Display Themes
Select a theme (appearance) for the instrument panel:

- Polestar
- Minimalistic

Select language

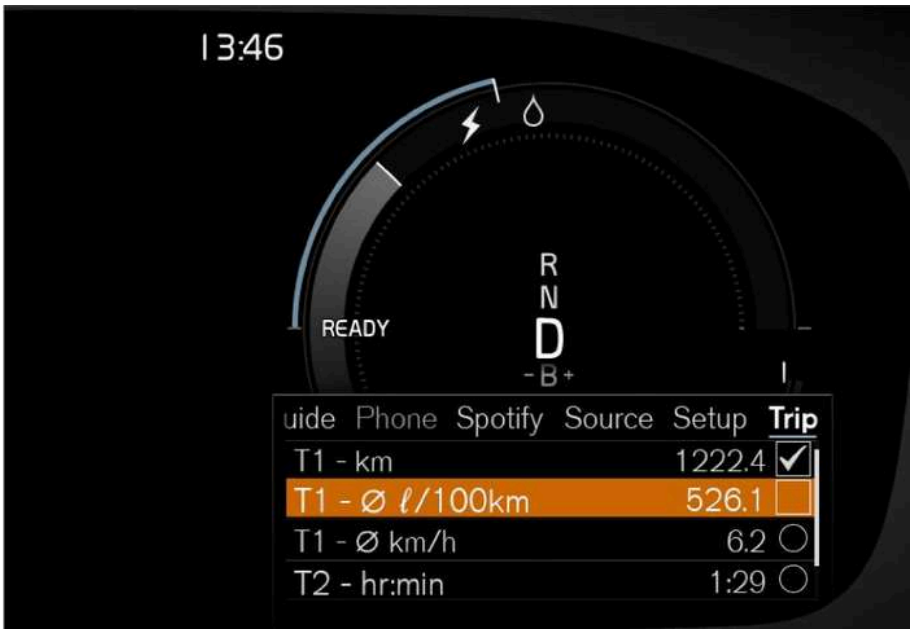
Tap Settings in the center display's Top view.
Tap System → System Languages and Units → System Language to select language.
A change made here will affect the language in all displays.
The settings are personal and saved automatically in the active driver profile.

Instrument panel licenses

See Instrument panel licenses.

App menu in instrument panel

The App menu in the instrument panel provides quick access to commonly used functions for certain apps.



The illustration is generic.

The App menu in the instrument panel can be used instead of the center display and is then controlled using the right-side steering wheel keypad. The app menu makes it easier to switch between different apps or functions within the apps without having to let go of the steering wheel.

App menu functions

Different apps provide access to different types of functions. The following apps and their functions can be controlled from the App menu:

App	Functions
Trip computer	Select a trip odometer, change instrument panel display settings, etc.
Media player	Select active source for media player.
Phone	Call a contact from the call list.
Navigation	Guide to destination, etc.

Controlling the App menu in the instrument panel

The App menu in the instrument panel is controlled using the right-side steering wheel keypad.



App menu and right-side steering wheel keypad.



1. Open/close



2. Left/right



3. Up/down



4. Confirm

Opening and closing the app menu

Tap open/close (1).
The App men opens/closes.

> **NOTE**
> The App menu cannot be opened while there is an unacknowledged message in the instrument panel. The message must be acknowledged before the App menu can be opened.

The App menu turns off automatically after a period of inactivity or after certain selections are made.

Navigating and making selections in the App menu

Navigate between apps by tapping left or right (2).
Functions for the previous/next app will be shown in the App menu.

Scroll through the functions for the selected app using the up or down arrows (3).
Confirm or make a selection for the function by pressing confirm (4).
The function will be activated and, for some selections, the App menu will then close.
The next time the App menu is opened, the functions for the most recently selected app will be displayed automatically.

Messages in the instrument panel

The instrument panel shows messages in certain circumstances to inform or assist the driver.



Example of message in the instrument panel.

High-priority messages for the driver are displayed in the instrument panel.

The messages may appear in different parts of the instrument panel depending on what other information is currently being displayed. The message will disappear from the instrument panel after a short period of time or after it has been acknowledged or any required action has been taken. Messages that need to be saved are stored in the Car Status app, which can be opened from the App view in the center display.

The message may be shown along with graphics, symbols or buttons to e.g. acknowledge the message or accept a request.

Service messages

The following table lists a selection of important service messages and what they mean.

Message	Meaning
Stop safely1	Stop and switch off the engine. Serious risk of damage/injury – contact Polestar Customer Support.
Turn off engine1	Stop and switch off the engine. Serious risk of damage/injury – contact Polestar Customer Support1.
Service urgent Drive to workshop1	Contact Polestar Customer Support1 to have the vehicle inspected immediately.
Service required1	Contact Polestar Customer Support1 to have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.

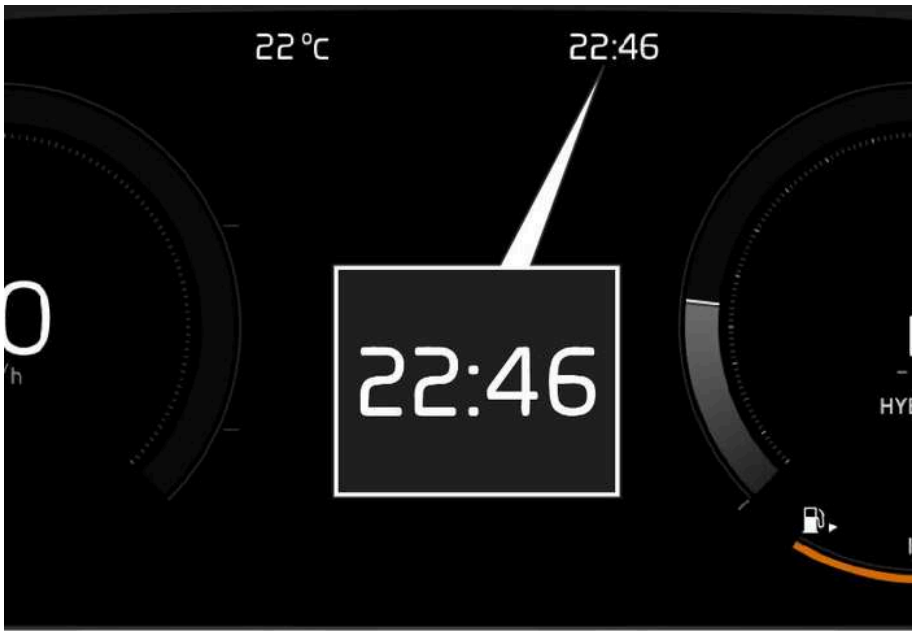
Message	Meaning
Regular maintenance Book time for maintenance	Time for service – contact Polestar Customer Support1. Shown before the next service date.
Regular maintenance Time for maintenance	Time for service – contact Polestar Customer Support1. Shown on the next service date.
Regular maintenance Maintenance overdue	Time for service – contact Polestar Customer Support1. Shown when the date for service has passed.
Temporarily off1	A function has been temporarily deactivated and will be reactivated automatically while driving or after the engine is restarted.

1 Part of message, shown along with information on the location of the problem.

Date and time

The clock is displayed in both the instrument panel and the center display.

Location of clock



Certain messages and other information may obscure the clock in the instrument panel.

In the center display, the clock is located on the upper right-hand side in the status bar.

Settings for date and time

Select Settings → System → Date and Time in the center display's Top view to change settings for time and date format.

Adjust the date and time by tapping the up or down arrows on the touchscreen.

Automatic time with GPS

You can select Auto Time via the navigation system. The time zone will then be automatically set to the vehicle's location. In some navigation systems, the current location must also be set to determine the correct time zone. If Auto

Time is not selected, the time and date can be adjusted using the up and down arrows on the touchscreen.

Daylight savings time

In some countries, the Auto Daylight Saving Time setting can be selected to automatically change to daylight savings time. For other countries, the Daylight Saving Time setting can be selected manually.

If the battery has been disconnected

If the clock was reset after the vehicle's battery was disconnected, e.g. after a visit to a service workshop, you many need to reset the clock. If the clock is not set, it can affect the vehicle's Internet connection.

Center display

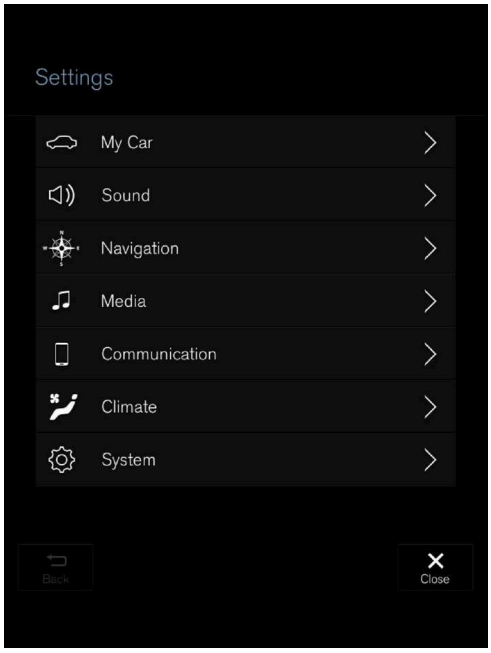
Settings

Resetting user data when the vehicle changes owners

If the vehicle changes owners, all user data and system settings should be reset to factory defaults.
Vehicle settings can be reset at different levels. Reset all user data and system settings to their original factory defaults when the vehicle changes owner. It is also important to change the owner of the Polestar Connect service.

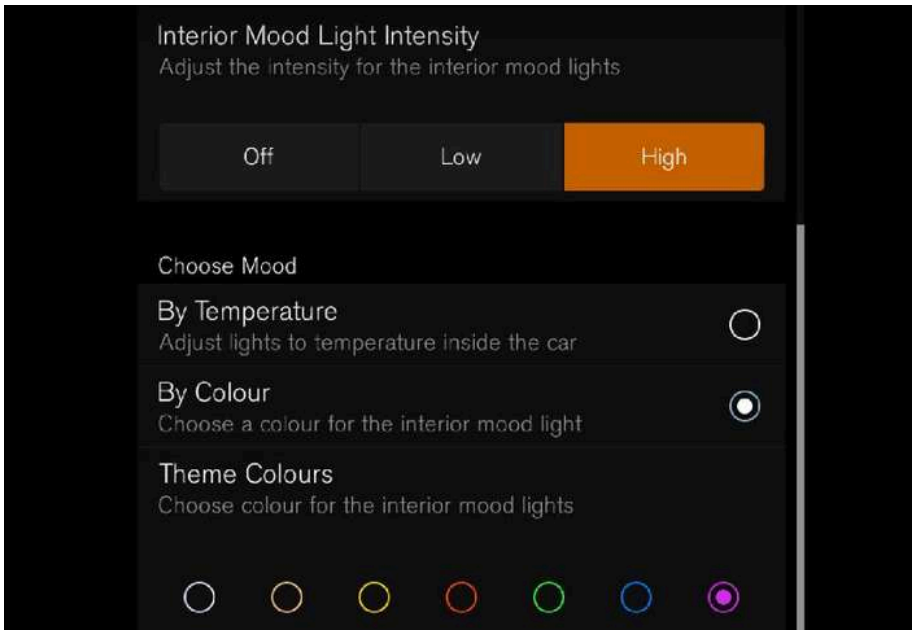
Changing settings in the center display's Top view

You can change settings and information for many of the vehicle's functions via the center display.
Open Top view by tapping the tab at the top of the screen or by dragging/swiping from the top of the screen downward.
Tap Settings to open the Settings menu.



Top view menu for Settings.

Tap one of the categories and sub-categories to navigate to the desired setting.
Change the setting(s). Different types of settings are changed in different ways.
Changes are saved immediately.



A sub-category in the Settings menu with various possible settings; has a multi-selection button and radio buttons.

Resetting center display settings

All settings made in the center display's Settings menu can be reset to default values.

Two types of reset

There are two ways to reset the settings in the Settings menu:

- Factory Reset- erases all data and files and resets all settings to factory default.
- Reset Personal Settings- erases personal data and resets personalized settings to factory default.

Resetting settings

Follow these instructions to reset the settings.

> **NOTE**
> Factory Reset is only possible when the vehicle is stationary.

Tap Settings in the Top view in the center display.
Proceed to System → Factory Reset.
Select the type of reset you would like to do.
A pop-up window will appear.
Tap OK to confirm the reset.

For Reset Personal Settings, confirm the reset by tapping Reset for the active profile or Reset for all profiles.

The selected settings will be reset.

Table of settings in the center display

The center display's Settings menu has a number of main categories and sub-categories that contain settings and information for many of the vehicle's features and functions.
There are seven main categories: My Car, Sound, Navigation, Media, Communication, Climate and System.

Each category, in turn, contains a number of sub-categories and possible settings. The table below shows the first level of sub-categories. The possible settings for a function or an area are described in more detail in their respective

sections of the Manual.

Some settings are personal, which means that they can be saved to a Driver Profiles. Others are global, which means that they are not linked to a driver profile.

My Car

Sub-categories
Displays
IntelliSafe
Drive Preferences/Individual Drive Mode
Lights and Lighting
Mirrors and Convenience
Locking
Parking Brake and Suspension
Wipers

Sound

Sub-categories
Tone
Balance
System Volumes

Navigation

Sub-categories
Map
Route and Guidance
Traffic

Media

Sub-categories
AM/FM Radio
SiriusXM
SiriusXM Travel Link
Gracenote®
Video

Communication

Sub-categories
Phone
Text Messages
Android Auto
Apple CarPlay
Bluetooth Devices
Wi-Fi
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot
Vehicle Modem Internet
Polestar Connect

Climate

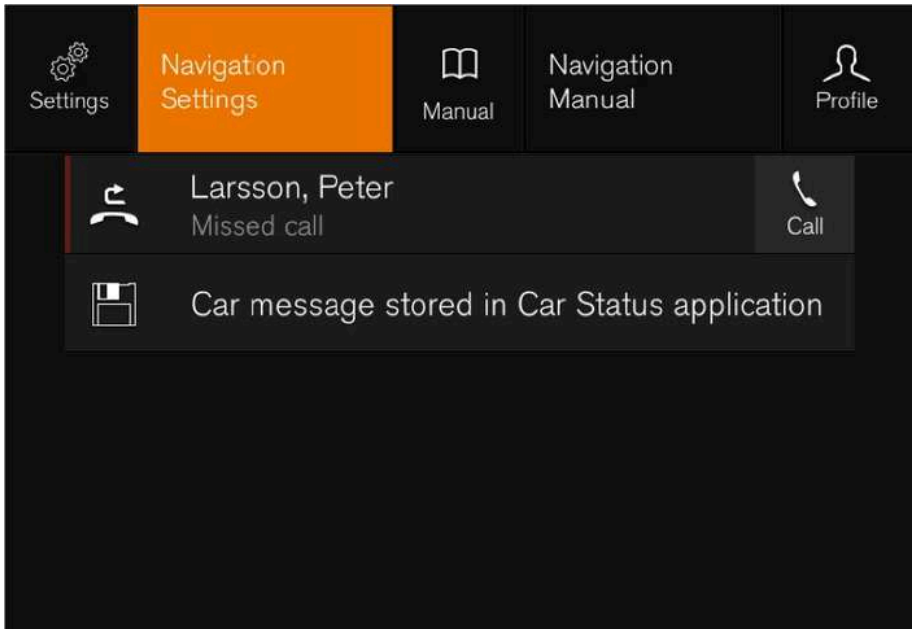
The Climate main category does not have any sub-categories.

System

Sub-categories
Driver Profile
Date and Time
System Languages and Units
Privacy and Data
Keyboard Layouts
Voice Control
Factory Reset
System Information

Opening contextual setting in the center display

Most of the settings for the vehicle's basic apps can be changed directly in Top view in the center display via contextual settings.



Top view with button for contextual settings.

Contextual setting is a shortcut for accessing specific settings related to the active function displayed on the screen. Apps that are factory-installed in your vehicle, e.g. FM radio and USB, are part of Sensus and are used to control the vehicle's integrated functions. The settings for these apps can be changed directly via contextual setting in Top view.

When contextual setting is available:

Pull down Top view when an app is in expanded form, e.g. Navigation.
Tap Navigation Settings.
The navigation settings page will open.
Change the desired settings and confirm.
Tap Close or press the Home button under the center display to close Settings view.

Most of the vehicle's basic apps have this contextual setting option, but not all.

Third-party apps

Third-party apps are apps that are not factory-installed in the vehicle's system, but can be downloaded, e.g. Polestar ID. Settings for these apps are changed in the apps themselves, not in Top view.

Changing system units of measurement

Unit settings are adjusted in the Settings menu in the center display.
Tap Settings in the Top view in the center display.
Proceed to System → System Languages and Units → Units of Measurement.
Choose a measurement standard:

- Metric - kilometers, liters and degrees Celsius.
- Imperial - miles, gallons and degrees Celsius.
- US - miles, gallons and degrees Fahrenheit.

The units in the instrument panel, center display and head-up display are changed.

Turning off and adjusting the volume of the center display system sounds

The volume of the center display system sounds can be adjusted or turned off completely.
Tap Settings in the Top view in the center display.

Tap Sound → System Volumes.
Pull the control under Touch Sounds to adjust the volume or turn off screen tap sounds. Pull the control to the desired sound level.

Changing system language

Language settings are adjusted in the Settings menu in the center display.

> **NOTE**
> Changing languages in the center display could mean that some information in the Manual will not comply with national or local laws and regulations. Do not change to a language you do not speak well, as it can be difficult to find your way back through the menu.

Tap Settings in the Top view in the center display.
Proceed to System → System Languages and Units.
Select System Language. A voice control symbol indicates that the language can be used for voice commands.
Languages in the instrument panel, center display and head-up display are changed.

Changing the appearance of the center display

The appearance of the center display can be changed by selecting a different theme.
Tap Settings in the Top view.
Tap My Car → Displays → Display Themes.
Select a theme, e.g. Minimalistic.
In addition to these themes, you can also choose between Normal and Bright. In Normal, the background of the screen is dark and the text is light. This option is the default setting for all themes. If the bright version is selected, the background will be light and the text will be dark. This option can, for example, make the screen easier to see in bright daylight conditions.

These alternatives are always available for selection and are not affected by the ambient lighting.

Displaying trip data in the instrument panel

See Displaying trip data in the instrument panel.

Trip statistics settings

See Trip statistics settings.

Instrument panel settings

See Instrument panel settings.

Date and time

See Date and time.

Head-up display settings

Adjusting settings for the head-up display.
Settings can be adjusted when the vehicle is started and a projected image is displayed on the windshield.

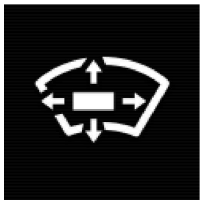
Selecting display options

Select the functions to be shown in the head-up display.
Tap Settings in the center display's Top view.
Tap My Car → Displays → Head-Up Display Options.
Select one or more functions:

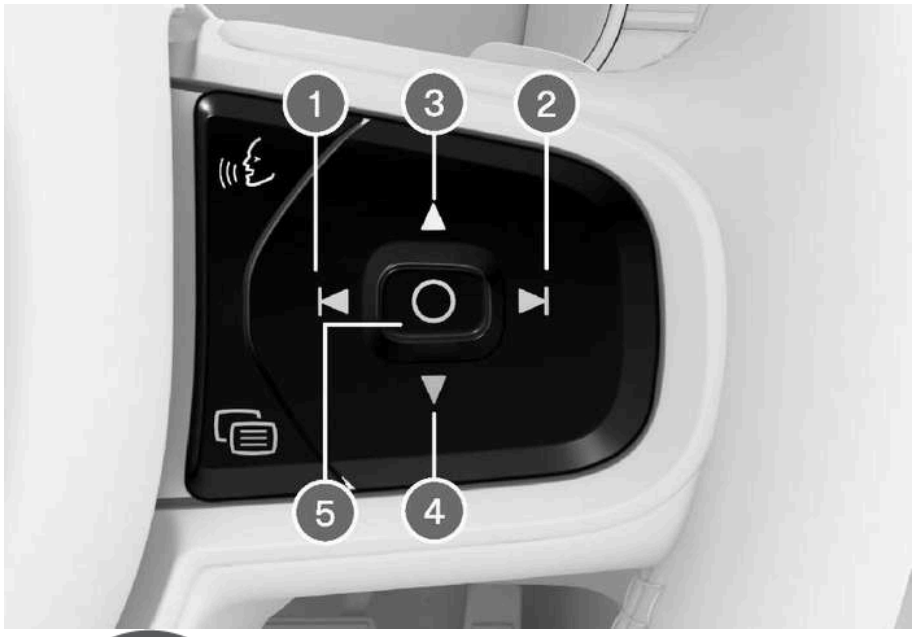
- Show Navigation
- Show Road Sign Information
- Show Driver Support
- Show Phone

This setting is stored as a personal setting in the driver profile.

Adjusting brightness and height position



Press the Head-up Display Adjustments button in the center display's Function view.
Adjust the brightness of the projected image and the height position in the driver's field of vision using the right-side steering wheel lever.



1. Decreasing brightness
2. Increasing brightness
3. Raising position
4. Lowering position
5. Confirm

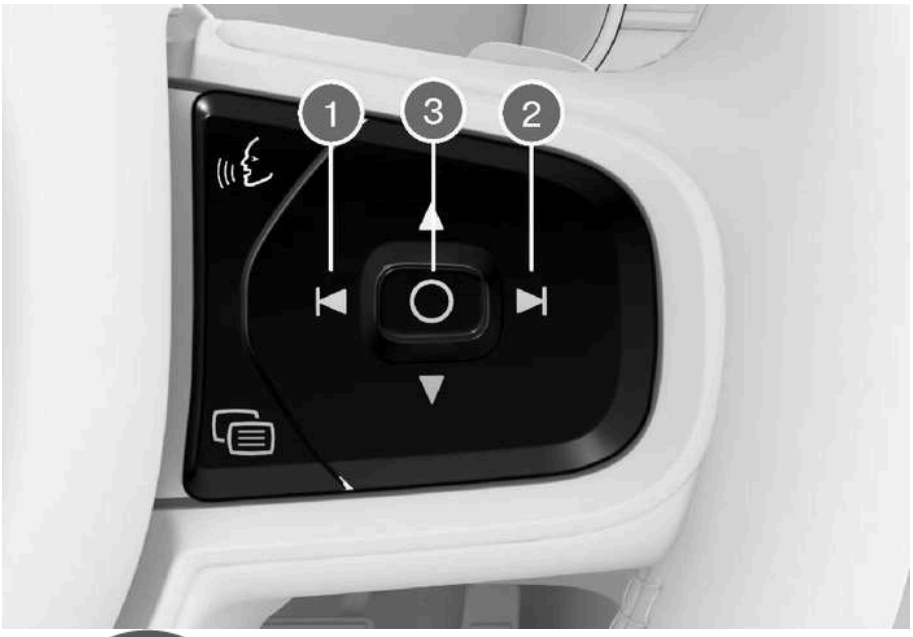
The brightness of the graphic is automatically adapted to the light conditions in its background. Brightness is also affected by adjustments to the brightness of the other displays in the vehicle.

The height position can be stored in the front power seat's memory function using the keypad in the driver's door.

Calibrating the horizontal position

If the windshield or display unit has been replaced, the head-up display's horizontal position may need to be calibrated. Calibration means that the projected image is rotated clockwise or counterclockwise.

Tap Settings in the center display's Top view.
Select My Car → Displays → Head-Up Display Options → Head-Up Display Calibration.
Calibrate the horizontal position of the image using the right-side steering wheel keypad.





1. Rotate counterclockwise



2. Rotate clockwise



3. Confirm

Terms of use and data sharing

The first time certain services and apps are started, a pop-up window with the heading Terms and conditions and Data sharing may open.
The aim is to inform the user about Polestar's terms of use and data sharing policy. By accepting data sharing, the user accepts that certain information will be sent from the vehicle. This is required for certain services and apps to work with full functionality.

The data sharing function for connected services and apps is deactivated by default. For certain connected services and apps in the vehicle to work, data sharing must be activated. Data sharing can be set from the center display's Settings menu.

> **NOTE**
> Settings for privacy and data sharing are unique for each driver profile.

Activating and deactivating data sharing

Data sharing for relevant services and apps can be set via the Settings menu in the center display.
Tap Settings in the Top view in the center display.
Tap System → Privacy and data.
Select to activate or deactivate data sharing for individual services and all apps.
If data sharing for a connected service or downloaded apps is not activated, this can be done when they are started in the center display. If this is the first time that a service is started, or e.g. after a factory reset or certain software updates, Polestar's terms and conditions for connected services must be accepted. Note that data sharing will then also be activated for other services or apps that sharing has already been accepted for.

> **NOTE**
> After visiting a workshop, you may need to reactivate data sharing so that services and apps will work again.

Lock confirmation settings

Settings for how the vehicle confirms locking and unlocking can be adjusted in the center display's Settings menu.
To change the locking response settings:
Tap Settings in the center display's Top view.
Tap My Car → Locking.
Tap Visible Locking Feedback to select when the vehicle should provide a visible response:

- Lock
- Unlock
- Both

Or turn off the function by marking Off .

Select to receive an audible response when locking the vehicle by marking Audible Locking Feedback.
To change the settings for folding door mirrors when locking:
Tap Settings in the center display's Top view.
Tap My Car → Mirrors and Convenience.
Select Fold Mirror When Locked to activate or deactivate the function.

Keyless unlock settings

Several different sequences are available for keyless unlocking.

To change this setting:
Tap Settings in the center display's Top view.
Tap My Car → Locking → Keyless Unlock
Select alternative:

- All Doors – unlocks all doors at the same time.
- Single Door – unlocks the selected door.

Settings for automatically activating the parking brake

Choose whether the parking brake should be activated automatically when the vehicle is switched off.
To change this setting:
Tap Settings in the center display's Top view.
Tap My Car → Parking Brake and Suspension and select or deselect the Auto Activate Parking Brake function.

Driver profiles

Driver profiles

Many of the vehicle's settings can be customized to the driver's personal preferences and saved in one or more driver profiles.
These personal settings are automatically saved in the active driver profile. Each key can be linked to one driver profile. When the linked key is used, the vehicle is customized to the specific settings of that driver profile.

Which settings are saved in driver profiles?

Many of the settings made in the vehicle will be automatically stored in the active driver profile if the profile is not protected. The vehicle has settings that can be made either personal or global. The personal settings are saved in driver profiles.

Settings that can be saved in a driver profile include screens, mirrors, front seat, navigation, audio and media system, language and voice control.

Some settings are global settings. These settings can be changed but are not saved to a specific driver profile. Changes to global settings affect all profiles.

Global settings

Global settings and parameters do not change when driver profiles are changed. They remain the same regardless of which driver profile is currently active.

Keyboard layout is an example of a global setting. If driver profile X is used to add additional keyboard languages, these languages will also be available for driver profile Y. The settings for keyboard layout are not saved to a specific driver profile - the settings are global.

Personal settings

If driver profile X has been used to e.g., set the brightness for the center display, driver profile Y will not be affected by this setting. It will only be saved to driver profile X because brightness setting is a personal setting.

Changing a driver profile's name

It is possible to change the names of the different driver profiles used in the vehicle.
Tap Settings in the Top view in the center display.
Tap System → Driver Profiles.

Select Edit Profile.
A menu will open in which the driver profile can be changed.
Tap the Profile Name box.
A keyboard will be displayed and can be used to change the name. Tap  to close the keyboard.
Save the name change by pressing Back or Close.
The name has now been changed.

> **NOTE**
> Profile names may not begin with a space. If a space is entered first, the profile name will not be saved.

Linking a key to a driver profile

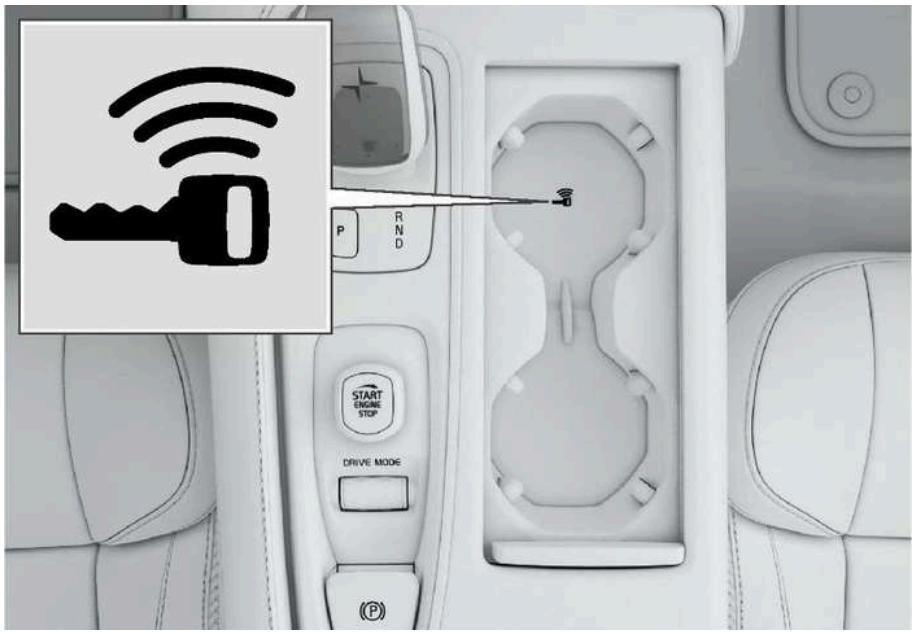
A remote key can be linked to a driver profile. This driver profile and all of its settings will then automatically be selected every time the vehicle is used with that particular key.
The first time the key is used, it is not linked to any specific driver profile. The Guest profile is automatically activated when the ignition is switched on.

A driver profile can also be selected manually without linking it to any key. When the vehicle is unlocked, the last active driver profile will be activated. If the key has ever been linked to a driver profile, it is not necessary to manually select a driver profile when using that particular key.

Linking a key to a specific driver profile

> **NOTE**
> A remote key can only be connected to a driver profile when the vehicle is stationary.

First select the profile you would like to link to the key (if that profile is not already active). The active profile can then be linked to the key.
Tap Settings in the Top view in the center display.
Tap System → Driver Profiles.
Mark the desired profile. The display will return to Home view. The Guest profile cannot be linked to a remote key.
Pull down Top view again and tap Settings → System → Driver Profiles → Edit Profile.
Select Connect key to link the profile with the key. A driver profile can only be linked to the key currently being used in the vehicle. If there are any other keys in the vehicle, More than one key is found, put the key you want to connect on backup reader will be displayed.



Location of the backup reader in the tunnel console.

When Profile connected to key is displayed, the key and driver profile have been linked.
Tap OK.
The key used is now linked to the driver profile and will remain so as long as the Connect key box is not deselected.

Protecting a driver profile

It may not always be desirable to store settings made in the vehicle to the active driver profile. In these instances, the driver profile can be protected.

> **NOTE**
> Protecting a driver profile is only possible when the vehicle is stationary.

To protect a driver profile:
Tap Settings in the Top view in the center display.
Tap System → Driver Profiles.
Select Edit Profile.
A menu will open in which the driver profile can be changed.
Tap Protect Profile to protect the profile.
Confirm your selection to protect the profile by tapping Back/Close.
When the profile is protected, settings made in the vehicle will not be automatically stored to the profile. The changes must instead be saved manually under Settings → System → Driver Profiles → Edit Profile by tapping Save current settings to the profile. If the profile is not protected, the settings will be automatically stored to the profile.

Selecting a driver profile

When the center display starts up, the selected driver profile will be shown at the top of the screen. The most recently used driver profile will be active the next time the vehicle is unlocked. A different driver profile can be selected once the vehicle has been unlocked. However, if the key has been linked to a driver profile, this profile will be used instead. There are two options for switching between driver profiles.

Option 1:

Tap the name of the driver profile shown at the top of the center display when the display starts up.
A list will appear, showing driver profiles that can be selected.

Select desired driver profile.
Tap Confirm.
The driver profile has now been selected and the system will load the settings stored in that profile.
Option 2:
Pull down Top view in the center display.
Tap Profile.
The same list as in option 1 will be displayed.
Select desired driver profile.
Tap Confirm.
The driver profile has now been selected and the system will load the settings stored in that profile.
Option 3:
Pull down Top view in the center display.
Tap Settings in the Top view in the center display.
Tap System → Driver Profiles.
A list will appear, showing driver profiles that can be selected.
Select desired driver profile.
The driver profile has now been selected and the system will load the settings stored in that profile.

Resetting driver profile settings

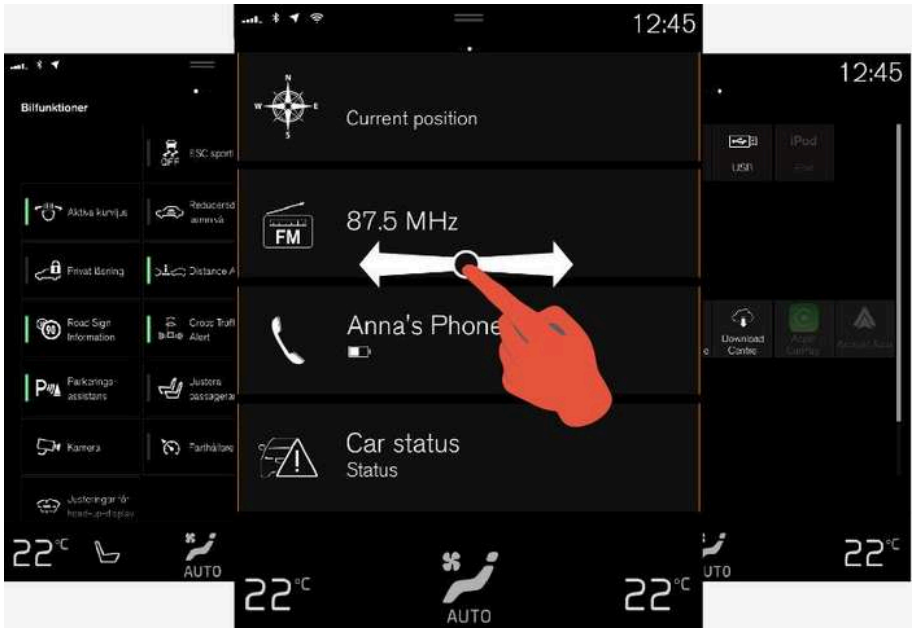
Settings that have been saved for one or more driver profiles can be reset when the vehicle is stationary.

> **NOTE**
> Factory Reset is only possible when the vehicle is stationary.

Tap Settings in the Top view.
Tap System → Factory Reset → Reset Personal Settings.
Select option Reset for the active profile, Reset for all profiles or Cancel.

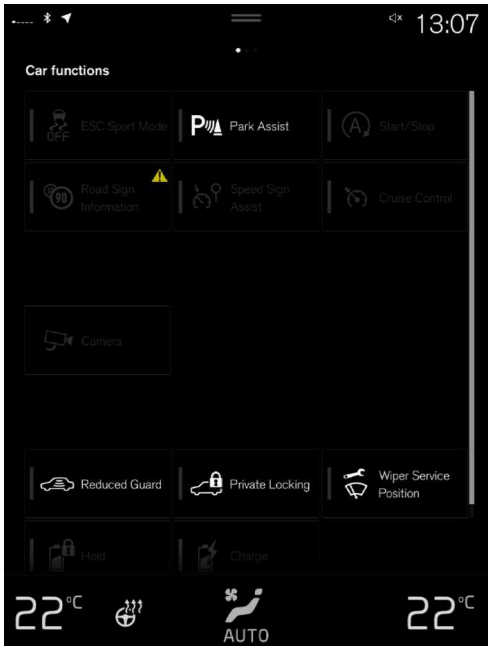
Center display overview

Many of the vehicle's functions can be controlled from the center display. The center display and its possibilities are presented below.



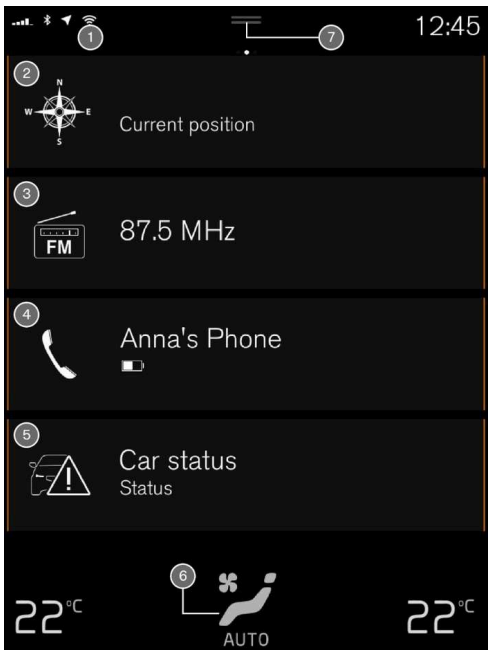
Three of the center display's basic views. Swipe to the right/left to access Function or App view.

Function view



View for vehicle functions. The functions can be activated or deactivated by tapping. Certain functions, called "trigger functions", open windows with settings options. One example is the Camera. Settings for the head-up display are also started from Function view, but adjusted using the right-side steering wheel keypad.

Home view



Home view is the first view displayed when the screen is activated.

1. Status bar – current vehicle activities are shown at the top of the screen. Network and connection information is shown to the left of the status bar. Media-related information, the clock and information about background activities are shown to the right.
2. Navigation – takes you to map navigation with e.g. Sensus Navigation. Tap the tile to expand it.
3. Media – most recently used media-related apps. Tap the tile to expand it.
4. Phone – used to access phone-related functions. Tap the tile to expand it.



5. Fourth tile – most recently used apps or vehicle functions not associated with the other tiles. Tap the tile to expand it.

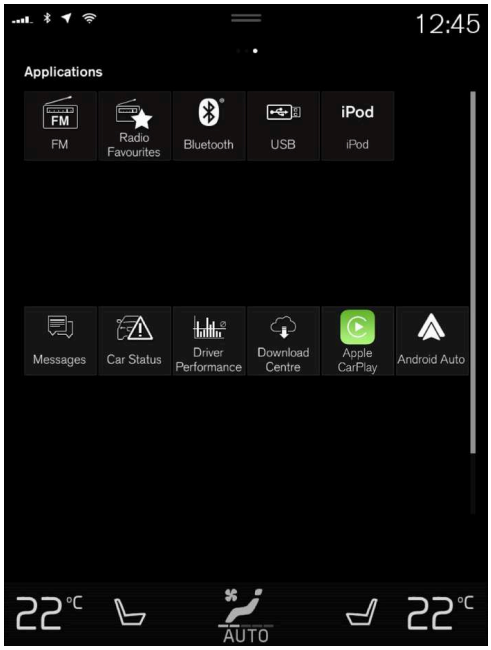


6. Climate row - information and direct interaction to set temperature and seat heating for example. Tap the symbol in the center of the climate bar to open Climate view and additional setting options.



7. Top view – pull the tab down to open Top view. From here, you can access Settings, Manual, Profile and messages stored in the vehicle. In certain cases, contextual setting (e.g. Navigation Settings) and the contextual Manual (e.g. Navigation Manual) can also be accessed in Top view.

App view



View for downloaded apps (third-party apps) and apps for integrated functions, such as FM radio. Tap an app icon to open that app.

Activating and deactivating the center display

The center display can be temporarily switched off and reactivated using the home button under the screen.



Center display's home button.

When the home button is used, the screen will go dark and the touchscreen no longer reacts to touch. The climate bar will remain visible. All functions connected to the screen continue to operate, such as climate, audio, guiding and apps. The center display screen can be cleaned when the display is dimmed. The dimming function can also be used to darken the screen so it is not a distraction while driving.

Press and hold the button beneath the screen.
The screen will go dark (the climate bar will remain visible). All functions connected to the screen continue to operate.
To reactivate the screen, briefly press the Home button.
The view that was displayed before the screen was turned off will be displayed again.

> **NOTE**
> The screen cannot be turned off when a prompt to perform an action is being displayed on the screen.

> **NOTE**
> The center display is turned off automatically when the engine is off and the driver's door is opened.

Handling the center display

Many of the vehicle's functions and features can be controlled and adjusted from the center display. The center display is a touchscreen that reacts to taps and other gestures.

Using the center display's touchscreen

The touchscreen reacts differently depending on whether the user taps, drags or swipes the screen. It is possible to e.g. move between different views, mark objects, scroll in a list and move apps by touching the screen in various ways.

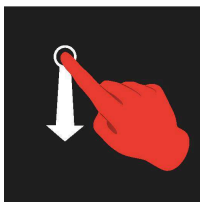
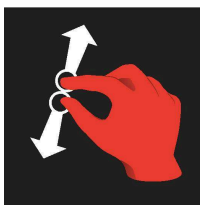
An infrared light curtain just above the surface of the screen enables the screen to detect when a finger is directly in front of the screen. This technology makes it possible to use the screen even while wearing gloves.

Two people can interact with the screen at the same time, e.g. to adjust climate system settings for both the driver and passenger sides.

IMPORTANT

Do not use sharp objects on the screen as this could cause scratches.

The following table presents the various procedures for using the screen:

Procedure	Gesture	Result
	Tap once.	Marks an object, confirms a selection or activates a function.
	Double-tap.	Zooms in on a digital object, such as a map.
	Press and hold.	Grabs hold of an object so it can be moved. Can be used to move apps or points on a map. Press and hold your finger on the screen and drag the object to the desired position.
	Tap once with two fingers.	Zooms out from a digital object, such as a map.
	Drag	Moves between screen views or scrolls in a list, text or a view. Press and hold to drag apps or points on a map. Drag horizontally or vertically over the screen.
	Swipe	Moves between screen views or scrolls in a list, text or a view. Drag horizontally or vertically over the screen. Note that touching the upper part of the screen could cause Top view to open.
	Stretch	Zooms in.
	Pinch	Zooms out.

Returning to Home view from another view

Briefly press the home button below the center display.
The most recent Home view mode will be displayed.
Press briefly again.
All of the Home view's tiles will return to standard mode.

> **NOTE**
> In Home view's standard mode – short press on the Home button. An animation describing access to the various views is shown on the screen.

Scrolling in lists, articles or views

A scroll indicator is displayed on the screen when it is possible to scroll up or down in the view. Swipe down/up anywhere in the view.



The scroll indicator will be shown in the center display when it is possible to scroll in the view.

Using the center display controls



Temperature control.

Digital controls are available for many of the vehicle's functions. For example, to set the temperature:

- drag the control to the desired temperature,
- tap + or − to raise or lower the temperature by degrees, or
- tap the desired temperature on the control.

Navigating in the center display's views

There are five different basic views in the center display: Home view, Top view, Climate view, App view and Function view. The screen is automatically activated when the driver's door is opened.

Home view

Home view is the view displayed when the screen is activated. It consists of four tiles: Navigation, Media, Phone and a fourth tile.

An app or vehicle function selected from the App or Function views will start in the respective tile in Home view. FM radio, for example, will start in the Media tile.

The extra tile displays the most recently used app or vehicle function that is not related to the other three tiles.

The tiles display brief information about the respective apps.

> **NOTE**
> When the vehicle is started, information on the current status of apps will be displayed in the respective tile in Home view.

> **NOTE**
> In Home view's standard mode – short press on the Home button. An animation describing access to the various views is shown on the screen.

NOTE

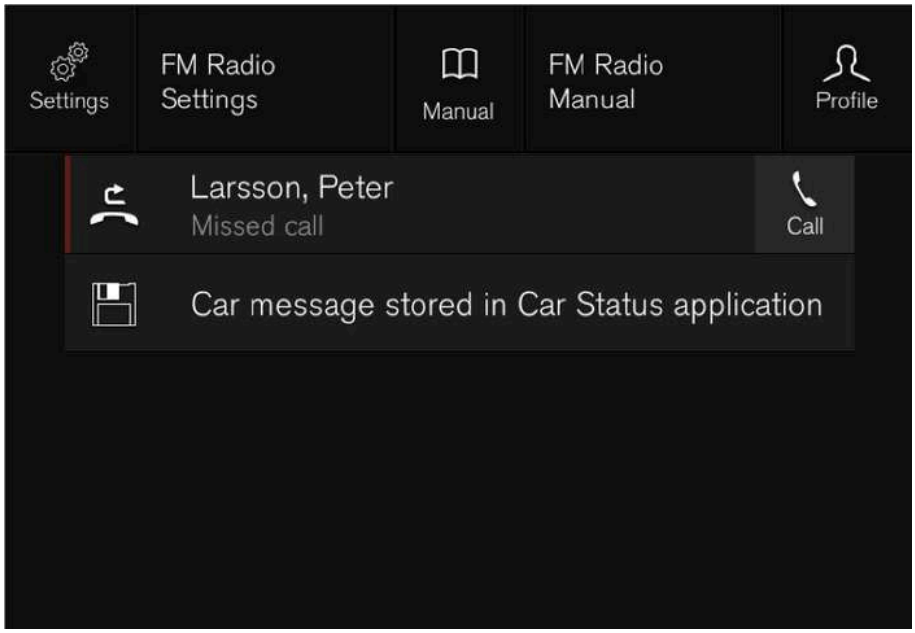
When the vehicle is moving:

- Certain functions (e.g. using the center display's keyboard) may be deactivated.
- Certain messages (e.g. those generated by apps) will be shortened to three rows. Tap the Read out button to have the entire message read aloud.
- SMS text messages will be shortened to one row. Tap the Read out button to have the entire message read aloud.

Status bar

Current vehicle activities are shown at the top of the screen in the status bar. Network and connection information is shown to the left of the status bar. Media-related information, the clock and information about background activities are shown to the right.

Top view



Top view when expanded.

There is a tab in the center of the status bar at the top of the screen. Open Top view by tapping the tab or by dragging/swiping from the top of the screen downward.

Top view always provides access to:

- Settings
- Manual
- Profile
- The vehicle's stored messages.

In certain cases, Top view provides access to:

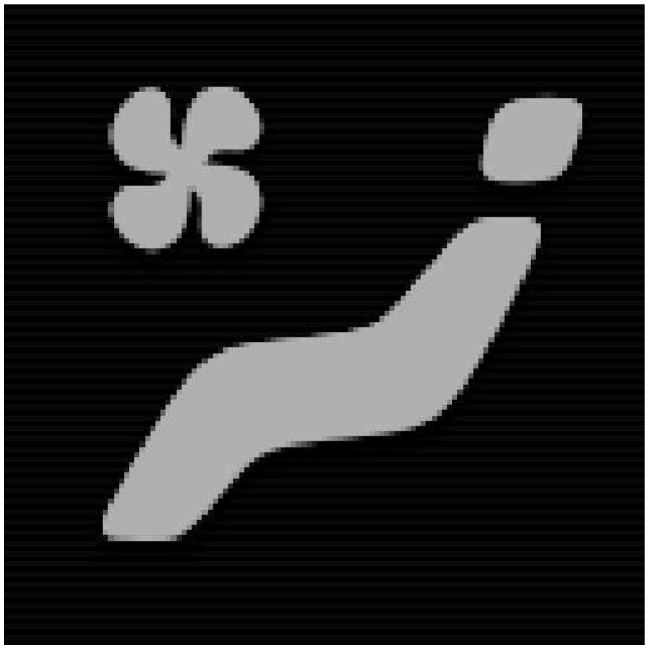
- Contextual setting (e.g. Navigation Settings). Change settings directly in Top view when an app (e.g. navigation) is being used.
- Contextual Manual (e.g. Navigation Manual). Access articles in the digital Manual related to the content shown on the screen, directly in Top view.

To exit Top view, tap the screen outside Top view, press the Home button or tap the screen at the bottom of Top view and swipe upward. The views behind will become visible again and can be used.

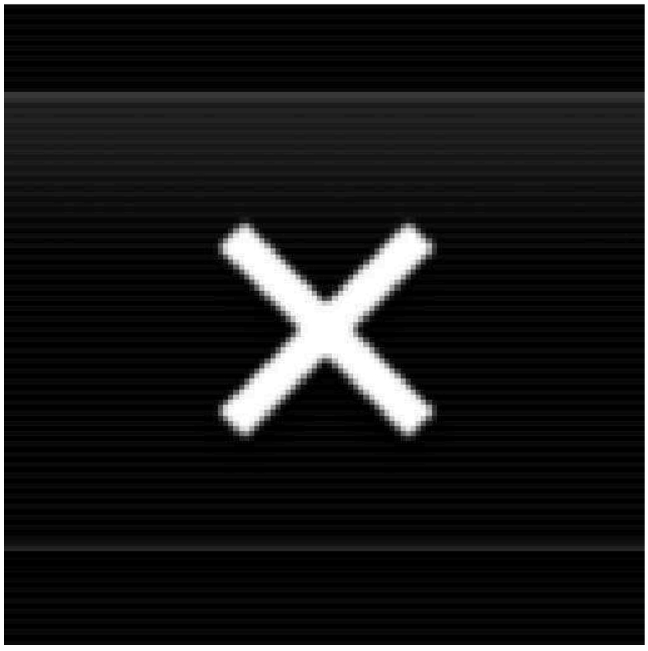
> **NOTE**
> The top view is not available at start-up/shutdown or when a message is being shown on the screen. Similarly, it is not available when the climate view is shown.

Climate view

The climate bar is always visible at the bottom of the screen. The most common climate settings can be made directly there, such as setting temperature and seat heating.

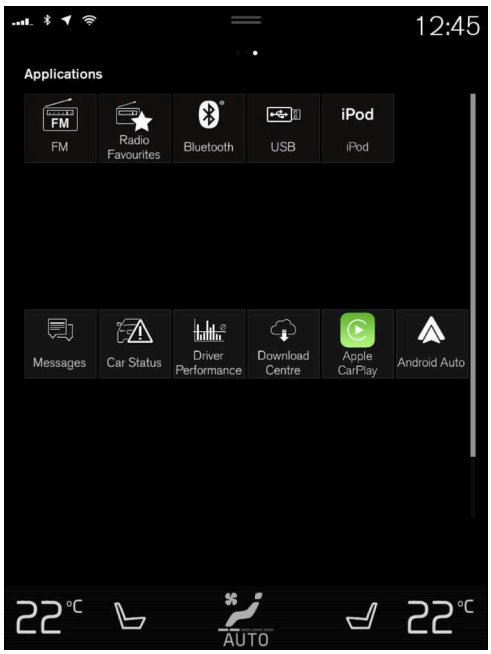


Tap the symbol in the center of the climate bar to open Climate view and access additional climate system settings.



Tap the symbol to close Climate view and return to a previous view.

App view



App view showing the vehicle's apps.

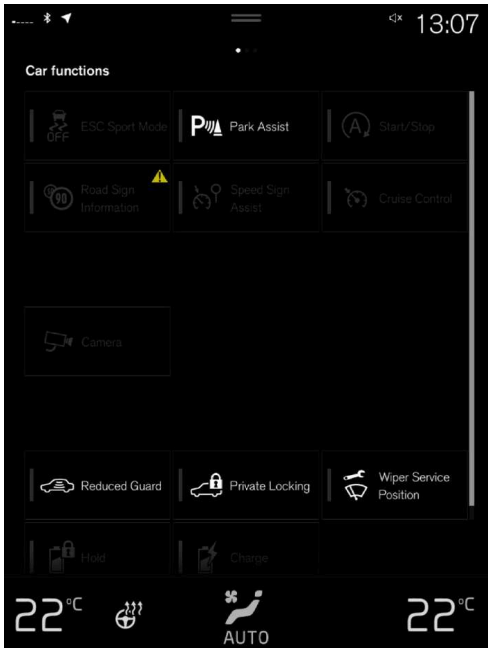
Swipe the screen from right to left to access App view from Home view. This view displays downloaded apps (third-party apps) as well as apps for integrated functions, such as FM radio. Brief information will be displayed directly in App view for certain apps, such as unread text messages for Messages.

Tap an app to open it. It will then be opened in its associated tile, e.g. Media.

Depending on the number of apps, it is possible to scroll down in App view. This is done by sweeping/dragging from the bottom upwards.

To return to Home view, swipe the screen from left to right or press the Home button.

Function view



Function view with buttons for various vehicle functions.

Swipe the screen from left to right to access Function view from Home view. From Function view, you can activate or deactivate various vehicle functions such as BLIS, Lane Keeping Aid and Park Assist.

If there are many functions, you can also scroll downward through the view. This is done by sweeping/dragging from the bottom upwards.

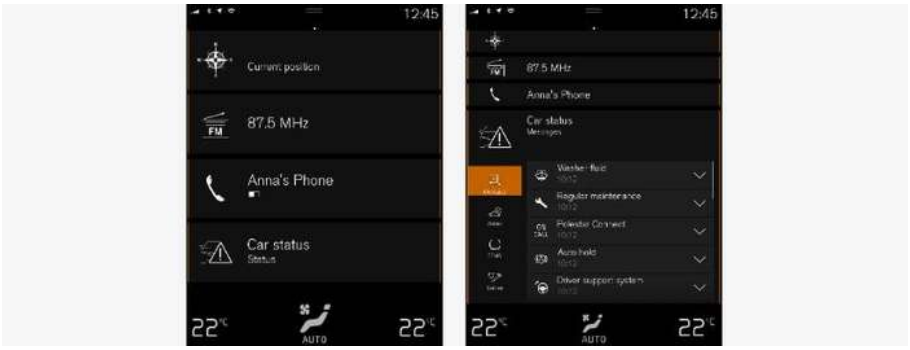
Unlike in App view, where you tap an app to open it, in Function view, tapping a function activates or deactivates it. Certain functions (trigger functions) open in their own window when tapped.

To return to Home view, swipe the screen from right to left or press the Home button.

Handling tiles in the center display

Home view consists of four tiles: Navigation, Media, Phone and a fourth tile. These views can be expanded.

Expanding a tile from standard mode



Standard mode and expanded mode of a tile in the center display.

Expanding a tile:
For tiles Navigation, Media and Phone: Tap the screen anywhere in the tile. When a tile is expanded, the extra tile in Home view will be temporarily hidden. The other two tiles will be minimized and only show certain information. When the extra tile is tapped, the other three tiles are minimized and only certain information is displayed.

Expanded view provides access to the basic functions of the respective apps.

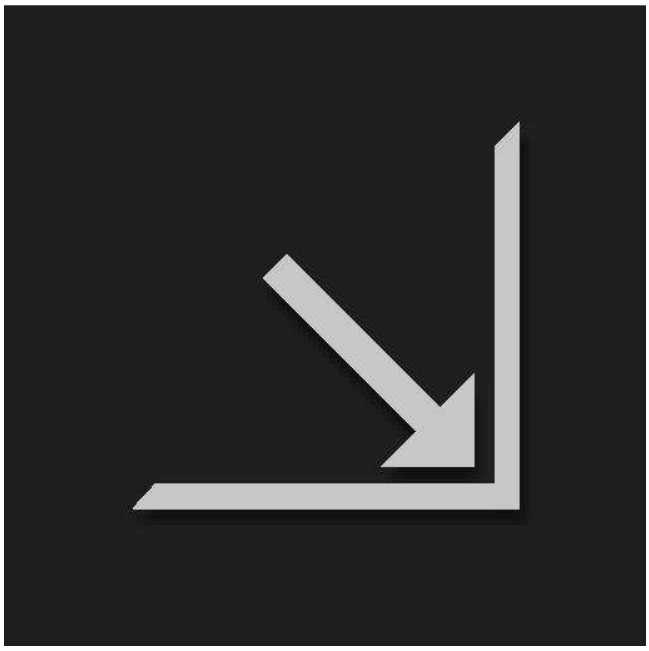
Closing an expanded tile:
The tile can be closed in three different ways:

- Tap the top section of the expanded tile.
- Tap another tile (it will then be opened in expanded mode instead).
- Press briefly on the Home button under the center display.

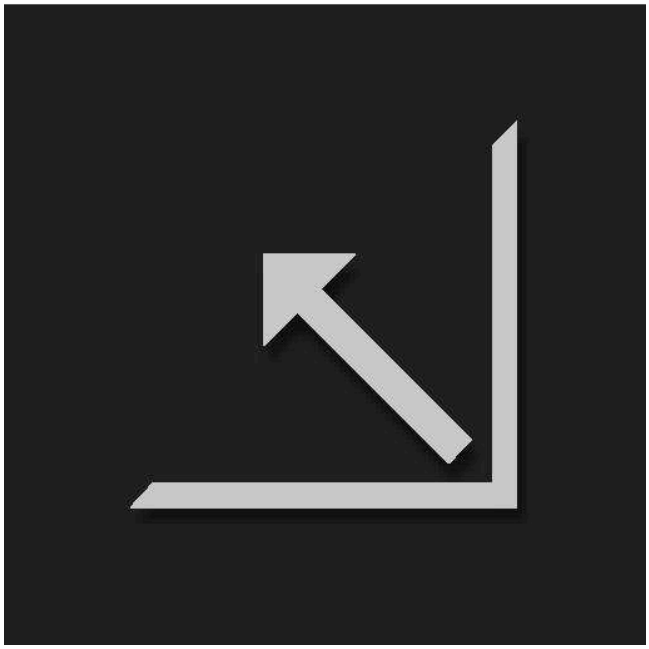
Opening or closing a tile in full-screen mode

The fourth tile[1] and tile for Navigation can be opened in full-screen mode to show additional information and possible settings.

When a tile is opened in full-screen mode, no information from the other tiles is displayed.



In expanded mode, open the app in full-screen mode. Tap the symbol.



To return to expanded mode, tap the symbol or press the Home button under the screen.



Center display's home button.

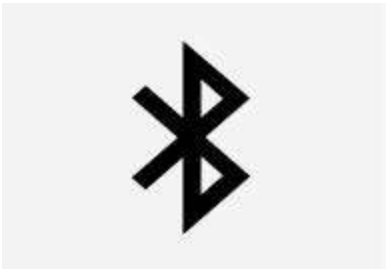
You can always press the Home button to return to Home view. To return to Home view's standard view from full-screen mode, press the Home button twice.

1 Does not apply to all apps or vehicle functions opened via the fourth tile.

Symbols in the center display status bar

Overview of symbols displayed in the center display status bar.
The status bar shows current vehicle activities and in certain cases, also their status. Due to the limited space in the status bar, not all symbols will be displayed at all times.

Symbol	Meaning
	Connected to the Internet.
	Roaming activated.

Symbol	Meaning
	Cell phone network signal strength.
	Bluetooth device connected.
	Bluetooth activated but no device connected.
	Information sent to and from GPS.
	Connected to Wi-Fi network.

Symbol	Meaning
	Tethering activated (Wi-Fi hotspot). This means that the vehicle shares an available Internet connection.
	Vehicle modem activated.
	USB sharing active.
	Action in progress.
	Timer for preconditioning active.1

Symbol	Meaning
	Audio source being played.
	Audio source paused.
	Phone call in progress.
	Audio source muted.
	News broadcasts from current radio station.2

Symbol	Meaning
	Traffic information being received.2
	Clock.

1 Only hybrid models.

2 Not available in all markets.

Function view in the center display

Function view, which is one of the center display's basic views, contains all of the vehicle's function buttons. From the Home view, navigate to Function view by swiping from left to right over the screen.

Different types of buttons

There are three different types of buttons for vehicle functions; see below:

Type of button	Functions	Vehicle function affected
Function buttons	Have On/Off modes. When a function is active, an LED indicator light will illuminate to the left of the button's icon. Press the button to turn the function on or off.	Most buttons in Function view are function buttons.
Trigger buttons	Do not have On/Off modes. Pressing a trigger button opens a window for the function. This can be, for example, a window to change seat position.	• Camera • Headrest Fold • Head-up Display Adjustments

Button modes



When a function or parking button's LED indicator is green, the function is activated (on). For some functions, an additional text explaining the function will be shown when the function is initially activated. The text will be displayed for a few seconds and then the button will be displayed with the LED indicator illuminated.

For Lane Keeping Aid, for example, the text Works only at certain speeds will be displayed when the button is pressed.

Press the button once briefly to activate or deactivate the function.



The function is deactivated when the LED indicator light is switched off.



A warning triangle in the right-hand section of the button indicates that something is not working correctly.

Moving apps and buttons in the center display

The apps and buttons for vehicle functions can be moved and organized in the App and Function views.
Swipe from right to left to access App view or swipe from left to right to access Function view.
Press and hold an app or button.
The app or button will change size and become slightly transparent. It can then be moved.
Drag the app or button to an available position in the view.
A maximum of 48 rows can be used to position apps or buttons. To move an app or button outside the visible view, drag it to the bottom of the view. New rows will be added and the app or button can be placed in one of these.

Apps or buttons placed below the view's normal display will not be visible on the screen.

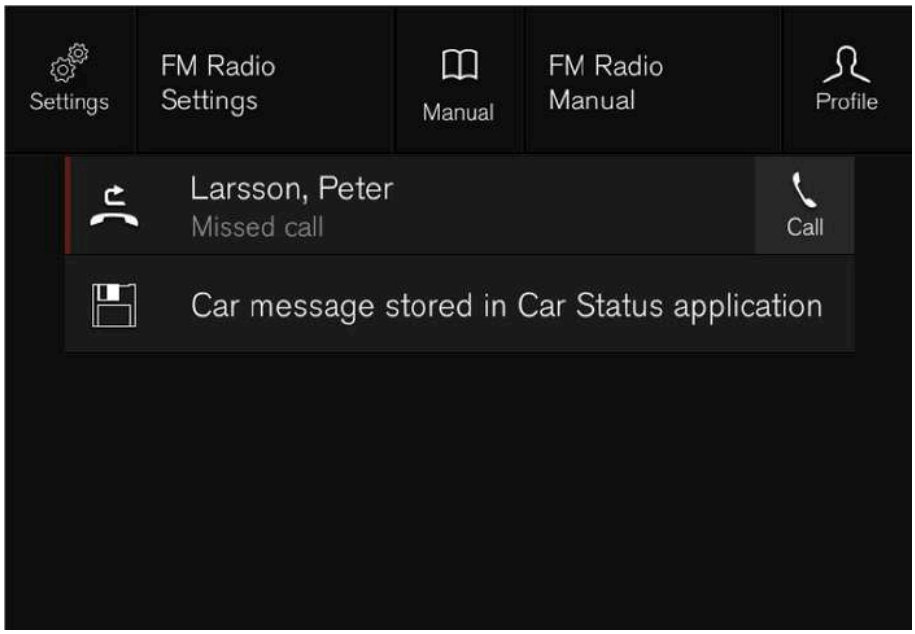
Swipe the screen to scroll up or down in the view to display information outside the view.

> **NOTE**
> Hide the apps that are rarely or never used by moving them far down, outside of the visible view. This makes it easier to find the apps used more frequently.

> **NOTE**
> Apps and vehicle function buttons cannot be situated at spots already in use.

Messages in the center display

The center display shows messages in certain circumstances to inform or assist the driver.



Example of message in the center display's Top view.

Messages with lower priority for the driver are shown in the center display.

Most of the messages are shown in the center display's status bar. The message will disappear from the status bar after a short period of time or after the required action has been taken. Messages that need to be saved are stored in Top view in the center display.

The message may be shown along with graphics, symbols or a button to e.g. activate/deactivate a function connected to the message.

Pop-up messages

Messages are sometimes shown as pop-up windows. Pop-up messages have a higher priority than messages shown in the status bar and require acknowledgment/action before they disappear.

Using the center display keyboard

You can use the keyboard in the center display to enter characters or to switch to handwriting mode to "write" letters and characters on the screen.
The keyboard can be used to enter characters (letters, numbers, symbols, etc.) to e.g. send text messages from the vehicle, enter passwords or search for information in the digital Manual.

The keyboard will only appear when it is possible to enter text on the screen.

> **NOTE**
> The keyboard cannot be used while the vehicle is moving.



The illustration shows an overview of some of the buttons that may be shown on the keyboard. The appearance may vary depending on language settings and the context in which the keyboard is used.



1. Row showing suggestions for words or characters1. The suggested words change as new letters are entered. Scroll through the list of suggested words by tapping the right or left arrows. Tap a suggestion to select it. Please note that this function is not available in all languages. When unavailable, this row will not be shown on the keyboard.



2. Available characters are adapted to the language selected for the keyboard (see number 7 below). Tap a character to enter it.



3. Different buttons are displayed here depending on the context in which the keyboard is used, e.g. @ to enter an email address or the return key to **start a new line**.



4. This button hides the keyboard. In cases where this is not possible, the button will not be displayed.



5. Used to enter uppercase letters. Tap once to enter one uppercase letter and then continue with lowercase letters. Tap twice for caps lock (all text will be entered in uppercase letters). Tap again to return the keyboard to lowercase

letters. In this mode, the first letter after a period, exclamation point or question mark will be automatically entered in uppercase form. The first letter entered in text fields will also be uppercase. In text fields intended for names or addresses, each word will be automatically started with an uppercase letter. In text fields intended for passwords, website addresses or email addresses, all letters will automatically be lowercase unless uppercase is selected.



6. Used to enter numbers. The number keyboard (2) will then be displayed. Tap



, which is shown instead of



in number mode, to return to the keyboard with letters, or



to display the keyboard with special characters.



7. Used to change the keyboard language, e.g. EN. The available characters and word suggestions (1) vary depending on the selected language. In order to toggle between keyboard languages, the languages must first be added under Settings.



8. Space bar.



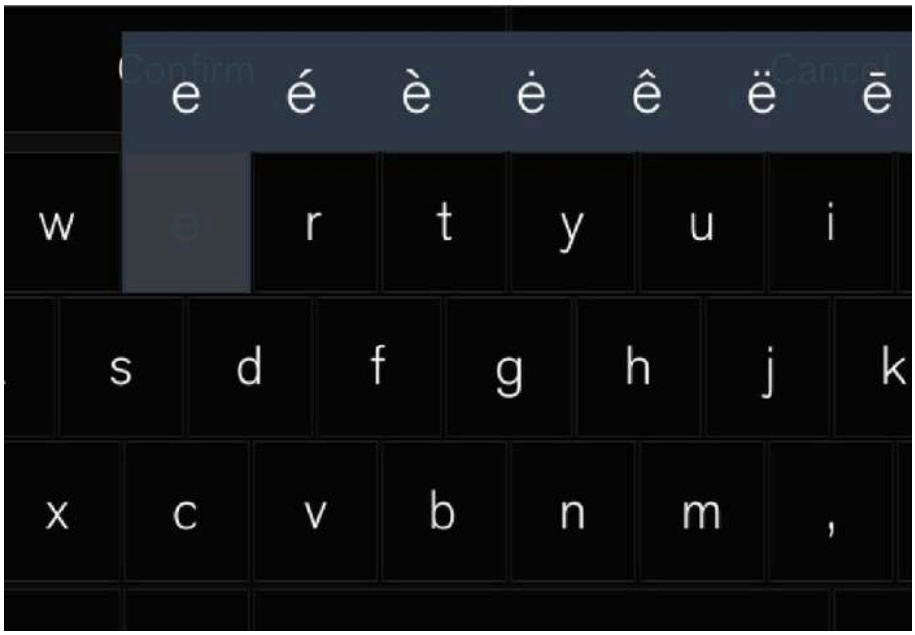
9. Delete. Tap to delete characters one at a time. Press and hold to delete multiple characters quickly.



10. Used to change to handwriting mode.

Tap the confirm button over the keyboard (not shown in illustration) once to confirm the text that has been entered. The button's appearance differs depending on the context.

Variants of letters or characters

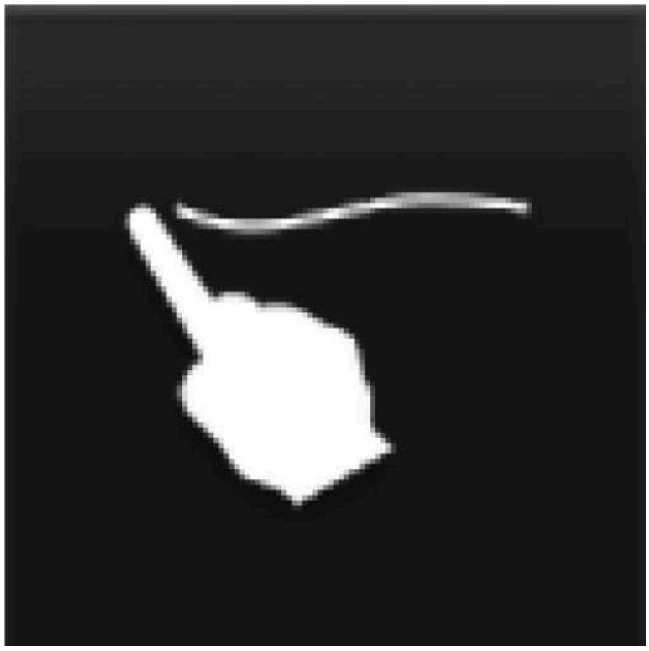


Variants of a letter or character, e.g. **é** or **è**, can be entered by pressing and holding the letter or character. A box containing possible variants of the letter or character will appear. Tap the desired variant. If no variant is selected, the original letter/character will be used.

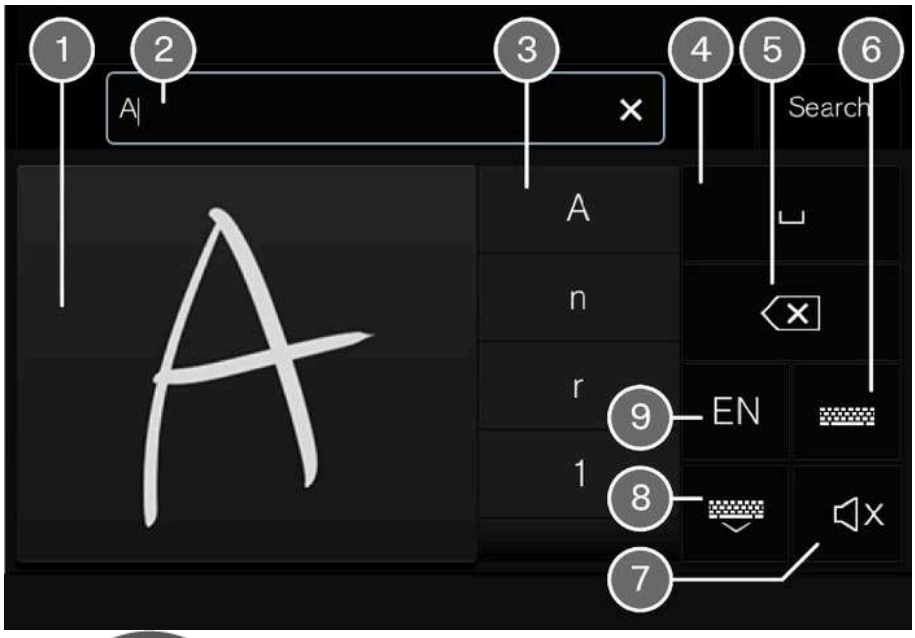
1 For Asian languages.

Entering characters, letters and words by hand in the center display

Characters, letters and words can be entered in the center display by handwriting them on the touchscreen.



Tap the button on the center display's keyboard to switch from the keyboard to handwriting mode.





1. Space for entering characters/letters/words/parts of words.



2. Text field displaying suggested characters or words[1] as they are written on the screen (1).



3. Suggestions for characters/letters/words/parts of words. You can scroll through the list.



4. Space bar. Blank spaces can be created by writing a dash (–) in the field for handwritten letters (1). See "Writing blank spaces in free-text fields" below.



5. Delete. Tap once to erase one character/letter at a time. Wait a moment before tapping again to erase the next character, letter etc.



6. Return to the standard keyboard layout.



7. Switch off/on screen tap sounds.



8. Hide the keyboard. In cases where this is not possible, the button will not be displayed.



9. Change language for text input.

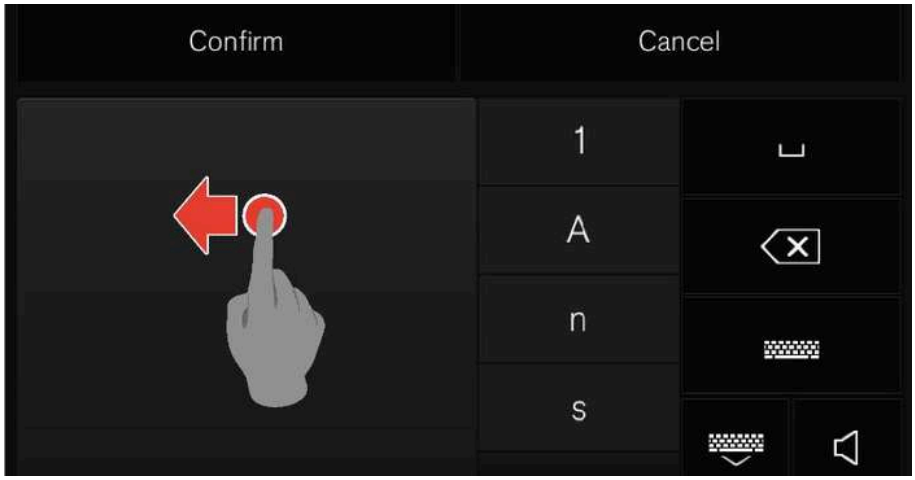
Handwriting characters/letters/words

Write a character, a letter, a word or parts of a word in the field for handwritten letters (1). Write the word or part of the word vertically or horizontally.
A number of suggestions for characters, letters or words will be displayed (3). The most likely will be shown at the top of the list.

> **IMPORTANT**
> Do not use sharp objects on the screen as this could cause scratches.

The character/letter/word will be entered automatically after a short pause if no other action is taken.
The character/letter/word at the top of the list will be used. Tap one of the other characters/letters/words in the list to use it instead.

Erasing/changing handwritten characters/letters

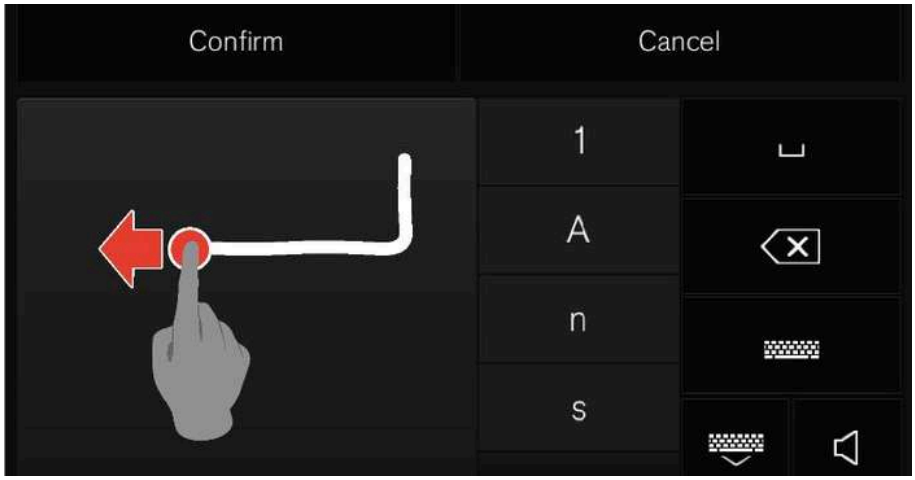


Erase text in the text field (2) by swiping over the handwriting field (1).

Characters/letters can be erased or changed in several ways:

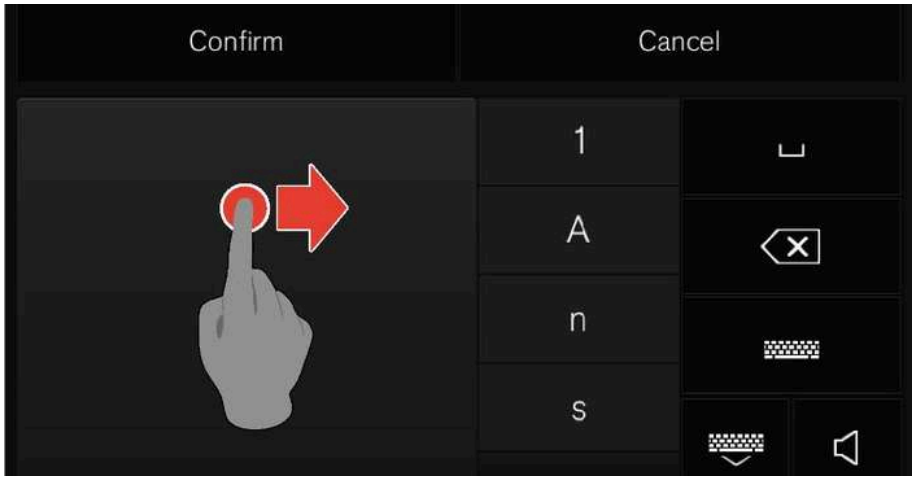
- Tap the desired letter or word in the list (3).
- Tap the delete button (5) to erase the letter and start again.
- Swipe horizontally from right to left2 over the handwriting field (1). Erase several letters at once by swiping over the area several times.
- Tap the X box in the text field (2) to erase all written text.

New lines in free-text fields in handwriting mode



Create a new line by drawing above the characters in the handwriting field as shown in the illustration3.

Writing blank spaces in free-text fields



Make a blank space by drawing a line from left to right[4].

OMRON SOFTWARE

compactWnn © OMORON SOFTWARE Co.,Ltd. 2021 All Rights Reserved.

1 Certain system languages only.

2 For Arabic keyboards, swipe in the other direction. Swiping from right to left will create a blank space.

3 For Arabic keyboards, draw the same character, but in mirror image.

4 For Arabic keyboards, draw the line from right to left.

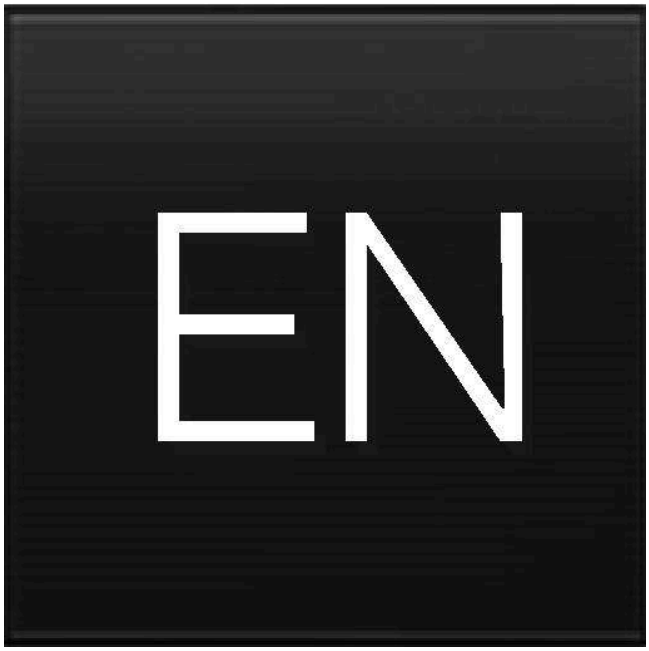
Changing keyboard language in the center display

In order to toggle between keyboard languages, the languages must first be added under Settings.

Adding or deleting languages in Settings

The keyboard is automatically set to the same language as the system language. The keyboard language can be manually changed without affecting the system language.
Tap Settings in Top view.
Tap System → System Languages and Units → Keyboard Layouts.
Select one or more languages in the list.
It is now possible to toggle between the selected languages using the keyboard.
If no language has been selected under Settings, the keyboard will remain in the same language as the vehicle's system language.

Toggling between keyboard languages



If more than one language has been selected in Settings, the button in the keyboard can be used to switch between the different languages.

To toggle between keyboard languages from the list:
Press and hold the button.
A list will appear.
Select the desired language. If more than four languages have been selected under Settings, you can scroll through the list shown on the keyboard.
The keyboard and word suggestions will be adapted to the selected language.
To change keyboard language without displaying the list:
Tap the button.
The keyboard layout will change to the next language in the list without displaying the list.

Displaying trip statistics in the center display

See Displaying trip statistics in the center display.

Manual in center display

See Manual in center display.

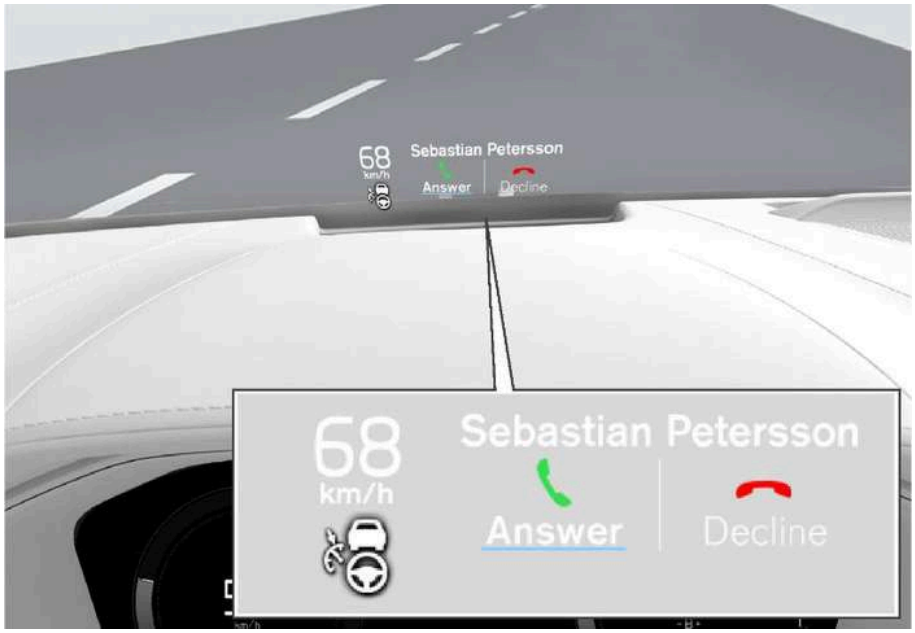
Navigating in the center display Manual

See Navigating in the center display Manual.

Head-up display

Head-up-display

The head-up display is a complement to the instrument panel and projects information from the instrument panel onto the windshield. The projected images can only be seen from the driver's seat.



The head-up display projects warnings and information related to speed, cruise control functions, navigation, etc. onto the windshield in the driver's field of vision. Traffic information and incoming phone calls can also be shown on the head-up display.

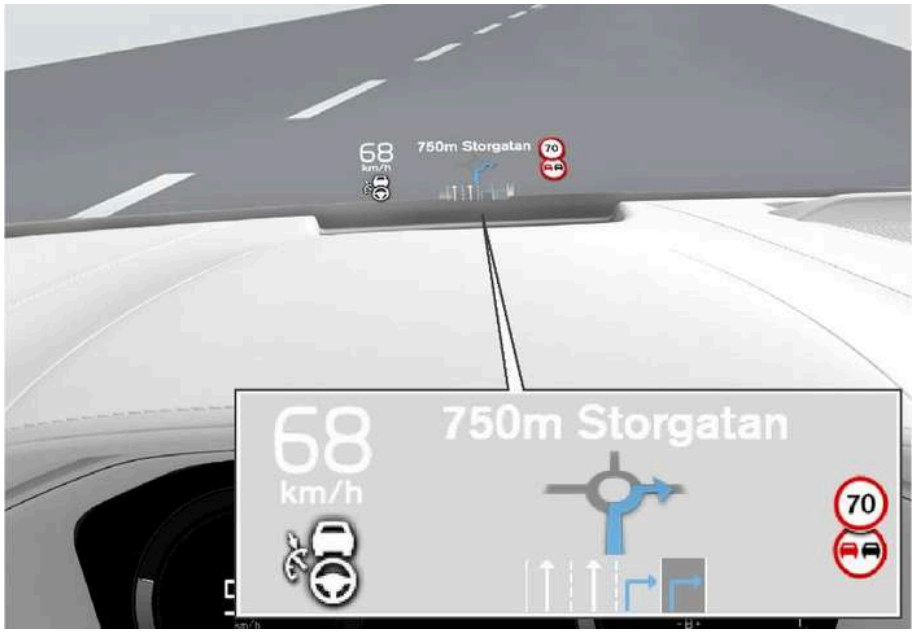
NOTE

The driver's ability to see information in the head-up display may be impeded by

- the use of polarizing sunglasses
- a driving posture in which the driver is not centered in the seat
- objects on the display unit's glass cover
- unfavorable lighting conditions.

IMPORTANT

The information is projected from a display unit located in the dashboard. To help prevent damage to the display unit's glass cover, do not place any objects on the glass and prevent objects from falling onto it.



Examples of what might be shown on the display.

1. Speed
2. Cruise control
3. Navigation
4. Road signs

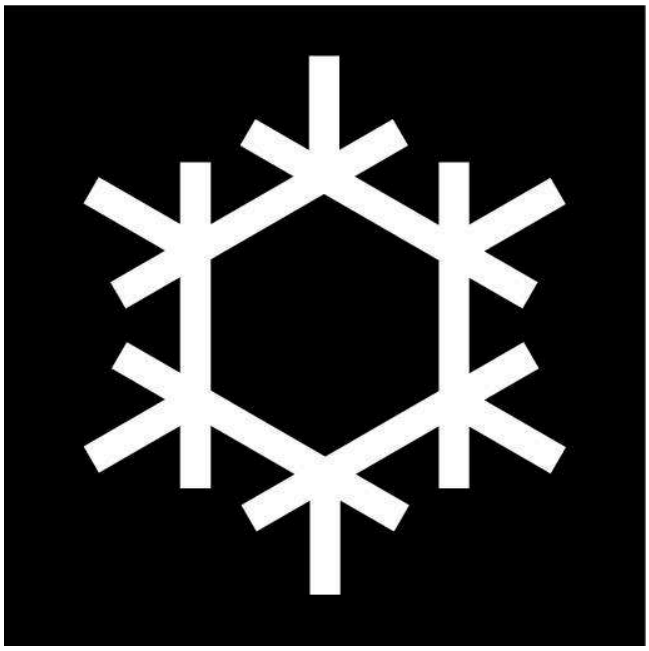
A number of symbols may be projected temporarily onto the head-up display, including:



If the warning symbol appears, read the warning message in the instrument panel.



If the information symbol appears, read the warning message in the instrument panel.



The snowflake symbol will illuminate if there is a risk of slippery conditions.

> **NOTE**
> People with certain types of vision problems may experience headaches or eye strain when using the head-up display.

City Safety in head-up-display

If a collision warning is given, the information in the head-up display will be replaced by a City Safety warning signal. This graphic will illuminate even if the head-up display is turned off.



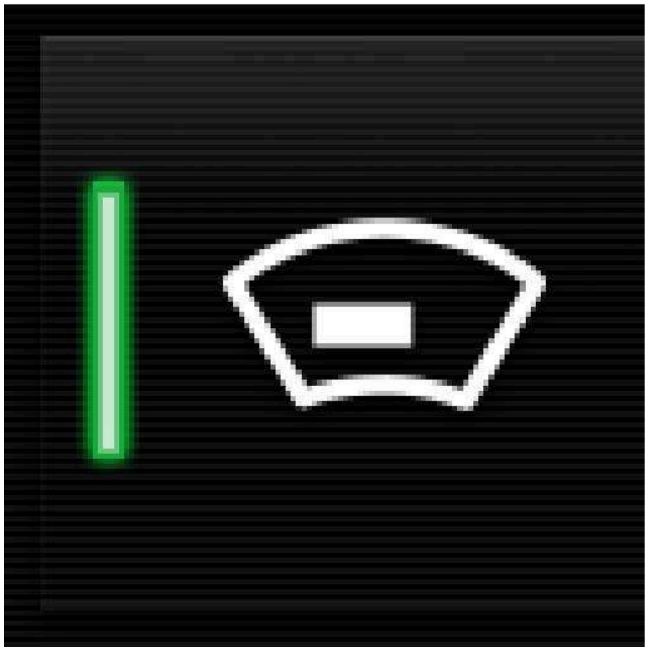
The warning symbol for City Safety will flash to get the driver's attention if there is a risk of collision.

Replacing a windshield with head-up display

Vehicles with a head-up display have a special type of windshield that meets the requirements for displaying projected information.
For assistance with windshield replacements, contact Polestar Customer Support. The correct type of replacement windshield must be used in order for the head-up display to function properly.

Activating and deactivating the head-up display

The head-up display can be activated and deactivated when the vehicle has been started.



Press the Head-up Display button in the center display's Function view. An indicator light in the button will illuminate when the function is activated.

Head-up display settings

See Head-up display settings.

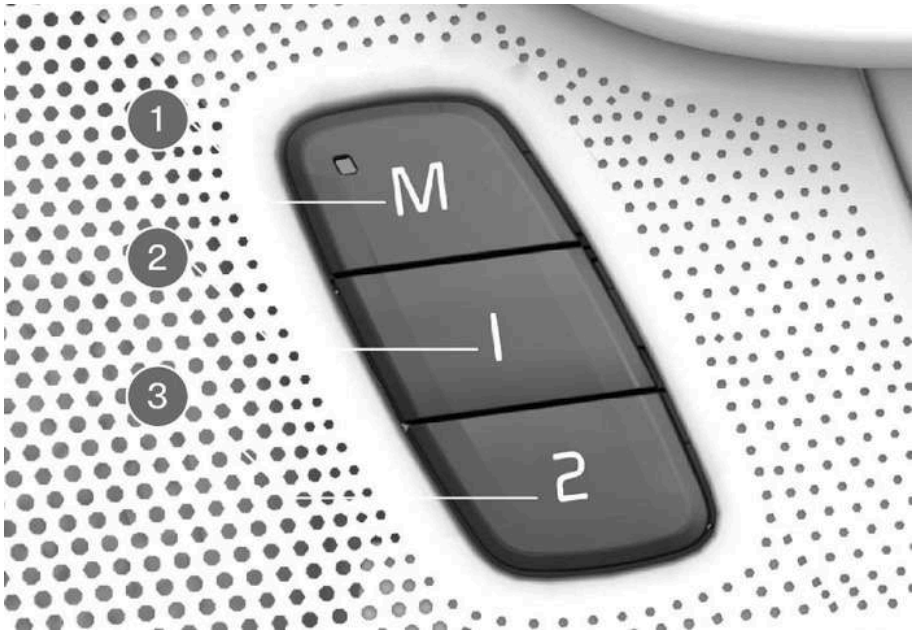
Cleaning the head-up display

Carefully wipe the glass covering the head-up display unit with a clean and dry microfiber cloth. If necessary, the cloth may be slightly moistened.
Never use strong stain removers. For difficult stains, a special cleaning agent may be needed. Contact Polestar Customer Support for more information.

Using stored positions for seats, mirrors and head-up display

If the positions for the power seat, door mirrors and head-up display have been stored, they can be activated using the memory buttons.

Using a stored position



To use a stored position, press and hold one of the memory buttons 1 (2) or 2 (3) until the seat reaches the stored position.

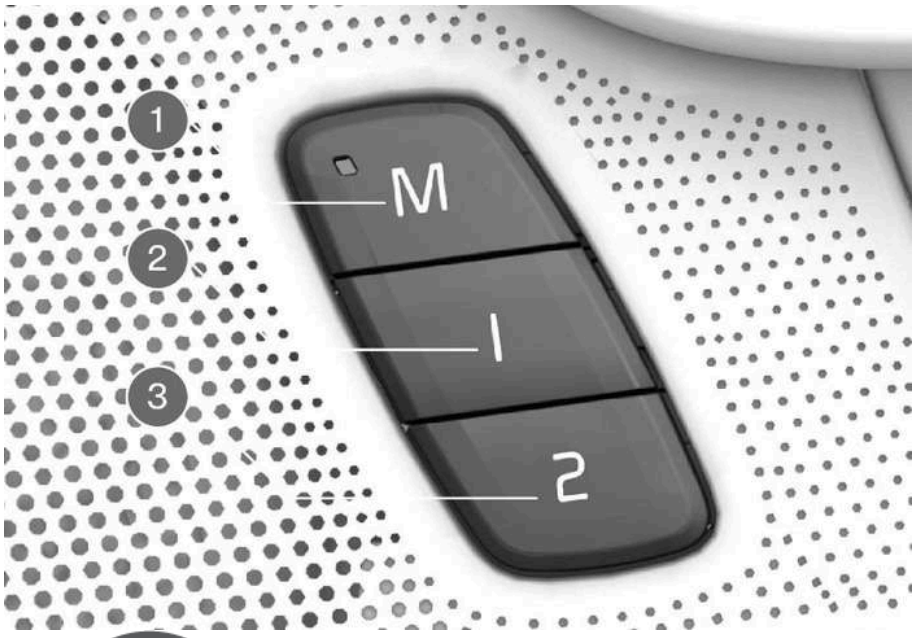
If the memory button is released, the seat, door mirrors and head-up display will stop moving.

WARNING

- Because the driver's seat can be adjusted with the ignition off, children should never be left unattended in the vehicle.
- Movement of the seat can be STOPPED at any time by pressing any button on the power seat control panel.
- Do not adjust the seat while driving.
- The seat should be adjusted so that the brake pedal can be depressed fully. In addition, position the seat as far rearward as comfort and control allow.
- The seat rails on the floor must not be obstructed in any way when the seat is in motion.

Storing positions for seats, mirrors and head-up display

Adjustment settings for the power seat, door mirrors and head-up display can be stored in the memory buttons.
Two different positions for the power seat, door mirrors and head-up display can be stored using the memory buttons.
The buttons are located on the inside of either one or both front doors.



1. Button **M** for storing a setting.
2. Memory button.
3. Memory button.

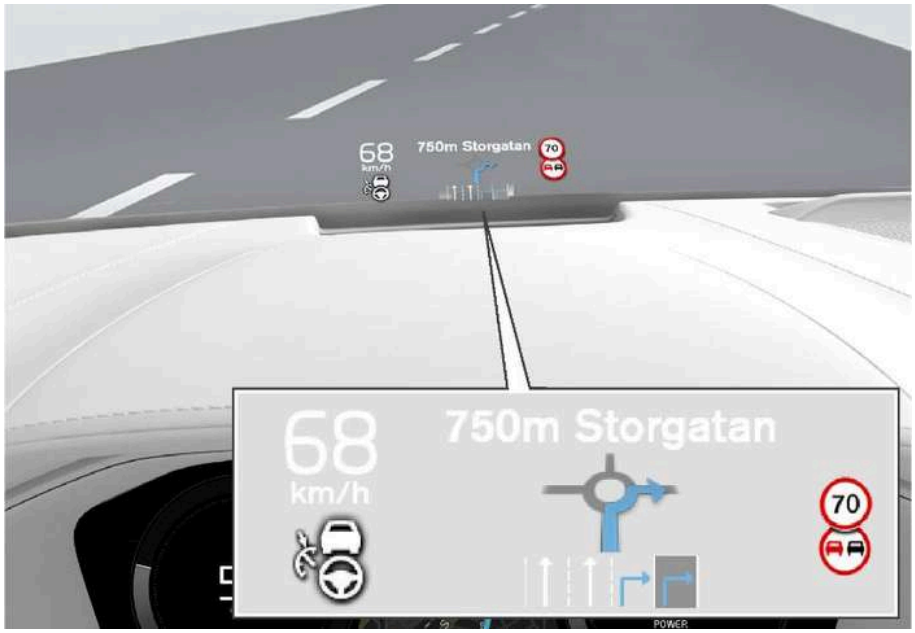
Storing positions

Adjust the seat, door mirrors and head-up display to the desired position.
Press and hold the M button. The indicator light in the button will illuminate.
Within three seconds, press and hold the 1 or 2 button.
When the position has been stored in the memory button, an audio signal will sound and the indicator light in the M button will go out.
If none of the memory buttons are pressed within three seconds, the M button will go out and no position will be stored.

The seats, door mirrors or head-up display must be readjusted before a new memory position can be set.

Navigation system in head-up display

The navigation system can be presented and controlled in several different ways, e.g. via the head-up display.



Navigation system in windshield.

The driver can also get guidance and information from the navigation system in the head-up display on the lower section of the windshield.

You can make settings to specify if the navigation system should be shown in the head-up display, as well as the position of the information field.

Symbols and messages

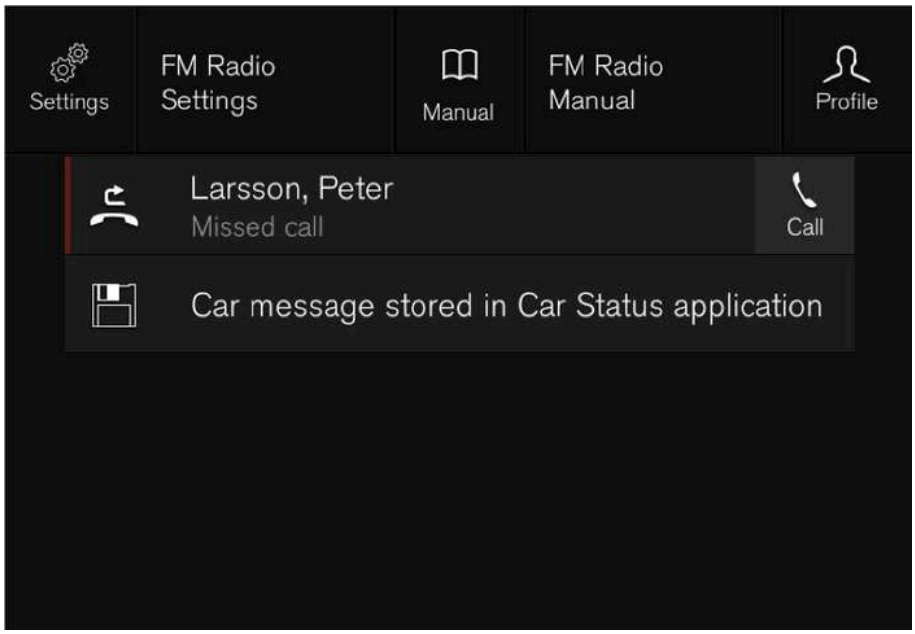
Handling messages

Messages in the center display

See Messages in the center display.

Handling messages in the center display

Messages in the center display are handled in the center display's views.



Example of message in the center display's Top view.

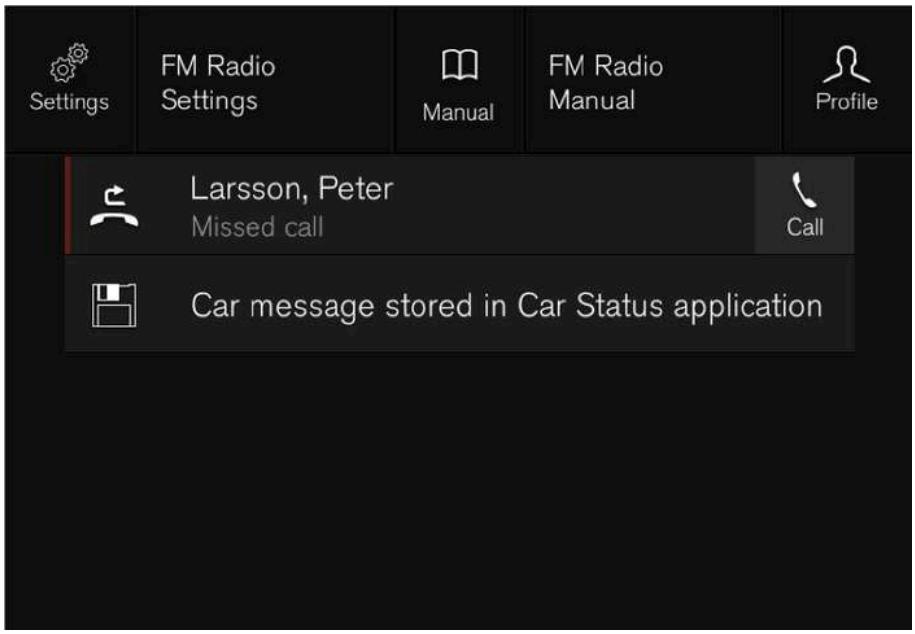
Some messages in the center display have a button (or several buttons in a pop-up message) to e.g. activate/deactivate a function related to the message.

Handling new messages

For messages with buttons:
Tap the button to perform the action or let the message automatically time-out after a short period.
The message will disappear from the status bar.
For messages without buttons:
Close the message by tapping it or let the message automatically time-out after a short period.
The message will disappear from the status bar.
Messages that need to be saved are stored in Top view in the center display.

Handling messages saved from the center display

Messages saved from the instrument panel and center displays are handled in the center display.



Examples of saved messages and possible selections in Top view.

Messages that have been shown in the center display and that need to be saved are stored in the center display's Top view.

Reading saved messages

Open Top view in the center display.
A list of saved messages will be displayed. Messages with an arrow to the right can be expanded.
Tap a message to expand/minimize it.
More information about the message will appear in the list and the image to the left of the app will display information about the message in graphic form.

Handling saved messages

Some messages have a button to e.g. activate/deactivate a function related to the message.

Tap the button to perform the action.
Saved messages in Top view are automatically deleted when the ignition is switched off.

Messages in the instrument panel

See Messages in the instrument panel.

Handling messages in the instrument panel

Messages in the instrument panel are controlled using the right-side steering wheel keypad.



Examples of messages in the instrument panel and the right-side steering wheel keypad.

1. Left/right

2. Confirm

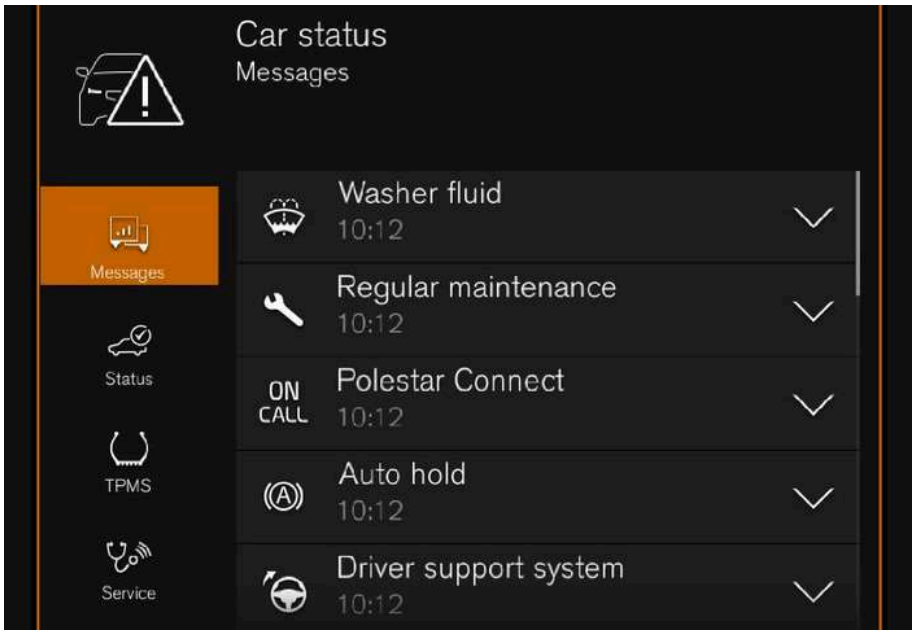
Some messages in the instrument panel contain one or more buttons for e.g. confirming the message or accepting a request.

Handling new messages

For messages with buttons:
Navigate between the buttons by tapping left or right (1).
Confirm your selection by pressing confirm (2).
The message will disappear from the instrument panel.
For messages without buttons:
Close the message by pressing confirm (2) or let the message automatically time-out after a short period.
The message will disappear from the instrument panel.
Messages that need to be saved are stored in the Car Status app, which can be opened from the App view in the center display. The message Vehicle message stored in Car Status app will simultaneously appear in the center display.

Handling messages saved from the instrument panel

Messages saved from the instrument panel and center displays are handled in the center display.



Saved messages can be viewed in the Car Status app.



The messages displayed in the instrument panel that need to be saved are stored in the Car Status app in the center display. The message Vehicle message stored in Car Status app will simultaneously appear in the center display.

Reading saved messages

To read a saved message immediately:
Tap the button to the right of the message Vehicle message stored in Car Status app in the center display.
The saved message will be displayed in the Car Status app.
To read saved messages at a later time:
Open the Car Status app from App view in the center display.
The app will open in the bottom tile of Home view.
Select the Messages tab in the app.
A list of saved messages will be displayed.
Tap a message to expand/minimize it.

More information about the message will appear in the list and the image to the left of the app will display information about the message in graphic form.

Handling saved messages

There is a button available in expanded mode for reading the manual.

Reading the manual for saved messages:
With the message in expanded form, tap Manual to read relevant information about the message in the manual.
The manual will open in the center display and provide information related to the message.
Saved messages in the app are automatically deleted each time the engine is started.

BLIS messages

A number of messages related to BLIS[1] may be displayed in the instrument panel. Several examples are provided below.

Message	Meaning
Blind spot sensor Service required	The system is not functioning as intended. Contact Polestar Customer Support.

A text message can be erased by briefly pressing the ◯ button in the center of the right-side steering wheel keypad.

If a message cannot be erased, contact Polestar Customer Support.

1 Blind Spot Information

City Safety messages

A number of messages related to City Safety may be displayed in the instrument panel. Several examples are provided below.

Message	Meaning
City Safety Automatic intervention	When City Safety is braking or has activated the automatic braking function, one or more symbols may illuminate in the instrument panel and a text message may be displayed.
City Safety Reduced functionality Service required	The system is not functioning as intended. Contact Polestar Customer Support.

A text message can be erased by briefly pressing the ◯ button in the center of the right-side steering wheel keypad.

If a message cannot be erased, contact Polestar Customer Support.

Cross Traffic Alert messages

A number of messages related to Cross Traffic Alert (CTA) may be displayed in the instrument panel. Several examples are provided below.

Message	Meaning
Blind spot sensor Service required	The system is not functioning as intended. Contact Polestar Customer Support.

A text message can be erased by briefly pressing the ◯ button in the center of the right-side steering wheel keypad.

If a message cannot be erased, contact Polestar Customer Support.

***** Option/accessory.

1 Warning for crossing traffic when the vehicle is backing up.

Electronic Stability Control symbols and messages

A number of symbols and messages related to Electronic Stability Control (ESC1) may be displayed in the instrument panel. Several examples are provided below.

Symbol	Message	Meaning
	Steady glow for approx. 2 seconds	System check when the engine is started.
	Flashing light	The system is actively operating.
	Steady glow	Sport mode is activated. **Note:** The system is not deactivated in this mode, but has partially reduced functionality.
	ESC Temporarily off	The system's functionality has been temporarily reduced due to high brake system temperatures. The function will be automatically reactivated when the brakes have cooled.

Symbol	Message	Meaning
	ESC Service required	The system is not functioning properly. Stop the vehicle in a safe place, turn off the engine and then restart it.

A text message can be erased by briefly pressing the ◯ button in the center of the right-side steering wheel keypad.

If a message cannot be erased, contact Polestar Customer Support.

1 Electronic Stability Control

Symbols and messages for Adaptive Cruise Control

A number of symbols and messages relating to Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC2) may be displayed in the instrument panel and/or the head-up display.

Symbol	Message	Meaning
	The symbol is WHITE	The vehicle is maintaining the set speed.
	Adaptive Cruise Contr. Unavailable The symbol is GRAY	Adaptive Cruise Control is in standby mode.
	Adaptive Cruise Contr. Service required The symbol is GRAY	The system is not functioning as intended. Contact Polestar Customer Support.
	Windscreen sensor Sensor blocked, see Manual	Clean the windshield in front of the camera and radar sensors.

A text message can be erased by briefly pressing the ◯ button in the center of the right-side steering wheel keypad.

If a message cannot be erased, contact Polestar Customer Support.

* Option/accessory.

1 Depending on market, this function can be either standard or optional.

2 Adaptive Cruise Control

Pilot Assist symbols and messages

A number of symbols and messages relating to Pilot Assist may be displayed in the instrument panel and/or the head-up display.

Symbol	Message	Meaning
	Gray steering wheel symbol	Indicates disabled steering assistance. The steering wheel is illuminated when Pilot Assist is providing steering assistance.
	Symbol for hands on the wheel	The system cannot detect the driver's hands on the steering wheel. Put your hands on the steering wheel and actively steer the vehicle.
	Windscreen sensor Sensor blocked, see Manual	Clean the windshield in front of the camera and radar sensors.

A text message can be erased by briefly pressing the ◯ button in the center of the right-side steering wheel keypad.

If a message cannot be erased, contact Polestar Customer Support.

* Option/accessory.

1 Depending on market, this function can be either standard or optional.

Lane Keeping Aid symbols and messages

A number of symbols and messages related to Lane Keeping Aid (LKA1) may be displayed in the instrument panel. Several examples are provided below.

Symbol	Message	Meaning
	Driver support system Reduced functionality Service required	The system is not functioning as intended. Contact Polestar Customer Support.

Symbol	Message	Meaning
	Windscreen sensor Sensor blocked, see Manual	The camera's ability to detect the lane in front of the vehicle is reduced.
	Lane Keeping Aid Apply steering	LKA's steering assistance is disabled when the driver's hands are not on the wheel. Follow the instructions and steer the vehicle.
	Lane Keeping Aid Standby until steering applied	LKA will go into standby mode until the driver begins steering the vehicle again.

A text message can be erased by briefly pressing the ◯ button in the center of the right-side steering wheel keypad.

If a message cannot be erased, contact Polestar Customer Support.

1 Lane Keeping Aid

Lane Keeping Aid display

Lane Keeping Aid (LKA1) uses symbols in the instrument panel for various situations.



Some examples of symbols and descriptions of the situations in which they might appear are provided below.

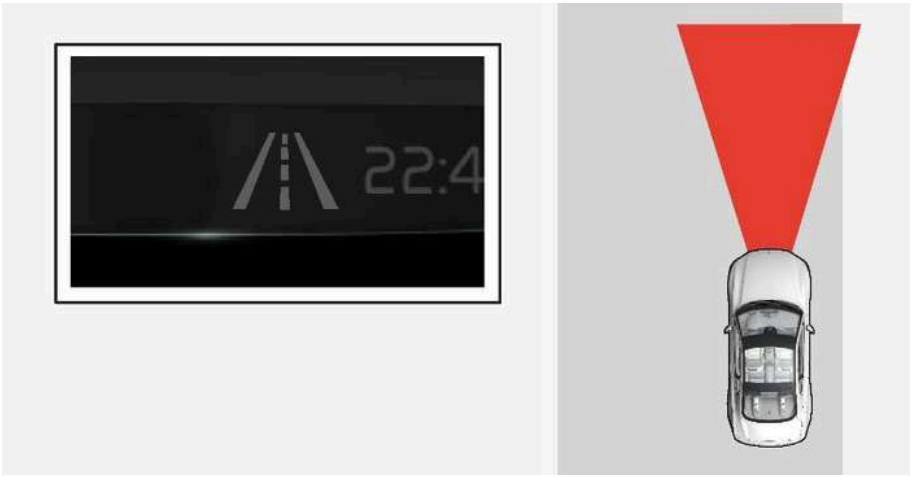
Available



Available – the marker lines in the symbol are WHITE.

Lane Keeping Aid is able to detect one or both of the traffic lane's side marker lines.

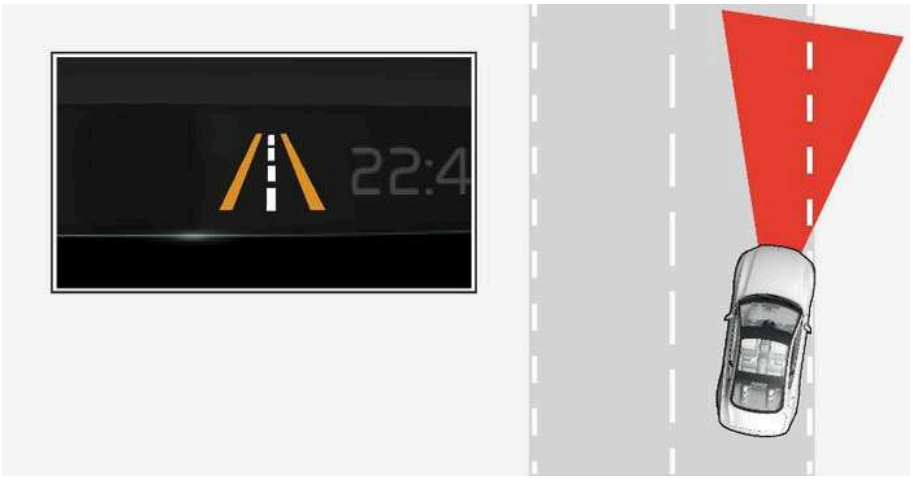
Unavailable



Unavailable – the marker lines in the symbol are GRAY.

Lane Keeping Aid is unable to detect the lane marker lines, the vehicle's speed is too low or the road is too narrow.

Steering/warning indicator



Steering/warning – the marker lines in the symbol are COLORED.

Indicates that the Lane Keeping Aid system is alerting the driver and/or attempting to steer the vehicle back into the lane.

1 Lane Keeping Aid

Park Assist symbols and messages

Symbols and messages for the Park Assist system (PAS1) may be displayed in the instrument panel and/or the center display. Several examples are provided below.

Symbol	Message	Meaning
		The rear Park Assist sensors are **turned off** and no acoustic warnings for obstacles/objects will be provided.
	Park Assist System Sensors blocked, cleaning needed	One or more of the sensors are blocked. Check and clean/remove the obstacle as soon as possible.
	Park Assist System Unavailable Service required	The system is not functioning as intended. Contact Polestar Customer Support.

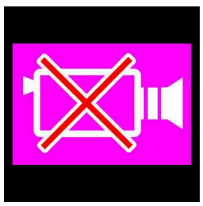
A text message can be erased by briefly pressing the ◯ button in the center of the right-side steering wheel keypad.

If a message cannot be erased, contact Polestar Customer Support.

1 Park Assist System

Park Assist Camera symbols and messages

Symbols and messages for the Park Assist Camera (PAC1) may be displayed in the instrument panel and/or the center display. Several examples are provided below.

Symbol	Message	Meaning
		The rear Park Assist sensors are **turned off** and no acoustic warnings or field markings for obstacles/objects will be provided.
		The camera is not functioning properly.

Symbol	Message	Meaning
	Park Assist System Sensors blocked, cleaning needed	One or more of the sensors are blocked. Check and clean/remove the obstacle as soon as possible.
	Park Assist System Unavailable Service required	The system is not functioning as intended. Contact Polestar Customer Support.

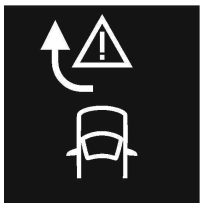
A text message can be erased by briefly pressing the ◯ button in the center of the right-side steering wheel keypad.

If a message cannot be erased, contact Polestar Customer Support.

1 Park Assist Camera

Symbols and messages for steering assistance during collision risks

A number of symbols and messages related to steering assistance may be displayed in the instrument panel. Several examples are provided below.

Symbol	Message	Meaning
	Collision avoidance Automatic intervention	When the function is activated, a message will appear to alert the driver.
	Windscreen sensor Sensor blocked, see Manual	The camera's ability to detect the lane in front of the vehicle is reduced.

A text message can be erased by briefly pressing the ◯ button in the center of the right-side steering wheel keypad.

If a message cannot be erased, contact Polestar Customer Support.

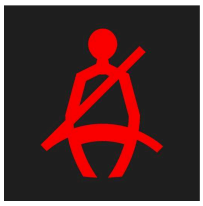
Symbols in the center display status bar

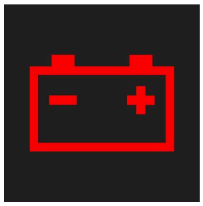
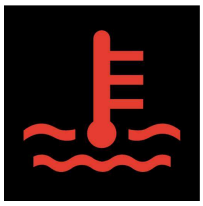
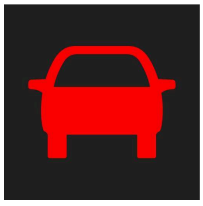
See Symbols in the center display status bar.

Indicator and warning symbols

Indicator and warning symbols alert the driver that a function is active, that a symbol is working, or that an error or serious fault has occurred.

Red symbols

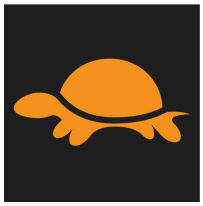
	**WARNING** The red warning symbol illuminates to indicate that a fault has been detected that could affect safety or driveability. An explanatory message will be simultaneously displayed in the instrument panel. The warning symbol may also illuminate in combination with other symbols.
	**Seat belt reminder** Lights up or flashes when someone in the vehicle has not buckled their seat belt.
	**Airbags** A fault has been detected in one of the vehicle's safety systems. Read the message in the instrument panel and contact Polestar Customer Support.
 1  2	**Fault in brake system** A fault has occurred in the brake system. Read the message in the instrument panel and contact Polestar Customer Support.
 1	**Parking brake** Steady light: the parking brake is activated. Flashing: a fault has occurred in the parking brake. Read the message in the instrument panel.

 2	
	**Electrical system malfunction** A fault has occurred in the electrical system. Contact Polestar Customer Support.
	**High engine temperature** Engine temperature too high. Read the message in the instrument panel.
	**Collision risk** City Safety warns the driver if there is a risk of a collision with another vehicle, pedestrian, cyclist or large animal.
	**Low oil pressure** Stop the engine immediately and check the engine oil level. Add oil if necessary. If the symbol illuminates and the oil level is normal, contact Polestar Customer Support.

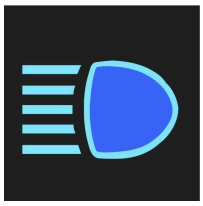
Amber symbols

	**Information** A problem has occurred in one of the vehicle's systems. Read the message in the instrument panel. The information symbol may also illuminate in combination with other symbols.

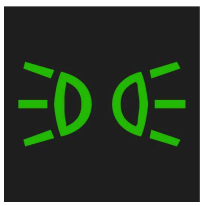
 1  2	**Fault in brake system** A fault has occurred in the brake system. Read the message in the instrument panel.
 1  2	**Fault in ABS system** The system is not functioning properly. The vehicle's regular brakes will still work, but without the ABS function.
	**Emission control system** Emissions systems fault. Contact Polestar Customer Support.
	**Rear fog light** Rear fog light on.

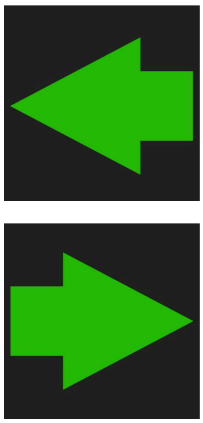
	**Tire pressure system** Tire pressure low. If there is a fault in the tire pressure system, the symbol will first flash for approximately 1 minute and then glow steadily. This may occur if the system cannot detect or alert the driver of low tire pressure as intended.
	**Fault in headlight system** A fault has occurred in the headlight system. Read the message in the instrument panel.
	**Lane Keeping Aid** Lane Keeping Aid is alerting/intervening.
	**Reduced performance** Temporary fault in driveline. Read the message in the instrument panel.
	**Stability system** Steady glow: a fault has occurred in the system. Flashing: the system is working.
	**Stability system, Sport mode** Sport mode is activated.

Blue symbols

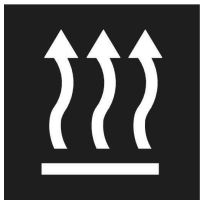
	**Active high beam** Active high beams are activated and on.
	**High beams** High beams on.

Green symbols

	**Auto-hold brake** The function is activated and the service brake or parking brake is operating.
	**Fog lights** Front fog light on.
	**Parking lights** The parking lights are on.

	**Left/right turn signals** A turn signal is being used.

White/Gray symbols

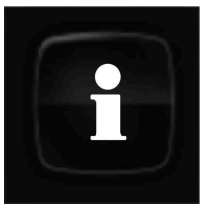
	**Active high beam** Active high beams are activated but not on.
	**Preconditioning** Engine and passenger compartment heater/air conditioning precondition the vehicle.
	**Lane Keeping Aid** White symbol: Lane Keeping Aid is activated and lane marking lines have been detected. Gray symbol: Lane Keeping Aid is activated and lane marking lines have not been detected.
	**Rain sensor** The rain sensor is activated.

1 Canadian models.

2 US models.

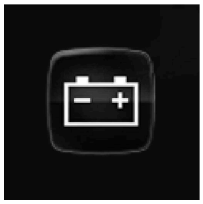
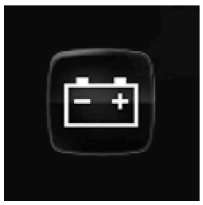
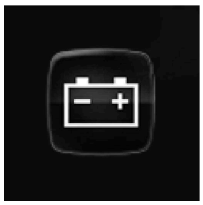
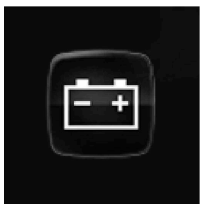
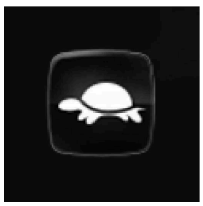
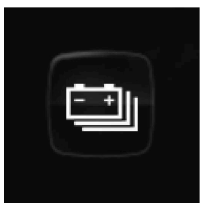
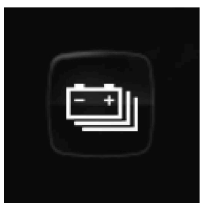
Parking climate symbols and messages

A number of symbols and messages related to parking climate may be displayed in the instrument panel. Messages related to parking climate can also be displayed in a device that has the Polestar 1 app.

Symbol	Message	Meaning
	Parking climate Service required	Parking climate is not functioning properly. Contact Polestar Customer Support to have the function checked as soon as possible.
	Parking climate Temporarily unavailable	Parking climate is temporarily not functioning properly. If the problem persists, contact Polestar Customer Support to have the function checked.
	Parking climate Unavailable Charge level too low	The parking climate cannot be activated because the hybrid battery's charge level is too low to start the parking heater. Start the vehicle.
	Parking climate Unavailable, not connected to power supply	The parking climate cannot be activated if the charging cable is not connected. Connect the charging cable.
	Parking climate Limited Charge level too low	Parking climate will only run for a limited time when the hybrid battery's charge level is too low. Start the vehicle.

Hybrid-related symbols and messages in the instrument panel

A number of symbols and messages related to hybrid operation may be displayed in the instrument panel. They may also appear in combination with general indicator and warning symbols and disappear when the necessary action has been taken.

Symbol	Message	Meaning
	12 V Battery Charging fault, service urgent. Drive to workshop	Hybrid battery fault. Contact Polestar Customer Support to have the battery checked as soon as possible.
	12 V Battery Charging fault Stop safely	Hybrid battery fault. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and contact Polestar Customer Support to have the battery checked.
	12 V Battery Fuse failure Service required	Hybrid battery fault. Contact Polestar Customer Support to have the function checked as soon as possible.
	HV battery Overheated, stop safely	The hybrid battery's temperature seems to be rising at an abnormal rate. Stop the vehicle and turn off the engine. Wait at least 5 minutes before driving. Contact Polestar Customer Support or inspect the vehicle to make sure everything seems normal before continuing to drive.
	Reduced performance Max vehicle speed limited	The hybrid battery's charge level is too low for driving at high speeds. Charge the battery as soon as possible.
	Propulsion system Harsh behavior at low speed, vehicle ok to use	The hybrid system is not functioning properly. Contact Polestar Customer Support to have the function checked as soon as possible.
	Hybrid system failure Service required	The hybrid system is not functioning. Contact Polestar Customer Support to have the function checked as soon as possible.

Symbol	Message	Meaning
	Charge cable Remove before start	Displayed when the driver attempts to start the vehicle with the charging cable still connected. Remove the charging cable and close the charger cover.

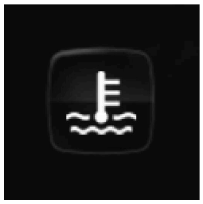
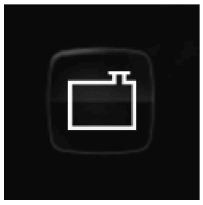
Overheating of engine and transmission

In certain driving conditions, such as driving in mountainous areas or hot weather, there is a risk of the engine or transmission overheating, especially when carrying heavy loads.

- Engine power may be temporarily limited.
- Remove any auxiliary lights mounted in front of the grille when driving in hot weather.
- If the temperature in the engine's cooling system becomes too high, a warning symbol will appear in the instrument panel along with the message Engine temperature High temperature Stop safely. Pull over to a safe location and let the engine idle for a few minutes to cool down.
- If the message Engine temperature High temperature Turn off engine or Engine coolant Level low, turn off engine is displayed, stop the vehicle and turn off the engine.
- If the transmission begins to overheat, an alternative gear shifting program will be selected. An integrated protective function will also be activated, the warning symbol will illuminate and the message Transmission warm Reduce speed to lower temperature or Transmission hot Stop safely, wait for cooling will be displayed in the instrument panel. Follow the recommendations given by reducing speed or stopping the vehicle safely and letting the engine idle for a few minutes to let the transmission cool.
- If the vehicle begins to overheat, the air conditioning may be temporarily switched off.
- After a prolonged period of driving in demanding conditions, do not turn off the engine immediately after stopping.

> **NOTE**
> It is normal for the engine's cooling fan to operate for a short time after the engine is switched off.

Symbols in the instrument panel

Symbol	Meaning
	High engine temperature. Follow the recommendations provided.
	Low coolant level. Follow the recommendations provided.

Symbol	Meaning
	Transmission hot/overheated/cooling. Follow the recommendations provided.

Voice recognition

Climate control system voice commands

Voice commands can be used for the climate control system to e.g. change temperature, activate seat heating or change blower speed.
Tap and say one of the following commands:

- "Climate" - starts a command dialog for climate controls and provides examples of commands that can be used.
- "Set temperature to X degrees" - sets desired temperature.
- "Raise temperature"/"Lower temperature" - raises/lowers the set temperature.
- "Sync temperature" - synchronizes the temperature for all climate zones in the vehicle with the temperature set for the driver's side.
- "Air on feet"/"Air on body" - opens the desired air vent.
- "Air on feet off"/"Air on body off" - closes the desired air vent.
- "Set fan to max"/"Turn off fan" - changes blower speed to Max/Off.
- "Raise fan speed"/"Lower fan speed" - raises/lowers the set blower speed.
- "Turn on auto" - activates automatic climate control.
- "Air condition on"/"Air condition off" - activates/deactivates air conditioning.
- "Recirculation on"/"Recirculation off" - activates/deactivates air recirculation.
- "Turn on defroster "/"Turn off defroster" - activates/deactivates window and door mirror defrosting.
- "Turn on max defroster"/"Turn off max defroster" - activates/deactivates max defroster.
- "Turn on rear defroster"/"Turn off rear defroster" - Activates/deactivates heated rear window and door mirrors.
- "Turn steering wheel heat on"/"Turn steering wheel heat off" - activates/deactivates heated steering wheel.
- "Raise steering wheel heat"/"Lower steering wheel heat" - raises/lowers the level of steering wheel heating.
- "Turn on seat heat"/"Turn off seat heat" - activates/deactivates seat heating.
- "Raise seat heat"/"Lower seat heat" - raises/lowers the level of seat heating.

Voice control for radio and media

Voice commands for the radio and media players are shown below.
Tap and say one of the following commands:

- "Media" - initiates a dialog for media and radio and displays examples of commands.
- "Play [artist]" - plays music by the selected artist.
- "Play [song title]" - plays the selected song.
- "Play [song title] from [album]" - plays the selected song from the selected album.
- "Play [radio station]" - starts the selected radio station.

- "Tune to [frequency]" - tunes to the selected radio frequency in the currently active waveband. If no radio source is active, the FM band will be started as default.
- "Tune to [frequency] [waveband]" - tunes to the selected radio frequency on the selected waveband.
- "Radio" - starts FM radio.
- "Radio FM" - starts FM radio.
- "SiriusXM" - starts SiriusXM radio
- "USB" - starts playback from USB.
- "iPod" - starts playback from iPod.
- "Bluetooth" - starts playback from a Bluetooth-connected media source.
- "Similar music" - plays music from a USB-connected device with music similar to that currently playing.

Voice Control

You can use voice commands to control functions in your vehicle such as the climate system, radio or a Bluetooth-connected phone. In vehicles with Sensus Navigation, the navigation system can also be controlled using voice commands.

What is voice control?

Voice control is a driver support function that can simplify the use of various commands in your vehicle. It works in general like a regular application in which you input information in a set order in order to perform a task, but instead of typing on a keypad, you use voice commands. It can therefore be a good idea to familiarize yourself with how, and in what order, a voice command should be spoken to get the desired result.

You can control certain infotainment and climate control functions through the voice control system by using voice commands. The system can respond verbally and by displaying information in the instrument panel.

> **WARNING**
> The driver is always responsible for ensuring that the vehicle is operated in a safe manner and that all applicable traffic regulations are followed.



Voice control microphone

System updates

The voice control system is continuously improved. Polestar recommends always having the latest version installed.

For information on updates, contact Polestar Customer Support.

Use voice recognition

Starting voice control



Voice commands are given through a "dialog" with the voice control system. Press the button for voice control on the right-side steering wheel keypad to activate the system and initiate a voice command dialog. When you press the button, a beep will sound and the voice control symbol will appear in the instrument panel.

This indicates that the system has begun listening and you can now begin speaking commands. As soon as you start speaking, the system will be trained to recognize and understand your voice. This takes several seconds and is done automatically, which means that you don't need to manually initiate any voice training.

These may include:

- Wait until after the tone, and then speak in your normal voice at a normal speed.
- Do not speak while the system is responding (the system is unable to process commands during this time).
- Avoid background noises in the passenger compartment by keeping doors and windows closed.

Generally, the system will listen for a basic command that is then followed by more detailed commands specifying what you want the system to do.

To change the audio volume of the system, turn the volume knob while the voice is speaking. It is possible to use other buttons while voice commands are being given. However, because other audio is silenced during dialog with the system, it is not possible to perform any functions connected to audio using the buttons.

Canceling voice control

Voice control can be canceled in different ways:

- Briefly press and say "Cancel".
- Press and hold the steering wheel keypad's voice command button until two audible signals are given. This cancels voice control even when the system is speaking.

Voice control will also be canceled if you do not respond during a dialog. The system will first ask three times for a response and if the response is still not given, voice control will be automatically canceled.

To speed up communication and skip prompts from the system, press the voice control button on the steering wheel keypad. This will interrupt the system's response and you can say the next command.

Voice command examples

Tap .
Say "Call [First name] [Last name] [number category]", e.g. "Call Robyn Smith cellular".
The system will call the selected contact from the phone book. If the contact has several phone numbers (e.g. home, cell, work), the right category must also be given.

Commands/phrases

The following commands can usually be used in any situation:

- "Repeat" - repeats the most recent voice command in the current dialog.
- "Cancel" - cancels the dialog.[1]
- "Help" - initiates a help dialog. The system responds with commands that can be used in the current situation, an instruction or an example.

Commands for specific functions, such as phone and audio, are described in the sections related to that function.

Numbers

Number commands can be given in different ways depending on the function to be controlled:

- **Phone numbers and zip codes** should be given by stating each number individually, e.g. "zero, three, one, two, two, four, four, three" (03122443).
- **Addresses** can be given by stating each number individually or in a group, e.g. "two, two" or "twenty-two" (22). For English and Dutch language settings, groups of numbers can also be said in sequence, e.g. "twenty-two, twenty-two" (22 22). For English, double or triple digits can also be used, e.g. "double zero" (00). Numbers in the range 0-2300 can be used.
- **Frequencies** can be given as "ninety-eight point eight" (98.8), "one hundred four point two", or "hundred and four point two" (104.2).

Speech rate and repeat mode

The speed at which the system speaks can be adjusted.

With repeat mode on, the system will repeat what you have said.

To change the speech rate or activate/deactivate repeat mode:

Tap Settings in the Top view.
Tap System → Voice Control and select settings.

- Repeat Voice Command
- Speech Rate

1 Note that this only cancels the dialog when the system is not speaking. To do this, press and hold until you hear two beeps.

Updating voice control

You can download files yourself for updating your vehicle's voice control. Updating takes place in two stages using an empty USB memory.

Preparations

The new voice control files can be downloaded to an empty USB memory of at least 8 GB. The memory must have one of the following formats: FAT32, NTFS or exFAT.

Downloading

You can find current updates on support.polestar.com under the tab for downloading software. Voice command files are downloaded using a program that is installed on your computer.

Instructions

Click Download for MAC or Download for Windows.
Select Execute to install the download program.
Click New download to download the file to a USB memory.
You can verify that the download/copying to the USB memory has worked correctly before you install the file in the vehicle by pressing Check downloads in the download program.
Take the USB memory with the downloaded file to your vehicle and switch on the infotainment system.
Insert the USB memory in the USB port. If there are two USB inputs the second one must not be used at the same time.
The system automatically detects that an update is available and during the update the screen shows how much of the process remains, counted as a percentage.
When the installation is complete a notification is shown advising that the updated file is available after the next restart. The USB memory can now be removed.

If you experience any problems with the update, contact Polestar Customer Support.

Updating tips

- An update takes about half an hour and the infotainment system must be on. Use a battery charger or keep the vehicle's engine running while the update is in progress, for example during a trip.
- New voice control files for download are launched twice a year.
- You also have the option to download map updates to your vehicle.

Tips for improving voice control

A few tips that might be useful to bear in mind when using voice control are listed below.
If the voice control system does not respond as expected, this may be due to a variety of factors. These include the following:

- Ensure you are speaking in the correct language (selected system language) and that your selected language is supported by voice control.
- Try saying "Help", you will then receive guidance on what is possible to say, it may be that the system does not support the phrase you feel that the system does not understand.
- Speak at a natural pace and using a normal conversational tone. Do not speak so slowly that the system does not understand you, it impairs recognition.
- Remember that in certain situations, the system must search a large database to give you the right feedback, in these situations, it is difficult to provide the exact right response. A list of possible answers is then presented in the vehicle's display.
- The voice control system in your vehicle is under continuous improvement. You can download update files yourself.

Voice control settings

Settings for the voice control system are made here.

Settings → System → Voice Control
Settings can be personalized in the following areas:

- Repeat Voice Command
- Gender
- Speech Rate

Sound settings

Select sound settings under:

Settings → Sound → System Volumes → Voice Control

Language settings

The voice control system is not available for all languages. The languages available for voice commands are indicated by the icon in the list of languages.

Changing the language here will also change the language in the menus, messages and help texts.

Settings → System → System Languages and Units → System Language

Voice control commands for Sensus Navigation

Several of the navigation system's functions can be activated with voice commands.
Tap on the right-side steering wheel keypad and say one of the following commands:

- "Navigation" - Starts a navigation dialog and displays examples of commands.
- "Take me home" - Guidance is provided to the location set as Home.
- "Go to [city]" - Inputs a city as a destination, e.g. "Go to San Francisco".
- "Go to [address]" - Inputs an address as a destination. An address must contain city and street. e.g. "Go to Filbert Street 5, San Francisco".
- "Add intersection" - Starts a dialog to input two streets. The destination will then be the intersection of these two streets.
- "Go to [zip code]" - Input a zip code as the destination. e.g. "Go to 1 2 3 4 5".
- "Go to [contact]" - Input an address from the phone book as the destination. Example "Go to Robyn Smith".
- "Search [POI category]" - Search Points of Interest (POI) in a certain category (e.g. restaurants)1. To sort the list along the route, say "Along the route" when the list of results is displayed.
- "Search [POI category] in [city]" - Searches for POIs in a certain category and city. The list of results is sorted based on the center point of the city. Example "Search restaurant in San Francisco".
- "Search [POI name]". Example "Search Zuni Café".
- "Change country/Change state2" – Changes the search area for navigation.
- "Show favorites" – Displays stored locations in the instrument panel.
- "Clear itinerary" - Deletes all stored waypoints and destinations in an itinerary.
- "Repeat voice guidance" - Repeats the most recent guidance instruction.
- "Turn off voice guidance" - Guidance off.
- "Turn on voice guidance" - Guidance on.

The following commands can usually be used in any situation:

- "Repeat" - repeats the most recent voice command in the current dialog.
- "Help" - initiates a help dialog. The system responds with commands that can be used in the current situation, an instruction or an example.
- Voice control can be canceled when the system is silent and when it is speaking.

- "Cancel" – cancels the dialog when the system is silent.
- Press and hold until you hear two beeps – cancels the dialog even if the system is speaking.

Addresses

When an address is entered, the search area is defined as the search area that is preset in the navigation system. You can change to another search area. If the new search area has a different language than the set system language, the system will automatically switch to another recognition engine. Because of this, the address should be given in the language used in the new search area.

> **NOTE**
>
> Note that addresses are searchable only for the country or state the navigation system is set to. To search for addresses in another country or state, you must first change the search area.

1 The user can choose to call the POI or enter it as a destination.

2 For European countries, "country" is used instead of "state".

Voice control for cellular phones

Call a contact in the phone book, have a text message read aloud or dictate short messages using voice commands to a Bluetooth-connected phone.
To access a contact in the phone book, the voice command must contain the contact information entered in the phone book. If a contact, e.g. Robyn Smith, has several phone numbers listed in the phone book, a number category such as home or cellular can also be specified, i.e. "Call Robyn Smith cellular".

Tap and say one of the following commands:

- "Call [contact]" - call the selected contact from the phone book.
- "Call [phone number]" - call a phone number.
- "Recent calls" - display the list of recent calls.
- "Read message" - read a text message aloud. If there are several messages, select the message to read aloud.
- "Message to [contact]" - the user is prompted to dictate a short message. The message will then be read aloud and the user can choose to send or re-dictate the message. The vehicle must be connected to the Internet to access this function.

Text message voice recognition

Voice recognition allows you to control functions in the vehicle, e.g. reading out text messages from a connected mobile phone.

Reading out text messages

Before voice commands for the cellular phone's functions (text messages, phone calls and media player) can be used, a cellular phone must be connected to the vehicle.

To read out a text message, press the voice recognition button on the right-hand side of the steering wheel and say "Read message".

Reading out text messages from an iPhone

To read out text messages from an iPhone, you must change a setting in your phone so that messages can be sent from the phone to the vehicle1.

Go to Settings.
Select Bluetooth.
Click on the info symbol (i) for the connection to your vehicle.

Turn on Show notes.

1 Settings and menu options may vary depending on the phone's software version.

Voice control for navigation system

You can use voice commands to control parts of your navigation system.

Start navigation

Here is an introduction to how you can begin using voice commands to control the navigation system in your vehicle.

To activate a navigation command

Press the steering wheel keypad's voice control button .
You can now give commands, e.g. "Navigation", which will start a navigation dialog and show examples of commands.

Using voice control for route guidance to an address

For route guidance to a specific address, use the command Go to followed by the address. It is important that the address is given in the right order. To use voice control for route guidance to an address, the address must be said in the following order: (1) street address, (2) house number, (3) city, as shown in the following example.

Give the command Go to.
You can now say the address you would like route guidance to.
Say the street, e.g. Lombard Street"
Say the house number, e.g. "five"
Say the city, e.g. "San Francisco"
The full command will then be: "Go toLombard Street 5, San Francisco".If the address is found in the system, the navigation system will now provide route guidance to the address.

Using voice control for route guidance to an address in another country or another state

Your navigation system uploads sets of maps for the country or state it believes your vehicle is located in. This means that for accurate route guidance across country or state borders, you need to first tell the system in which country or state the address you would like route guidance to is located. You do this by using the command Change country or Change state. (Command Change state is primarily used in the US. In the example below, command Change country is used.)

Give the command Change country.
You can now input the country in which the address you would like route guidance to is located, e.g. "Canada"
Now input the address you would like route guidance to by following the procedure for "Using voice control for route guidance to an address".
In this scenario, the full command is divided into two sub-commands:

1. "Change country, Canada"
2. "Go to Howe Street twenty-two, Vancouver"

If the address is found in the system, the navigation system will now provide route guidance to Howe Street twenty-two, Vancouver, Canada.

> **NOTE**
>
> After you have changed country, try to pronounce the address you want route guidance to in the destination country's language. This is required because the system automatically switches to the recognition language of the selected country.

Using voice control for route guidance to an address set as Home

If you have set an address as a Home location in your navigation system, you can use a voice command to receive route guidance to the location.

Give the command Take me home.
If the navigation system has a home location saved, you will now receive route guidance to the location.

Using voice control for route guidance to a place, store or other specific business without inputting an exact address

Your navigation system can provide route guidance to specific places or types of businesses, which are referred to in the system as "points of interest" (POI1). Examples of points of interest are restaurants, hotels, gasoline stations, museums and tourist attractions.

Use the command Search to search for a point of interest. You can search for a specific point of interest or for categories of points of interest.

> **NOTE**
> It is important to use the right command for the option you would like route guidance for. When you want route guidance to a point of interest, use the Search command. The command is different for route guidance to specific addresses. Then you should use the Go to command instead.

Searching for a specific place or business

Here, [POI name] refers to a specific place or business (a point of interest), e.g. a hotel, a restaurant, a city park, etc.

Give the command Search.
You can now say the specific point of interest you would like route guidance to.
Say [POI name], e.g. "Golden Gate Bridge"
The full command will then be: "Search Golden Gate Bridge". If the point of interest is found in the system, the navigation system will now provide route guidance to the location.

Searching for a point of interest category, e.g. stores, hotels, restaurants, museums or other tourist attractions or businesses

Here, [POI category] refers to specific types of places or businesses (points of interest), e.g. hotels, restaurants, museums, etc.

Give the command Search.
You can now say the type of point of interest you would like to find and receive route guidance to.
Say [POI category], e.g. "restaurant"
In this case, the full command will be: "Search restaurant". The navigation system will now search for restaurants around and in the vicinity of the vehicle and display a list of these in your instrument panel. The displayed list will provide suggestions from the system based on your command. Relevant categories and nearby results will be shown at the top of the list, followed by other suggestions in order of relevance.

Since you are looking for a category in this example, it may be a good idea to select the category option that most closely matches your search.

Select the category from the list that best matches what you searched for, in this case "restaurant(s)", by saying the row number shown in the instrument panel for that option.
You can now see your search results and select an option.

Using voice control to cancel route guidance

You can use voice commands to cancel route guidance, including all waypoints and the final destination.

Give the command Clear itinerary.
The navigation system will cancel route guidance and delete the final destination and all waypoints along the route.

Inputing zip codes and house numbers

Number commands can be given in different ways depending on the function to be controlled:

- **Zip codes** should be given by stating each number individually, e.g. "zero three one two two four four three" (03122443).
- **Addresses** can be given by stating each number individually or in a group, e.g. two two or twenty-two (22). For some languages, it is also possible to state numbers in hundreds, e.g. 19 hundred 22 (1922). For English and Dutch language settings, groups of numbers can also be said in sequence, e.g. twenty-two twenty-two (22 22). For English, double or triple digits can also be used, e.g. double zero (00). Numbers in the range 0-2300 can be used.

1 Point Of Interest

Displays and controls near the driver

See Displays and controls near the driver.

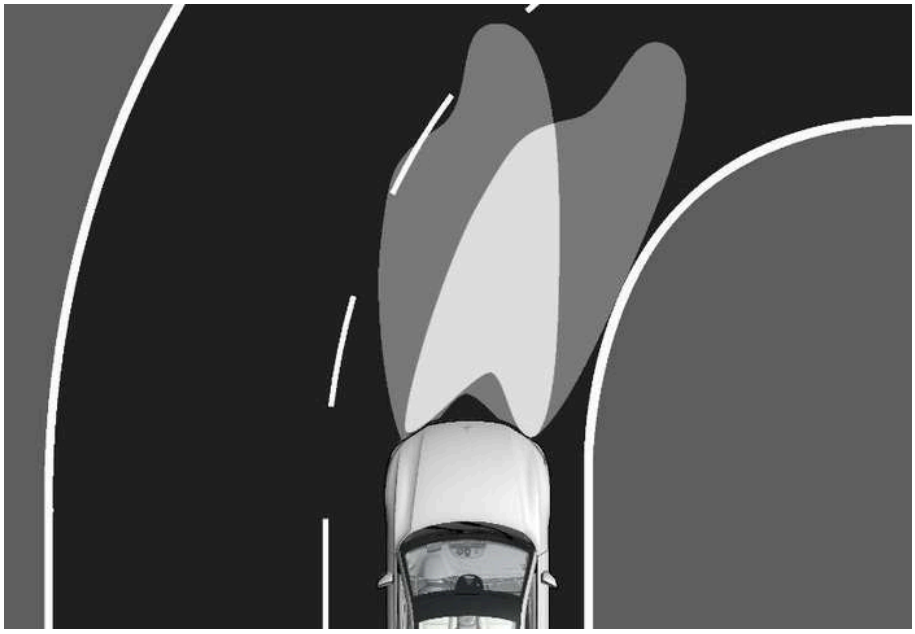
Lighting

This section contains information about the vehicle's rearview and door mirrors and their lighting controls.

Exterior lighting

Active Bending Lights

Active Bending Lights (ABL) are designed to help provide extra illumination in curves and intersections.



Headlight pattern with function deactivated (left) and activated (right).

Active Bending Lights follow the movement of the steering wheel to help provide extra illumination in curves and intersections, helping to improve visibility for the driver.

The function is automatically activated when the engine is started. If a fault is detected in the system, the symbol will illuminate in the instrument panel and a message will be displayed.

The function is only active in weak daylight or dark conditions and only when the vehicle is moving and the low beams are on.

Deactivating/activating the function



In the center display's Function view, tap the Active Bending Lights button.

Active high beam

Active high beams is a function that uses camera sensors in the upper edge of the windshield to detect the headlights of approaching vehicles or the taillights of the vehicle directly ahead. When either of these is detected, the vehicle's headlights will automatically switch from high beams to low beams.



Active high beams is indicated by the



symbol.

This function can be used in dark conditions when the vehicle's speed is approx. 20 km/h (approx. 12 mph) or higher. The function can also detect street lighting. When the camera sensor no longer detects an approaching vehicle or a vehicle ahead, the headlights will return to high beams after a second or two.

Activating active high beams

Active high beams can be activated and deactivated by turning the lighting ring on the left-side steering wheel lever to position . The lighting ring will then return to AUTO. When active high beams are activated, a white symbol will be displayed in the instrument panel. When high beams are on, the symbol will be blue.

If active high beams are deactivated when the high beams are on, the headlights will automatically switch to low beams.

Limitations for active high beams

The camera sensor on which the function is based has limitations.



If this symbol and the message Active High Beam Temporarily unavailable is displayed in the instrument panel, switching between high and low beams must be done manually. The symbol will go out when the message is displayed.



The same applies if this symbol along with the message Windscreen sensor Sensor blocked, see Manual is displayed.

Active high beams may be temporarily unavailable in certain situations, e.g. heavy fog or rain. When active high beams become available again, or the windshield sensors are no longer blocked, the message will disappear and the symbol will be displayed.

WARNING

Automatic high beam is an aid in using the best possible light based on prevailing conditions.

The driver is always responsible for manually switching between high and low beam when traffic situations or weather conditions require this.

Using turn signals

The vehicle's turn signals are controlled using the left-side steering wheel lever. The turn signals flash three times or continuously, depending on how far up or down the lever is moved.



Turn signals.

Triple flash indicator

1	Move the steering wheel lever up or down to the first position and release. The turn signals will flash three times. If the function is deactivated via the center display, the signals will flash once.

NOTE

- This automatic flashing sequence can be interrupted by immediately moving the lever in the opposite direction.
- If the turn signal indicator flashes more quickly than normal, refer to the message in the instrument panel.

Continuous flashing sequence

2	Move the lever up or down as far as possible.

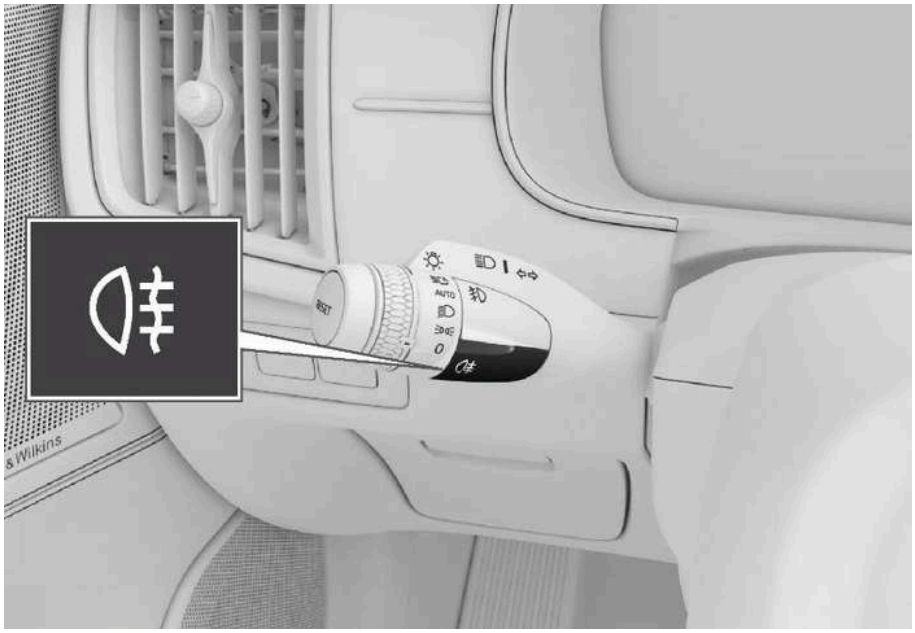
The lever will stop in its end position and can be moved back manually or automatically by moving the steering wheel.

Brake lights

The brake lights are automatically illuminated when braking.
The brake lights are illuminated when the brake pedal is depressed and when the brakes are automatically applied by a driver support system.

Rear fog light

The rear fog light is considerably brighter than the ordinary taillight and should only be used to help other road users see the vehicle when visibility is reduced by conditions such as fog, snow, smoke or dust.



Rear fog light button.

The rear fog light can only be switched on when the ignition is in II mode and the lighting ring is in position AUTO or .

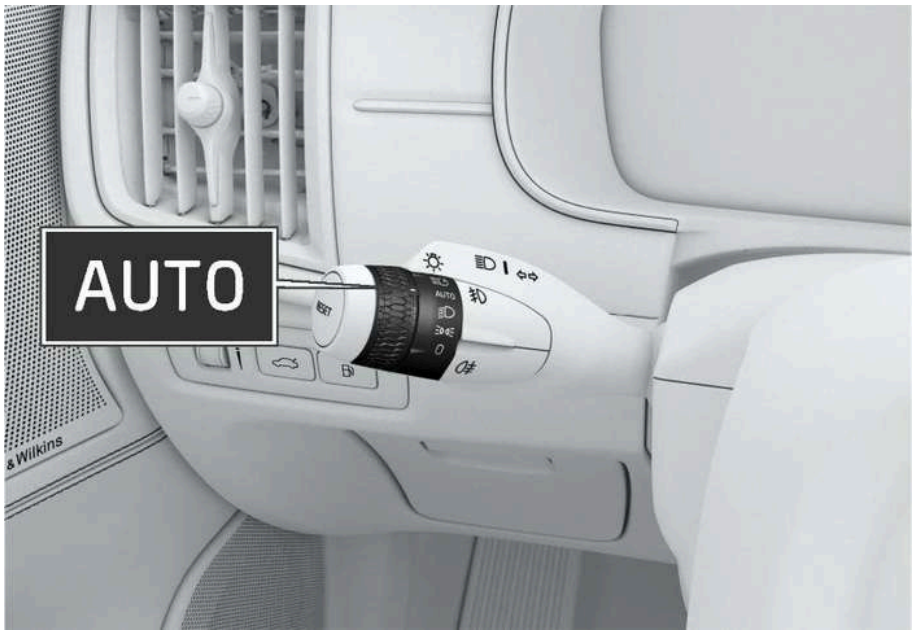
Press the button to switch on/off. The symbol in the instrument panel illuminates when the rear fog light is on.

The rear fog light turns off automatically when the ignition is switched off or when the steering wheel lever lighting ring is in position 0 or .

> **NOTE**
> Regulations concerning rear fog light use vary from country to country.

Low beams

When driving with the lighting ring in the AUTO position, low beam will be automatically activated in weak daylight or dark conditions, when the ignition is in the II position.



Lighting ring in

AUTO

position.

With the lighting ring in the AUTO position, the low beams will also be automatically activated if the rear fog light is activated.

With the lighting ring in the position, low beams will always be on when the ignition is in the II position.

Tunnel detection

The vehicle will detect if it enters a tunnel and shift from daytime running lights to low beams.

Note that the left-hand steering wheel lever must be in AUTO position for tunnel detection to work.

Using high beam

High beam is operated via the left-hand steering wheel lever. High beam is the vehicle's strongest lighting and should be used when driving in dark conditions, provided it does not blind other road users, to improve visibility.



Steering wheel lever with lighting ring.

High beam flash

1	Move the steering wheel lever slightly backward to the high beam flash mode. The high beams will illuminate until the lever is released.

High beams

2	The high beams can be activated when the lighting ring is in mode AUTO 1 or . Activate high beams by moving the steering wheel lever forward.
3	Deactivate by moving the steering wheel lever backward.

When the high beams are activated, the symbol will be illuminated in the instrument panel.

1 When the low beams are on.

Using home safe lighting

Some of the exterior lights remain on to illuminate the area around the vehicle. This is called home safe lighting.
To activate home safe lighting:
Switch off the ignition.
Push the left-side steering wheel lever toward the dashboard and release.
Exit the vehicle and lock the doors.
The symbol illuminates in the instrument panel to indicate that the function is activated and exterior lighting switches on: Parking lights, headlights and license plate lighting.
The length of time home safe lighting remains illuminated can be set in the center display.

Emergency brake lights

The emergency brake lights are activated to warn following vehicles of hard braking.

This function causes an additional taillight on each side of the vehicle to illuminate.

The emergency brake lights are activated in the event of hard braking or if the ABS system is activated and the vehicle is traveling at a high speed.

After the driver decelerates to a low speed and then releases the brake, the brake lights resume their normal brightness.

Parking lights

The parking lights can be used to help other road users see the vehicle if it is stopped or parked. Use the lighting ring on the steering wheel lever to turn on the parking lights.



Lighting ring in the parking light position.

Turn the lighting ring to the position to turn on the parking lights (the license plate lighting will also illuminate).

Canadian models: If the ignition is in the II position, the daytime running lights will illuminate instead of the front parking lights. With the lighting ring in this position, the parking lights will remain on regardless of what position the ignition is in.

US models: When AUTO mode is selected, the daytime running lights can be deactivated in the center display. The parking lights will also be deactivated. In weak daylight or dark conditions, the parking lights and low beams will be illuminated.

In dark conditions, the rear parking lights also illuminate when the trunk lid is opened to alert following traffic. This happens regardless of what position the lighting ring or ignition is in.

Welcome Light

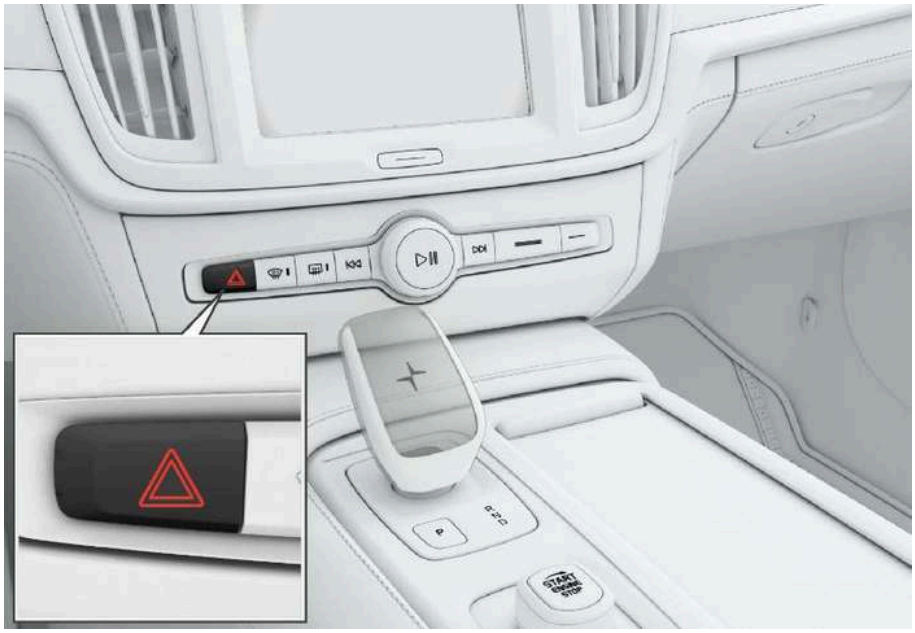
Approach lighting is activated when the vehicle is unlocked and can be used to provide light as you walk toward the vehicle.
The function is activated when the key is used for unlocking. The parking lights, ceiling lights, footwell lights and trunk/cargo compartment lights are activated in daylight conditions. In weak daylight or dark conditions, license plate lighting will also be activated.

If no door is opened, the lights will remain illuminated for approx. 2 minutes. If a door is opened while the function is activated, the interior lighting will remain illuminated for a longer period of time.

This function can be activated and deactivated in the center display.

Hazard warning flashers

Hazard warning flashers warn other road users by all of the vehicle's turn signals being activated at the same time. The function can be used to warn about a traffic hazard.



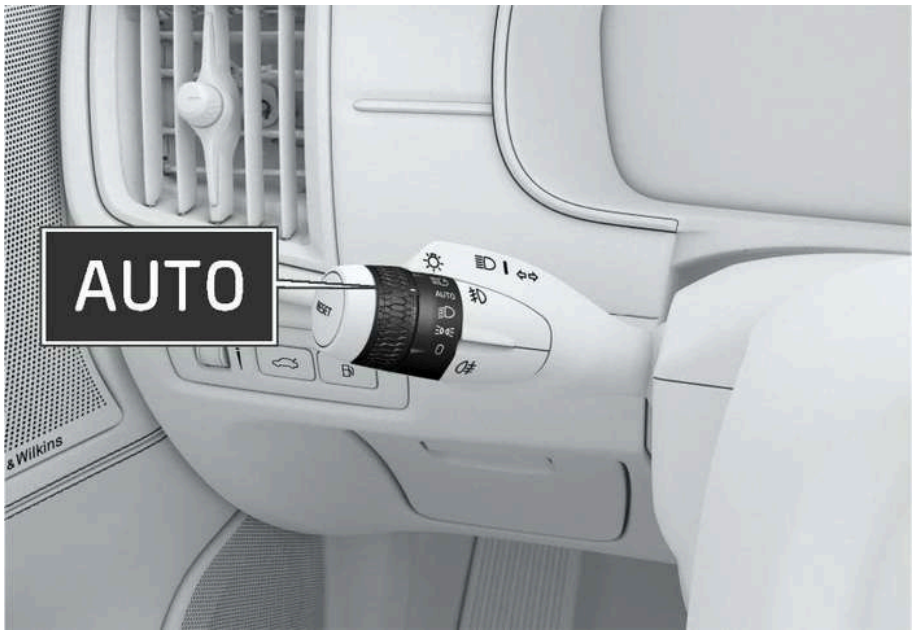
Hazard warning flashers button.

Press the button to activate the hazard warning flashers.

> **NOTE**
> Regulations concerning the use of hazard warning flashers may vary from country to country.

Daytime running lights

The vehicle has sensors that detect ambient lighting conditions. With the lighting ring in the AUTO position, the daytime running lights will always be activated when the ignition is in mode II. In weak daylight or dark conditions, the headlights automatically switch to low beams.



Lighting ring in AUTO position.

With the steering wheel lever's lighting ring in the AUTO position, the daytime running lights (DRL[1]) will illuminate when the vehicle is driven in daylight conditions. The headlights will switch automatically from daytime running lights to low beams in weak daylight or dark conditions. The headlights will also switch to low beams if the rear fog light is activated.

US models: When AUTO mode is selected, the daytime running lights can be deactivated in the center display. The parking lights will also be deactivated. In weak daylight or dark conditions, the parking lights and low beams will be illuminated.

US models: With the lighting ring in the 0 or position, the daytime running lights will be **off**.

Canadian models: With the lighting ring in the 0 or position, the daytime running lights will be on.

NOTE

Polestar recommends the use of Daytime Running Lights in the US. Their use is mandatory in Canada.

WARNING

The system is an energy saving aid – it cannot in all situations determine when the daylight is too weak or not strong enough, e.g. when there is fog or rain.

The driver is always responsible for driving the vehicle with lighting that is safe for the traffic conditions and as specified by applicable traffic regulations.

1 Daytime Running Lights

Interior lighting

Interior Lighting

The passenger compartment is equipped with several different types of lighting, e.g. general lighting, adjustable ambient lighting and reading lights.
All lighting in the passenger compartment can be turned on and off manually within 5 minutes after:

- the vehicle has been switched off and the ignition is in mode 0
- the vehicle is unlocked but has not yet been started.

Front ceiling lighting



The controls in the ceiling console for the front reading lights and courtesy lighting.

1. Reading light left side
2. Passenger compartment lighting
3. Courtesy lighting auto switch
4. Reading light right side

Reading lights

The reading lights on the right and left sides are switched on and off by briefly pressing the buttons in the ceiling console. To adjust the brightness, press and hold the button.

Passenger compartment lighting

Briefly press the button in the ceiling console to switch on or off the footwell lighting and ceiling lighting.

Courtesy lighting auto switch

Activate the auto switch by briefly pressing the AUTO button in the ceiling console. The light indicator in the button will illuminate when the auto switch is activated. The passenger compartment lighting turns on and off as described below.

Courtesy lighting is switched on when:

- the vehicle is unlocked
- the vehicle is switched off
- a side door is opened.

Courtesy lighting is switched off when:

- the vehicle is locked
- the vehicle is started
- a side door is closed.
- a side door has been open for approx. 2 minutes.

Glove compartment lighting

The glove compartment lighting comes on or goes off when the glove compartment is opened or closed.

Ground lighting

The ground lighting comes on or goes off when a door is opened or closed.

Trunk lighting

The trunk lighting comes on or goes off when the trunk lid is opened or closed.

Ambient Lighting

A warm light extends from door to door via the rear seat and a Polestar symbol illuminates on the roof console. Ambient lighting turns on when you unlock the vehicle and turns off when you lock it.

Interior Mood Lighting

The vehicle is equipped with LED lights that illuminate when the vehicle is on. Mood lighting can be adjusted in the center display and also fine-tuned using the thumb wheel in the dashboard.

Lighting in the door storage compartments

Lighting in the door storage compartments comes on when the doors are opened and goes out when the vehicle is locked. The brightness can be adjusted using the thumb wheel in the dashboard.

Tunnel console lighting

The lighting in the tunnel console switches on when the vehicle is unlocked and off when the vehicle is locked. The brightness can be adjusted using the thumb wheel in the dashboard.

Adjusting interior lighting

Illumination in the vehicle varies depending on ignition mode. The interior lighting can be adjusted with a thumb wheel in the dashboard and certain light functions can also be adjusted via the center display.



The thumb wheel on the dashboard to the left of the steering wheel can be used to adjust the brightness of the display lighting, instrument lighting and mood lighting.

Adjusting mood lighting

The vehicle is equipped with LED lights that illuminate when the vehicle is on.

Changing the brightness

Tap Settings in the Top view in the center display.
Tap My Car → Lights and Lighting → Interior Lighting → Interior Mood Lighting.
Under Interior Mood Light Intensity, select Off, Low or High.

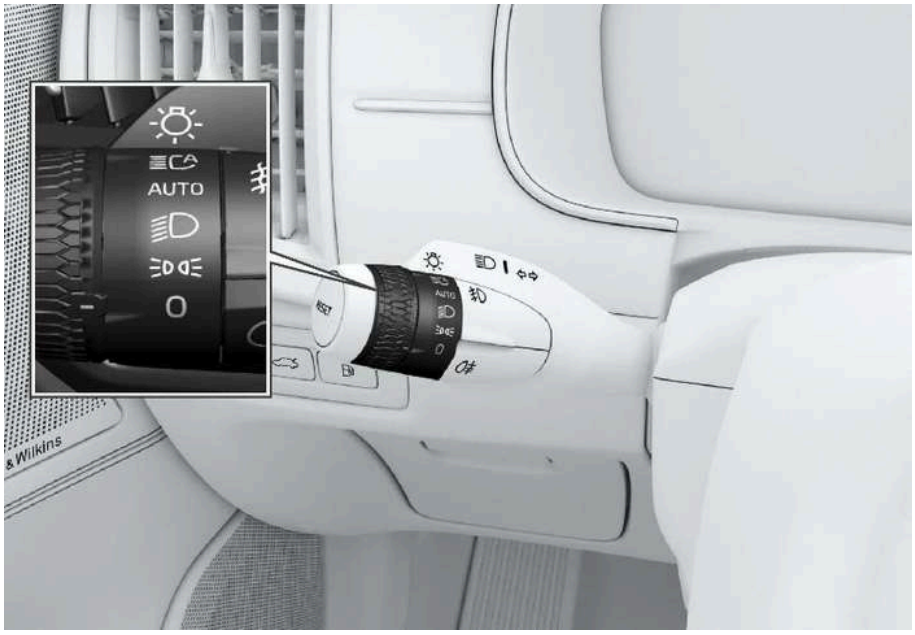
Adjusting light functions via the center display

A number of light functions can be adjusted and activated via the center display. These include active high beams, home safe lighting and approach lighting.
Tap Settings in the center display's Top view.
Tap My Car → Lights and Lighting.
Select Exterior Lights or Interior Lighting and then select the function that you would like to adjust.

Lighting control and panel

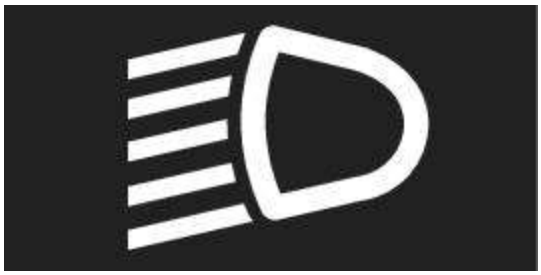
The lighting panel and controls can be used to adjust both exterior and interior lighting. The lighting ring on the left-side steering wheel lever can be used to activate and adjust the exterior lighting. The brightness of the interior lighting can be adjusted using the thumb wheel on the dashboard.

Exterior lighting



Lighting ring position.

When the vehicle's ignition is in mode II, the lighting ring positions have the following functions:

Position	Meaning
	US: Daytime running lights and parking lights are off. Canada: Daytime running lights and parking lights are on. High beam flash can be used.
	Parking lights when the vehicle is parked. US: Daytime running lights are off. Canada: Daytime running lights are on. High beam flash can be used.
	Low beams and parking lights. High beams can be activated. High beam flash can be used.

Position	Meaning
	Daytime running lights and parking lights in daylight conditions.1 Low beams and parking lights in weak daylight or dark conditions or when the rear fog light is activated. Active high beam can be activated. High beams can be activated when low beams are on. High beam flash can be used.
	Active high beams on/off.

NOTE

Polestar recommends the use of Daytime Running Lights in the US. Their use is mandatory in Canada.

Polestar recommends using position AUTO when the vehicle is in motion.

WARNING

The vehicle lighting system cannot in all situations determine when the daylight is too weak or not strong enough, e.g. when there is fog or rain.

The driver is always responsible for driving the vehicle with lighting that is safe for the traffic conditions and as specified by applicable traffic regulations.

Thumbwheel in instrument panel



Thumb wheel (to the left) for adjusting interior brightness.

1 US models only: Daytime running lights and parking lights can be deactivated in the center display.

Windows, glass and mirrors

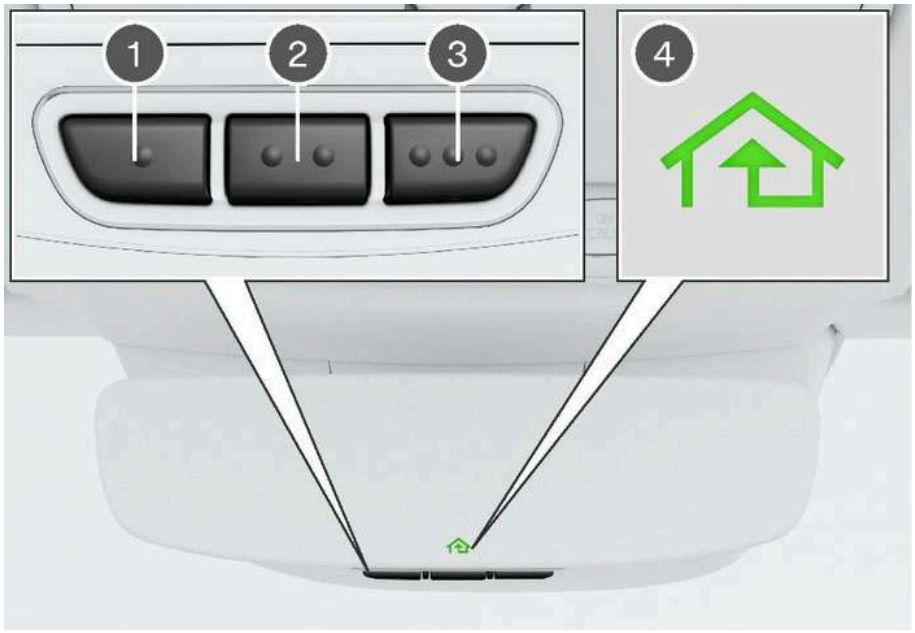
This section contains information about the vehicle's power windows, windshield, rear window, rearview mirror, door mirrors, etc. and how to operate them. You will also find information about the vehicle's panoramic roof, wipers and washers, etc. and how you use these.

Rearview and door mirrors

HomeLink®

HomeLink®[1] is a programmable remote control, integrated in the vehicle electrical system, that can control up to three different devices (e.g. garage door opener, alarm system, outdoor and indoor lighting) and thereby replace the remote controls for these.

General



The illustration is generic – the design may vary.

1. Button 1
2. Button 2
3. Button 3
4. Indicator light

HomeLink® is delivered integrated in the rearview mirror. The HomeLink® panel consists of three programmable buttons and an indicator light in the mirror.

For more information about HomeLink®, please visit: www.HomeLink.com or call 1-800-355-3515.

Save the original remote controls for future programming (e.g. for use in another vehicle). It is also advisable to delete the button programming if the vehicle is sold.

1 HomeLink and the HomeLink house symbol are registered trademarks of Gentex Corporation.

Rearview/door mirrors

The rearview mirror and door mirrors can be used to improve the driver's visibility behind the vehicle.

Rearview mirror



The rearview mirror can be adjusted manually. The rearview mirror is equipped with HomeLink*, auto-dim and compass.

Door mirrors

The power door mirrors have a wide-angle field1 in the outer edge of the mirrors to provide better visibility of objects in the vehicle's blind spot.

> **WARNING**
> The door mirror on the passenger side is curved to improve visibility. Objects in the mirror may appear farther away than they actually are.

The joystick in the drivers' door control panel is used to adjust the position of the door mirrors. There are also several automatic settings that can also be connected to the memory function buttons for the power seat.

***** Option/accessory.

1 Market-dependent.

Adjusting the door mirrors

To improve visibility to the rear, the door mirrors need to be adjusted to the driver's height and seating position. There are several automatic settings that can also be connected to the memory function buttons for the power seat.

Controls used for door mirrors



Door mirror controls.

The joystick in the drivers' door control panel is used to adjust the position of the door mirrors. The ignition must be in at least mode I.

Press the L button for the left door mirror or R for the right door mirror. The button will light up.
Adjust the position using the joystick located between the buttons.
Press the L or R button again. The light in the button will go out.

Automatically folding door mirrors

The door mirrors can be automatically folded when driving or parking in tight spaces.

Press the L and R buttons at the same time.
Release the buttons after about 1 second. The mirrors will automatically stop when they are completely folded in.
Open the mirrors by pressing L and R at the same time. The mirrors will automatically stop when they reach the last-used setting.

Resetting to original position

A mirror that has been moved out of position manually (e.g. hit or bumped into) must be electrically returned to its original position for automatic folding to function properly.

Fold in the mirrors by pressing the L and R buttons at the same time.
Open them again by pressing the L and R buttons at the same time.
Repeat the above procedure as needed.
The mirrors return to their original positions.

Tilting when parking

The door mirrors can be tilted down to help give the driver a better view along the sides of the vehicle, e.g. of the curb when parking.

Select reverse gear and press the L or R mirror button.
Please note that the button may need to be pressed twice depending on settings. When the door mirror is tilted down, the light in the button will flash. When reverse gear is engaged, the door mirrors will automatically start to move after 3 seconds and will reach their original position after about 8 seconds.

Automatically tilting when parking

With this setting, the door mirrors will automatically tilt down when reverse gear is engaged. The folded position is preset and cannot be adjusted.

Tap Settings in the center display's Top view.
Tap My Car → Mirrors and Convenience.
Under Exterior Mirror Tilt at Reverse, select Off, Driver, Passenger or Both to activate/deactivate and to select which mirror to tilt.
To immediately return the door mirrors to their original position, press the L or R button twice.

Automatic folding when the vehicle is locked

You can use the center display to set the door mirrors to fold in or out automatically when the car is locked or unlocked with the key.

Tap Settings in the center display's Top view.
Tap My Car → Mirrors and Convenience.
Select Fold Mirror When Locked to activate/deactivate.
If the mirrors have been folded using the L and R buttons, they must be folded out manually as well.

Adjusting the rearview mirror dimming function

If bright light enters the vehicle from behind, the door mirrors will automatically dim. Auto-dim is always active when the engine is running, except when reverse gear is engaged.
The rearview mirror instead has two sensors - one pointing forward and one pointing rearward - which work together to identify and eliminate glare. The forward-pointing sensor monitors ambient light, while the rearward-pointing sensor monitors light from the headlights of following vehicles.

> **NOTE**
> Adjustments to the sensitivity level will not be noticeable immediately but will instead take effect after a short period of time.

To change the dimming sensitivity level:
Tap Settings in the Top view in the center display.
Tap My Car → Mirrors and Convenience.
Under Rearview Mirror Auto Dimming, select Normal, Dark or Light.
The sensitivity level for dimming will affect both the rearview mirror and door mirrors.

> **NOTE**
> If the sensors are obstructed by e.g. a parking permit, transponder, sunshade or objects on the seats or parcel shelf in a way that prevents light from reaching the sensors, the auto-dim function in the rearview and door mirrors will be reduced.

Using stored positions for seats, mirrors and head-up display

See Using stored positions for seats, mirrors and head-up display.

Storing positions for seats, mirrors and head-up display

See Storing positions for seats, mirrors and head-up display.

Activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors

The heated rear window and door mirrors are used to quickly remove condensation and ice from the glass.

Activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors from the center console

A button in the center console offers quick access to the heated rear window and door mirrors functions.



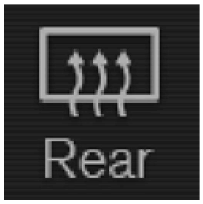
Button in center console.

Tap the button.
Heated windows and door mirrors are activated and the button lights up/goes out.

Activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors from the center display



Tap the symbol in the center of the climate bar to open Climate view in the center display.



Tap Rear.
Heated windows and door mirrors are activated and the button lights up/goes out.

Automatically activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors

The heated rear window and door mirrors are used to quickly remove condensation and ice from the glass.
It is possible to select whether rear window and door mirror heating should be automatically activated or deactivated when the engine is started. With automatic start activated, heating will be activated when there is a risk of ice or

condensation on the windows or mirrors. Heating is automatically switched off when the window or door mirror is sufficiently warm and the condensation or ice is gone.

Tap Settings in the Top view in the center display.
Tap Climate.
Select Auto Rear Defroster to activate/deactivate automatic rear window and door heating.

Windshield and rear window

Replacing a windshield with head-up display

See Replacing a windshield with head-up display.

Wiper blades and washer fluid

The wipers and the washer fluid are designed to improve visibility and the headlight pattern.
The windshield washer nozzles are integrated into the upper side of the wiper blades. Washer fluid is supplied when washing is activated and the wiper arms begin moving. The integrated washer nozzles in the wiper blades help provide more effective washing at different speeds and in different weather conditions, such as in strong winds. They can also help reduce the risk of impaired visibility for the driver, which is a common problem with traditional windshield washing methods. This type of integrated washing nozzle also provides more efficient washer fluid consumption.

The wiper blades are heated, which reduces the risk of the washer fluid freezing.

When there is approximately 1 liter (1 qt) of washer fluid remaining, a message to refill will appear in the instrument panel.

Using the rain sensor

The rain sensor monitors the amount of water on the windshield and automatically starts the windshield wipers. Rain sensor sensitivity can be adjusted using the thumb wheel on the right-hand steering wheel lever.



Right-hand steering wheel lever.

1. Rain sensor button
2. Thumb wheel, sensitivity/interval wiper speed

When the rain sensor is activated, the rain sensor symbol will be displayed in the instrument panel.

Activating the rain sensor

When the rain sensor is activated, the engine must be running or the ignition in mode I or II while the windshield wiper lever is in position 0 or in the single sweep position.

Activate the rain sensor by pressing the rain sensor button .

Move the lever downward for an extra wiper sweep.

Turn the thumb wheel upward for increased sensitivity and downward for decreased sensitivity. The wipers will make one extra sweep when the thumb wheel is turned upward.

Deactivate the rain sensor

Deactivate the rain sensor by pressing the rain sensor button or moving the lever upward to another wiper mode.

The rain sensor is automatically deactivated in ignition mode 0 or when the engine is switched off.

The rain sensor is also automatically deactivated when the wiper blades are put in the service position. The rain sensor will reactivate when service mode is switched off.

IMPORTANT

The windshield wipers may start inadvertently and be damaged in automatic car washes. Deactivate the rain sensor when the engine is running or when the ignition is in mode I or II. The symbol in the instrument panel will go out.

Using the rain sensor's memory function

The rain sensor monitors the amount of water on the windshield and automatically starts the windshield wipers.

Activating/deactivating memory function

The rain sensor's memory function can be set to activate so that the rain sensor button does not need to be pressed each time the engine is started:

Tap Settings in the Top view in the center display.
Tap My Car → Wipers.
Select Rain Sensor Memory to activate/deactivate the memory function.

Using the windshield and headlight washers

The windshield and headlight washers are designed to clean the windshield and headlights. Use the right-side steering wheel lever to start the windshield and headlight washers.

Starting the windshield and headlight washers



Washing function, right-hand steering wheel lever.

Move the right-hand steering wheel lever toward the steering wheel to start the windshield and headlight washers. After the lever is released, the wipers make several extra sweeps.

IMPORTANT

Avoid activating the washer system when it is frozen or the fluid reservoir is empty. Otherwise, there is a risk of damaging the pump.

Headlight washer

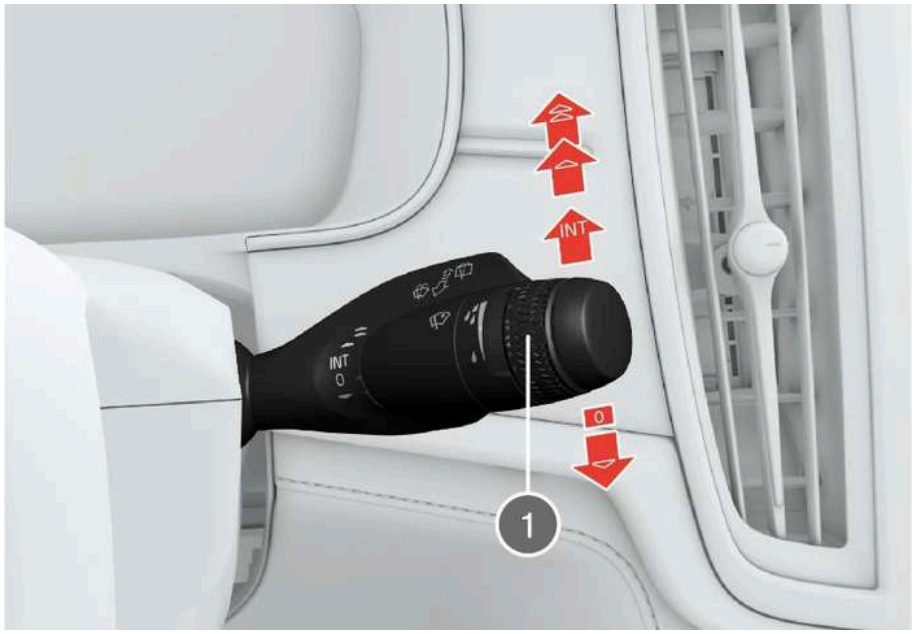
To save washer fluid, the headlights are washed automatically according to a defined interval when the headlights are on.

Reduced washing

When there is about 1 liter (1 qt) of washer fluid left in the reservoir and the Washer fluid Level low, refill message is displayed in the instrument panel together with the symbol, the washer fluid supply to the headlights is cut off. This is to prioritize windshield cleaning and visibility through it. The headlights are only washed if high or low beam is on.

Using the windshield wipers

The windshield wipers are designed to clean the windshield. The right-side steering wheel lever is used to adjust windshield wiper settings.



Right-hand steering wheel lever.



1. The thumb wheel is used to set rain sensor sensitivity and interval wiper speed.

Single sweep



Move the lever down and release for a single sweep.

Wipers off



Move the lever to position 0 to turn off the windshield wipers.

Interval wipers



Move the lever upward to put the wipers in interval wiping mode. Set the number of sweeps per time unit with the thumb wheel when interval wipers are selected.

Continuous wipers



Move the lever upward for the wipers to operate at normal speed.



Move the lever upward again for the wipers to operate at high speed.

> **IMPORTANT**
> Before activating the wipers, make sure that the wiper blades are not frozen in place and that any snow or ice on the windshield has been scraped away.

IMPORTANT

Use plenty of washer fluid when the wipers clean the windshield. The windshield must be wet when the windshield wipers are working.

Activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors

See Activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors.

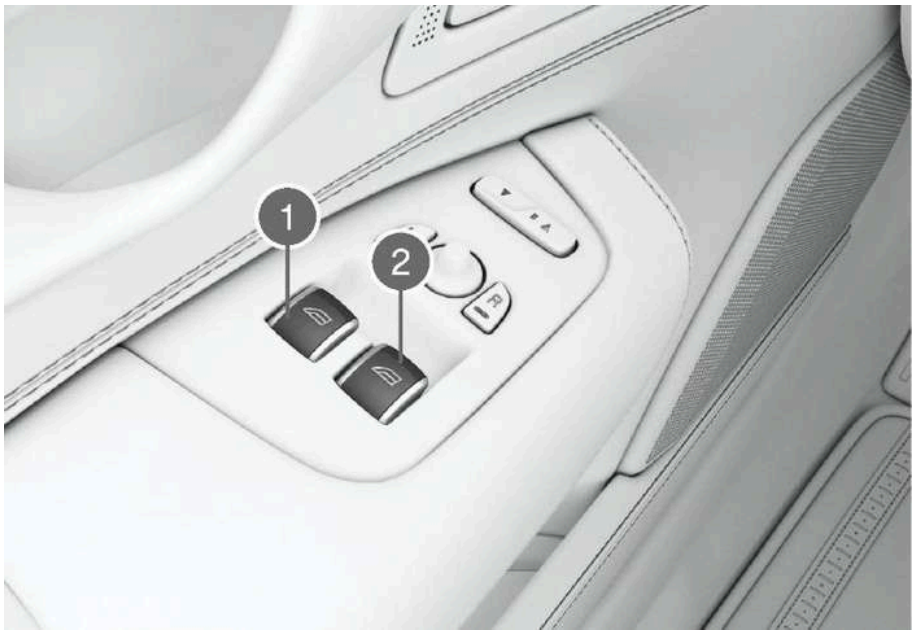
Automatically activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors

See Automatically activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors.

Side windows and panoramic roof/sunroof

Power windows

Every door has a control panel for the power windows. The driver's door has controls for operating all windows.



Driver's door control panel.

1. Window controls in the driver's door.
2. Window controls in the passenger's door.

WARNING

Children, other passengers or objects can be trapped by the moving parts.

- Always operate the windows with caution.
- Do not allow children to play with the operating controls.
- Never leave a child alone in the vehicle.
- Remember to always cut the current to the power windows by setting the vehicle's electrical system to ignition mode 0 and then taking the key with you when leaving the vehicle.
- Never stick objects or body parts out through the windows, even if the vehicle electrical system is completely turned off.

Operating the power windows

All power windows can be operated using the control panel in the driver's door. The control panel in the passenger door only operates the window in that door.

The power windows have pinch protection. If there is any problem with the pinch protection, a rest procedure can be tested.

WARNING

Children, other passengers or objects can be trapped by the moving parts.

- Always operate the windows with caution.
- Do not allow children to play with the operating controls.
- Never leave a child alone in the vehicle.
- Remember to always cut the current to the power windows by setting the vehicle's electrical system to ignition mode 0 and then taking the key with you when leaving the vehicle.
- Never stick objects or body parts out through the windows, even if the vehicle electrical system is completely turned off.



Operating the power windows.



1. Operating manually. Move one of the controls slightly up or down. The power windows go up or down while the control is held in position.



2. Operating with automatic controls. Move one of the controls up or down to its end position and release it. The window moves automatically to its fully closed/open position.

To use the power windows, the ignition must be in at least mode I or II. After the ignition has been switched off, the power windows can be operated for several minutes or until a door is opened. Only one control can be operated at a time.

NOTE

The windows cannot be opened at speeds over approx. 180 km/h (ca112 mph), but they can be closed.

The driver is always responsible for following applicable traffic regulations.

NOTE

It may not be possible to operate the windows in low temperatures.

Panoramic roof

The vehicle has a full panoramic window in tinted glass to reduce incoming light, heat and ultraviolet rays.

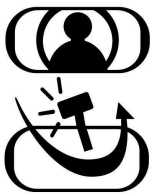


There is a Polestar symbol next to the roof console that lights up when the engine is running. It is visible from both inside and outside the vehicle's passenger compartment.

Windows, glass and mirrors

The vehicle is equipped with several different types of windows, glass and mirrors. Many of these are laminated, tinted and/or heated.

The windshield, panoramic roof and door side windows have laminated glass. Laminated glass is reinforced, which provides better protection against break-ins and improved soundproofing in the passenger compartment.



The symbol shows the windows containing laminated glass1.

IMPORTANT

Do not use solar film with a metalized surface on the rear window. This can interfere with reception because the vehicle's radio antenna is located inside the window.

1 Does not apply to windshield and panoramic roof, which are always laminated and therefore do not have this symbol.

Pinch protection for windows

All power windows in your vehicle have a pinch protection function that is triggered if anything blocks them while they are opening or closing.
If pinch protection is activated, movement will stop and then retract automatically to approx. 50 mm (2 inches) from the point at which it was blocked (or to full ventilation position).

It is still possible to override pinch protection when closing is interrupted (e.g. due to ice) by pressing and holding down the control in the same direction.

If there is any problem with the pinch protection, a rest procedure can be tested.

WARNING

If the starter battery is disconnected, the function for automatic opening and closing must be reset to function correctly. A reset is required in order for the pinch protection to work.

Reset procedure for pinch protection

If you experience any problems with the electrical functions for the power windows, you can try to perform a reset.

WARNING

If the starter battery is disconnected, the function for automatic opening and closing must be reset to function correctly. A reset is required in order for the pinch protection to work.

Start with the window in the closed position.
Then move the control in manual mode three times upward toward the closed position.
The system will be automatically activated.

Activating and deactivating max defroster

Max defroster is used to quickly remove condensation and ice from windows.
Max defroster deactivates automatic climate control and air recirculation, activates the air conditioning, and changes blower speed to 5 and temperature to HI.

NOTE

The volume increases when the blower speed is changed to 5.

When max defroster is deactivated, the climate system reverts to the previous settings.

Activating and deactivating max defroster from the center console

A button in the center console offers quick access to the max defroster.



Button in center console.

Tap the button.
The max defroster is activated/deactivated and the button lights up/goes out.

Activating and deactivating max defroster from the center display



Tap the symbol in the center of the climate bar to open Climate view in the center display.



Tap Max.
The max defroster is activated/deactivated and the button lights up/goes out.

Seats and steering wheel

This section contains information about the vehicle's seats and steering wheel and how to adjust them and store position settings for the seat, rearview mirror, door mirrors and head-up display.

Front seat

Climate controls for front seat

Activating and deactivating power front seats

The seats can be heated for added comfort for the driver and passengers in cold weather.



Driver side: Tap the driver's side steering wheel and seat button in the climate bar in the center display to open the controls for steering wheel and seat heating.

Passenger side: The button for the heated seats is directly accessible in the climate bar on the passenger side.



Tap the seat heating button repeatedly to select one of the four levels: Off, High, Medium or Low.
The level is changed and the set level is displayed in the button.

Activating and deactivating the heated front seat

The seats can be heated for added comfort for the driver and passengers in cold weather.
Seat heating can be set to automatically activate when the engine is started. When set to automatically activate, heating will be turned on at low ambient temperatures.

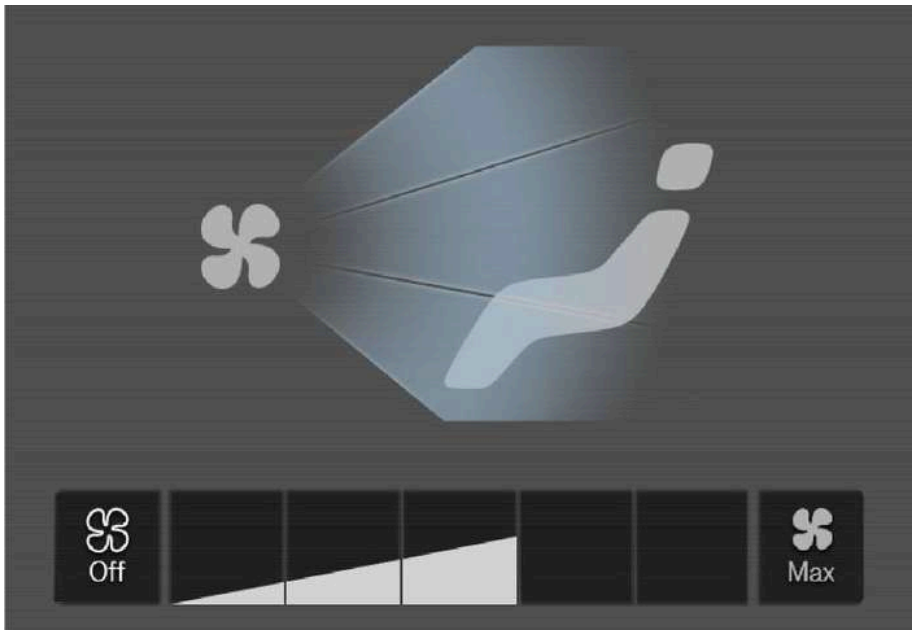
Tap Settings in the Top view in the center display.
Tap Climate.
Select Auto Driver Seat Heating Level and Auto Passenger Seat Heating Level to activate/deactivate automatic start of heated driver's and passenger seat.
An "A" will be displayed next to the relevant seat heating button in the climate bar when auto start has been activated.
Select Low, Medium or High to select level after the function has been activated.

Setting the blower speed for the front seats

The blower can be set to several different automatically controlled speeds for the front seat.



Tap the symbol in the center of the climate bar to open Climate view in the center display.



Blower control buttons in Climate view.

Tap the desired blower speed: Off, 1-5 or Max.
The blower speed will be changed and the buttons for the set speed will light up.

IMPORTANT

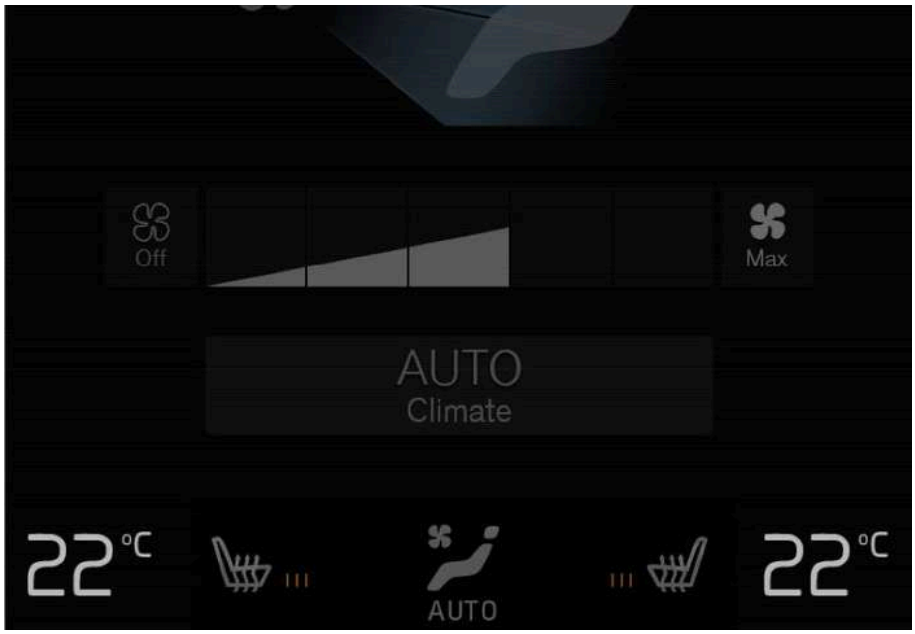
The air conditioning will not engage if the blower is turned off completely, which may cause fogging on the inside of the windows.

NOTE

The climate system automatically adapts airflow as needed within the set blower speed, which means that airflow speed may vary slightly within the same blower speed.

Setting the temperature for the front seats

The temperature can be set to the desired number of degrees for the front seat climate zones.



Temperature buttons in the climate bar.

Tap the left- or right-side temperature buttons in the center display's climate bar to open the control.



Temperature control.

Set the temperature by doing one of the following:

- dragging the control to the desired temperature, or
- tapping +− to raise/lower the temperature.

The temperature will be set and the button will display the new temperature.

> **NOTE**
> Heating/cooling cannot be accelerated by choosing a higher/lower temperature than the desired temperature.

Synchronize temperature

The temperature in the different climate zones of the vehicle can be synchronized with the temperature set for the driver's side.



Synchronization button on the driver's side temperature control.

Tap the driver's side temperature button in the center display's climate bar to open the control.
Tap Synchronize temperature .
The temperature for all of the vehicle's climate zones will be synchronized with the one set for the driver's side and the synchronization symbol will be displayed next to the temperature button.
Synchronization is stopped with another press on Synchronize temperature or by changing the temperature setting for a climate zone other than the driver's.

Memory function for front seat

Using stored positions for seats, mirrors and head-up display

See Using stored positions for seats, mirrors and head-up display.

Storing positions for seats, mirrors and head-up display

See Storing positions for seats, mirrors and head-up display.

Front seats

The seat has a number of setting options to increase comfort.

Power front seats

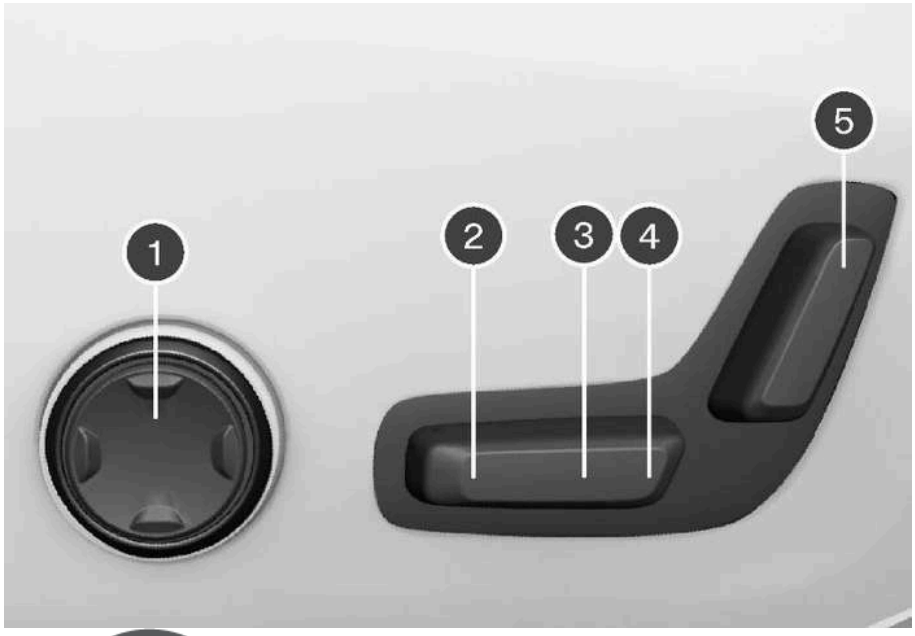
The front seats can be adjusted in a number of different ways to help enhance your seating comfort. The power seat can be moved forward/backward and up/down. The height and length of the seat cushion and the tilt of the backrest can be adjusted. Lumbar support can be adjusted up, down, forward and backward.

The seats can be adjusted when the engine is running and for a certain period of time after the door has been unlocked without the engine running. They can also be adjusted for a short period after the engine is turned off.

> **IMPORTANT**
> The power seats have an overload protector that is triggered if a seat is blocked by any object. If this occurs, remove the object and attempt to adjust the seat again.

Adjusting the power front seats

Set the desired seating position using the controls on the front seat cushion. Use the controls to adjust the various comfort functions.



1. Four-way button for adjusting the seat's four-way lumbar support.
2. Raise/lower the front edge of the seat cushion by moving the control up/down.
3. Raise/lower the seat by moving the control up/down.
4. Move the seat forward/rearward by moving the control forward/rearward.
5. Change the backrest tilt by moving the control forward/backward.

Only one movement (forward/rearward/up/down) can be performed at a time.

The front seat backrests cannot be folded down completely.

Adjusting the passenger seat from the driver's seat

The front passenger seat can be adjusted from the driver's seat.

Activating the function

The function is activated via the function view in the center display:



Tap the Adjust Passenger Seat button to activate.

Adjust passenger seat

The driver must adjust the passenger seat within 10 seconds of activating the function. If no adjustment is made within this time, the function will be deactivated.

The driver adjusts the passenger seat using the controls on the driver's seat:



1. Move the passenger seat forward/rearward by moving the control forward/rearward.
2. Change the backrest tilt of the passenger seat by moving the control forward/backward.

Multifunctional front seat function overview

Improve seating comfort using the multifunction control.

Adjusting front seat cushion length

The length of the seat cushion can be adjusted using the handle on the front of the seat.



Control for adjusting seat cushion.

Grasp the (1) handle on the front of the seat and pull upward.

Adjust the length of the seat cushion.
Release the handle and make sure the seat cushion locks into position.

Adjusting front seat lumbar support

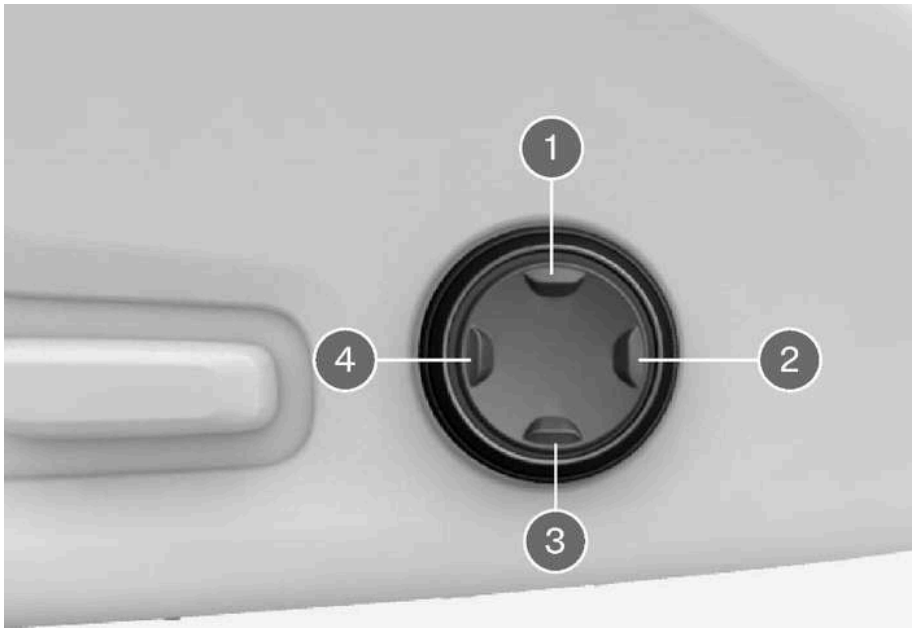
Use the control on the side of the seat cushion to adjust the lumbar support.



Four-way button for adjusting the vehicle's four-way lumbar support.

Lumbar support can be adjusted forward/rearward and up/down and is located on the side of the seat cushion.

Adjusting lumbar support



- Press the four-way button up (1)/down (3) to move the lumbar support upward/downward.
- Press the front part (2) of the four-way button to increase lumbar support.
- Press the rear part (4) of the four-way button to decrease lumbar support.

Steering wheel

Speed-dependent steering wheel resistance

Speed-dependent power steering increases the steering wheel resistance in pace with the vehicle's speed, which can help give the driver an enhanced feeling of control and stability.

Reduced power

In rare situations, the power steering may need to work at reduced power and the steering wheel may then feel more difficult to move. This may happen when the power steering becomes too hot and needs to be temporarily cooled. It can also happen if there is a disturbance in power supply.



On reduced power, the message Power steering Assistance temporarily reduced is shown, and this symbol appears in the instrument panel.

While the power steering is working at reduced power, the driver support functions and systems with steering assistance are not available.

> **WARNING**
> If the temperature rises too high, the power steering may be forced to switch off completely. In such a situation, the driver display shows the message Power steering failure Stop safely along with a symbol.

Changing the level of steering wheel resistance

In INDIVIDUAL drive mode, the level of steering wheel resistance can be adjusted.

Tap Settings in the center display's Top view.
Select My Car → Drive Modes → Steering Force.
Steering wheel resistance settings can only be accessed if the vehicle is stationary or is moving straight ahead at a low speed.

Steering wheel controls and horn

The steering wheel has a horn and controls for e.g. driver support systems and voice control.



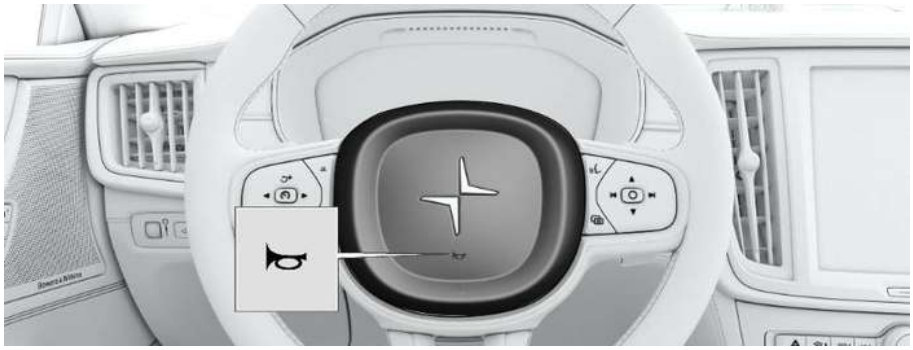
Steering wheel keypads and paddles.

1. Driver support system controls1

2. Paddle for manually shifting gears (automatic transmission).

3. Controls for voice commands, accessing menus and messages, and handling phone calls.

Horn

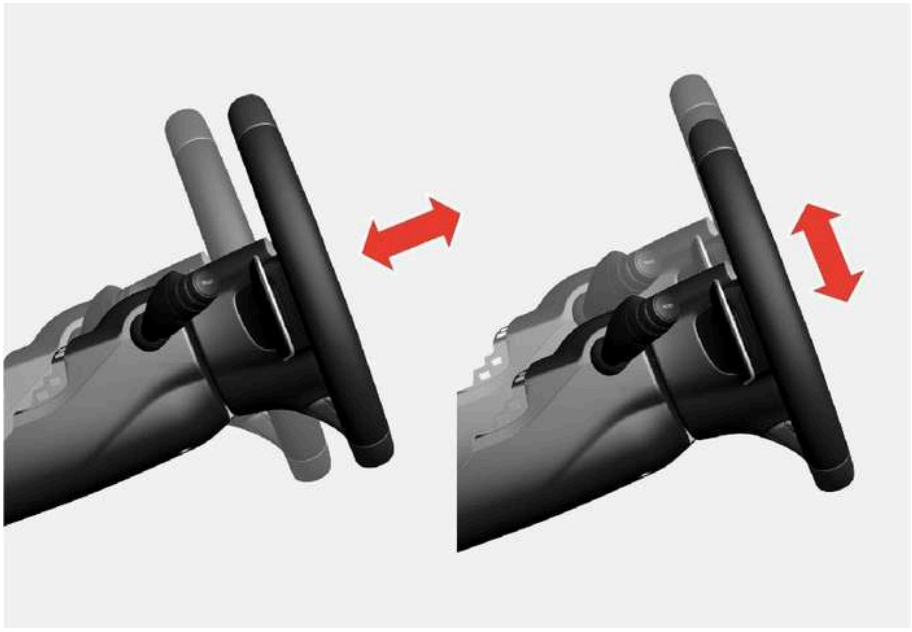

The horn is located in the center of the steering wheel.

***** Option/accessory.

1 Cruise Control, Adaptive Cruise Control*, Distance Alert* and Pilot Assist*.

Adjusting the steering wheel

The steering wheel can be adjusted to various positions.



The steering wheel's reach and height can be adjusted.

> **WARNING**
> Adjust the steering wheel and ensure it locks into position before driving. Never adjust the steering wheel while driving.

Steering wheel force can be adjusted with speed-dependent power steering. Steering wheel force is adjusted according to the vehicle's speed to give the driver an enhanced sense of control and stability.

Adjusting the steering wheel



Steering wheel adjuster lever.

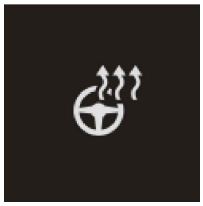
Move the lever forward to release the steering wheel.
Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.
Pull the lever back to lock the steering wheel into place. If the lever is difficult to move, press the steering wheel lightly while pulling the lever.

Activating and deactivating the heated steering wheel

The steering wheel can be heated for added comfort in cold weather.



Tap the driver's side steering wheel and seat button in the climate bar in the center display to open the controls for steering wheel and seat heating.



Tap the steering wheel heating button repeatedly to select one of the four levels: Off, High, Medium or Low.
The level is changed and the set level is displayed in the button.

Activating and deactivating automatic steering wheel heating

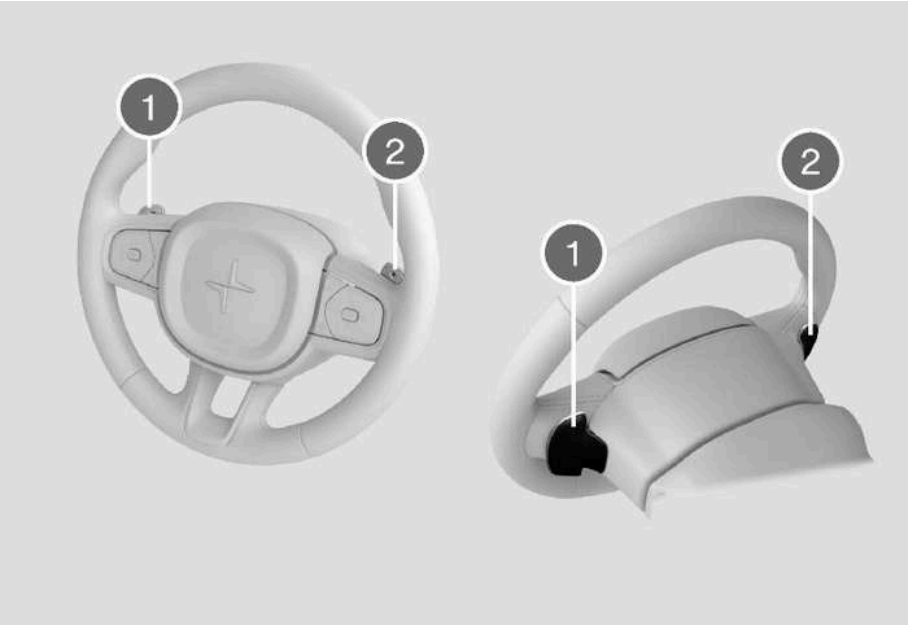
The steering wheel can be heated for added comfort in cold weather.
Steering wheel heating can be set to automatically activate when the engine is started. When set to automatically activate, heating will be turned on at low ambient temperatures.

Tap Settings in the Top view in the center display.
Tap Climate.
Select Auto Steering Wheel Heating Level to activate/deactivate automatic start of heated steering wheel.
An "A" will be displayed next to the heated steering wheel button in the climate bar when auto start has been activated.
Select Low, Medium or High to select level after the function has been activated.

Using the steering wheel paddles to shift

The steering wheel paddles are a supplement to the gear selector and make it possible to shift manually without removing your hands from the steering wheel.

The function is available in position D or B1.

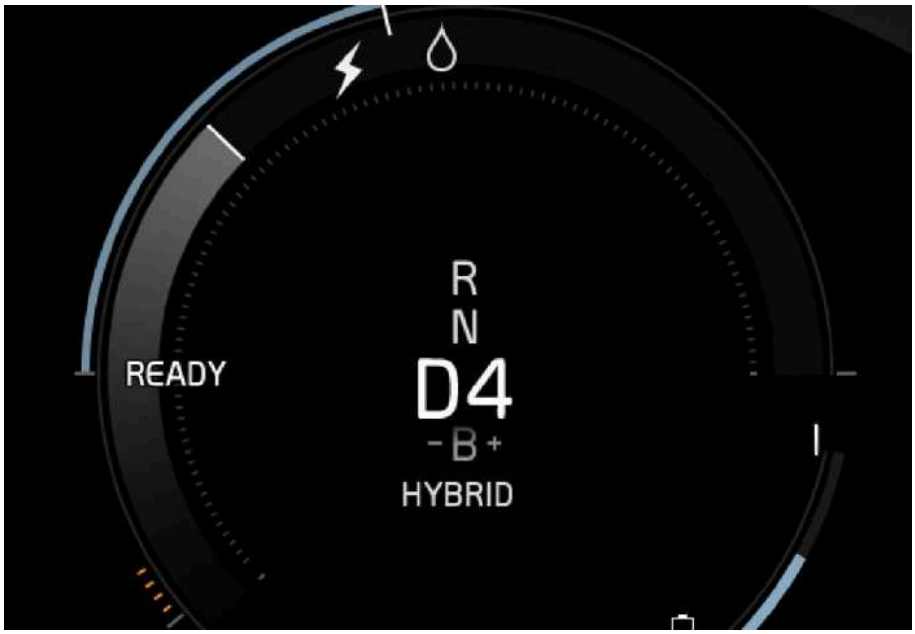


1. "**-**": Shift down one gear.
2. "**+**": Shift up one gear.

Change

To shift:

Pull one of the paddles toward the steering wheel and then release.
As long as the engine speed (rpm) is within the permissible range for the selected gear, a gear shift will take place each time a paddle is pulled. The current gear will be displayed in the instrument panel.



Instrument panel when the paddles are activated for shifting.

Activating the steering wheel paddles in the D position

To be able to shift gears using the paddles, they must be activated:

Pull one of the paddles toward the steering wheel.
A number in the instrument panel indicates the current gear being used.

Turning off the steering wheel paddles in the D position

Manual deactivation

Pull the right paddle (**+**) toward the steering wheel and hold it there until the number in the instrument panel goes out. The transmission will return to the D position.

Automatic deactivation

The steering wheel paddles will switch off after a short time if they are not being used. The number of the current gear will no longer be displayed in the instrument panel.

1 The steering wheel paddles are not available with driving position Pure

Climate control

This section contains information about the vehicle's climate system and heater, how to adjust their settings, air distribution, etc. and how to activate and deactivate heating for the seats, steering wheel, rear window and power door mirrors.

Climate controls

Climate controls for passenger compartment

Activating auto climate control

If auto climate control is activated, several climate system functions are controlled automatically.



Tap the symbol in the center of the climate bar to open Climate view in the center display.
Tap or press and hold AUTO Climate/>

- Tap - air recirculation, air conditioning and air distribution are controlled automatically.
- Press and hold - air recirculation, air conditioning and air distribution are controlled automatically. Temperature and blower speed are changed to standard settings: 22 °C (72 °F) and speed 3.

Auto climate mode is activated and the button lights up.

> **NOTE**
> It is possible to change the temperature and blower speed without deactivating automatic climate control.
> Automatic climate control is deactivated when the air distribution is changed manually or when the max defroster is activated.

Setting the blower speed for the front seats

See Setting the blower speed for the front seats.

Activating and deactivating air conditioning

The air conditioning cools and dehumidifies incoming air as needed.
When the air conditioning is activated, it will be switched on and off automatically by the climate system as needed.



Tap the symbol in the center of the climate bar to open Climate view in the center display.



Tap AC.
The air conditioning is activated/deactivated and the button lights up/goes out.

> **NOTE**
> For optimum function of the air conditioning, close all side windows.

> **NOTE**
> The air conditioning cannot be activated when the fan speed is set to Off.

Activating and deactivating recirculation

The climate system's recirculation function helps shut out smog, smoke, exhaust fumes, etc. by reusing the air in the passenger compartment.



Tap the symbol in the center of the climate bar to open Climate view in the center display.



Tap Recirc.
Air recirculation is activated/deactivated and the button lights up/goes out.

> **IMPORTANT**
> If the air in the vehicle is recirculated too long, there is a risk of fogging on the inside of the windows.

> **NOTE**
> Recirculation cannot be activated when the max defroster is on.

Activating and deactivating the recirculation timer setting

The climate system's recirculation function helps shut out smog, smoke, exhaust fumes, etc. by reusing the air in the passenger compartment.
When the recirculation timer is activated, air recirculation will switch off automatically after 20 minutes.

Tap Settings in the Top view in the center display.
Tap Climate.
Tap Recirculation Timer to activate/deactivate the recirculation timer.

Setting the temperature for the front seats

See Setting the temperature for the front seats.

Synchronize temperature

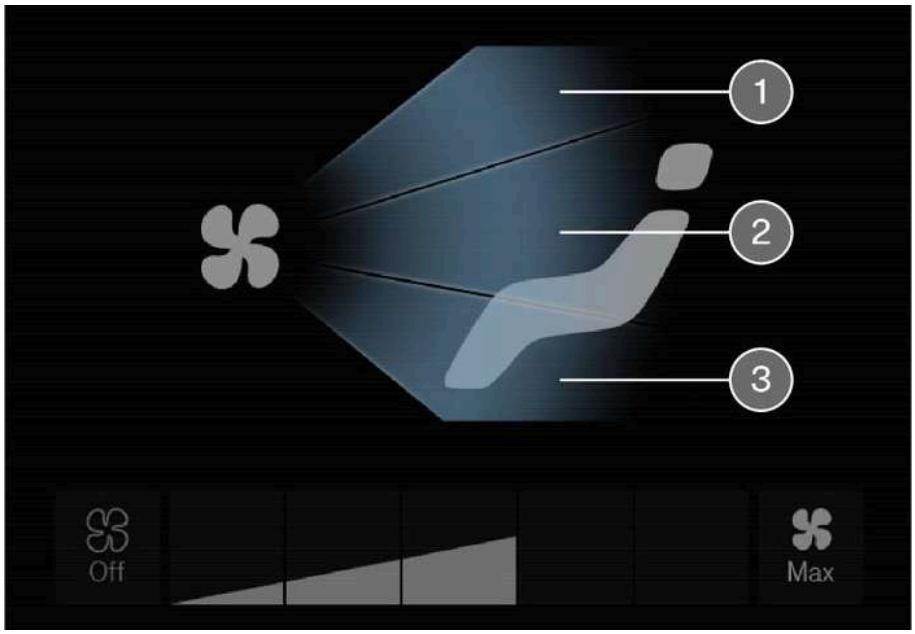
See Synchronize temperature.

Adjusting air distribution

Air distribution can be adjusted manually if needed.



Tap the symbol in the center of the climate bar to open Climate view in the center display.



Air distribution buttons in Climate view.

1. Air distribution - windshield defrost vents
2. Air distribution - dashboard and center console air vents
3. Air distribution - floor air vents

Tap one or more air distribution buttons to open/close the airflow for that vent. The air distribution changes and the buttons will light up or go out.

Climate controls for seats and steering wheel

Activating and deactivating the heated steering wheel

See Activating and deactivating the heated steering wheel.

Activating and deactivating automatic steering wheel heating

See Activating and deactivating automatic steering wheel heating.

Activating and deactivating power front seats

See Activating and deactivating power front seats.

Activating and deactivating the heated front seat

See Activating and deactivating the heated front seat.

Climate controls for windows and mirrors

Activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors

See Activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors.

Automatically activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors

See Automatically activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors.

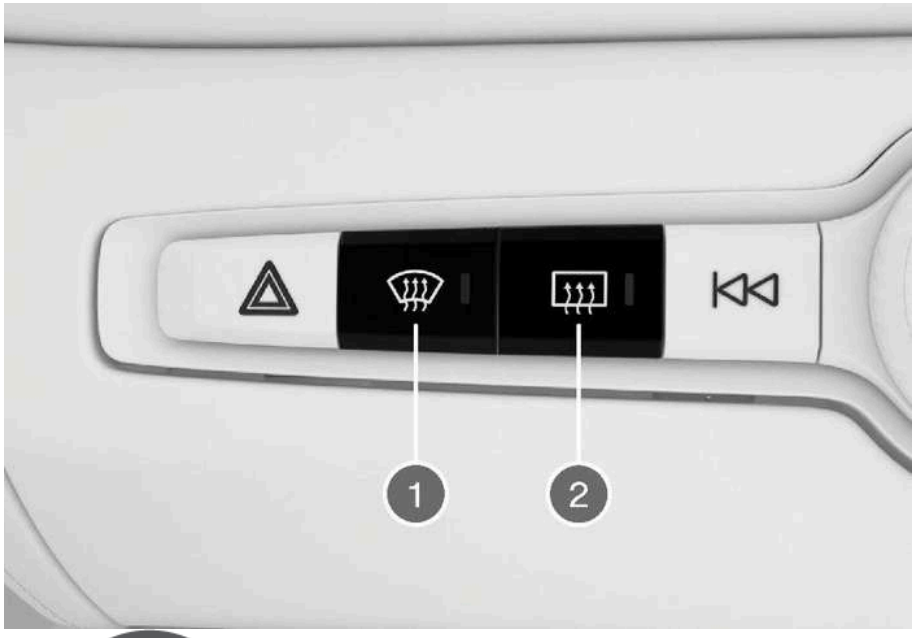
Activating and deactivating max defroster

See Activating and deactivating max defroster.

Climate system controls

The climate system functions are controlled from physical buttons on the center console, the center display, and the climate panel on the rear side of the tunnel console.

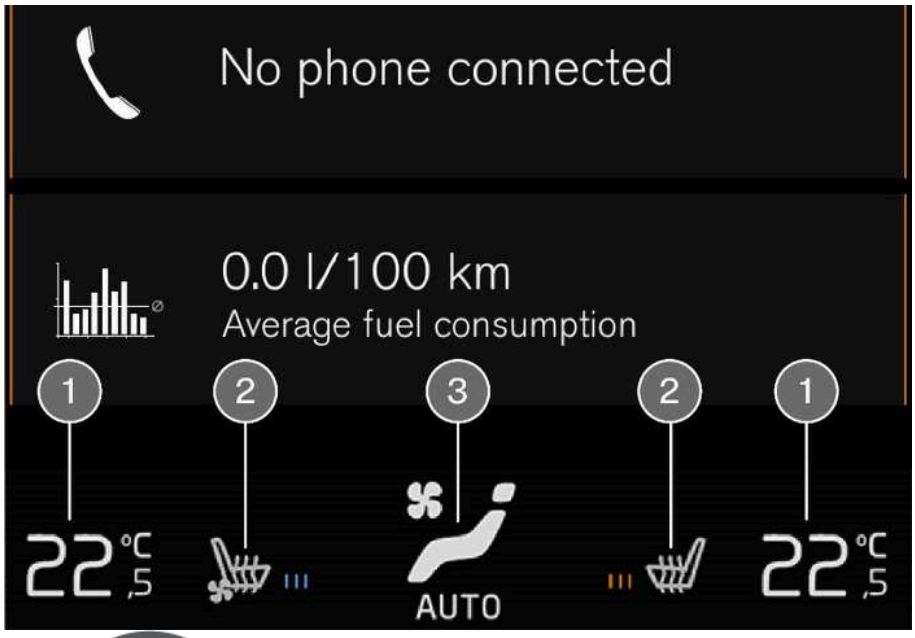
Physical buttons in the center console



1. Button for max defroster.
2. Button for heated rear window and door mirrors.

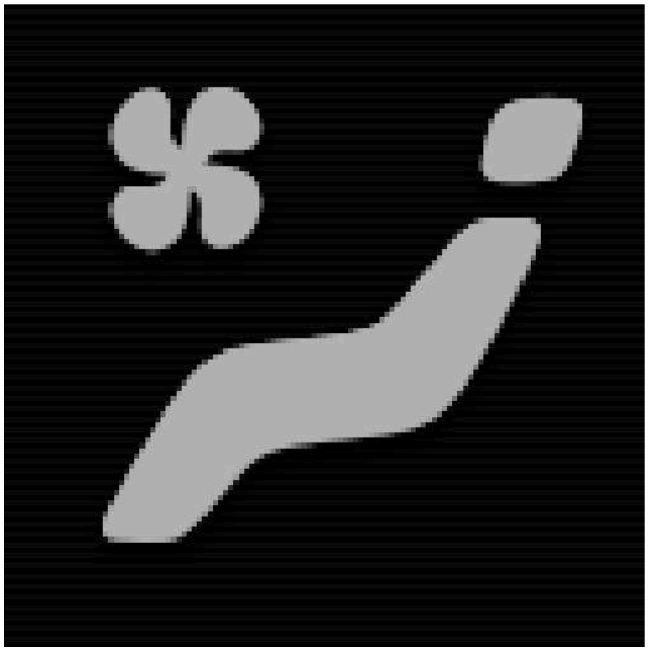
Climate bar in the center display

The most common climate system functions can be controlled from the climate bar.



1. Temperature control for the driver and passenger sides.
2. Controls for heated driver and front passenger seat, as well as heated steering wheel.
3. Button for opening Climate view. The graphic in the button shows activated climate system settings.

Climate view in the center display

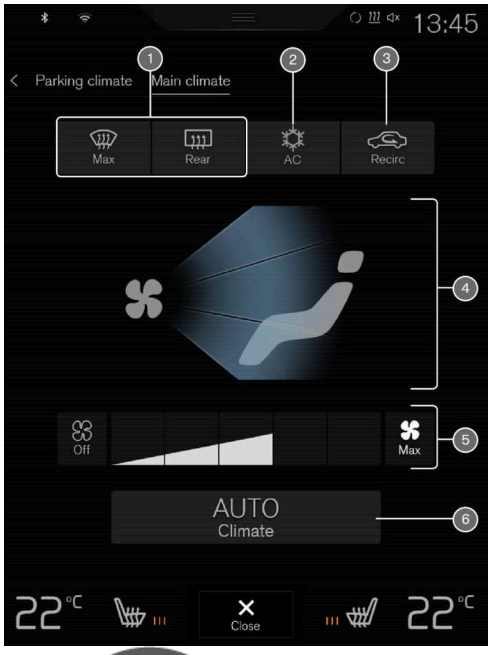


Tap the symbol in the center of the climate bar to open Climate view.

Depending on equipment level, Climate view may be divided into several tabs. Toggle between the tabs by swiping the screen to the left/right or by tapping the desired heading.

Main climate

In addition to the functions in the climate bar, other main climate system functions can be controlled from the Main climate tab.



1. Max, Rear – Controls for defrosting windows and door mirrors.

2. AC - Air conditioning controls.

3. Recirc - Air recirculation controls.

4. Air distribution controls.

5. Blower control for front seats.



6. AUTO - Automatic climate control.

Parking climate

Parking climate functions can be controlled from the Parking climate tab.

Air distribution

Activating and deactivating recirculation

See Activating and deactivating recirculation.

Activating and deactivating the recirculation timer setting

See Activating and deactivating the recirculation timer setting.

Activating and deactivating max defroster

See Activating and deactivating max defroster.

Air distribution

The climate system distributes incoming air through a number of vents in the passenger compartment.

Automatic and manual air distribution

When the auto-climate feature is on, air distribution is regulated automatically. Air distribution can also be controlled manually.

Adjustable air vents

Certain air vents in the vehicle are adjustable, which means they can be opened/closed and the direction of the air flow from the vent can be adjusted.



Location of adjustable air vents in the passenger compartment.



1. Four on the dashboard.

Adjusting air distribution

See Adjusting air distribution.

Air distribution options

Air distribution can be adjusted manually if needed. The following options are available.

	Air distribution	Purpose
	If all air distribution buttons are deselected in manual mode, the climate control system will revert to automatic mode.	
	Main airflow from defroster vents. Some airflow from other vents.	Helps remove ice and condensation in cold and humid weather (blower speed should not be set too low).
	Main airflow from dashboard vents. Some airflow from other vents.	Provides effective cooling in warm weather.

	Air distribution	Purpose
	Main airflow from floor vents. Some airflow from other vents.	Provides heating or cooling in footwell areas.
	Main airflow from defroster and dashboard vents. Some airflow from other vents.	Provides a comfortable climate in warm and dry weather.
	Main airflow from defroster and floor vents. Some airflow from other vents.	Provides a comfortable climate and effective defogging in cold and humid weather.
	Main airflow from dashboard and floor vents. Some airflow from other vents.	Provides a comfortable climate in sunny, cool weather.
	Main airflow from defroster, dashboard and floor vents.	Provides balanced comfort in the passenger compartment.

Opening, closing and directing air vents

Some of the air vents in the passenger compartment can be individually opened, closed and directed.
Misting can be eliminated by directing the outer air vents towards the door windows.

Direct the outer air vents into the passenger compartment to maintain a comfortable temperature in warm weather.

Opening and closing the air vents

Turn the knob in the center of the air vent to open/close airflow from the vent.

When the mark on the knob is vertical, the airflow is strongest.

Directing air flow

Move the lever in the center of the air vent horizontally or vertically to direct the airflow from the vent.

Air quality

Air quality

The materials used in the passenger compartment and air filtering system have been selected to ensure a high level of air quality in the passenger compartment.

Materials used in the passenger compartment

The materials in the passenger compartment are designed to be pleasant and comfortable, even for people with asthma or allergies.

The materials have been developed and tested to reduce dust in the passenger compartment and make it easier to keep clean.

The mats in both the passenger compartment and trunk can be easily removed for cleaning.

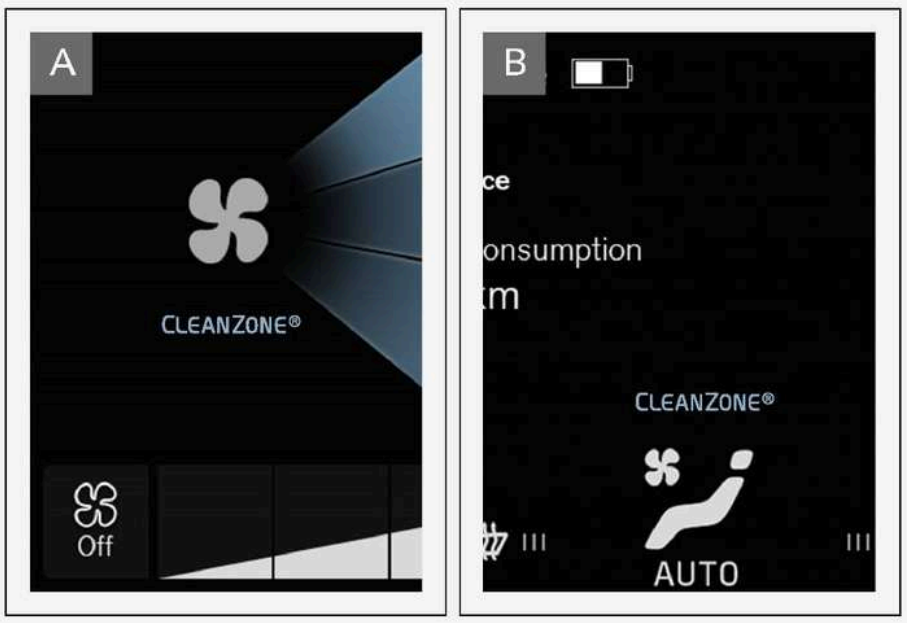
Use Polestar-recommended cleaning agents and vehicle care products to clean the interior.

Air filtering systems

In addition to the passenger compartment filter, the Clean Zone Interior Package and Interior Air Quality System also help maintain high air quality in the passenger compartment.

CleanZone

The CleanZone function monitors the conditions affecting good air quality in the passenger compartment and indicates whether they are fulfilled or not.



A

1. The indicator is shown in the center display's Climate view.

B

2. The indicator is shown in the climate bar when Climate view is not open.

If the conditions are not met, the text Clean Zone will be shown in white. When all the conditions are met, the text will change to blue.

The same indicator will also be shown in the climate panel on the rear side of the tunnel console.

The following conditions must be met:

- All doors and trunk lid are closed.
- All side windows are closed.
- The Interior Air Quality System is activated.
- The blower is activated.
- Air recirculation is deactivated.

> **NOTE**
> CleanZone does not indicate that the air quality is good, but only that the conditions for good air quality have been met.

Clean Zone Interior Package

Clean Zone Interior Package (CZIP) is a series of modifications that filters even more allergy and asthma-inducing substances from the passenger compartment.

CZIP includes the following:

- An enhanced function that starts the blower when the vehicle is unlocked using the remote key. The blower will then fill the passenger compartment with fresh air. The function starts when required and switches off automatically after a period of time or when one of the passenger compartment doors is opened. The amount of time the blower runs gradually decreases due to reduced need up until the vehicle is 4 years old.
- The fully automatic Interior Air Quality System (IAQS).

Interior Air Quality System

Interior Air Quality System (IAQS) is a fully automatic air quality system that removes gases and particles to reduce odors and contaminants in the passenger compartment.
IAQS is part of the Clean Zone Interior Package (CZIP) and removes air contaminants such as particles, hydrocarbons, nitric oxides and ground-level ozone.

If the system's air quality sensors detect contaminants in the outside air, the air intake closes and air recirculation is activated.

> **NOTE**
> To ensure optimal air quality in the passenger compartment, the air quality sensor should always be engaged.
>
> Recirculation is limited in cold weather to prevent fogging.
>
> In the event of fogging, use the defroster functions for the windshield, side windows and rear window.

Activating and deactivating the air quality sensor

The air quality sensor is part of the fully automated Interior Air Quality System (IAQS).
The air quality sensor can be switched on or off.

Tap Settings in the Top view in the center display.
Tap Climate.
Select Air Quality Sensor to activate/deactivate the air quality sensor.

Passenger compartment air filter

All air entering the passenger compartment through the climate control system intake is filtered.

Replacing the passenger compartment filter

To maintain the high performance of the climate control system, the filter must be replaced regularly. Follow Polestar's service program for recommended replacement intervals. When driving in areas with a lot of smog, dust, etc., the filter may need to be changed more frequently.

> **NOTE**
> There are two types of passenger compartment filters. Make sure that the correct filter is installed.

Parking climate

Preconditioning

Preconditioning

Preconditioning is a climate function that, if possible, attempts to achieve a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment before driving.
Preconditioning can be started immediately or started at a preset time using a timer.

The function utilizes several of the vehicle's systems:

- In cold weather, the parking heater heats the passenger compartment to a comfortable temperature.
- In warm weather, air conditioning cools the passenger compartment to a comfortable temperature.
- The electrically heated steering wheel and seats can be activated.
- Heating for the rear window and door mirrors is automatically activated as needed.

During preconditioning in a hot climate, condensation from the air conditions may drip under the vehicle. This is normal.

> **NOTE**
> Preconditioning is only available when the car is connected to an electrical socket. A charging post that is not always active, for example because of a timer, can cause loss of function for preconditioning.
>
> If the vehicle is not connected to an electrical socket it is still possible in a warm climate to achieve brief cooling of the passenger compartment by direct starting preconditioning.

> **NOTE**
> During preconditioning of the passenger compartment, the vehicle works to reach a comfortable temperature and not the temperature set in the climate system.

Starting and stopping preconditioning

Preconditioning heats or cools the passenger compartment, if possible, before driving. The function can be started in the center display or from a cellular phone.

Starting and stopping from the vehicle



Tap the symbol in the center of the climate bar to open Climate view in the center display.
Select the Parking climate tab.
Tap the boxes to select if seat/steering wheel heating should be activated along with preconditioning for each function.
Tap Preconditioning.

Preconditioning starts/stops and the button lights up/goes out.

NOTE

Preconditioning is only available when the car is connected to an electrical socket. A charging post that is not always active, for example because of a timer, can cause loss of function for preconditioning.

If the vehicle is not connected to an electrical socket it is still possible in a warm climate to achieve brief cooling of the passenger compartment by direct starting preconditioning.

NOTE

The vehicle doors and windows should be closed during preconditioning of the passenger compartment.

Starting from app

A device with the Polestar 1 app can be used to start preconditioning and check settings. Preconditioning heats or cools the passenger compartment (using the vehicle's air conditioning system) to the comfort temperature.

The passenger compartment can also be preconditioned using the Engine Remote Start (ERS)1 function using the Polestar 1 app.

1 Certain markets only.

Preconditioning timer settings

The timer can be set to finish preconditioning at a predetermined time.
The timer can store up to 8 preset times for:

- A time on a particular date
- A time on one or more days of the week, with or without the repeat function.

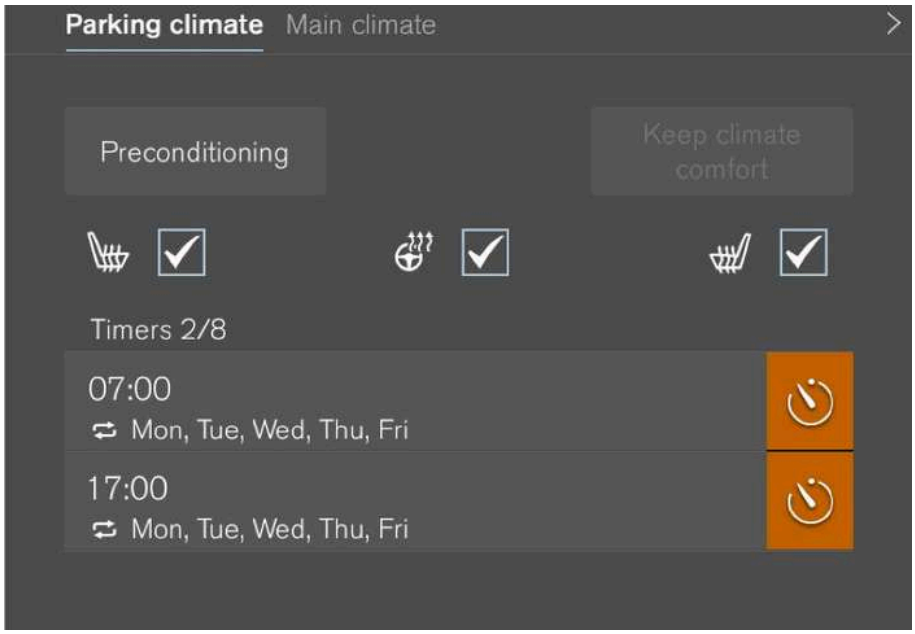
NOTE

Preconditioning is only available when the car is connected to an electrical socket. A charging post that is not always active, for example because of a timer, can cause loss of function for preconditioning.

If the vehicle is not connected to an electrical socket it is still possible in a warm climate to achieve brief cooling of the passenger compartment by direct starting preconditioning.

Activating and deactivating preconditioning timer settings

Timer settings in the preconditioning timer can be activated or deactivated as needed.

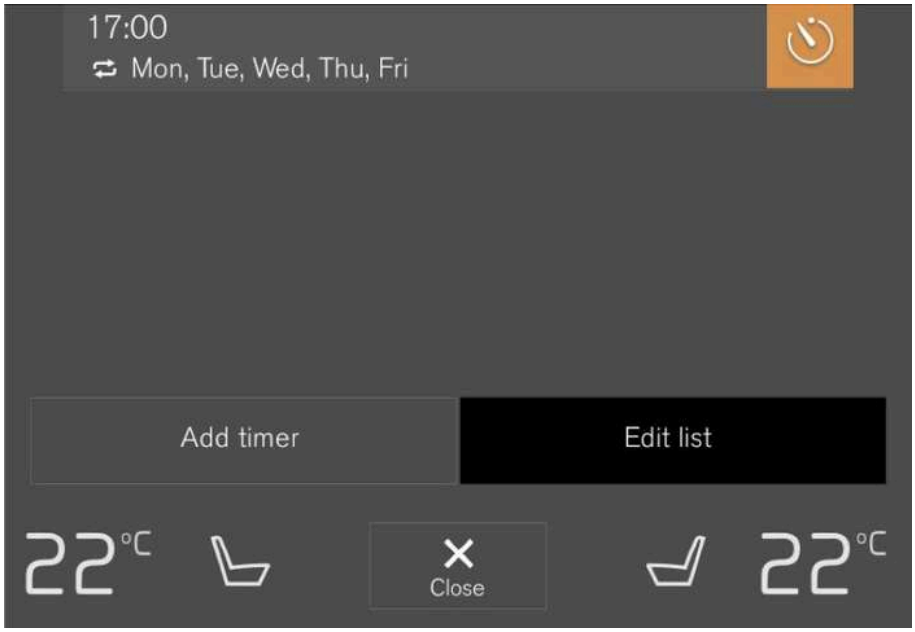


Timer buttons in the Parking climate tab in Climate view.

Open Climate view in the center display.
Select the Parking climate tab.
Activate/deactivate a timer setting by tapping the timer button to the right of the setting.
The timer setting is activated/deactivated and the button lights up/goes out.

Deleting preconditioning timer settings

A preconditioning timer setting that is no longer needed can be deleted.



The button for editing a list/deleting a timer setting in the Parking climate tab in Climate view.

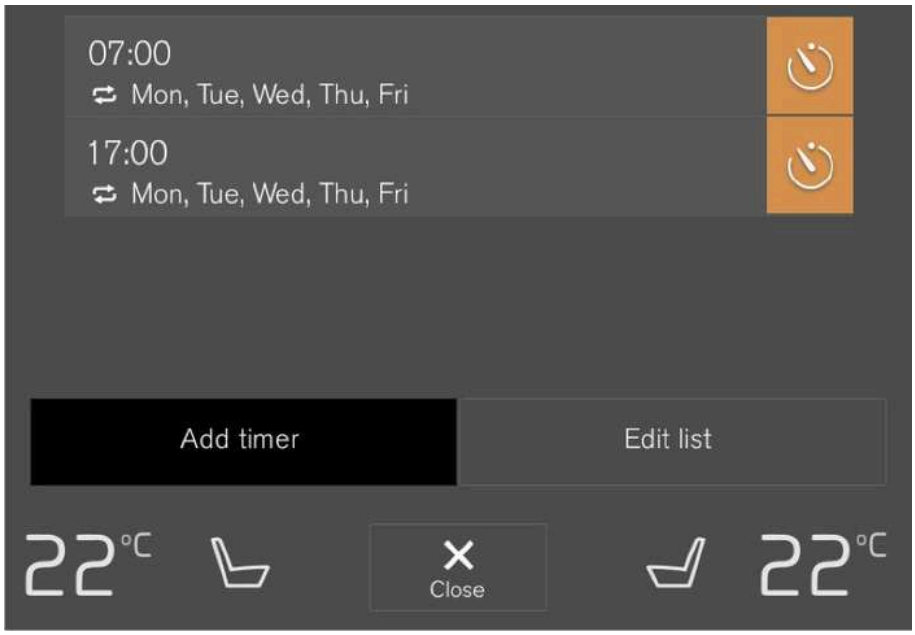
Open Climate view in the center display.
Select the Parking climate tab.
Tap Edit list.
Tap the editing icon to the right in the list.
The icon will change to the text Delete.

Tap Delete to confirm.
The timer setting will be deleted from the list.

Adding and editing timer setting for preconditioning

The preconditioning timer can store up to 8 preset timer settings.

Adding a timer setting



Button for adding a timer setting in the Parking climate tab in Climate view.

Open Climate view in the center display.
Select the Parking climate tab.
Tap Add timer.
A pop-up window will appear.

> **NOTE**
> It is not possible to add a time setting if there are already 8 settings for the timer. Delete a time setting to be able to add a new one.

Tap Date to set a time for a specific date.

Tap Days to set a time for one or more days of the week.

With Days: Activate/deactivate the repeat function by selecting/deselecting the Repeat weekly checkbox.

With Date: Select a date for preconditioning by scrolling in the date list using the arrows.

With Days: Select days of the week for preconditioning by tapping the buttons for the days.

Set the time at which preconditioning should be completed by scrolling using the arrows in the clock.
Tap Confirm to add a timer setting.
The timer setting will be added to the list and activated.

Edit time setting

Open Climate view in the center display.
Select the Parking climate tab.

Tap the timer setting you would like to change.
A pop-up window will appear.
To edit a timer setting, follow the procedures described under the heading "Adding a timer setting" above.

Parking climate comfort

Climate comfort retaining function

The climate in the passenger compartment can be maintained when the vehicle is parked, e.g. if the engine is turned off but the driver or passengers remain in the vehicle.
This function can only be direct-started.

The function utilizes several of the vehicle's systems:

- Residual heat from the engine is used to help heat the passenger compartment to a comfortable temperature.
- In warm weather, the ventilation system cools the passenger compartment by blowing air in from outside.

> **NOTE**
> Climate comfort maintenance will be deactivated if the vehicle is locked from the outside in order to avoid using residual engine heat unnecessarily. This function is intended to be used to maintain climate comfort when the driver or a passenger remains in the vehicle after the engine is turned off.

Switching on and off the climate retaining function when parking

The climate retaining function maintains the climate settings in the vehicle after the engine has been switched off. The function can be activated in the center display.



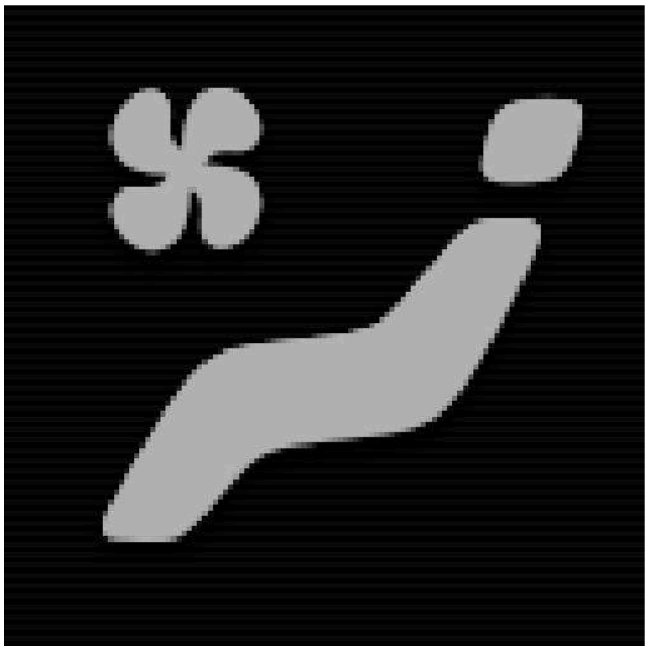
Tap the symbol in the center of the climate bar to open Climate view in the center display.
Select the Parking climate tab.
Tap Keep climate comfort.
The climate comfort retaining function will be activated/deactivated and the button light will go on/off.

> **NOTE**
> Maintained climate comfort is not possible when there is not sufficient residual engine heat to maintain the climate settings in the passenger compartment, or if the outside temperature is above approximately 20 °C (68 °F).

> **NOTE**
> Climate comfort maintenance will be deactivated if the vehicle is locked from the outside in order to avoid using residual engine heat unnecessarily. This function is intended to be used to maintain climate comfort when the driver or a passenger remains in the vehicle after the engine is turned off.

Parking climate

Parking climate is an umbrella term for various functions that improve the passenger compartment climate when the vehicle is parked, e.g. preconditioning.



Parking climate functions are controlled from the Parking climate tab in the center display's Climate view. Tap the symbol in the center of the climate bar to open Climate view.

Parking climate symbols and messages

See Parking climate symbols and messages.

Parking heater

The parking heater heats the passenger compartment as needed before driving if preconditioning is activated.
The parking heater is one of two sub-functions of the vehicle's heater. The heater is mounted in the front right-side wheel housing.

The parking heater starts automatically if the parking climate's preconditioning is activated and the passenger compartment needs to be heated.

It switches off automatically when a set timer time has ended, or if the car is restarted.

> **NOTE**
> Make sure that the hybrid battery has sufficient charge if the parking heater must be used.

Heater

Heater

The heater has two sub-functions that help warm the passenger compartment or engine in various situations.
The heater has two sub-functions:

- Parking heater - heats the passenger compartment as needed when the parking climate's preconditioning is activated.
- Auxiliary heater - heats the passenger compartment and engine while driving.

The vehicle's high-voltage heater is mounted in the front right-side wheel housing.

Battery and charging

The heater is powered by the vehicle's hybrid battery. If the charge level in the hybrid battery is too low, the heater will switch off automatically and a message will be displayed in the instrument panel.

> **NOTE**
> Make sure that the battery has sufficient charge if the heater must be used.

Parking heater

See Parking heater.

Additional heater

The auxiliary heater helps heat the passenger compartment and engine while driving.
The auxiliary heater is one of two sub-functions of the vehicle's heater. The heater is mounted in the front right-side wheel housing.

The auxiliary heater is started and controlled automatically when extra heat is required while the vehicle is being driven.

It switches off automatically when the ignition is switched off.

Activating and deactivating the auxiliary heater

The auxiliary heater helps heat the passenger compartment and engine while driving.
It is possible to set whether automatic start for the auxiliary heater should be activated or deactivated.

Tap Settings in the Top view in the center display.
Tap Climate.
Select Additional Heater to activate/deactivate automatic start for the auxiliary heater.

> **NOTE**
> If automatic start of the auxiliary heater is deactivated, this may impair comfort in the passenger compartment since the climate system then does not have a heat source during electrical operation.

Climate

The vehicle is equipped with electronic climate control. The climate system cools, heats and dehumidifies the air in the passenger compartment.
All of the climate system functions are controlled from the center display and the buttons on the center console.

Climate control system voice commands

See Climate control system voice commands.

Climate control system service

Service and repairs on the air conditioning system should only be done by an authorized workshop.

Troubleshooting and repairs

The air conditioning system contains a fluorescent tracer substance. Ultraviolet light is used to search for leaks in the system.

Contact Polestar Customer Support if you experience any problems with the climate system.

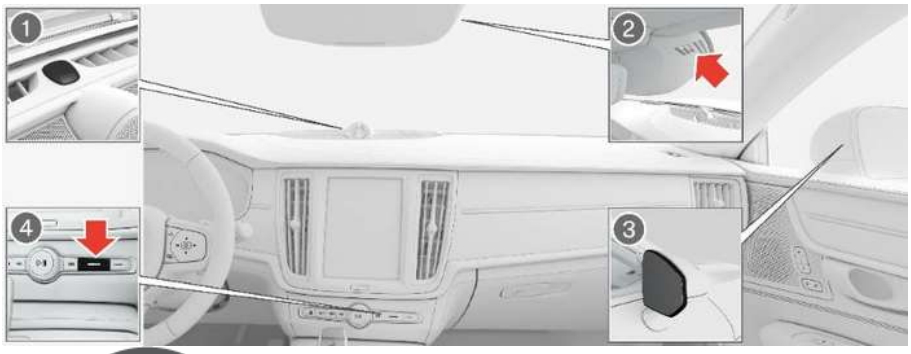
Vehicles with R134a refrigerant

> **WARNING**
> The air conditioning system contains the refrigerant R134a under pressure. Service and repairs to the system should only be done by an authorized workshop.

Climate control sensors

The climate system has a number of sensors to help regulate the climate settings in the vehicle.

Location of the sensors



1. Sunlight sensors - on the upper side of the dashboard.
2. Humidity sensor - in the rearview mirror console.
3. Ambient temperature sensor - in the right-side door mirror.
4. Passenger compartment temperature sensor - near the buttons in the center console.

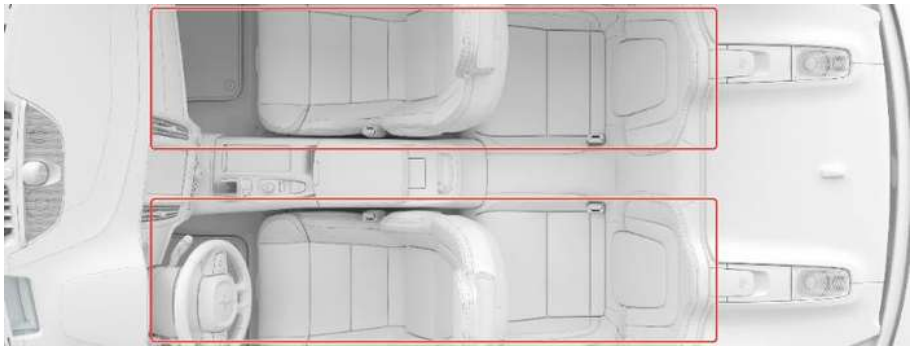
> **NOTE**
> Do not cover or block the sensors with clothing or other objects.

On vehicles equipped with the Interior Air Quality System, there is also an air quality sensor in the climate system's air intake.

Climate zones

The vehicle is divided into climate zones to make it possible to set different temperatures for different parts of the passenger compartment.

2-zone climate system



Climate zones with 2-zone climate system.

In 2-zone climate systems, the passenger compartment temperature can be set separately for the left and right sides of the vehicle.

Perceived temperature

The climate control system regulates the climate in the passenger compartment based on perceived temperature, not actual temperature.
The selected passenger compartment temperature is based on the physical perception of the current ambient temperature, airflow speed, humidity, sunlight in the passenger compartment, etc.

The system has a sunlight sensor that detects which side of the vehicle the sunlight is shining on and adjusts the temperature accordingly. This means that the temperature of the air coming out of the vents may be different for the left and right sides, even if the temperature setting is the same for both sides.

Key, locks and alarm

This section contains information on various ways to lock and unlock your vehicle, how to activate certain functions and which settings you can adjust. You will also find information on the alarm and how to arm and disarm it.

Key

Driver profiles

Driver profiles

See Driver profiles.

Changing a driver profile's name

See Changing a driver profile's name.

Linking a key to a driver profile

See Linking a key to a driver profile.

Protecting a driver profile

See Protecting a driver profile.

Selecting a driver profile

See Selecting a driver profile.

Resetting driver profile settings

See Resetting driver profile settings.

Linking a key to a driver profile

See Linking a key to a driver profile.

Electronic immobilizer

The electronic immobilizer is a start inhibitor that helps prevent the vehicle from being started by an unauthorized person.
The vehicle can only be started with the right key.

The following instrument panel error messages are related to the electronic immobilizer:

Symbol	Message	Meaning
	Vehicle key not found See Manual	Key not recognized during start. Place the key on the key symbol in the cupholder and try to start the vehicle again.

Remote immobilizer with tracking system[1]

The vehicle is equipped with a system that makes it possible to track and locate the vehicle and to remotely activate the immobilizer to prevent the vehicle from being started. Contact Polestar Customer Support for more information and assistance activating the system.

The following instrument panel error messages are related to the remote immobilizer with tracking system:

Symbol	Message	Meaning
	Remotely immobilised Vehicle not possible to start	The remote immobilizer with tracking system is activated. The vehicle cannot be started. Contact Polestar Customer Support.

1 Only certain markets and in combination with Polestar Connect.

Key

The key is used to lock and unlock the doors and trunk lid. The key or phone must be in the vehicle in order to start the engine.
The key is not physically used to start the ignition because the vehicle is equipped with keyless start (Passive Start). The key or phone only needs to be in the front section of the passenger compartment.

The keys can be linked to different driver profiles to store personal settings in the vehicle.

Key buttons



The key has four buttons, one on the left side and three on the right.



1. **Locking** - Press once to lock the doors, trunk lid and fuel filler door and arm the alarm.
2. Press and hold to close all windows.



3. **Unlocking** – Press once to unlock the doors and trunk lid and disarm the alarm.
4. Press and hold to open all windows at the same time. This total airing function can be used to e.g. quickly air out the vehicle in hot weather.



5. **Trunk lid** – Press and hold to open the trunk lid mechanically using the preloaded springs.



6. **Panic alarm** - Used to attract attention in emergency situations. Press and hold the button for at least 3 seconds or press twice within 3 seconds to activate the turn signals and horn. To deactivate, wait at least 5 seconds and

press the button again. If no action is taken, the panic alarm will deactivate automatically after 3 minutes.

WARNING

If anyone is left in the vehicle, make sure that power to the power windows is cut off by always taking the key with you when you leave the vehicle.

NOTE

Be aware of the risk of locking the key in the vehicle.

- If the key is left in the vehicle, it will be deactivated when the vehicle is locked and the alarm set using another valid key. The key will be reactivated when the vehicle is unlocked.

Interference

Electromagnetic fields or obstructing objects may interfere with the key's functions for keyless start and keyless locking and unlocking.

NOTE

Avoid storing the key near metal objects or electronic devices, e.g. cell phones, tablets, laptops or chargers – preferably no closer than 10-15 cm (4-6 in.).

If you experience interference, use the key's detachable blade to unlock the vehicle and then place the key in the backup reader in the tunnel console cupholder to disarm the alarm and start the vehicle.

NOTE

When the key is placed in the cupholder, make sure there are no other vehicle keys, metal objects or electronic devices (e.g. cell phones, tablets, laptops or chargers) in the cupholder. Multiple vehicle keys close to each other in the cup holder can disrupt their functionality.

WARNING

California Proposition 65

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

Ordering additional keys

Two keys are provided with the vehicle. Additional keys can be ordered.
A total of 12 keys can be programmed and used for the same vehicle. An additional driver profile will be added for each new key.

Lost key

If you lose your key, you can order a replacement – contact Polestar Customer Support. Bring the other remaining keys to the workshop. As an anti-theft measure, the code of the lost remote key must be erased from the system.

The current number of keys registered for the vehicle can be checked via driver profiles in the center display's Top view. Select Settings → System → Driver Profiles.

NOTE

Polestar recommends contacting Polestar Customer Support to copy or order new keys.

You can also obtain additional or duplicate remote control keys from certain independent repair facilities and locksmiths that are qualified to make remote control keys. Each key must be programmed to work with your vehicle. A list of independent repair facilities and/or locksmiths known to Polestar that can cut and code replacement keys can be found:

- on Polestar's website, support.polestar.com
- by contacting Polestar Customer Support.

Replacing the key's battery

The battery in the key must be replaced when it is discharged.

NOTE

All batteries have a limited service life and must eventually be replaced. The battery's service life varies depending on how often the vehicle/key is used.



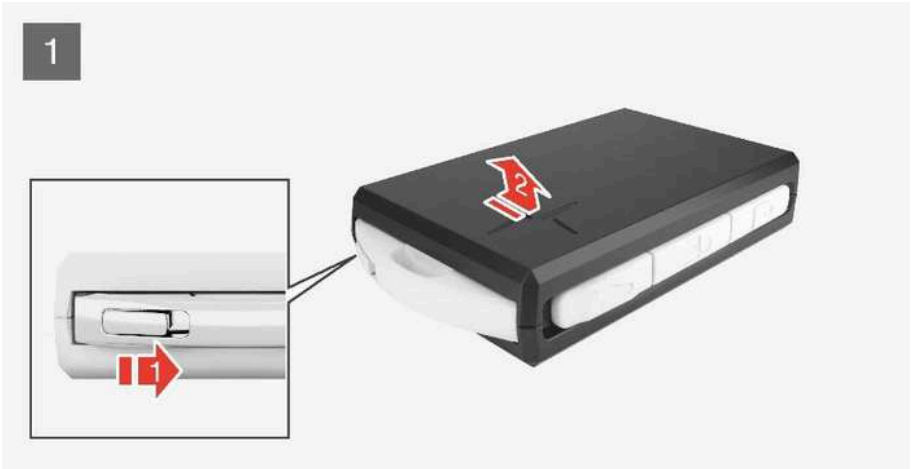
The key battery should be replaced if

- the information symbol illuminates and the message Vehicle key bat. low is displayed in the instrument panel
- the locks do not react after several attempts to lock or unlock the vehicle using the key within approx. 20 meters (65 feet) from the vehicle.

NOTE

Move closer to the vehicle and try to unlock it again.

Opening the key and replacing the battery



1

1. Hold the key with the front side (with the Polestar logo) facing up and move the button on the key ring section to the right. Slide the front cover slightly upward.
2. The cover will loosen and can be removed from the key.



2

1. Turn the key over, move the button to the side and slide the rear cover slightly upward.
2. The cover will loosen and can be removed from the key.



3

Use a screwdriver or similar object to turn the battery cover counterclockwise so the markers point to OPEN.

Remove the cover carefully by pressing e.g. a fingernail into the indentation.

Pry the cover up.



4

The battery's positive side (+) faces upward. Carefully pry out the battery as shown in the illustration.

IMPORTANT

Avoid touching new batteries and their contact surfaces with your fingers as this will impair their function.



5

Insert a new battery with the positive side (+) facing upward. Do not touch the contact surfaces of the key battery.

1 Place the edge of the battery downward into the holder. Slide the battery forward until it locks into place under the two plastic catches.

2 Press the battery downward until it locks into place under the upper black plastic catch.

NOTE

Use batteries with the designation CR2032, 3 V.

NOTE

Polestar recommends that batteries used in the key satisfy the UN Manual of Test and Criteria, Part III, sub-section 38.3. Contact Polestar Customer Support if you need to replace factory-installed batteries.



6

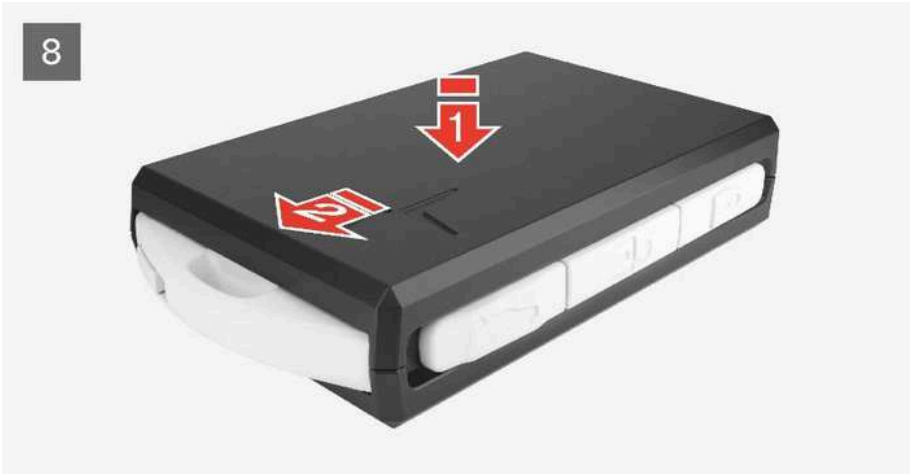
Replace the battery cover and turn it clockwise until it points to CLOSE.



7

1. Put the rear cover back into position and press it down until it clicks into place.
2. Slide the cover back.

A second click indicates that the cover is correctly positioned and locked into place.



8

1. Turn the key over and press the front cover down until it clicks into place.

2 Slide the cover back.
An additional click indicates that the cover is correctly in place.

IMPORTANT

Be sure to dispose of end-of-life batteries in a way that protects the environment.

WARNING

California Proposition 65

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

Locking and unlocking using the key

The doors and the trunk lid can be locked and unlocked simultaneously using the buttons on the key.

Locking using the key



Press the button on the key to lock the vehicle.
To activate the locking sequence, both doors must be closed. If the passenger door or trunk lid is open, they will be locked and the alarm will be armed once they are closed.

NOTE

Be aware of the risk of locking the key in the vehicle.

- If the key is left in the vehicle, it will be deactivated when the vehicle is locked and the alarm set using another valid key. The key will be reactivated when the vehicle is unlocked.

Locking when the trunk lid is open

> **NOTE**
> If the vehicle is locked and the trunk lid is still open, make sure that the key is not left in the trunk when the trunk lid is closed and the entire vehicle is locked1.

Unlocking using the key

Press the button on the key to unlock the vehicle.

Automatic relocking

If none of the doors or trunk lid are opened within two minutes after being unlocked, they will automatically relock. This function reduces the risk of inadvertently leaving the vehicle unlocked.

Key not working

> **NOTE**
> Move closer to the vehicle and try to unlock it again.

If the key is not working to lock or unlock the vehicle, its battery may be discharged. Use the detachable key blade to lock/unlock the driver's door instead.

1 If the key is detected in the vehicle, the trunk lid will not lock when it is closed.

Unlocking the trunk lid using the key

The key can be used to unlock only the trunk lid.



Press and hold the key's button (about 1.5 seconds).
The trunk lid will open mechanically while the side doors will remain locked and armed.

The lock and alarm indicator on the dashboard will go out to indicate that the vehicle is no longer fully locked.

If the trunk lid is not opened within 2 minutes, it will be relocked and the alarm armed.

Detachable key blade

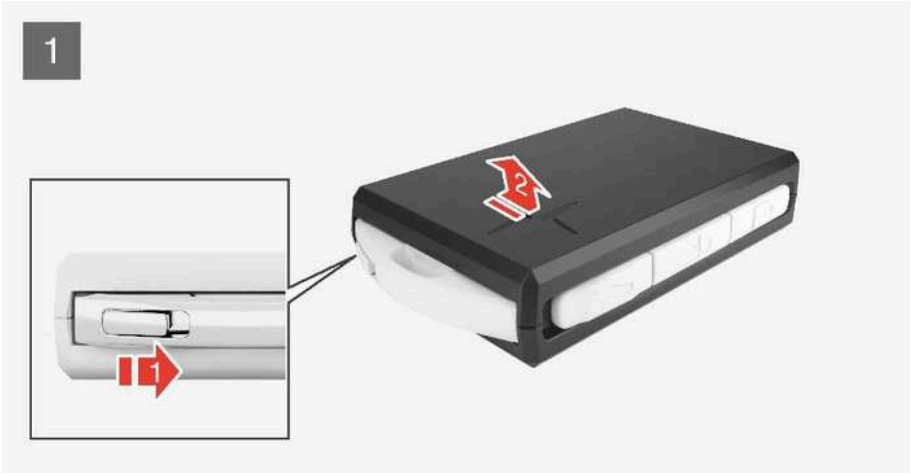
The key contains a detachable metal key blade that can be used to activate a number of functions and preform certain actions.
Contact Polestar Customer Support for assistance when ordering new key blades.

Using the detachable key blade

The detachable key blade can be used to

- manually open the driver's door if central locking cannot be activated with the regular key
- emergency-lock the doors

Detaching the key blade



1

1 Hold the key with the front side (with the Polestar logo) facing up and move the button on the key ring section to the right. Slide the front cover slightly upward.

2 The cover will loosen and can be removed from the key.



2

1 Remove the key blade by pulling it up.



3

Put the key blade back into its designated spot in the key after use.

1 Replace the cover by pressing it down until it clicks into place.

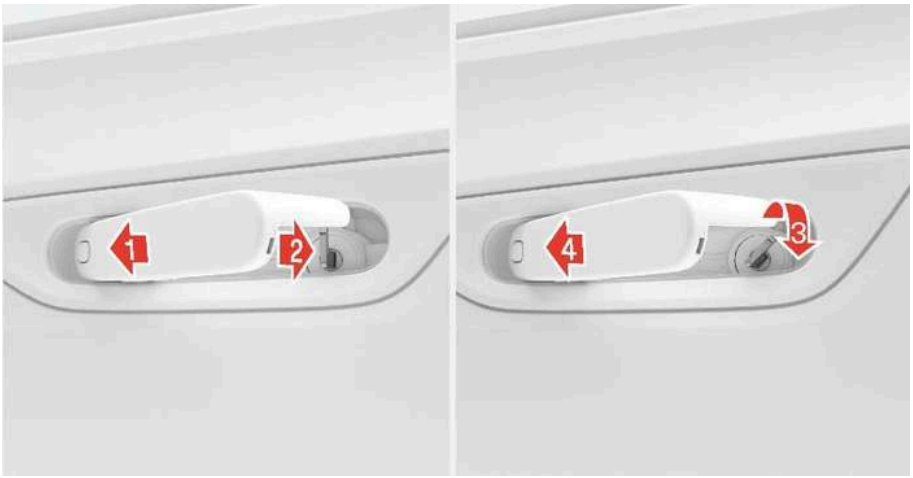
2 Slide the cover back.

An additional click indicates that the cover is correctly in place.

Locking and unlocking with detachable key blade

The detachable key blade can be used to unlock the vehicle from outside, for example if the vehicle has no electrical current or if the key's battery is discharged.

Unlocking



1

Push the button and pull out the driver's door handle until the locking cylinder is visible.

2

Put the key in the lock cylinder.

3

Turn clockwise 45 degrees.

4

Turn the key blade back 45 degrees to its original position. Remove the key from the lock cylinder and release the handle.
Pull the door handle.
The door will open.

Disarming the alarm and starting the vehicle

> **NOTE**
> When the door is unlocked using the detachable key blade and then opened, the alarm will be triggered.



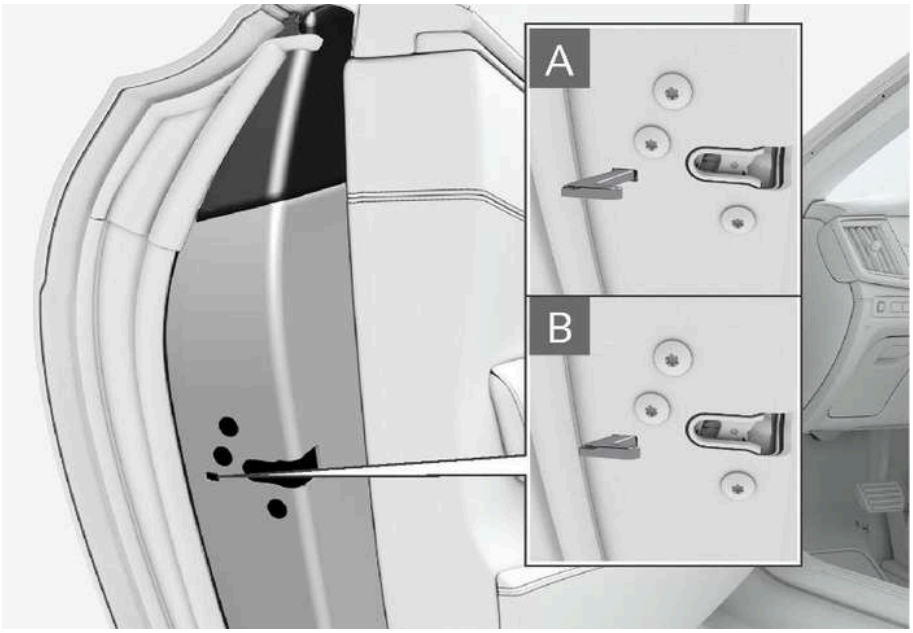
Location of the backup key reader in the cup holder.

Turn off the alarm by:
Place the key on the key symbol in the backup reader in the bottom of the cupholder in the tunnel console.
Turn the start knob clockwise and release it.
The alarm signal will stop and the alarm will switch off.

Locking

The doors have a lock mechanism in the side of the door that must be pushed in using the key blade. The door will then be locked mechanically and cannot be opened from the outside.

The doors can still be opened from inside.



Manual door lock.

Remove the detachable key blade from the key. Insert the key blade into the opening for the lock mechanism and push the key in as far as possible, about 12 mm (0.5 in).

A	The door can be opened from both the outside and the inside.
B	The door cannot be opened from the outside. To return to position A, open the door using the inside door handle.

The doors can also be unlocked by pressing the unlock button on the key or the central lock button in the driver's door.

> **NOTE**
> The door's lock controls only lock that specific door, not both doors simultaneously.

Key range

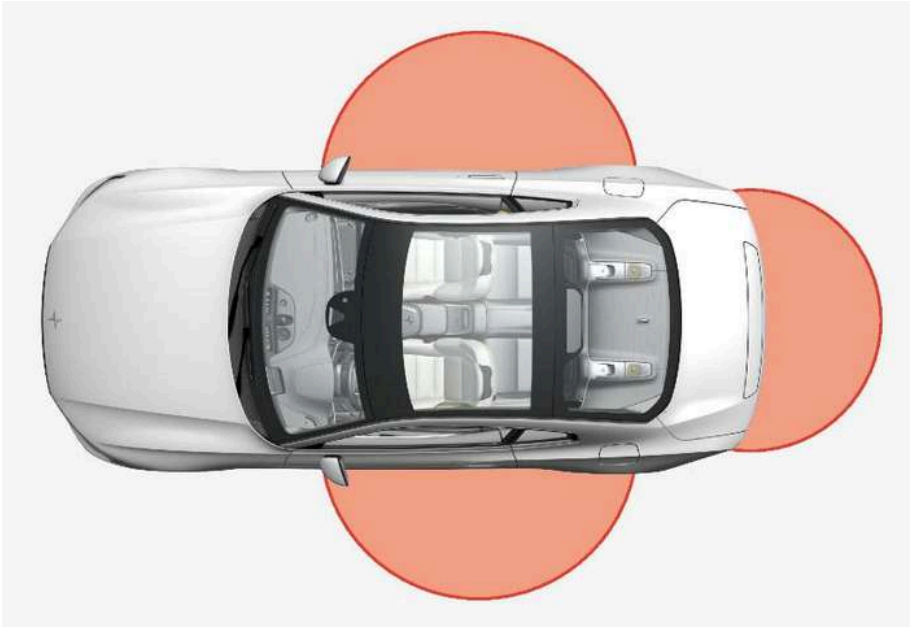
In order to function correctly, the key must be within a certain distance from the vehicle.

Manual use

The key's functions for e.g. locking and unlocking, which are activated by pressing or , have a range of approx. 20 meters (65 feet) from the vehicle.

If the vehicle's locks do not react, move closer and try again.

Keyless use



The shaded areas around the vehicle illustrate the range of the system's antennas.

For keyless use, a key must be within the shaded areas shown in the illustration, i.e. a semicircle with a radius of approx. 1.5 meters (5 feet) along the sides of the vehicle or approx. 1 meter (3 feet) from the trunk lid.

> **NOTE**
> The functions of the key can be disrupted by ambient radio waves, buildings, topographical conditions, etc. The vehicle can always be locked/unlocked using the key blade.

If the key is removed from the vehicle



If the key is removed from the vehicle while the engine is running, the warning message Vehicle key not found Removed from vehicle will be displayed in the instrument panel and an audible signal will sound when the last door is closed.

The message will disappear when the key is returned to the vehicle and the O button on the right-side steering wheel keypad is pressed or when the last door is closed again.

Start and lock system type designations

See Start and lock system type designations.

Antenna locations for the start and lock system

The antennas for the keyless start system and keyless locking system are integrated in the vehicle.



Location of the antennas:

1	Under the cup holder in the front section of the tunnel console
2	In the upper front section of the left-side door
3	In the upper front section of the right-side door
4	In the trunk

WARNING

Individuals with an implanted pacemaker should not allow the pacemaker to come within 22 cm (9 in.) of the Keyless system antennas. The aim of this is to prevent disturbances between the pacemaker and the Keyless system.

Ignition modes

The vehicle's ignition can be put in various modes (levels) to make different functions available.
To enable the use of a limited number of functions when the engine is not running, the ignition can be put in one of three different levels: **0**, **I** and **II**. These levels are referred to as "ignition modes" in the Manual.

The following table shows which functions are available in each ignition mode:

Mode	Functions
0	• The odometer, clock and temperature gauge are illuminated1. • The power seats can be adjusted. • The power windows can be used. • The center display is activated and can be used1. • The infotainment system can be used1. In this mode, the functions are available for a limited time and then switch off automatically.
I	• Power windows, 12-volt electrical socket in the passenger compartment, Bluetooth, navigation, phone, blower and windshield wipers can be used. • The power seats can be adjusted. • The 12-volt electrical socket in the trunk can be used. **Electrical current will be taken from the battery in this ignition mode.**
II	• The headlights illuminate. • Warning/indicator lights illuminate for 5 seconds. • A number of other systems are activated. However, seat and rear window heating can only be activated when the engine is running. **This ignition mode uses a lot of current from the battery and should be avoided whenever possible!**

1 Also activated when the door is opened.

Selecting ignition mode

The vehicle's ignition can be put in various modes (levels) to make different functions available.



Start knob in the tunnel console.

- **Ignition mode 0** – Unlock the vehicle and keep the key in the passenger compartment.
- **Ignition mode I** – Turn the start knob clockwise and release it. The control will automatically return to the original position.
- **Ignition mode II** – Turn the start knob clockwise and hold it there for approx. 5 seconds. Release the knob, which will automatically return to its original position.

- **Back to ignition mode 0** – To return to ignition mode 0 from modes I and II, turn the start knob clockwise and release it. The control will automatically return to the original position.

Locking and unlocking

Keyless locking and unlocking

Antenna locations for the start and lock system

See Antenna locations for the start and lock system.

Keyless locking and unlocking

With the keyless locking and unlocking function, the key or phone only needs to be within range, e.g. in your hand or pocket, in order to unlock the doors and trunk lid. The vehicle can be locked or unlocked by pressing the handle. The trunk lid can be unlocked by making a kicking motion behind the left-side rear tire.

> **NOTE**
> Be aware of the risk of locking the key in the trunk when closing the lid.

> **NOTE**
> Please be aware that the system could be activated in a car wash if the key is within range.

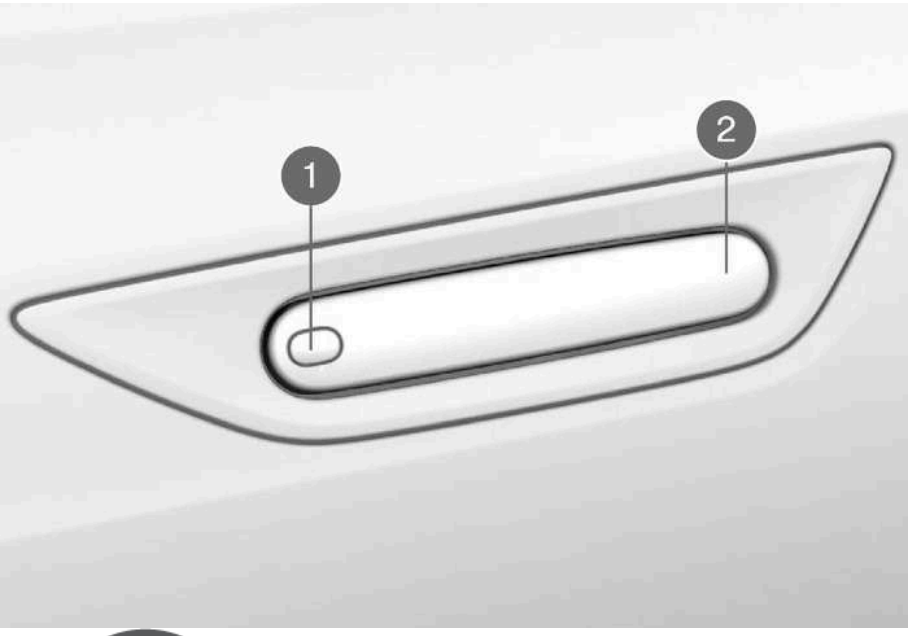
Keyless door locking and unlocking

With keyless unlocking, the doors can be opened by pressing the door handle.

> **NOTE**
> One of the vehicle's keys or your phone must be within range for locking and unlocking to be possible.

Door handle

To unlock, press the marked button on the vehicle's door handle. The handle will be extended and the door can be opened. The vehicle is locked when the handle is pushed in.



1. Push button for unlocking
2. Pressure area for locking

> **NOTE**
> Please be aware that the system could be activated in a car wash if the key is within range.

Automatic relocking

If none of the doors are opened within two minutes after being unlocked, they will automatically relock. This function reduces the risk of inadvertently leaving the vehicle unlocked.

Keyless unlock settings

See Keyless unlock settings.

Keyless unlocking of the trunk lid using a foot movement

With keyless unlocking, the trunk can be opened by moving your foot to the side of the left-hand rear tire.

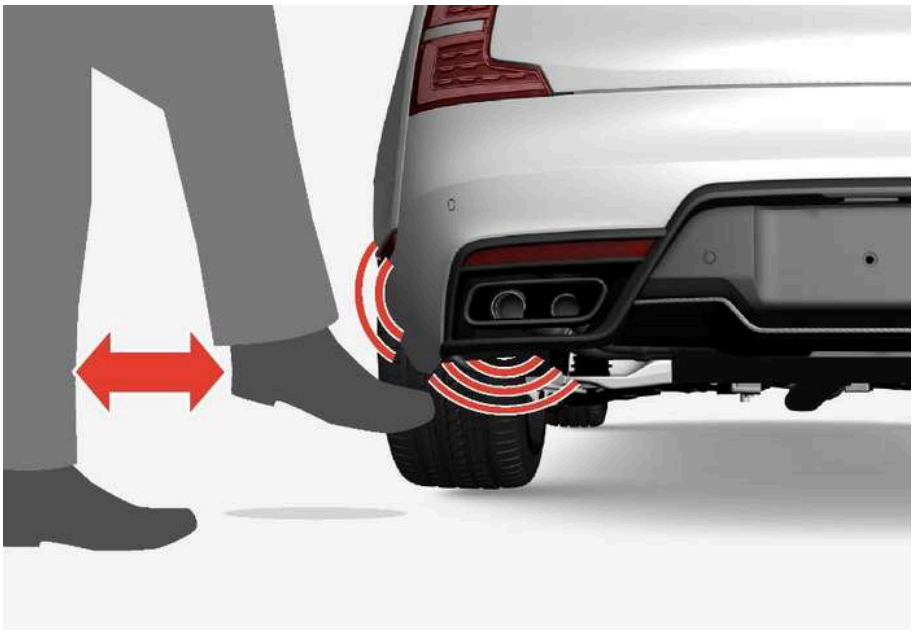
> **NOTE**
> One of the vehicle's keys or your phone must be within range for locking and unlocking to be possible.



The sensor is located behind the left-side rear tire.

One of the vehicle's keys must be within range behind the vehicle, approx. 1 meter (3 feet), for opening to be possible. This applies even if the vehicle is unlocked in order to prevent the trunk lid from inadvertently opening e.g. at a car wash.

Opening using a foot movement



Kicking motion within the sensor's activation area.

Make **one** forward kick movement on the side of the left-hand rear tire. Take a step back.
A brief audible signal will sound when opening is activated – the trunk lid will open/close.
If several opening or closing attempts have been made without the key in range behind the vehicle, foot movement operation will not be available for a short period of time.

Do not keep your foot under the vehicle in a kicking motion. This may prevent activation.

Closing the trunk lid

The trunk lid can be closed by manually pushing it down.

> **NOTE**
> There is a risk of reduced or lost function if there are large amounts of snow, ice, dirt, etc. on the left-hand rear bumper. Make sure to keep the bumper clean.

> **NOTE**
> Please note that the system could be inadvertently activated in a car wash or similar if the key is within range.

> **WARNING**
> Do not drive with the trunk lid open. Toxic exhaust fumes can be sucked into the vehicle through the trunk.

Key

See Key.

Locking and unlocking using the key

See Locking and unlocking using the key.

Unlocking the trunk lid using the key

See Unlocking the trunk lid using the key.

Locking and unlocking with detachable key blade

See Locking and unlocking with detachable key blade.

Automatic locking when driving

The doors and trunk lid will automatically lock when the vehicle begins to move.

Locking and unlocking from inside the vehicle

The doors and trunk lid can be locked and unlocked from inside the vehicle using the central lock buttons in the driver's door.

Central locking



Button with indicator light for locking and unlocking in driver's door.

Unlocking using the driver's door buttons

Press the button to unlock both doors and the trunk lid.

Alternative unlocking method



Alternative unlocking method using door opening handle.

Pull either of the door inside opening handles and release.
Depending on the key settings, either both doors will be unlocked or just the selected door will be unlocked and opened.

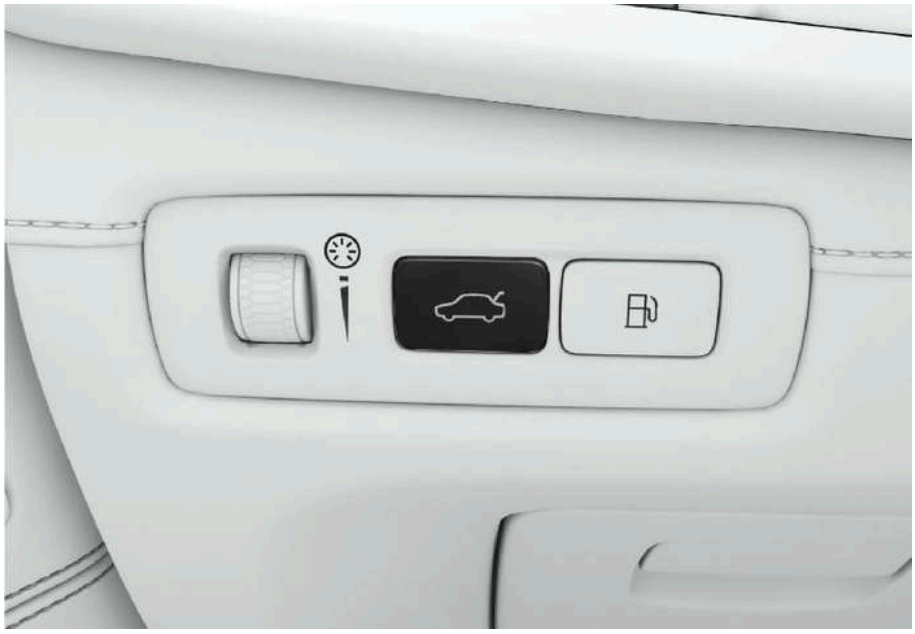
To change this setting, tap Settings → My Car → Locking → Remote and Interior Unlock in the Top view of the center display.

Locking using the driver's door buttons

Press the button (both doors must be closed).
Both doors and the trunk lid are locked.

Unlocking the trunk lid from inside the vehicle

The trunk lid can be unlocked from the inside using the button on the dashboard.



Press and hold the button on the dashboard.
The trunk lid will open.

Private Locking

The trunk lid can be locked using the private locking function, e.g. when the vehicle is left at a workshop or with a valet. This function prevents the trunk from being opened.



The function button for private locking is located in the center display's Function view. Depending on the current status of the lock, Private Locking Unlocked or Private Locking Locked will be displayed.

Activating and deactivating private locking

Private locking is activated using the function button in the center display and a PIN code.

> **NOTE**
> For the valet lock function to be activated the car must be in at least ignition mode I.

Two codes are used for private locking:

- A security code, which is created the first time the function is used.
- A PIN code, which is changed each time the function is activated.

Entering security code before initial use

The first time the function is used, a security code must be selected. This code can then be used to deactivate private locking if the selected PIN code has been forgotten or lost. The security code functions as a PUK (security) code for all PIN codes used for private locking.

Save the security code in a safe place.

To create a security code:
Tap the button for private locking in Function view.



A pop-up window will appear.
Enter the desired security code and press Confirm.
The security code is saved. The private locking function is now ready for activation.

Activating private locking

Tap the button for private locking in Function view.



A pop-up window will appear.
Enter the code you would like to use to unlock the trunk lid and tap Confirm.
The trunk lid will be locked. A green indicator light will illuminate next to the button in Function view to confirm locked status.

Deactivating private locking

Tap the button for private locking in Function view.



A pop-up window will appear.
Enter the code used for locking and tap Confirm.
The trunk lid will be unlocked. The green indicator light next to the button in Function view will go out to confirm unlocked status.

Forgotten PIN code

If you have forgotten your PIN code or entered it incorrectly more than three times, the security code can be used to deactivate private locking.

If the vehicle is unlocked via the Polestar 1 app, private locking will be automatically deactivated.

Forgotten security code

If you have forgotten your security code, contact Polestar Customer Support for assistance deactivating private locking.

Locking and unlocking

The vehicle can be locked and unlocked in several different ways.

- with the buttons on the key
- with the detachable key blade (if the battery in the key is discharged)
- with your phone (Digital Key)
- keyless (Passive Entry), the key or phone must be within range
- from inside the vehicle using the lock controls in the doors
- remote unlocking with the Polestar 1 app

Lock indication

The turn signals will flash when the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

Exterior confirmation

Locking

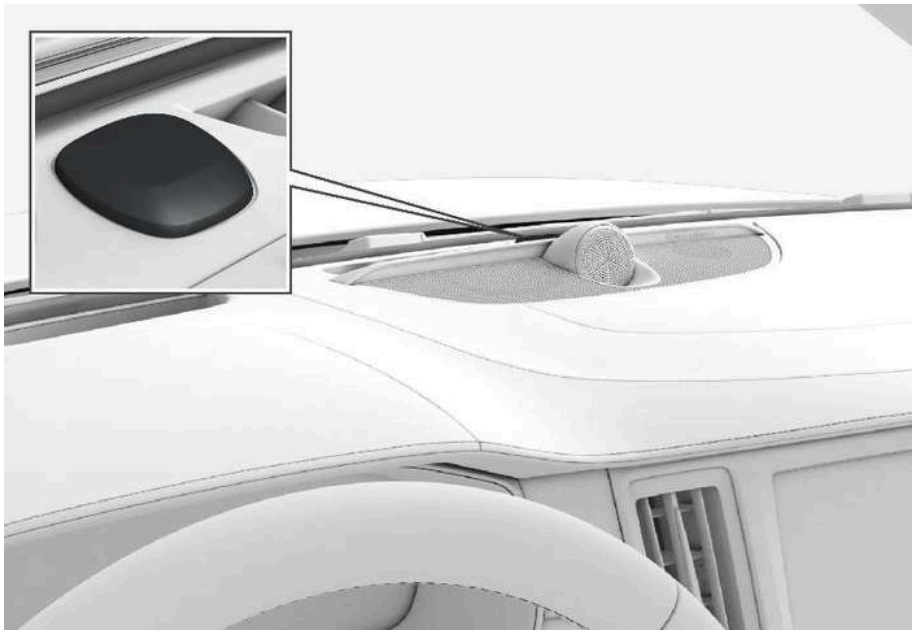
- The turn signals will flash once and the door mirrors will fold in to confirm the vehicle is locked.

Unlocking

- The turn signals will flash twice and the door mirrors will fold out to confirm the vehicle is unlocked.

Both doors, trunk lid and hood must be closed for confirmation to be given.

Lock and alarm indicators on the dashboard



The locks and alarm indicator will display the status of the locking system:

- One long flash indicates locking.
- When the vehicle is locked, this will be indicated by short, pulsating flashes.
- Rapid flashing after disabling the alarm indicates that the alarm has been triggered.

Lock button indicators



Lock buttons with indicator lights in front door.

Illuminated indicator lights in both door lock buttons indicate that both doors are locked. If any door is opened, the lights in both doors will go out.

Other indicators

The approach lighting and home safe lighting functions may be activated when locking and unlocking.

Lock confirmation settings

See Lock confirmation settings.

Digital Key

The Digital Key app allows you to use your cellular phone as a vehicle key. An active digital key in the app is required for Digital Key to work.

Downloading Digital Key

Digital Key is available for iOS and Android. Download it free of charge from Apple Appstore or Google Play.

Log in to the app with your Polestar ID.
Follow the instructions in the app.

Active digital key

To use Digital Key, you must have an active digital key. The digital key is connected to the user's Polestar ID. Open the app to check if the digital key is active. For more information, contact Polestar Customer Support.

Lost phone or resale of vehicle

Contact Polestar Customer Support to delete the digital key from the system.

Starting the vehicle using Digital Key

Digital Key can be used to start the vehicle. The phone just needs to be in the passenger compartment.
Make sure Bluetooth is enabled in your phone.
Start the Digital Key app.
Make sure that keyless start is calibrated and enabled in the app's settings.
Make sure that Enable start is activated.
The vehicle can now be started using the start knob.

> **NOTE**
>
> If it is not possible to start the vehicle with Digital Key:
>
> - Try tapping Enable start in the app and turning the start knob.
> - Check that the phone is not blocked in e.g. a thick bag.
> - Make sure that the Digital Key app is not shutting down due to battery-saving settings in your phone. Contact your phone service supplier if you need assistance.
> - Make sure that there is an active digital key in the app.
> - Make sure that the Digital Key app is updated to the latest version by going to app settings. Also check if the app wants to update the vehicle's software. Update software if new software is available.
> - Recalibrate the Digital Key app in the app's settings.
> - Make sure that Bluetooth is enabled. If the Bluetooth connection isn't working, try deleting your phone's stored information (clearing your cache memory). Contact your phone service supplier if you need assistance.
> - Try to restart the app.
>
> For more information, contact Polestar Customer Support.

Locking and unlocking using Digital Key

The vehicle can be locked or unlocked using the Digital Key app. To unlock the doors and trunk lid, the phone only needs to be within range, e.g. in your hand or pocket.
For keyless locking or unlocking of the vehicle to be possible, the phone must be within a 5 meter (16.4 feet) radius from the vehicle.
Start Digital Key and make sure that Bluetooth is activated.
Lightly press the marked button on the door handle or tap Lock/unlock in the app.
The handle will be extended and the door can be opened.
Lightly pressing the protrusion on the door handle will lock the vehicle and the door handle will retract automatically. Do **not** push in the handle. Pushing in the handle will prevent the vehicle from locking.

The trunk lid can be unlocked by making a kicking motion behind the left-side rear tire.

> **NOTE**
> Be aware of the risk of locking your key or phone in the trunk when closing the lid.

> **NOTE**
> If it is not possible to unlock or lock the vehicle with Digital Key:
> - Check that the phone is not blocked in e.g. a thick bag.
> - Make sure that Bluetooth is enabled and that the phone is paired with the vehicle.
> - Make sure that the Digital Key app is not shutting down due to battery-saving settings in your phone. Contact your phone service supplier if you need assistance.
> - Try tapping Lock/unlock in the app.
> - Make sure that there is an active digital key.
> - Try disconnecting Wi-Fi. Some Wi-Fi connections can block authentication of the digital key.
> - Try moving the phone a little closer or further away from the vehicle. The vehicle may be interpreting the phone as being inside the vehicle or too far from the vehicle.
> - Try to restart the app.
> - If the Bluetooth connection isn't working, try deleting your phone's stored information (clearing your cache memory). Contact your phone service supplier if you need assistance.
>
> For more information, contact Polestar Customer Support.

Alarm

Alarm

The alarm emits sound and light signals if anyone without a valid key attempts to break into the vehicle or interferes with the start battery or alarm siren.
When armed, the alarm will be triggered if:
- the hood, trunk lid or any door is opened.
- a battery cable is disconnected.
- the alarm siren is disconnected.

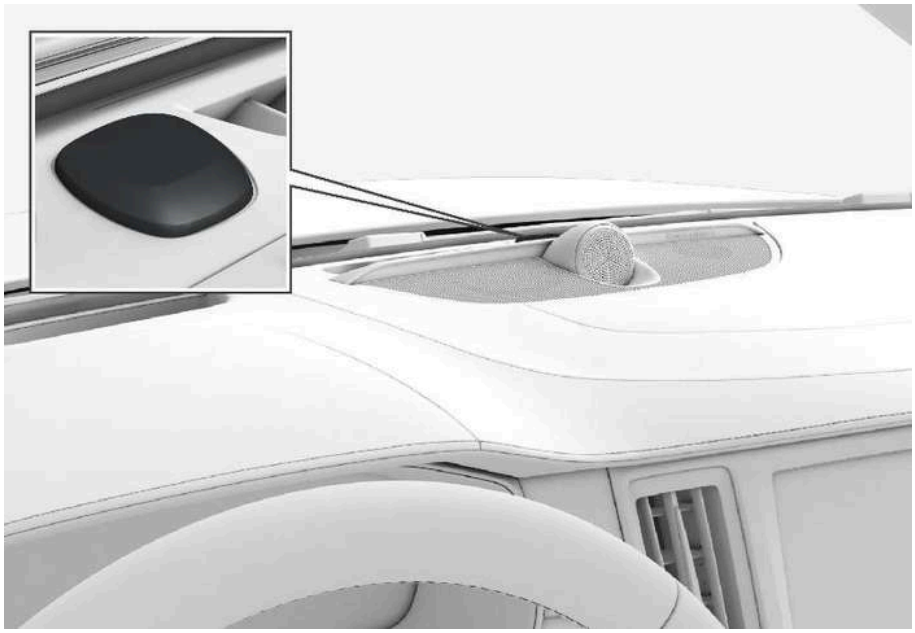
Alarm signals

The following occurs if the alarm is triggered:

- A siren will sound for 30 seconds or until the alarm is turned off.
- The hazard warning flashers will flash for 5 minutes or until the alarm is turned off.

If the reason the alarm was triggered is not rectified, the alarm cycle will repeat up to 10 times[1].

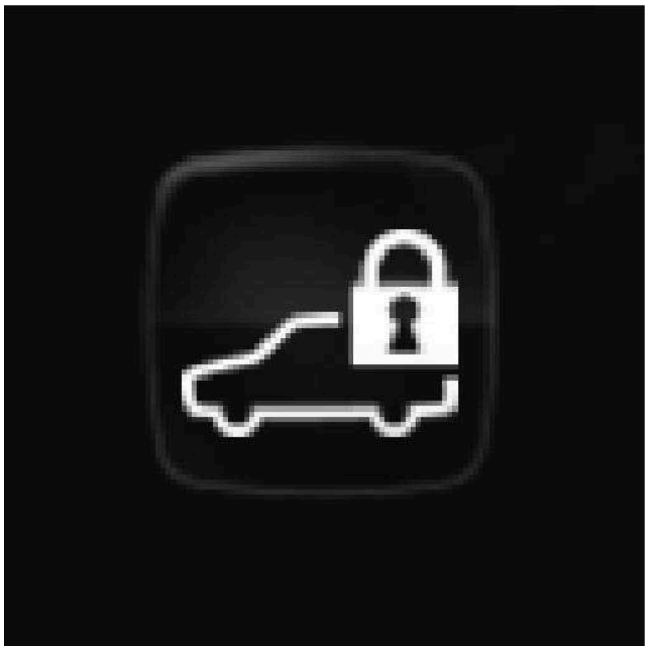
Alarm indicator



A red indicator light on the dashboard shows the status of the alarm:

- Indicator off - the alarm is disarmed.
- Indicator flashes once every two seconds - the alarm is armed.
- The indicator flashes quickly after the alarm has been disabled for up to 30 seconds or until the ignition is put in I mode – the alarm has been triggered.

In the event of alarm system failure



If a problem is detected in the alarm system, a symbol and the message Alarm system failureService required will appear in the instrument panel. Contact Polestar Customer Support.

> **NOTE**
> Do not attempt to repair or alter any of the components in the alarm system yourself. Any such attempt could affect the terms and conditions of your insurance policy.

1 Certain markets only.

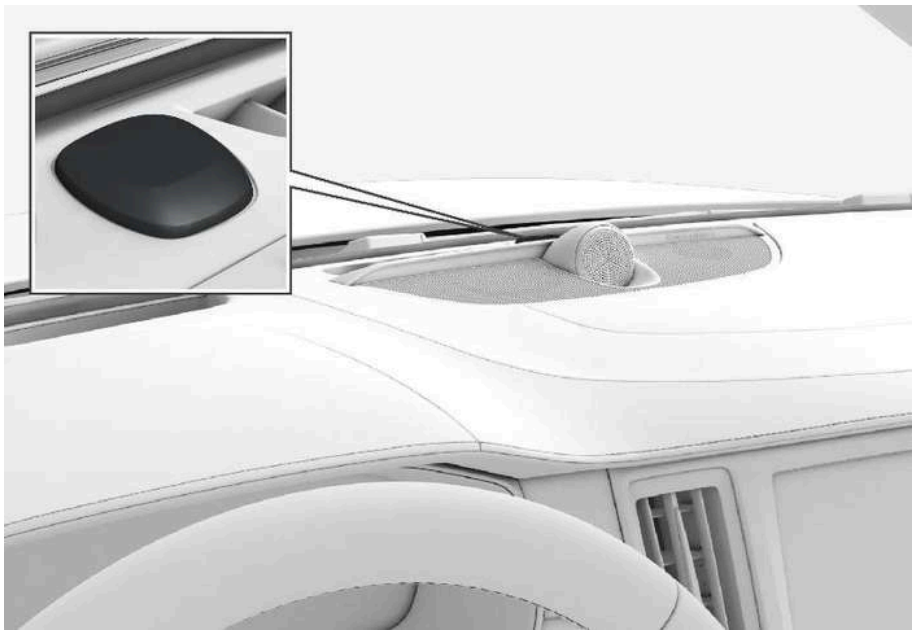
Arming and disarming the alarm

The alarm is armed when the vehicle is locked.

Arming the alarm

Lock and arm the vehicle by

- pressing the lock button on the key
- pressing the marked area on the outside of the exterior door handle.



A red LED light on the dashboard will flash every other second when the vehicle is locked and the alarm is armed.

Disarming the alarm

Unlock and disarm the vehicle alarm by

- pressing the unlock button on the key
- pushing the door handle.

Disarming the alarm without a functioning key

The vehicle can be unlocked and disarmed even if the key is not functioning, e.g. if the key's battery is discharged.

Open the driver's door using the detachable key blade.
This will trigger the alarm.



Location of the backup key reader in the cup holder.

Place the key on the key symbol in the backup reader in the tunnel console's cupholder.
Turn the start knob clockwise and release.
The alarm will be disarmed.

Turning off a triggered alarm

Press the unlock button on the key or put the ignition into mode I by turning the start knob clockwise and then releasing it.

Automatically arming and disarming the alarm

Automatically arming the alarm helps prevent inadvertently leaving the vehicle without alarm protection.

If the vehicle is unlocked using the key (and the alarm is disarmed) but none of the doors or trunk lid is opened within two minutes, the alarm will be automatically rearmed. The vehicle will also re-lock.

On some markets, the alarm will be automatically armed following a slight delay after the driver's door has been opened and closed without being locked.

To change this setting:
Tap Settings in the center display's Top view.
Tap My Car → Locking.
Select Passive Arming Deactivation to temporarily deactivate the function.

Driver support

This section contains information about the vehicle's various drive support systems, such as City SafetyTM, Electronic Stability Control, IntelliSafe, cruise control, etc. You will also find information about settings and limitations and how to activate and deactivate different systems.

Cruise Control functions

Cruise control

Switching between cruise control and Adaptive Cruise Control in the center display

When the regular cruise control (CC2) is selected in the instrument panel, you can switch to Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC3) in the center display's Function view.



Activate or deactivate the function using this button in the center display's Function view.

- GREEN button indicator light – Adaptive Cruise Control is deactivated and the regular cruise control is in standby mode.
- GRAY button indicator light – regular cruise control is deactivated and the Adaptive Cruise Control is in standby mode.

A symbol in the instrument panel indicates which cruise control system is active

Cruise control (CC)	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)
4	4

***** Option/accessory.

1 Depending on market, this function can be either standard or optional.

2 Cruise Control

3 Adaptive Cruise Control

4 WHITE symbol: The function is active. GRAY symbol: Standby mode

Cruise control

Cruise Control (CC1) can help the driver maintain an even speed to provide a more relaxing driving experience on highways and long, straight roads with even traffic flows.



Function buttons and symbols

1	: Activates Cruise Control from standby mode and resumes the set speed
1	+ : Increases the set speed
2	: **From standby mode** – activates Cruise Control and sets the current speed
2	: **From active mode** – deactivates/puts Cruise Control in standby mode
3	− : Reduces the set speed
4	Marker for set speed
5	The vehicle's current speed
6	Set speed

NOTE

In vehicles equipped with Adaptive Cruise Control*(ACC2), it is possible to switch between Cruise Control and Adaptive Cruise Control.

WARNING

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and help make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Manual about this function to learn of its limitations, which the driver must be aware of before using the function.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgment. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the vehicle is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

Using engine braking instead of applying the brakes

Cruise Control regulates speed by lightly applying the brakes. On downgrades, it can sometimes be desirable to roll a bit faster and let speed be reduced instead by engine braking alone. The driver can temporarily disengage the Cruise Control braking function.

To disengage CC:
Press the accelerator pedal about halfway down and then release it.
Cruise Control will automatically disengage the automatic brake function and speed will only be reduced using the engine braking function.

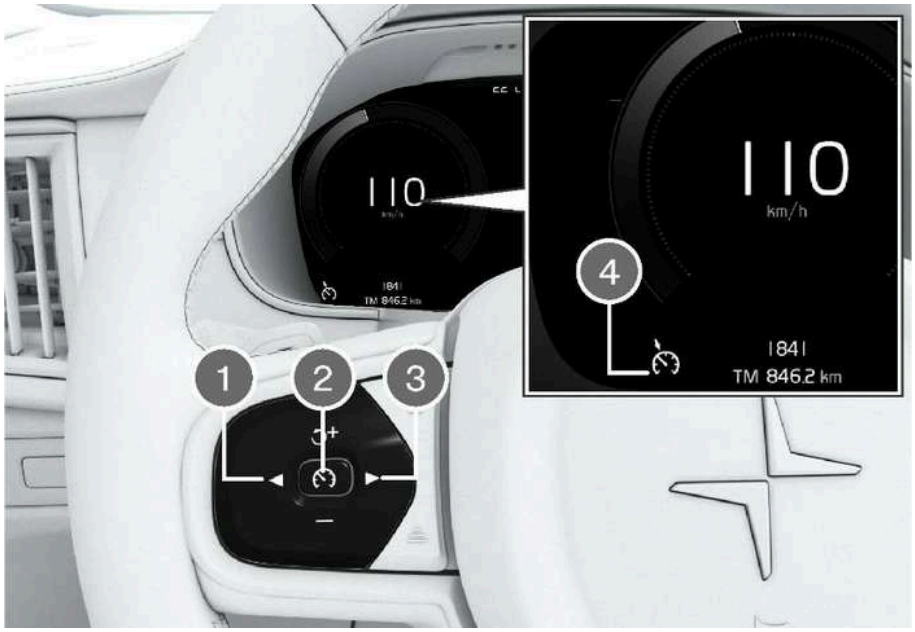
1 Cruise Control

***** Option/accessory.

2 Adaptive Cruise Control

Selecting and activating cruise control

The Cruise Control (CC1) function must be selected and activated in order to regulate speed.



In order to start Cruise Control from standby mode, the vehicle's current speed must be 30 km/h (20 mph) or higher.
Press the ◀ (1) or ▶ (3) button on the steering wheel keypad and scroll to the cruise control symbol (4).
Gray symbol – cruise control is in standby mode.
When cruise control is selected, press (2) on the steering wheel keypad to activate.
White symbol – cruise control starts and the current speed is stored as the maximum speed. The lowest speed that can be set is 30 km/h (20 mph).

Reactivating cruise control to the last stored speed

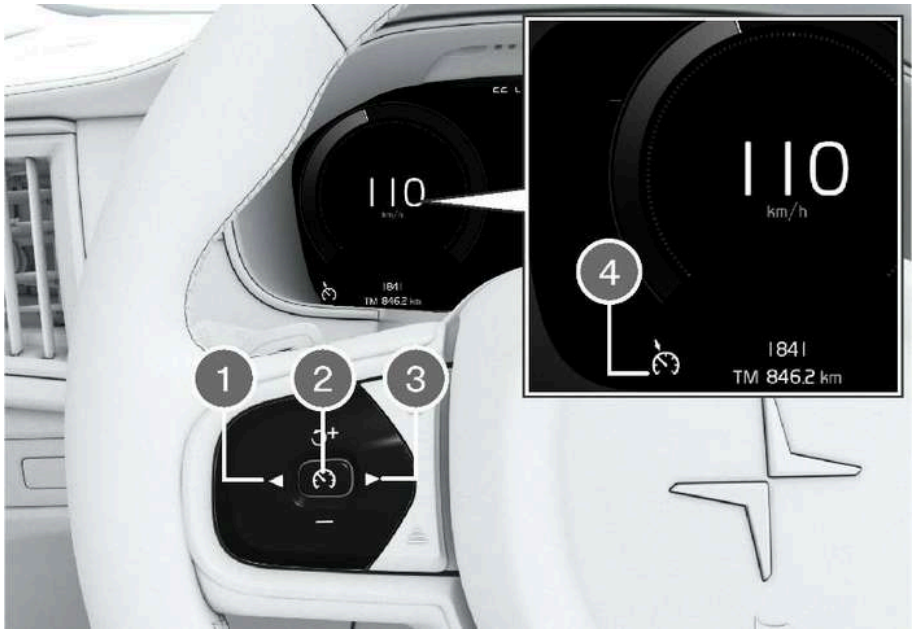
When cruise control is selected, press on the steering wheel keypad to activate.
The Cruise Control marking in the instrument panel will change from GRAY to WHITE and the vehicle will then return to the most recently set speed.

> **WARNING**
> A noticeable increase in speed may follow when the speed is resumed with the steering wheel button.

1 Cruise Control

Deactivating cruise control

Cruise control (CC1) can be turned off.



Press the button on the steering wheel (2).
The symbol and markings turn gray – cruise control goes into standby mode.
Press the ◀ (1) or ▶ (3) buttons on the steering wheel to select another function.
The cruise control symbol and marking (4) in the instrument panel will go out and the set/stored maximum speed will be erased.

1 Cruise Control

Cruise control standby mode

Cruise control (CC1) can be deactivated and put in standby mode. This may happen automatically or be due to driver intervention.
Standby mode means that the function is selected in the instrument panel but not activated. In standby mode, cruise control will not regulate speed.

Standby mode due to action by the driver

Cruise control will be deactivated and put in standby mode if any of the following occurs:

- The brakes are applied.
- The gear selector is moved to **N**.
- The vehicle is driven faster than the set speed for more than 1 minute.

The driver must then control the vehicle's speed.

Temporarily increasing speed using the accelerator pedal, e.g. when passing another vehicle, will not affect the setting. The vehicle will return to the set speed when the accelerator pedal is released.

Automatic standby mode

Adaptive Cruise Control may go into standby mode if e.g.:

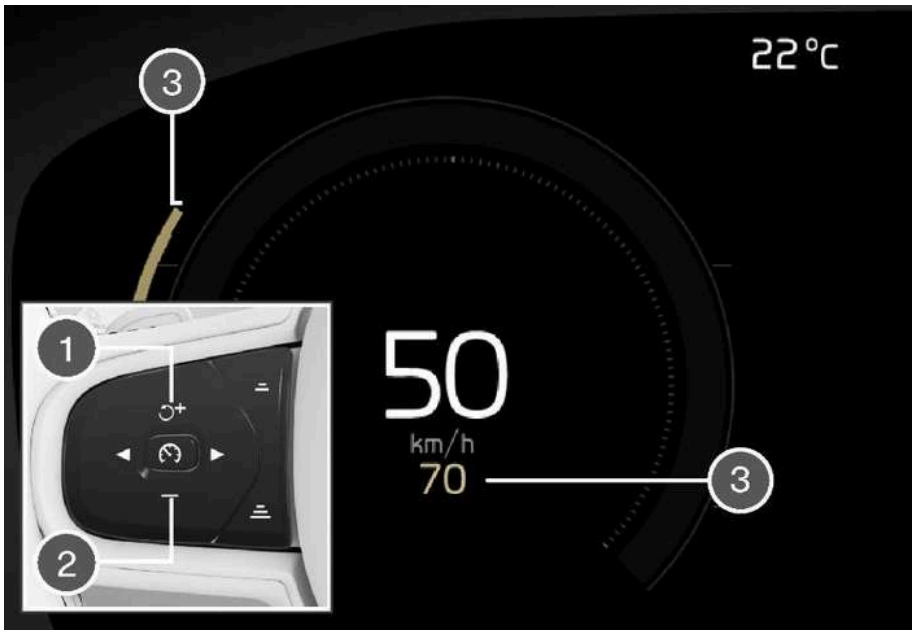
- The wheels lose traction.
- The engine speed (rpm) is too low/high.
- The temperature in the brake system becomes too high.
- The vehicle's speed goes below 30 km/h (20 mph).

The driver must then control the vehicle's speed.

1 Cruise Control

Adjusting set speed for driver support

It is possible to adjust set speeds for the cruise control, Adaptive Cruise Control* and Pilot Assist* functions.



①	+ : Increases the set speed
②	− : Reduces the set speed
③	Set speed

Change a set speed by pressing the + (1) or − (2) buttons briefly or by pressing and holding them:

- **Brief** press: Each press changes the speed in +/- 5 km/h (+/- 5 mph) increments.
- **Press** and **hold**: Release the button when the set speed indicator (3) has moved to the desired speed.

The most recently set speed will be stored.

> **NOTE**
> For vehicles without Adaptive Cruise Control*, speed instead increases by +/- 1km/h (+/- 1 mph) each time the button is pressed.

Using the accelerator pedal

If speed is increased by depressing the accelerator pedal while pressing the + (1) button on the steering wheel, the vehicle's speed when the button is pressed will be stored as the set speed.

Temporarily increasing speed using the accelerator pedal, e.g. when passing another vehicle, will not affect the setting. The vehicle will return to the set speed when the accelerator pedal is released.

Possible speed

The lowest speed that can be set is 30 km/h (20 mph). When following another vehicle, ACC can monitor that vehicle's speed and slow your own vehicle down to a standstill, but it is not possible to set speeds lower than 30 km/h (20 mph).

The driver support functions can follow another vehicle at speeds from a standstill up to 200 km/h (125 mph).

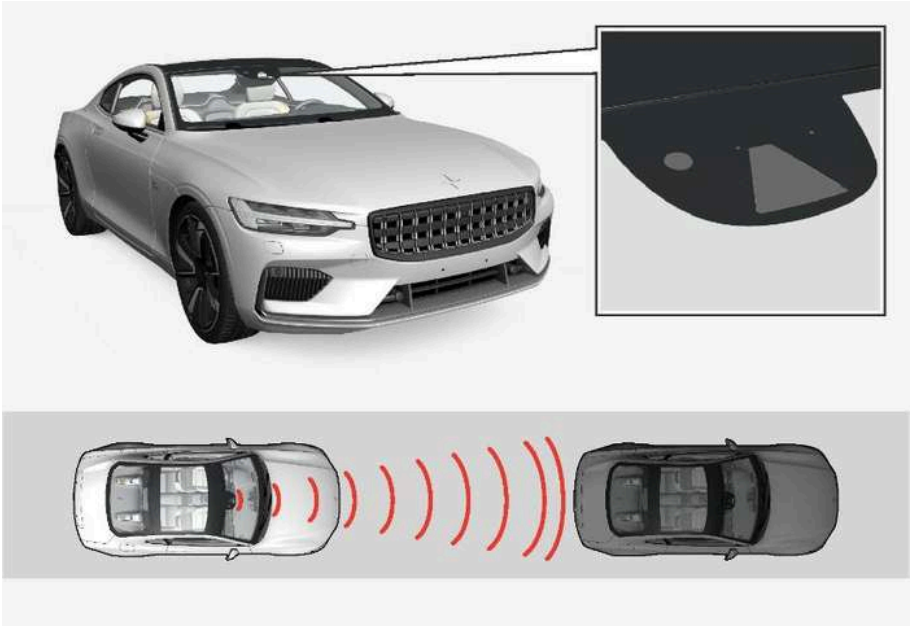
Pilot Assist can provide steering assistance from near-stationary speeds up to 140 km/h (87 mph).

* Option/accessory.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Adaptive Cruise Control

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC2) can help the driver maintain a constant speed, combined with a preset time interval to the vehicle in front.



The camera/radar sensor measures the distance to the vehicle ahead.

Adaptive Cruise Control can help provide a more relaxed driving experience on long trips on highways or long, straight roads with even traffic flows.

The driver sets a speed and a time interval to the vehicle ahead. If the camera/radar sensor detects a slower-moving vehicle ahead, your vehicle's speed will be automatically adapted according to the set time interval to that vehicle. When there are no longer slower-moving vehicles ahead, the vehicle will return to the set speed.

Adaptive Cruise Control regulates speed by accelerating and braking. It is normal for the brakes to emit a slight sound when they are being used to adjust speed.

Adaptive Cruise Control attempts to:

- smoothly regulate speed. The driver must apply the brakes in situations requiring immediate braking. For example, when there are great differences in speed between vehicles or if the vehicle ahead brakes suddenly. Due to limitations in the radar sensor, braking may occur unexpectedly or not at all.
- follow a vehicle ahead in the same lane and maintain a time interval to that vehicle set by the driver. If the radar sensor does not detect a vehicle ahead, it will instead maintain the speed set by the driver. This will also happen if the speed of the vehicle ahead exceeds the set speed for your vehicle.

WARNING

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and help make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Manual about this function to learn of its limitations, which the driver must be aware of before using the function.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgment. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the vehicle is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

IMPORTANT

Only a workshop may perform maintenance on driver support components – contact Polestar Customer Support.

***** Option/accessory.

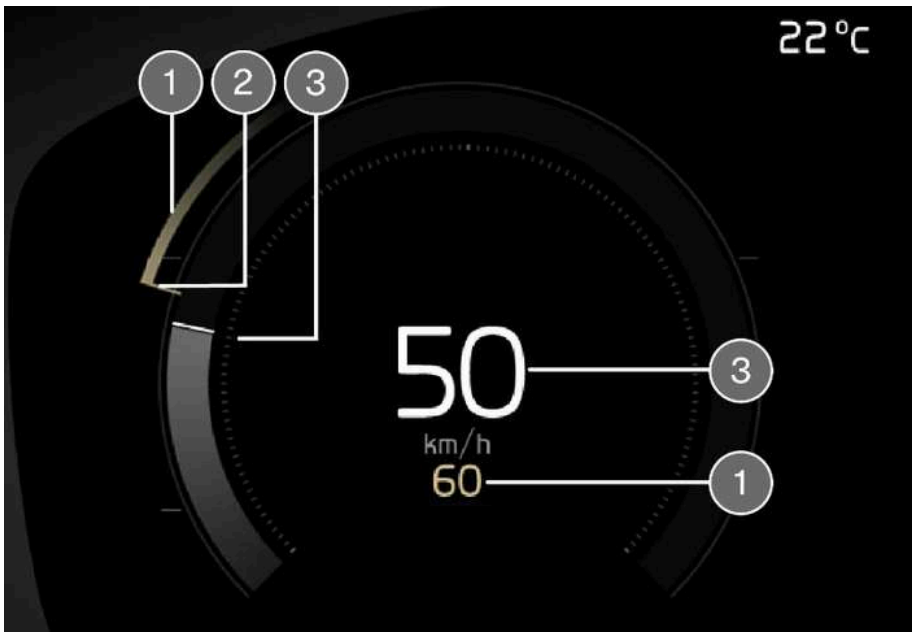
1 Depending on market, this function can be either standard or optional.

2 Adaptive Cruise Control

Adaptive Cruise Control displays

The following illustrations show how Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC2) can appear in the various displays in different situations.

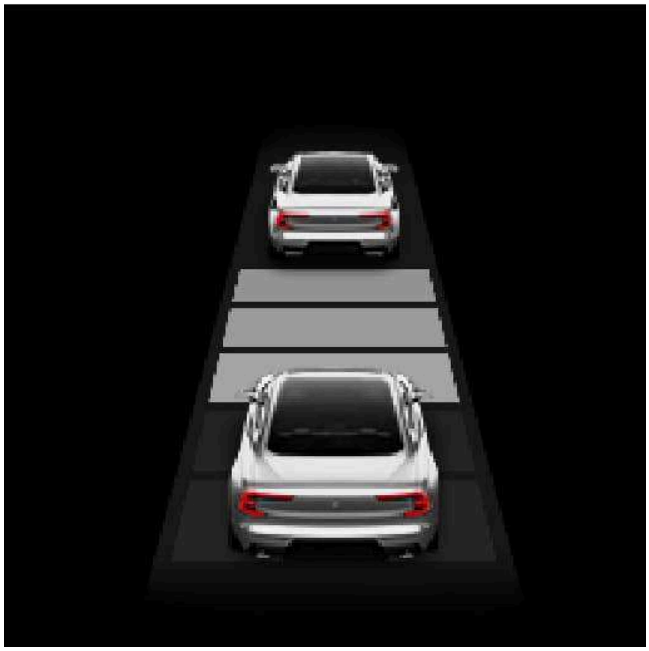
Speed



Speed indicators

1. Set speed
2. Speed of the vehicle ahead
3. The current speed of your vehicle

Time interval



Adaptive Cruise Control will only regulate the time interval to the vehicle ahead when the distance symbol shows two vehicles. A speed interval will be marked at the same time.

When driving

In the following illustration, Road Sign Information (RSI3) indicates that the maximum permitted speed is 130 km/h (80 mph).



The previous illustration shows that Adaptive Cruise Control is set to maintain a speed of 110 km/h (68 mph) and that there is no target vehicle ahead to follow.



The previous illustration shows that Adaptive Cruise Control is set to maintain a speed of 110 km/h (68 mph) and is following a target vehicle ahead, which is traveling at the same speed.

***** Option/accessory.

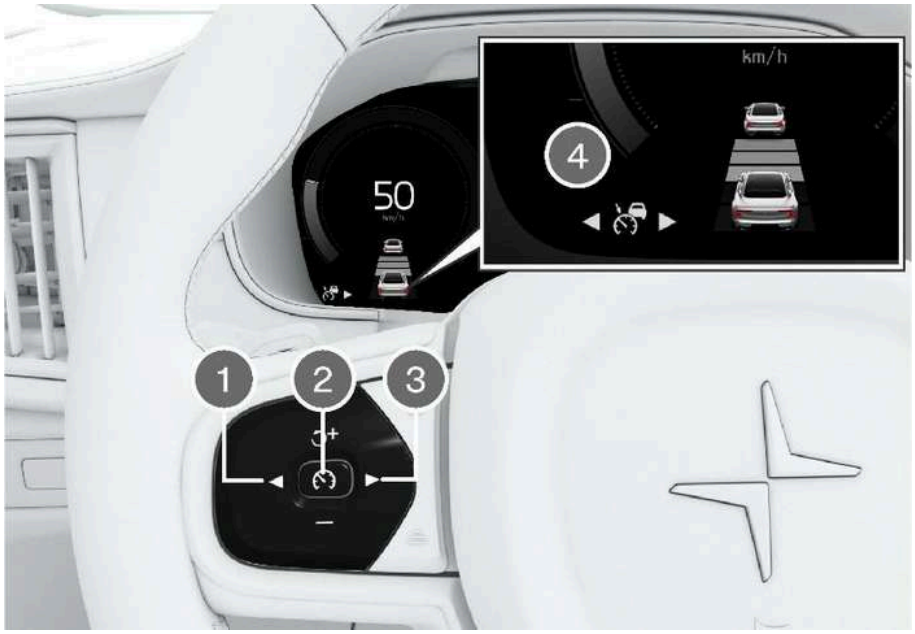
1 Depending on market, this function can be either standard or optional.

2 Adaptive Cruise Control

3 Road Sign Information

Selecting and activating Adaptive Cruise Control

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC2) must first be selected and then activated before it can regulate speed and distance.



To start the function:

- The driver's seat belt must be buckled and the driver's door must be closed.
- There must be a vehicle ahead (target vehicle) within a reasonable distance or your vehicle's current speed must be at least 15 km/h (9 mph).

Press the ◀ (1) or ▶ (3) button on the steering wheel keypad and scroll to the Adaptive Cruise Control symbol (4).
Gray symbol – Adaptive Cruise Control is in standby mode.
When Speed Limiter is selected, press (2) on the steering wheel keypad to activate.
White symbol – Speed Limiter starts and the current speed is stored as the maximum speed.

Reactivating Adaptive Cruise Control to the last stored speed

When Adaptive Cruise Control is selected, press on the steering wheel keypad to activate.
The Cruise Control marking in the instrument panel will change from GRAY to WHITE and the vehicle will then return to the most recently set speed.

WARNING

A noticeable increase in speed may follow when the speed is resumed with the steering wheel button.

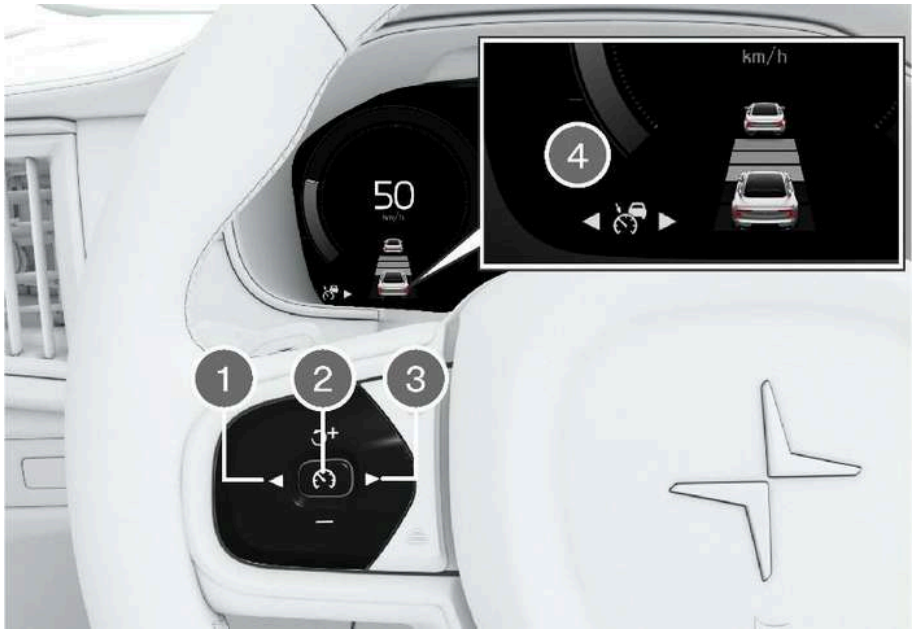
* Option/accessory.

1 Depending on market, this function can be either standard or optional.

2 Adaptive Cruise Control

Deactivating Adaptive Cruise Control

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC2) can be deactivated and switched off.



Press the button on the steering wheel (2).
The symbol and markings turn gray – Adaptive Cruise Control goes into standby mode. The time interval indicator light and any symbols for the target vehicle will go out.
Press the ◀ (1) or ▶ (3) buttons on the steering wheel to select another function.
The Adaptive Cruise Control symbol and marking (4) in the instrument panel will go out and the set/stored maximum speed will be erased.

WARNING

- If Adaptive Cruise Control is in standby mode, the driver must intervene and regulate both speed and distance to the vehicle ahead.
- If the vehicle comes too close to a vehicle ahead when Adaptive Cruise Control is in standby mode, the driver can be warned of the short distance by the Distance Alert* function.

* Option/accessory.

1 Depending on market, this function can be either standard or optional.

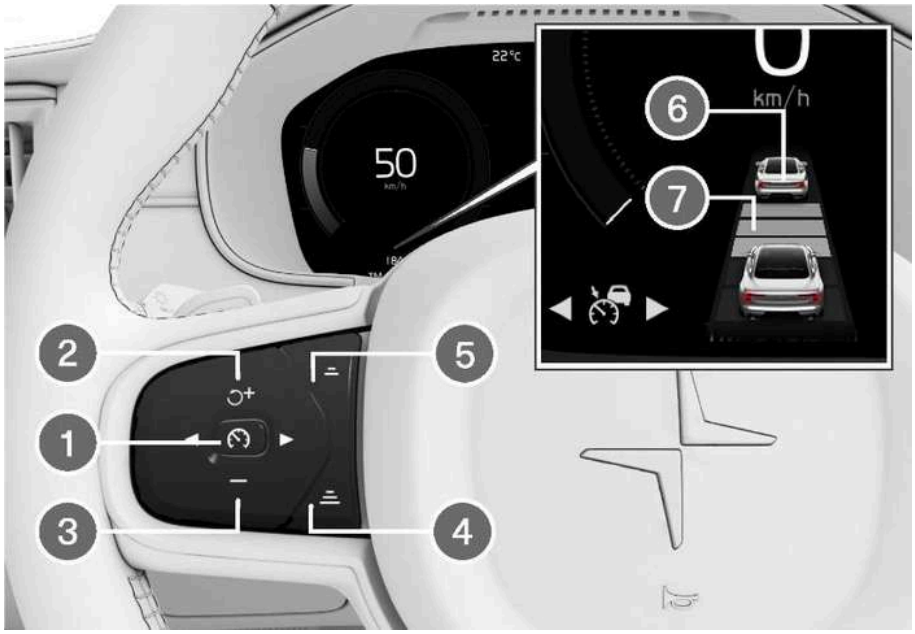
2 Adaptive Cruise Control

Switching between cruise control and Adaptive Cruise Control in the center display

See Switching between cruise control and Adaptive Cruise Control in the center display.

Adaptive Cruise Control controls

The following provides a summary of how Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC2) is controlled using the left-side steering wheel keypad.



1	: **From standby mode** - activates and sets the current speed
1	: **From active mode** - deactivates/puts in standby mode
2	: Activates the function from standby mode and resumes the set speed
2	+ : Increases the set speed
3	− : Reduces the set speed
4	Increases the time interval to the vehicle ahead
5	Reduces the time interval to the vehicle ahead
6	Target vehicle indicator: the function has detected and is following a target vehicle using the set time interval
7	Symbol for time interval to the vehicle ahead

* Option/accessory.
1 Depending on market, this function can be either standard or optional.
2 Adaptive Cruise Control

Symbols and messages for Adaptive Cruise Control

See Symbols and messages for Adaptive Cruise Control.

Adaptive Cruise Control limitations

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC2) may have limited functionality in certain situations.

Steep roads and/or heavy loads

Adaptive Cruise Control is primarily intended to be driven on flat roads. The function may not be able to maintain the correct time interval to the vehicle ahead when driving down steep hills. The driver should be extra attentive and prepared to apply the brakes.

Do not use Adaptive Cruise Control if the vehicle is carrying a heavy load.

WARNING

- This is not a collision avoidance system. The driver is always responsible and must intervene if the system fails to detect a vehicle ahead.
- The function does not brake for people or animals and does not brake for small vehicles, such as bikes and motorcycles. Similarly, it does not brake for low trailers, oncoming, slow-moving or stationary vehicles and objects.
- Do not use the function in demanding situations, such as in city traffic, at intersections, on slippery surfaces, with a lot of water or slush on the road, in heavy rain/snow, in poor visibility, on winding roads, or on on/off ramps.

NOTE

The function uses the vehicle's camera and radar sensor, which has certain general limitations.

* Option/accessory.
1 Depending on market, this function can be either standard or optional.
2 Adaptive Cruise Control

Adaptive Cruise Control standby mode

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC2) can be deactivated and put in standby mode. This may happen automatically or be due to driver intervention.
Standby mode means that the function is selected in the instrument panel but not activated. In standby mode, Adaptive Cruise Control will not regulate speed or distance to the vehicle ahead.

Standby mode due to action by the driver

Adaptive Cruise Control will be deactivated and put in standby mode if any of the following occurs:

- The brakes are applied.
- The gear selector is moved to **N**.
- The vehicle is driven faster than the set speed for more than 1 minute.

Temporarily increasing speed using the accelerator pedal, e.g. when passing another vehicle, will not affect the setting. The vehicle will return to the set speed when the accelerator pedal is released.

WARNING

- If Adaptive Cruise Control is in standby mode, the driver must intervene and regulate both speed and distance to the vehicle ahead.
- If the vehicle comes too close to a vehicle ahead when Adaptive Cruise Control is in standby mode, the driver can be warned of the short distance by the Distance Alert* function.

Automatic standby mode

WARNING

With automatic standby mode, the driver is warned by an acoustic signal and a message on the instrument panel.

- The driver must then regulate vehicle speed, apply the brakes if necessary, and maintain a safe distance to other vehicles.

Adaptive Cruise Control may go into standby mode if:

- Any of the systems that Adaptive Cruise Control is dependent on stops working, e.g. stability control/anti-skid (ESC3).
- The driver opens the door.
- The driver unbuckles the seat belt.
- The engine speed (rpm) is too low/high.
- One or more of the wheels lose traction.
- The brake temperature is high.
- The parking brake is applied.
- The camera/radar sensor is covered by snow or heavy rain (the camera lens/radar waves are blocked).
- Your vehicle's speed goes under 5 km/h (3 mph) and ACC cannot determine if the object ahead is a stationary vehicle or if it is another object, e.g. a speed bump.
- Your vehicle's speed goes under 5 km/h (3 mph) and the vehicle ahead turns so that ACC no longer has a vehicle to follow.

* Option/accessory.

1 Depending on market, this function can be either standard or optional.

2 Adaptive Cruise Control

3 Electronic Stability Control

Auto-hold braking with driver support

The driver support functions Adaptive Cruise Control* and Pilot Assist* have a special brake function in slow traffic and while stationary. In certain situations, the parking brake will be applied to keep the vehicle at a standstill.

Braking function in slow traffic and at a standstill

In slow-moving, stop-and-go traffic or when stopped at a traffic light, driving will resume automatically if the vehicle is stopped for less than approx. 3 seconds. If it takes more than 3 seconds for the vehicle ahead to begin moving again, the driver support function will go into standby mode and the auto-hold brake function will activate.

The function can be reactivated by:

- Pressing the button on the steering wheel keypad.
- Pressing the accelerator pedal.

The function will resume following the vehicle ahead if it begins to move within approx. 6 seconds.

WARNING

A noticeable increase in speed may follow when the speed is resumed with the steering wheel button.

WARNING

The driver support system only issues a warning for obstacles detected by its radar sensor – thus, a warning may come after a delay or not at all.

- Never wait for a warning or assistance. Apply the brakes when necessary.

NOTE

Driver support can keep the vehicle stationary for no more than 5 minutes – after that time the parking brake is applied and the function is deactivated.

The parking brake must be released before driver support can be reactivated.

Deactivation of the Auto-hold brake function

In certain situations, auto-hold will be deactivated when the vehicle is at a standstill and the function will go into standby mode. This means that the brakes will be released and the vehicle could begin to roll. The driver must actively apply the brakes to keep the vehicle stationary.

This can occur if:

- The driver depresses the brake pedal.
- The parking brake is applied.
- The gear selector is moved to the P, N or R positions.
- The driver puts Adaptive Cruise Control or Pilot Assist in standby mode.

Auto Activate Parking Brake

The parking brake is applied if the function is keeping the vehicle stationary using the brakes and:

- The driver opens the door or unbuckles his/her seat belt.
- The function has kept the vehicle at a standstill for more than approx. 5 minutes.
- The brakes overheat.
- The driver switches off the engine.

* Option/accessory.

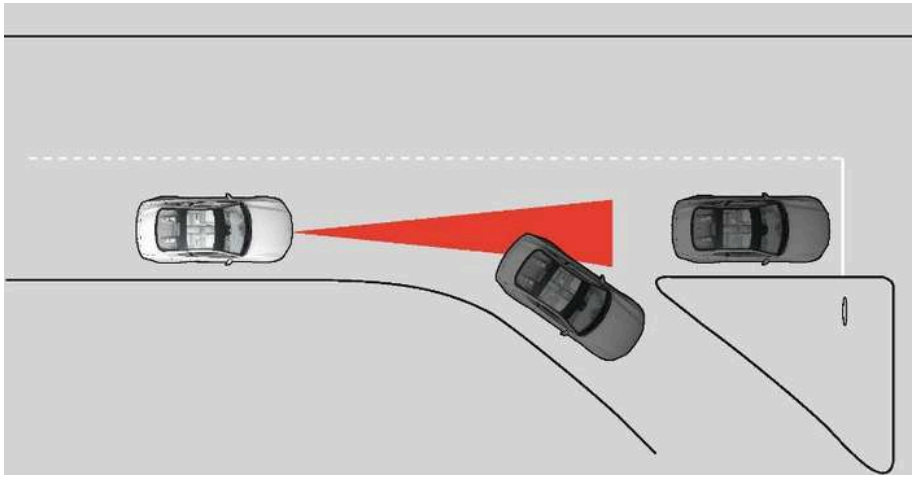
Adjusting set speed for driver support

See Adjusting set speed for driver support.

Switching target vehicles with driver support

At certain speeds, vehicles with automatic transmissions and the driver support functions Adaptive Cruise Control* and Pilot Assist* can switch target vehicles.

Switching target vehicles



If the target vehicle ahead turns suddenly, there may be stationary traffic ahead.

When driver support is actively following another vehicle at speeds **under** 30 km/h (20 mph) and switches targets from a moving vehicle to a stationary vehicle, driver support will brake for the stationary vehicle.

WARNING

When driver support follows another vehicle at speeds **over** approx. 30 km/h (20 mph) and changes target vehicle – from a moving vehicle to a stationary one – driver support will **ignore** the stationary vehicle and instead accelerate to the stored speed.

- The driver must then intervene and apply the brakes.

Automatic standby mode when switching targets

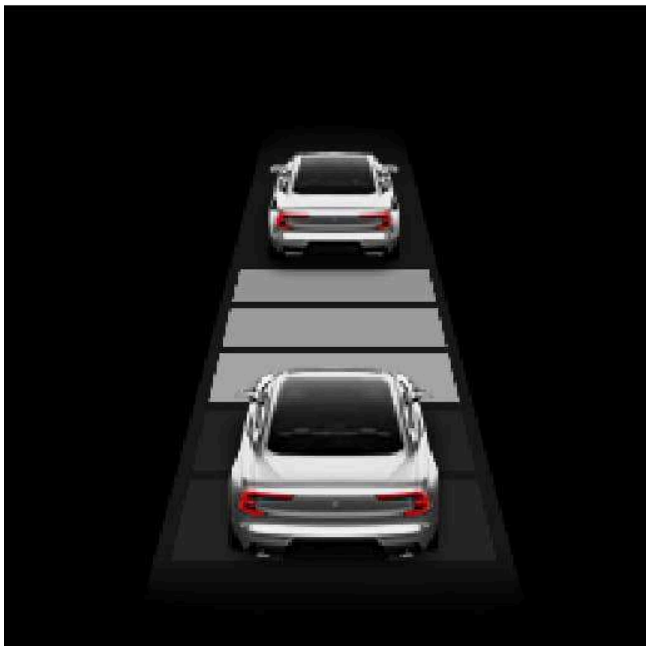
Driver support disengages and goes into standby mode if:

- your vehicle's speed goes under 5 km/h (3 mph) and driver support cannot determine if the target is a stationary vehicle or if it is another object, e.g. a speed bump.
- your vehicle's speed goes under 5 km/h (3 mph) and the vehicle ahead turns so that driver support no longer has a vehicle to follow.

* Option/accessory.

Setting time interval to the vehicle ahead

The time interval to the vehicle ahead can be set for the functions Adaptive Cruise Control*, Pilot Assist* and Distance Alert*.



Different time intervals to the vehicle ahead can be selected and are shown in the instrument panel as 1–5 horizontal bars. The more bars, the longer the time interval. One bar represents an interval of approx. 1 second to the vehicle ahead. 5 bars represents approx. 3 seconds.

NOTE

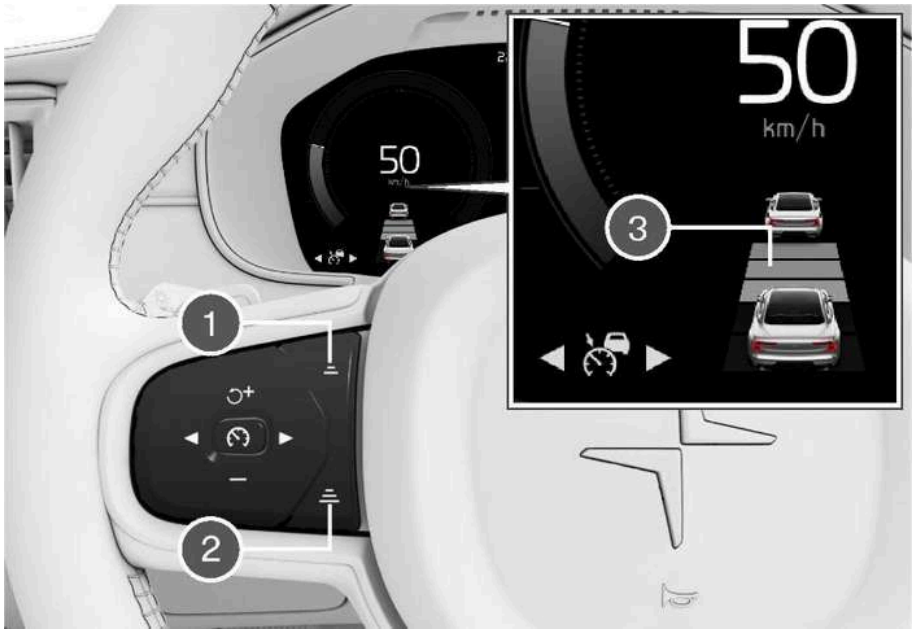
When the symbol in the instrument panel shows a vehicle and a steering wheel, Pilot Assist is following a vehicle ahead at a preset time interval.

When only a steering wheel is shown, there is no vehicle ahead within a reasonable distance.

NOTE

When the symbol in the instrument panel shows two vehicles, the Adaptive Cruise Control is following the vehicle ahead at a preset time interval.

When only one vehicle is shown, there is no vehicle ahead within a reasonable distance.



Controls for setting a time interval.

1. Reduce the time interval
2. Increase the time interval
3. Distance indicator

Press the (1) or (2) button to decrease or increase the time interval.
The distance indicator (3) shows the current time interval.
In order to help your vehicle follow the vehicle ahead as smoothly and comfortably as possible, Adaptive Cruise Control allows the time interval to vary noticeably in certain situations. At low speeds, when the distance to the vehicle ahead is short, Adaptive Cruise Control increases the time interval slightly.

NOTE

- The greater the vehicles' speed, the greater the distance between them for a set time interval.
- Only use the time intervals permitted by local traffic regulations.
- If driver support does not seem to respond with a speed increase when activated, it may be because the time interval to the vehicle ahead is shorter than the set time interval.

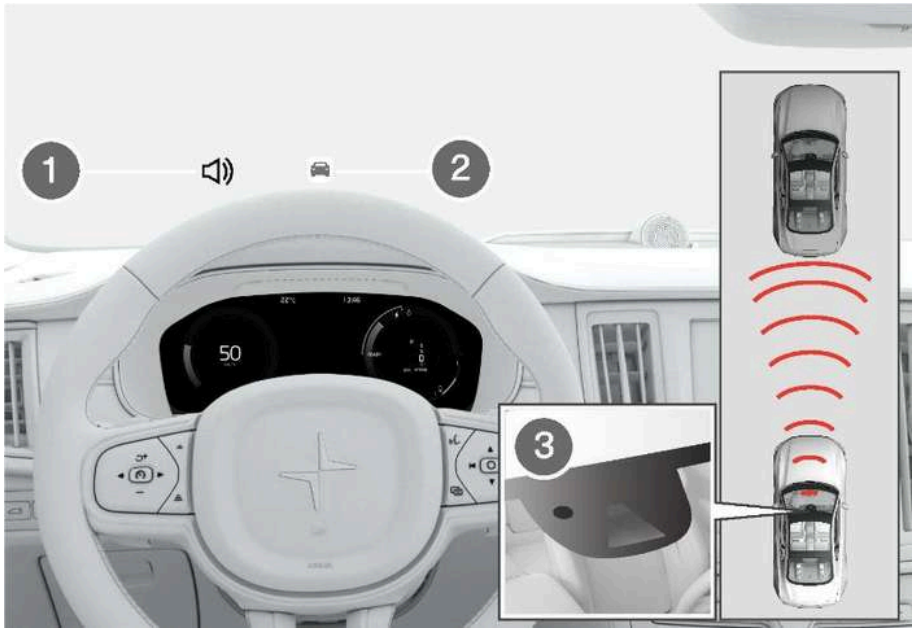
WARNING

- Only use a time interval suitable for the current traffic conditions.
- The driver should be aware that short time intervals give them limited time to react and act to any unforeseen traffic situation.

* Option/accessory.

Collision risk warning from driver support

The driver support systems Adaptive Cruise Control* and Pilot Assist* can help alert the driver if the distance to the vehicle ahead suddenly decreases to an unsafe distance.



Collision warning audible signal and symbol

1. Collision warning audible signal
2. Collision warning symbol
3. Camera/radar sensor distance monitoring

Adaptive Cruise Control and Pilot Assist use approx. 40% of the braking capacity. If a situation requires more braking force than driver support can provide, and if the driver does not apply the brakes, a warning light and audible warning signal will be activated to alert the driver that immediate action is required.

WARNING

The driver support system only issues a warning for vehicles detected by its radar unit – thus, a warning may come after a delay or not at all. Never wait for a warning. Apply the brakes when necessary.

NOTE

Visual warnings on the windshield may be difficult to notice in cases of strong sunlight, reflections, extreme light contrasts, or if the driver is wearing sunglasses or is not looking straight ahead.

* Option/accessory.

Pilot Assist

Auto-hold braking with driver support

See Auto-hold braking with driver support.

Adjusting set speed for driver support

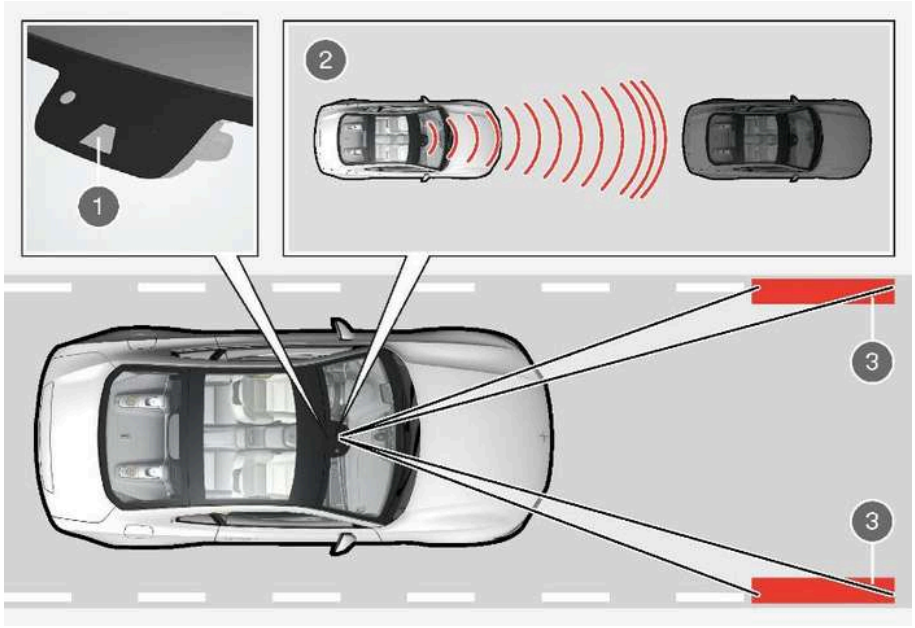
See Adjusting set speed for driver support.

Switching target vehicles with driver support

See Switching target vehicles with driver support.

Pilot Assist

Pilot Assist can help the driver keep the vehicle in the current traffic lane and maintain an even speed and a set time interval to the vehicle ahead.



The camera/radar sensor monitors the distance to the vehicle ahead and detects lane markings.

1. Camera and radar sensor
2. Distance detection
3. Lane marking detection

Get to know Pilot Assist

Pilot Assist helps steer the vehicle and you may need to drive a few miles with Pilot Assist before you feel fully comfortable with the function. It is important to familiarize yourself with all of the function's applications and limitations so that you can safely enjoy all its benefits.

The Pilot Assist function is primarily intended for use on highways and other major roads where it can help provide a more comfortable and relaxing driving experience.

The driver sets the desired speed and distance to the vehicle ahead. Pilot Assist monitors the distance to the vehicle ahead and the traffic lane's side markers using the camera and radar sensor. The system maintains the set time interval to the vehicle ahead by automatically adjusting your vehicle's speed and keeps your vehicle in its lane by providing steering assistance.

Pilot Assist regulates speed by accelerating and braking. It is normal for the brakes to emit a slight sound when they are being used to adjust speed.

Pilot Assist attempts to:

- smoothly regulate speed. The driver must apply the brakes in situations requiring immediate braking. For example, when there are great differences in speed between vehicles or if the vehicle ahead brakes suddenly. Due to limitations in the camera and radar sensor, braking may occur unexpectedly or not at all.
- follow a vehicle ahead in the same lane and maintain a time interval to that vehicle set by the driver. If the radar sensor does not detect a vehicle ahead, it will instead maintain the speed set by the driver. This will also happen if the speed of the vehicle ahead exceeds the set speed for your vehicle.

Vehicle's position in the traffic lane

When Pilot Assist helps to steer, it attempts to place your vehicle halfway between the visible traffic lane marker lines. For a smoother drive, it is a good idea to allow the vehicle to find a good position. The driver can always adjust the position by increasing the steering input. It is important that the driver checks to ensure the vehicle is positioned safely in the lane.

If Pilot Assist does not position the vehicle appropriately in the lane, the driver should turn off Pilot Assist or switch to Adaptive Cruise Control*.

Steering assistance



The current status of steering assistance is indicated by the steering wheel symbol:

• Illuminated indicates that steering assistance is active.

• Extinguished (as shown in illustration) indicates that steering assistance is deactivated.

Pilot Assist's steering assistance is based on monitoring the direction of the vehicle ahead and the traffic lane's side marker lines. The driver can override Pilot Assist's steering recommendations at any time and steer in another direction, e.g. to change lanes or avoid obstacles on the road. Resistance will be felt in the steering wheel as long as steering assistance is active.

If Pilot Assist cannot clearly interpret the lane's side marker lines and if the camera/radar sensor is unable for some other reason to clearly interpret the lane, Pilot Assist will temporarily deactivate steering assistance. However, the speed and distance warnings will remain active. Steering assistance will resume when the side marker lines can once

again be interpreted. The driver will be alerted by slight vibrations in the steering wheel that the function has been temporarily deactivated.

> **WARNING**
> Pilot Assist is deactivated automatically and resumes working without prior notice.

In curves and forks in the road

Pilot Assist is designed to interact with the driver. The driver should never wait for steering assistance from Pilot Assist, but instead should always be ready to increase his or her own steering efforts, particularly in curves.

When the vehicle is approaching an off-ramp or a fork in the road, the driver should steer toward the desired lane so that Pilot Assist can detect the desired direction of travel.

Hands on the steering wheel

Pilot Assist only functions if the driver's hands are on the steering wheel. It is important that the driver always continues to be active and alert when driving as Pilot Assist is unable to read all situations and may toggle between off and on without prior warning.



If Pilot Assist detects that the driver does not have their hands on the steering wheel, the system will remind the driver to actively steer the vehicle with a symbol and text message in the instrument panel.

If the driver's hands are still not detected on the steering wheel after a few seconds have passed, the instructions to actively steer the vehicle will be repeated, accompanied by an audible signal.

If Pilot Assist still does not detect the driver's hands on the steering wheel after a few more seconds have passed, the audible signal will become intense and the steering function will switch off. Pilot Assist must then be reactivated by pressing the button on the steering wheel.

WARNING

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and help make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Manual about this function to learn of its limitations, which the driver must be aware of before using the function.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgment. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the vehicle is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

IMPORTANT

Only a workshop may perform maintenance on driver support components – contact Polestar Customer Support.

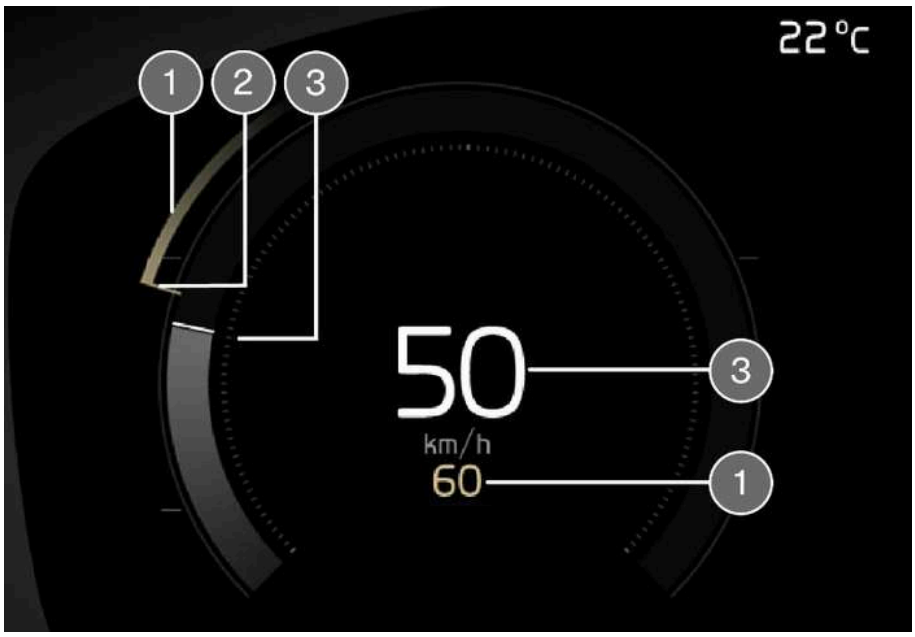
* Option/accessory.

1 Depending on market, this function can be either standard or optional.

Pilot Assist displays

The following illustrations show how Pilot Assist can appear in the various displays in different situations.

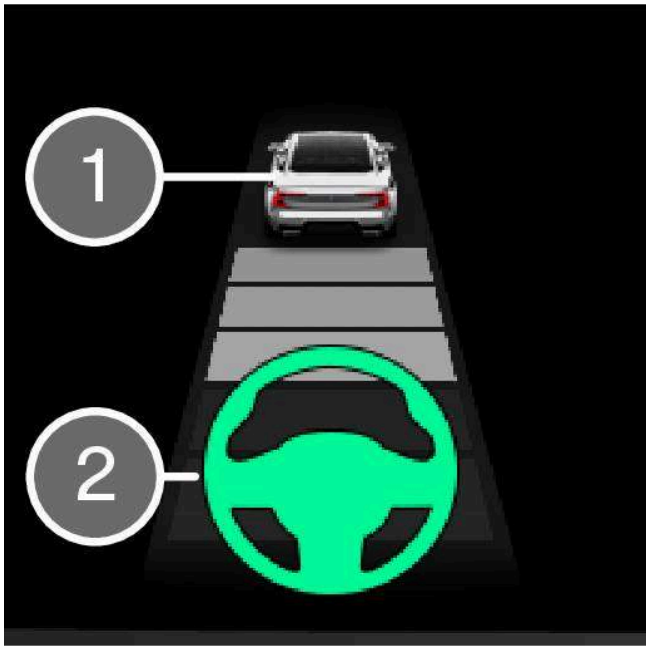
Speed



Speed indicators.

1. Set speed
2. Speed of the vehicle ahead
3. The current speed of your vehicle

Time interval



Pilot Assist will only regulate the time interval to the vehicle ahead when the distance symbol shows a vehicle (1) over the steering wheel symbol.

Pilot Assist's steering assistance is only active when the steering wheel symbol (2) changes from GRAY to GREEN.

When driving

In the following illustration, Road Sign Information (RSI2) indicates that the maximum permitted speed is 130 km/h (80 mph).



The previous illustration shows that Pilot Assist is set to maintain a speed of 110 km/h (68 mph) and that there is no target vehicle ahead to follow.

Pilot Assist will not provide any steering assistance because it cannot detect the lane's side marking lines.



The previous illustration shows that Pilot Assist is set to maintain a speed of 110 km/h (68 mph) and is following a target vehicle ahead that is traveling at the same speed.

Pilot Assist will not provide any steering assistance because it cannot detect the lane's side marking lines.



The previous illustration shows that Pilot Assist is set to maintain a speed of 110 km/h (68 mph) and is following a target vehicle ahead that is traveling at the same speed.

In this example, Pilot Assist will also provide steering assistance because it can detect the lane's side marking lines.



The previous illustration shows that Pilot Assist is set to maintain a speed of 110 km/h (68 mph) and that there is no target vehicle ahead to follow.

Pilot Assist will provide steering assistance because it can detect the lane's side marking lines.

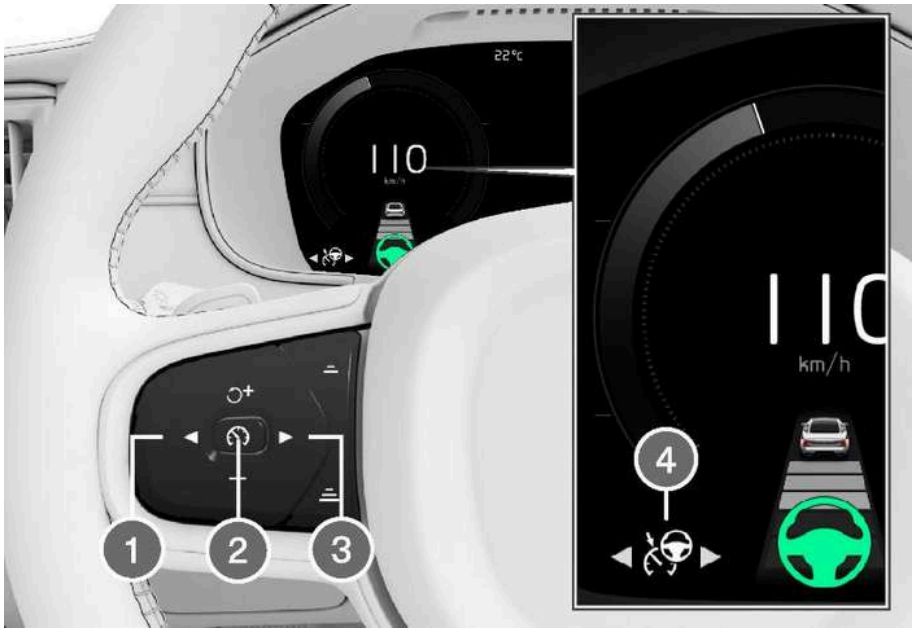
***** Option/accessory.

1 Depending on market, this function can be either standard or optional.

2 Road Sign Information

Selecting and activating Pilot Assist

Pilot Assist must first be selected and then activated before it can regulate speed and distance and provide steering assistance.



A green steering wheel indicates that Pilot Assist is providing steering assistance.

To start Pilot Assist.

- The driver's seat belt must be buckled and the driver's door must be closed.

- The side markings of the lane must be clearly visible and detected by the vehicle.
- There must be a vehicle ahead (target vehicle) within a reasonable distance or your vehicle's current speed must be at least 15 km/h (9 mph).
- The speed must not exceed 140 km/h (87 mph).
- The driver must keep their hands on the steering wheel.

Press the ◀ (1) or ▶ (3) button on the steering wheel keypad and scroll to the Pilot Assist symbol (4).
Gray symbol – Pilot Assist is in standby mode.
When Pilot Assist is selected, press (2) on the steering wheel keypad to activate.
White symbol – Pilot Assist starts and the current speed is stored as the maximum speed.

Reactivating Pilot Assist to the last stored speed

When Pilot Assist is selected, press on the steering wheel keypad to activate.
The Cruise Control marking in the instrument panel will change from GRAY to WHITE and the vehicle will then return to the most recently set speed.

WARNING

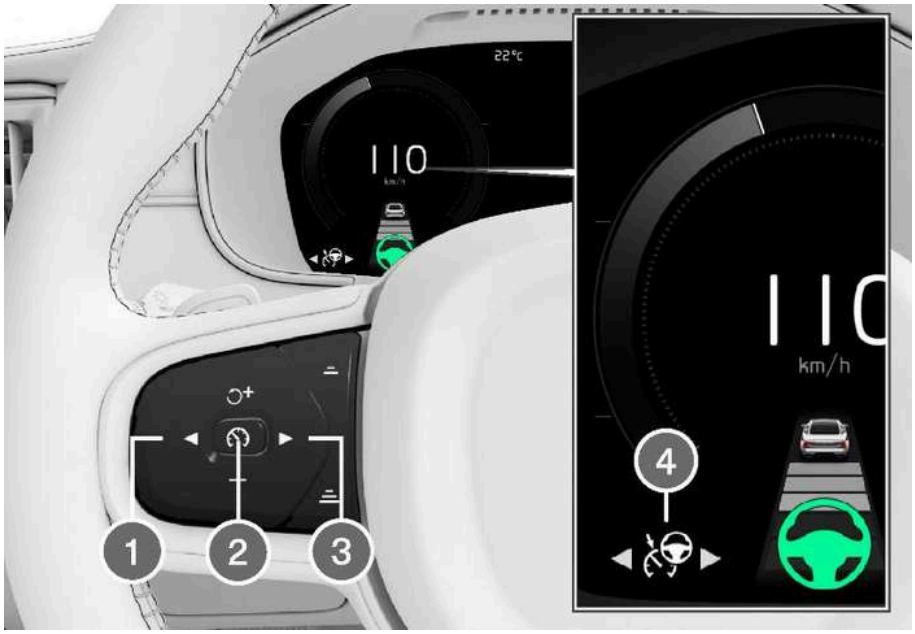
A noticeable increase in speed may follow when the speed is resumed with the steering wheel button.

* Option/accessory.

1 Depending on market, this function can be either standard or optional.

Deactivating Pilot Assist

Pilot Assist can be deactivated and switched off.



A green steering wheel indicates that Pilot Assist is providing steering assistance.

Press the button on the steering wheel (2).
The symbol and markings turn gray – Pilot Assist goes into standby mode. The time interval indicator light and any symbols for the target vehicle will go out.
Press the ◀ (1) or ▶ (3) buttons on the steering wheel to select another function.
The Pilot Assist symbol and marking (4) in the instrument panel will go out and the set/stored maximum speed will be erased.

WARNING

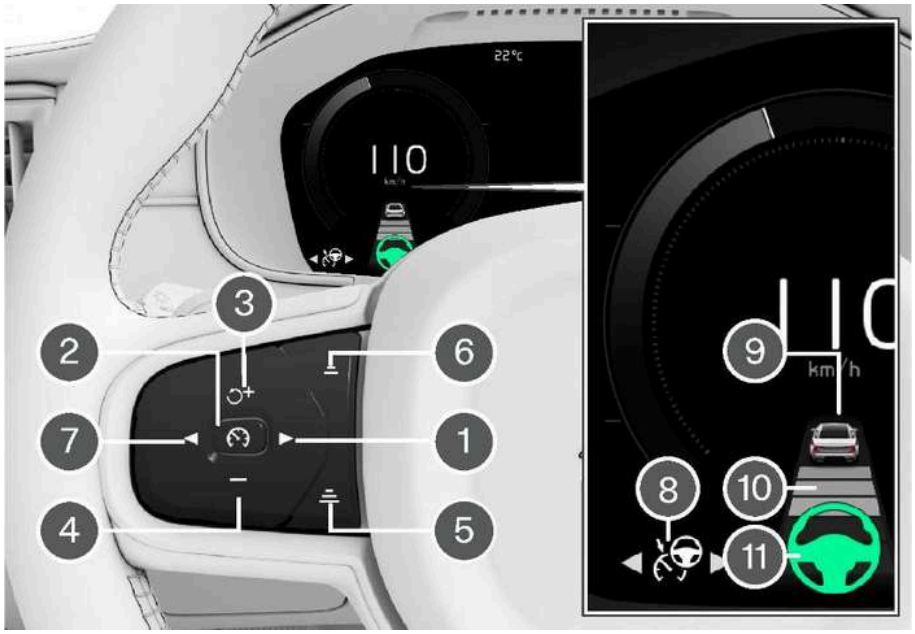
- With Pilot Assist in standby mode, the driver must intervene and steer and regulate both speed and distance to the vehicle ahead.
- If the vehicle comes too close to a vehicle ahead when Pilot Assist is in standby mode, the driver is instead warned of the short distance by the Distance Alert* function.

* Option/accessory.

1 Depending on market, this function can be either standard or optional.

Pilot Assist controls

A summary of how Pilot Assist is controlled using the right-side steering wheel keypad and how the function is shown in the display.



Function buttons and symbols.

1	▶: Switches from Adaptive Cruise Control to Pilot Assist
2	: **From standby mode** - activates Pilot Assist and sets the current speed
2	: **From active mode** - deactivates/puts Pilot Assist in standby mode
3	: Activates Pilot Assist from standby mode and resumes the set speed and time interval
3	+ : Increases the set speed
4	− : Reduces the set speed
5	Increases the time interval to the vehicle ahead
6	Reduces the time interval to the vehicle ahead
7	◀: Switches from Pilot Assist to Adaptive Cruise Control
8	Function symbol
9	Symbols for target vehicle
10	Symbol for time interval to the vehicle ahead

11	Symbol for activated/deactivated steering assistance

***** Option/accessory.

1 Depending on market, this function can be either standard or optional.

Pilot Assist symbols and messages

See Pilot Assist symbols and messages.

Pilot Assist limitations

Pilot Assist functionality may be reduced in certain situations.
Pilot Assist is a driver support function designed to simplify driving and assist the driver in many situations. However, the driver is responsible for maintaining a suitable distance to surrounding vehicles or objects and ensuring that the vehicle is correctly positioned in the traffic lane.

WARNING

In some situations, Pilot Assist may have trouble helping the driver properly or may be deactivated automatically – we advise against using Pilot Assist in such cases. Examples of such situations include:

- unclear, worn, or missing lane markings; lane markings that cross over each other; and multiple sets of road markings.
- when the lane divisions change; for example, when lanes divide or merge on highway exits or entrances.
- when there is road construction or there are sudden roadway changes; for example, when lines no longer mark the correct route.
- edges or other lines than lane markings are present on or near the road, e.g. curbs, joints or repairs to the road surface, edges of barriers, roadside edges or strong shadows.
- the lane is narrow or winding.
- the lane contains ridges or holes.
- weather conditions are poor, e.g. rain, snow or fog or slush or reduced visibility with poor light conditions, backlighting, wet road surface, etc.

The driver should also note that Pilot Assist has the following limitations:

- High curbs, roadside barriers, temporary obstacles (traffic cones, safety barriers, etc.) are not detected. Alternatively, they may be detected incorrectly as lane markings, with a subsequent risk of contact between the vehicle and such obstacles. The driver is responsible for ensuring that the vehicle maintains a suitable distance from such obstacles.
- The camera and radar sensors do not have the capacity to detect all oncoming objects and obstacles in traffic environments, e.g. potholes, stationary obstacles or objects that completely or partially block the route.
- Pilot Assist does not "see" pedestrians, animals, etc.
- The recommended steering input is limited in force, which means that it cannot always help the driver to steer and keep the vehicle within the lane.
- In vehicles equipped with Sensus Navigation, the function is able to use information from map data, which could cause variations in performance.
- Pilot Assist will be switched off if the speed-dependent power steering wheel resistance is working at reduced power, e.g. during cooling due to overheating.

WARNING

Pilot Assist should only be used if there are clear lane lines painted on each side of the lane. All other use will increase the risk of contact with nearby obstacles that cannot be detected by the functions.

The driver can always correct or adjust steering assistance provided by Pilot Assist by turning the steering wheel to the desired position.

Steep roads and/or heavy loads

Pilot Assist is primarily intended to be driven on flat roads. The function may not be able to maintain the correct time interval to the vehicle ahead when driving down steep hills. The driver should be extra attentive and prepared to apply the brakes.

Do not use Pilot Assist if the vehicle is carrying a heavy load.

WARNING

- This is not a collision avoidance system. The driver is always responsible and must intervene if the system fails to detect a vehicle ahead.
- The function does not brake for people or animals and does not brake for small vehicles, such as bikes and motorcycles. Similarly, it does not brake for low trailers, oncoming, slow-moving or stationary vehicles and objects.
- Do not use the function in demanding situations, such as in city traffic, at intersections, on slippery surfaces, with a lot of water or slush on the road, in heavy rain/snow, in poor visibility, on winding roads, or on on/off ramps.

NOTE

The function uses the vehicle's camera and radar sensor, which has certain general limitations.

***** Option/accessory.

1 Depending on market, this function can be either standard or optional.

Pilot Assist standby mode

Pilot Assist can be deactivated and put in standby mode. This may happen automatically or be due to driver intervention.
Standby mode means that the function is selected in the instrument panel but not activated. In standby mode, Pilot Assist will not regulate the speed or distance to the vehicle ahead or provide steering assistance.

Standby mode due to action by the driver

Pilot Assist will be deactivated in put in standby mode if any of the following occurs:

- The brakes are applied.
- The gear selector is moved to **N**.
- A turn signal is used for more than 1 minute.
- The vehicle is driven faster than the set speed for more than 1 minute.

Automatic standby mode

> **WARNING**
> With automatic standby mode, the driver is warned by an acoustic signal and a message on the instrument panel.
> - The driver must then regulate vehicle speed, apply the brakes if necessary, and maintain a safe distance to other vehicles.

Adaptive Cruise Control may go into standby mode if:

- Any of the systems that Pilot Assist is dependent on stops working, e.g. stability control/anti-skid (ESC2).
- Hands are not on the steering wheel.
- The driver opens the door.
- The driver unbuckles the seat belt.
- The engine speed (rpm) is too low/high.
- One or more of the wheels lose traction.
- The brake temperature is high.
- The parking brake is applied.
- The camera/radar sensor is covered by snow or heavy rain (the camera lens/radar waves are blocked).
- Your vehicle's speed goes under 5 km/h (3 mph) and Pilot Assist cannot determine if the object ahead is a stationary vehicle or if it is another object, e.g. a speed bump.
- Your vehicle's speed goes under 5 km/h (3 mph) and the vehicle ahead turns so that Pilot Assist no longer has a vehicle to follow.

***** Option/accessory.

1 Depending on market, this function can be either standard or optional.

2 Electronic Stability Control

Temporarily deactivating steering assistance with Pilot Assist

Pilot Assist steering assistance can be temporarily deactivated and reactivated without prior warning.
When the turn signals are used, Pilot Assist's steering assistance will be temporarily deactivated. When the direction indicator is switched off, the steering assistance is automatically disengaged if the side lane markings can still be detected.

If Pilot Assist cannot clearly interpret the lane's side marker lines or if the camera/radar sensor is unable for some other reason to clearly interpret the lane, Pilot Assist will temporarily deactivate steering assistance. However, the speed and distance warnings will remain active. Steering assistance will resume when the side marker lines can once again be interpreted. In these situations, the driver may be alerted through slight vibrations in the steering wheel that steering assistance is temporarily deactivated.

***** Option/accessory.

1 Depending on market, this function can be either standard or optional.

Setting time interval to the vehicle ahead

See Setting time interval to the vehicle ahead.

Differences between Pilot Assist and Lane Keeping Aid

Pilot Assist is a comfort function that can help keep the vehicle in its own lane and maintain the distance to the vehicle in front of you. Lane Keeping Aid (LKA1) is a function that similarly helps in certain situations to reduce the risk of the

vehicle unintentionally veering out of its lane.

Pilot Assist

Pilot Assist can help you to steer your vehicle between the lane markings, as well as maintain a preset speed or distance to the vehicle ahead. This function can also help you to maintain an even line on the roadway by keeping track of the lane lines.

What does Pilot Assist do?

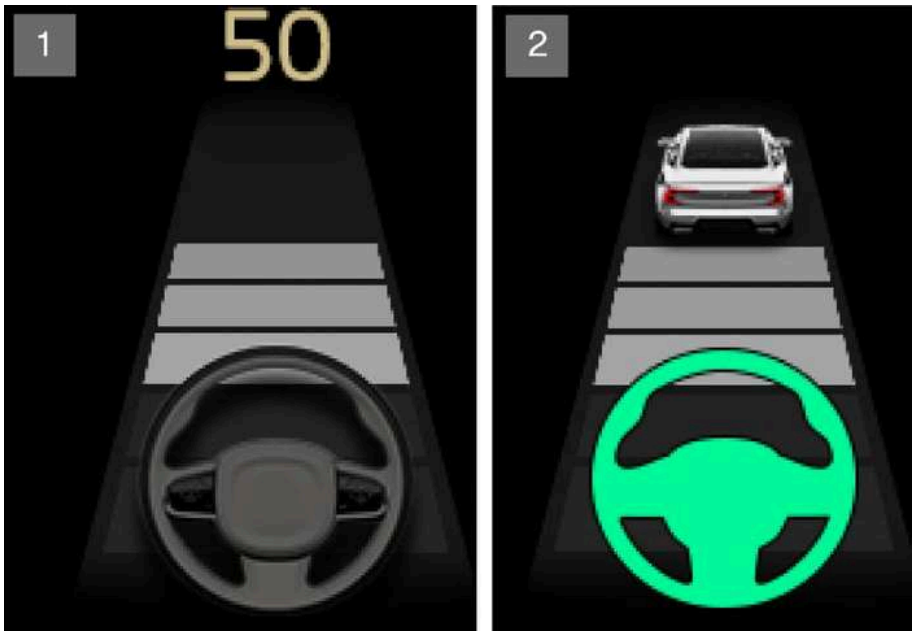
- Can help to keep the vehicle within its lane by assisting steering in some cases.
- Can help to maintain a preset speed or the distance to the vehicle ahead by means of acceleration and braking operations.

How do I know that Pilot Assist is on?

Symbols in the vehicle's instrument panel let you know when the function is on.

When the steering wheel in the middle is gray, Pilot Assist is on but steering assistance is not active.

When the steering wheel is green, Pilot Assist is on and steering assistance is active.





When the steering wheel symbol in the instrument panel is green, Pilot Assist is helping you to steer.

Lane Keeping Aid

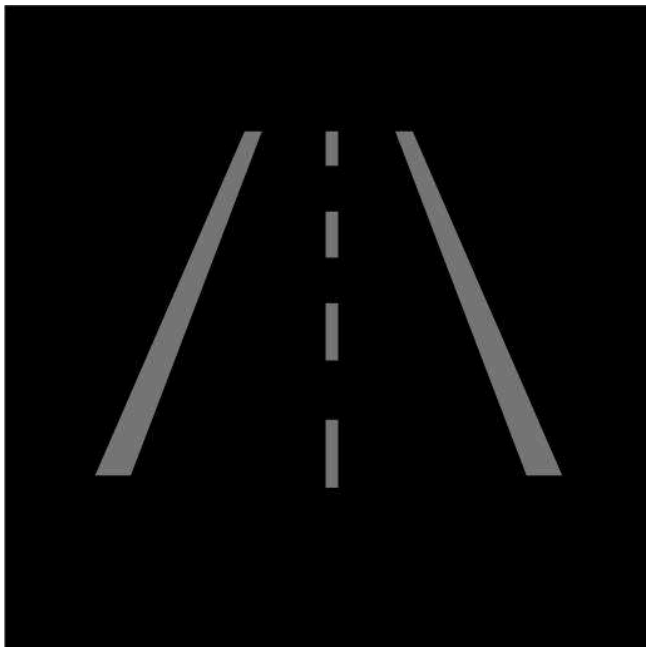
Lane Keeping Aid[1] can provide steering assistance and/or a warning to the driver when the vehicle is about to leave its lane unintentionally. The function is active between 65-200 km/h (40-125 mph) on roads with clearly visible side markings.

What does Lane Keeping Aid do?

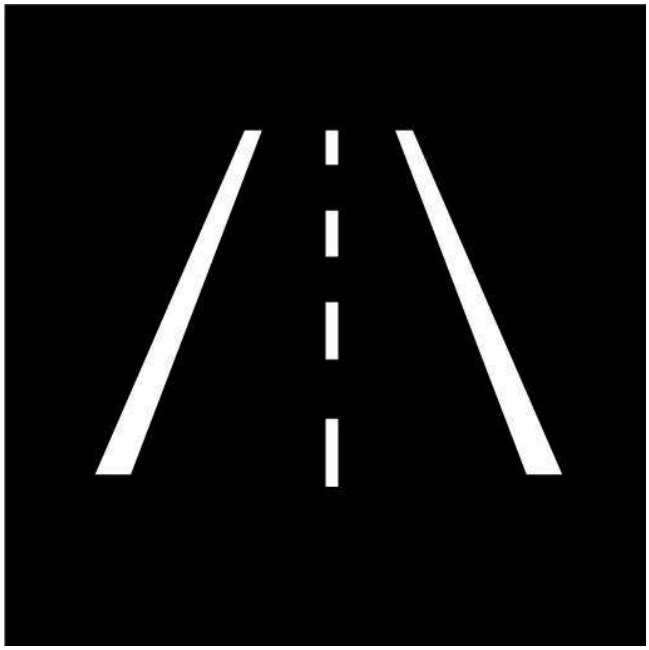
- Lane Keeping Aid can provide the driver with steering assistance, steering the vehicle back into its lane and/or providing warnings using acoustic signals or steering wheel vibration.

How do I know that Lane Keeping Aid is on?

Symbols in the vehicle's instrument panel show the function status.



Gray symbol in the instrument panel means that the function is on but that the conditions for LKA have not been met.



White symbol in the instrument panel means that the conditions for LKA have been met and that the function is available.



Orange symbol in the instrument panel means that LKA provides steering assistance back into the lane and/or gives a warning with sound or vibration in the steering wheel.

WARNING

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and help make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Manual about this function to learn of its limitations, which the driver must be aware of before using the function.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgment. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the vehicle is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

* Option/accessory.

1 Lane Keeping Aid

Collision risk warning from driver support

See Collision risk warning from driver support.

Passing assistance

Passing assistance

Passing assistance can assist the driver when passing other vehicles. The function can be used with Adaptive Cruise Control* or Pilot Assist*.
When Adaptive Cruise Control or Pilot Assist is following another vehicle and you indicate that you intend to pass that vehicle by using the left direction indicator, the system will begin accelerating toward the vehicle ahead **before** your vehicle has moved into the passing lane.

The function will then delay a speed reduction to avoid early braking as your vehicle approaches a slower-moving vehicle.

The function remains active until your vehicle has passed the other vehicle.

WARNING

Please note that this function can be activated in more situations than just passing another vehicle, such as when a direction indicator is used to indicate a lane change or before exiting to another road – the vehicle will then briefly accelerate.

WARNING

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and help make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Manual about this function to learn of its limitations, which the driver must be aware of before using the function.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgment. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the vehicle is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

* Option/accessory.

Using passing assistance

Passing assistance can be used with Adaptive Cruise Control* or Pilot Assist*.
In order to activate passing assistance:

- your vehicle must be following a vehicle ahead (target vehicle)
- your vehicle's **current speed** must be at least 70 km/h (43 mph)
- **the set speed** must be high enough to safely pass another vehicle.

To start passing assistance:
Turn on the left turn signal.
Passing assistance will start.

WARNING

The driver should be aware that if conditions suddenly change when using Passing Assistance, the function may implement an undesired acceleration in certain conditions.

Some situations should be avoided, e.g. if:

- the vehicle is approaching an exit in the same direction as passing would normally occur
- the vehicle ahead slows before your vehicle has had time to switch to the passing lane
- traffic in the passing lane slows down

You can help prevent situations of this type by putting the Adaptive Cruise Control or Pilot Assist in standby mode.

* Option/accessory.

Cruise control

There are several driver support functions to assist the driver in maintaining a suitable speed according to the situation. Below is a list for easy reference.
It is recommended that you read all sections in the Manual about a function to learn of its limitations, which the driver must be aware of before using the function.

		Automatic Speed Limiter*1	Cruise control2	Adaptive Cruise Control*34	Pilot Assist*4
Symbol in the instrument panel		 + 			
Brief description		The Automatic Speed Limiter function uses speed information from the Road Sign Information function*5 to automatically adapt the vehicle's maximum speed.	Cruise Control can help the driver maintain an even speed to provide a more relaxing driving experience, for example on highways and long, straight roads with even traffic flows.	Adaptive Cruise Control helps the driver maintain a constant speed with a set time interval to the vehicle ahead.	Pilot Assist can help the driver keep the vehicle in the current traffic lane by providing steering assistance and maintaining an even speed and a set time interval to the vehicle ahead.

* Option/accessory.

1 Automatic Speed Limiter

2 Cruise Control

3 Adaptive Cruise Control

4 Depending on market, this function can be either standard or optional.

5 Road Sign Information

Speed limiter functions

Speed Limiter

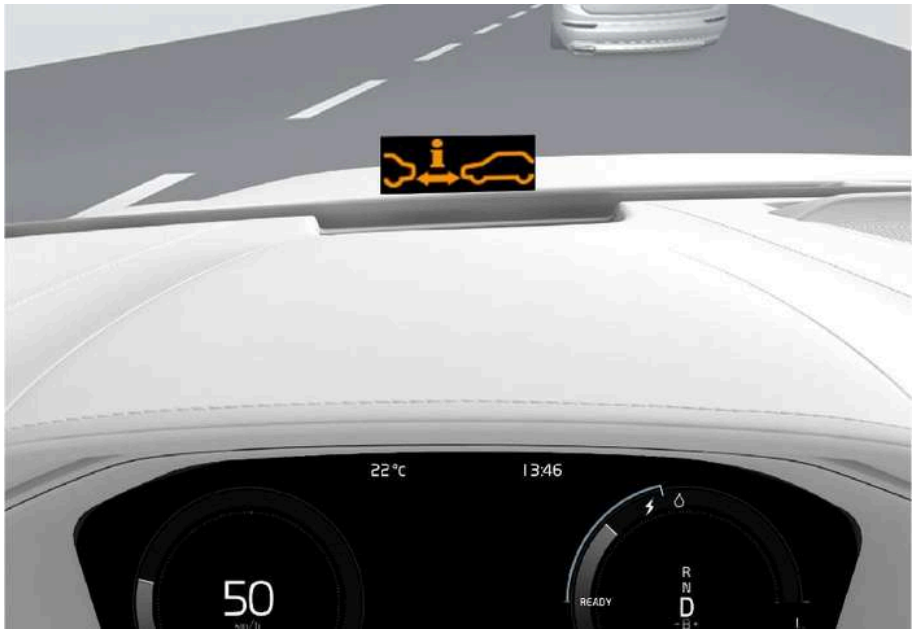
Adjusting set speed for driver support

See Adjusting set speed for driver support.

Distance Alert

Distance Alert

The Distance Alert function can help the driver become aware if the time interval to the vehicle in front is too short.



Symbol for Distance Alert on the windshield's head-up display.

When the time interval to the vehicle ahead is shorter than the preset value, a symbol will be shown in the head-up display. For this to be possible, however, the Show Driver Support function must be activated under settings in the vehicle's menu system.

Distance Alert is active at speeds above 30 km/h (20 mph) and only reacts for vehicles ahead moving in the same direction as your vehicle. No distance information is provided for oncoming, slow-moving or stationary vehicles.

NOTE

Visual warnings on the windshield may be difficult to notice in cases of strong sunlight, reflections, extreme light contrasts, or if the driver is wearing sunglasses or is not looking straight ahead.

NOTE

Distance Alert is deactivated while Adaptive Cruise Control* or Pilot Assist* is active.

WARNING

Distance Alert only reacts if the time interval to the vehicle ahead is shorter than the preset value – vehicle speed is not affected.

WARNING

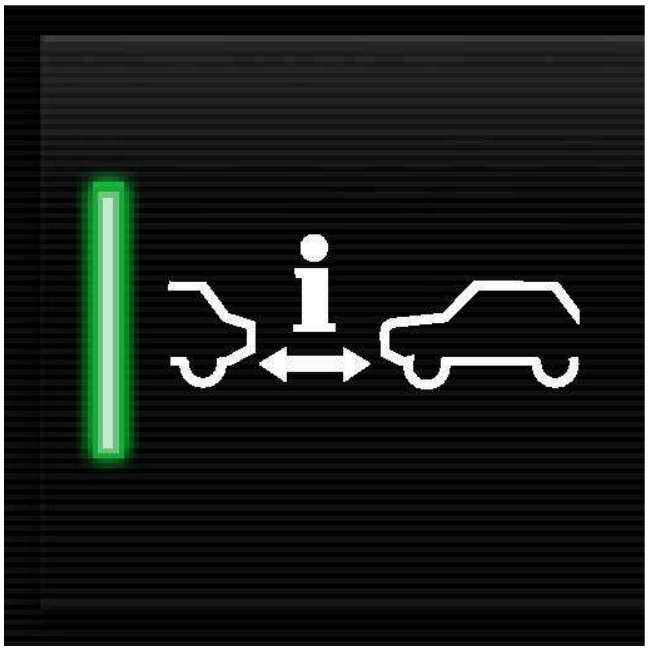
- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and help make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Manual about this function to learn of its limitations, which the driver must be aware of before using the function.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgment. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the vehicle is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

***** Option/accessory.

1 Distance Alert

Activating or deactivating Distance Alert

The Distance Alert function, which displays information on the windshield using a head-up display, can be switched off.



Activate or deactivate the function using this button in the center display's Function view.

- GREEN button indicator light – the function is activated.
- GRAY button indicator light – the function is deactivated.

Distance Alert is automatically activated each time the engine is started.

* Option/accessory.

1 Distance Alert

Distance Alert limitations

Distance Alert functionality may be reduced in certain situations. The function is only available in vehicles that can display information on the windshield with a head-up display.

WARNING

- Detection ability may be affected by vehicle size, e.g. motorcycles, which can cause the warning light to come on at a shorter time interval than that set or cause the warning to be temporarily absent.
- Very high speeds can cause the light to come on at a shorter time interval than that set due to limitations in the range of the radar unit.

NOTE

The function uses the vehicle's camera and radar sensor, which has certain general limitations.

* Option/accessory.

1 Distance Alert

Setting time interval to the vehicle ahead

See Setting time interval to the vehicle ahead.

Collision risk warning from driver support

See Collision risk warning from driver support.

Blind Spot Information

BLIS

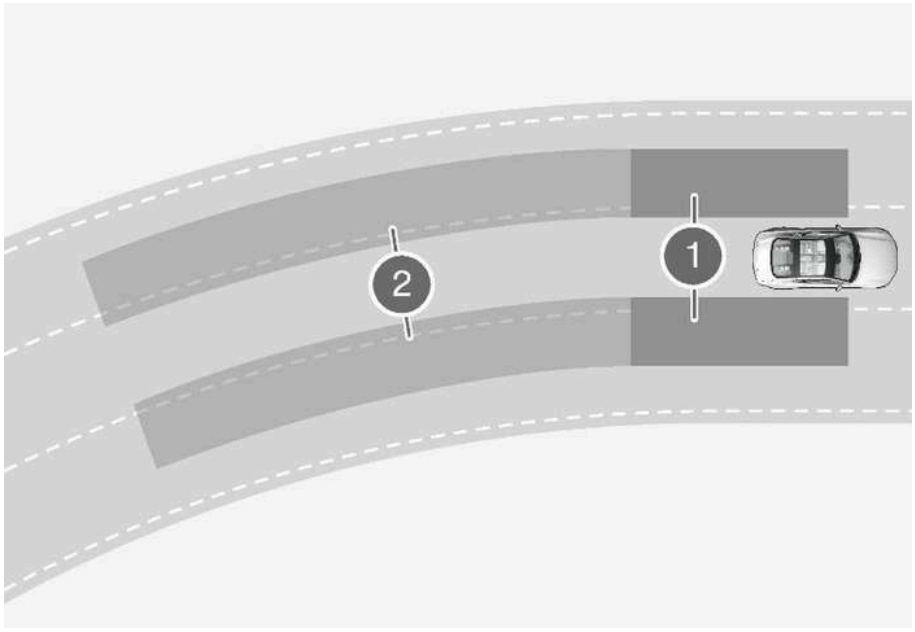
The BLIS[1] function is designed to help provide assistance in heavy traffic with several lanes moving in the same direction by helping the driver to detect the presence of vehicles in the "blind spot" area behind and to the side of the vehicle.



Location of BLIS indicator light

BLIS is a driver support system designed to alert the driver of:

- vehicles in your "blind spot"
- vehicles approaching rapidly in adjacent lanes.



BLIS overview

1. Blind spot zone
2. Rapidly approaching vehicle zone

The BLIS function is active at speeds above 10 km/h (6 mph).

The system is designed to react to:

- vehicles passing your vehicle
- vehicles that are rapidly approaching your vehicle from behind.

When BLIS detects a vehicle in zone 1 or a rapidly approaching vehicle in zone 2, an indicator light will illuminate in the relevant rearview mirror and glow steadily. If the driver then uses the turn signal on the side in which the warning has been given, the indicator light will become brighter and begin flashing.

If a passing vehicle's speed is more than 15 km/h (9 mph) faster than your vehicle, BLIS will not react.

> **NOTE**
>
> The light illuminates on the side of the vehicle where the system has detected the vehicle. If the vehicle is passed on both sides simultaneously, both lights come on.

WARNING

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and help make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Manual about this function to learn of its limitations, which the driver must be aware of before using the function.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgment. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the vehicle is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

NOTE

The function uses the vehicle's camera and radar sensor, which has certain general limitations.

1 Blind Spot Information

Activating or deactivating BLIS

The BLIS[1] function can be activated or deactivated.



Activate or deactivate the function using this button in the center display's Function view.

- GREEN button indicator light – the function is activated.
- GRAY button indicator light – the function is deactivated.

If BLIS is activated when the engine is started, the indicator lights in the rearview mirrors will flash once.

If BLIS is deactivated when the engine is turned off, it will remain off the next time the engine is started and the indicator lights will not illuminate.

1 Blind Spot Information

BLIS messages

See BLIS messages.

BLIS limitations

BLIS1 functionality may be reduced in certain situations.



Keep the marked area clean (on both the left and right sides of the vehicle).

Dirt, ice and snow covering the sensors may reduce functionality and prevent the system from providing warnings.

WARNING

- BLIS does not work in sharp curves.
- BLIS does not work when the vehicle is being reversed.

NOTE

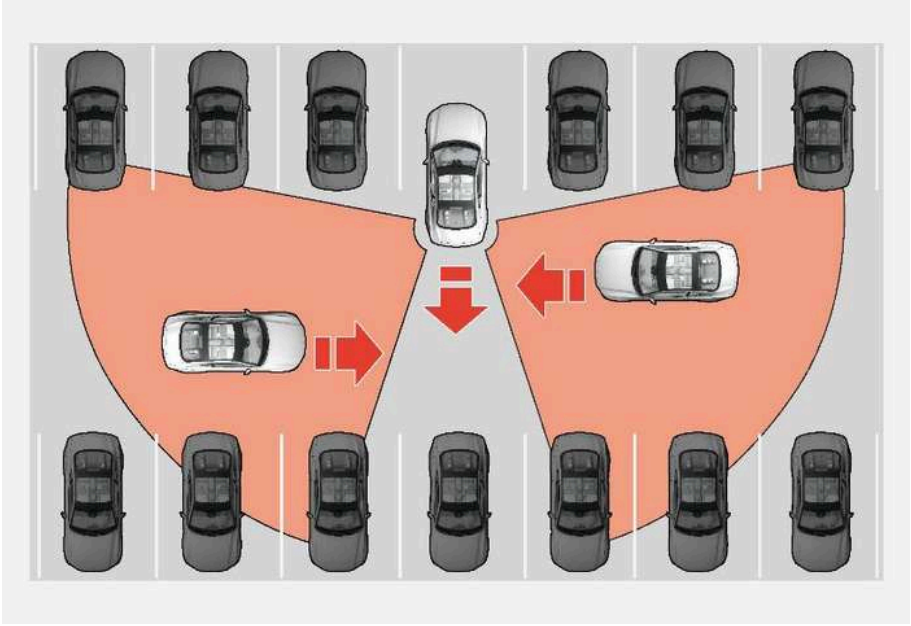
The function uses the vehicle's radar units, which have certain general limitations.

1 Blind Spot Information

Cross Traffic Alert

Cross Traffic Alert

Cross Traffic Alert(CTA) is a supplementary driver support system to BLIS2 that is intended to help the driver detect vehicles crossing behind the vehicle while backing up. The **auto brake** sub-function can help the driver stop the vehicle if there is a risk of a collision.



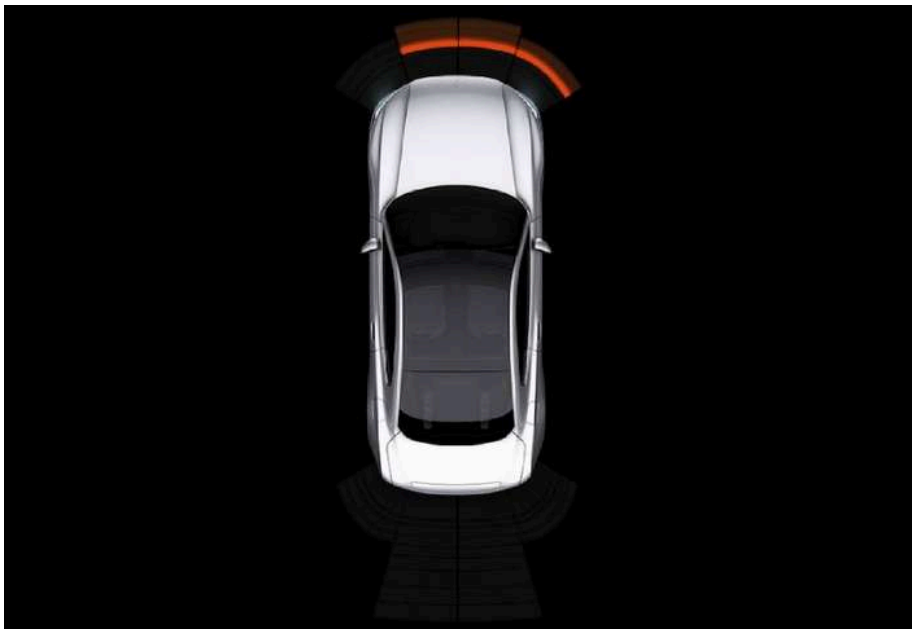
Examples of areas in which CTA can help the driver detect obstacles while backing up.

CTA is primarily designed to detect vehicles, but in certain cases can also detect pedestrians or smaller objects such as bicycles.

CTA is only active when the vehicle is moving backward or if reverse gear is engaged.

If CTA detects that something is approaching your vehicle from the side:

- an audible signal will sound from either the left or right speaker, depending on which side of your vehicle the object is approaching from.
- an icon will illuminate in the Park Assist System graphic on the screen.
- an icon will appear in the Park Assist Camera's Top view.



Illuminated CTA icon in the Park Assist System graphic on the screen.

If the driver does not pay attention to the warning from CTA and a collision is unavoidable, the **auto brake** function will intervene to stop the vehicle and a text will be shown on the instrument panel to explain why the vehicle was braked.

WARNING

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and help make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Manual about this function to learn of its limitations, which the driver must be aware of before using the function.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgment. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the vehicle is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

1 Warning for crossing traffic when the vehicle is backing up.

***** Option/accessory.

2 Blind Spot Information

Activating or deactivating Cross Traffic Alert

The driver can choose to deactivate the **warning** in the Cross Traffic Alert CTA function.



Activate or deactivate the function using this button in the center display's Function view.

- GREEN button indicator light – the function is activated.
- GRAY button indicator light – the function is deactivated.

The function is automatically activated each time the engine is started.

***** Option/accessory.

1 Warning for crossing traffic when the vehicle is backing up.

Cross Traffic Alert messages

See Cross Traffic Alert messages.

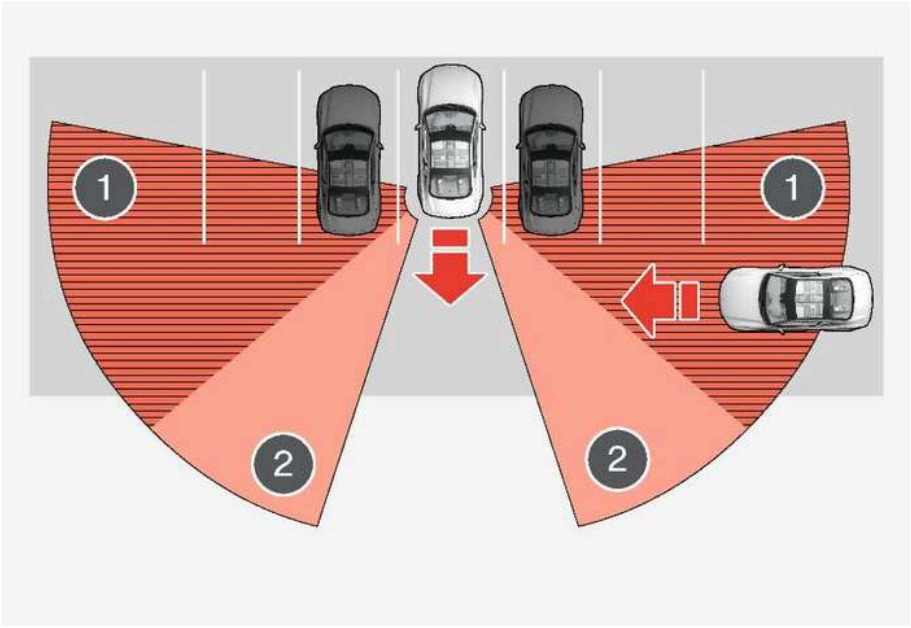
Cross Traffic Alert limitations

The Cross Traffic Alert (CTA) function with **auto brake** may have limited functionality in certain situations. Auto-brake is active at speeds under 15 km/h (9.3 mph).

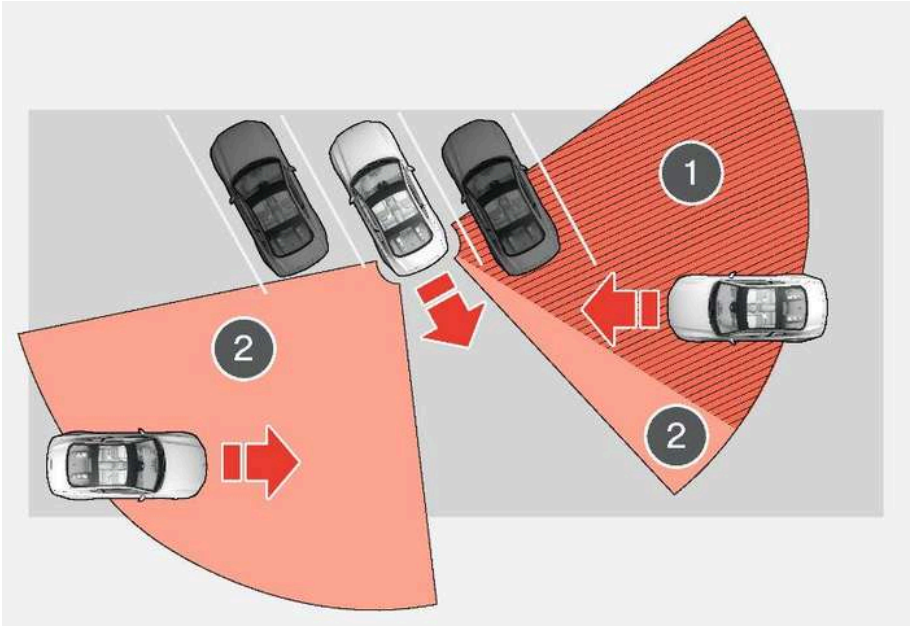
> **WARNING**
> The **auto-brake** sub-function can only detect and apply the brakes for other moving vehicles – **not** for e.g. stationary obstacles, cyclists or pedestrians.

CTA has certain limitations – The CTA sensors, for example, cannot "see" through other parked vehicles or objects blocking the vehicle.

Below are a few examples of situations in which CTA's field of vision may be initially limited and approaching vehicles may therefore not be detected until they are very close to your vehicle:



The vehicle is parked very far into a parking space.



In a diagonal parking space, CTA may be completely "blind" on one side of your vehicle.



1. CTA's blind zone.



2. CTA's field of vision.

However, as you back your vehicle slowly out of a parking space, CTA's field of vision changes in relation to the obstructing vehicle/object and its blind zone is reduced.

Examples of further limitations

- The **auto brake** sub-function only detects vehicles in motion and may therefore **not** "see" and brake for e.g. stationary obstacles, a cyclists or a pedestrian.
- Dirt, ice and snow covering the sensors may reduce functionality and prevent the system from providing warnings.

> **NOTE**
>
> The function uses the vehicle's radar units, which have certain general limitations.

***** Option/accessory.

1 Warning for crossing traffic when the vehicle is backing up.

Rear Collision Warning

Rear Collision Warning

The Rear Collision Warning2 (RCW) function can help the driver avoid rear-end collisions from vehicles approaching from behind.
The function can alert drivers of following vehicles of the risk of a collision by rapidly flashing the turn signals.

The Whiplash Protection System safety system will also be activated in a collision.

The function is automatically activated each time the engine is started.

WARNING

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and help make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Manual about this function to learn of its limitations, which the driver must be aware of before using the function.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgment. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the vehicle is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

***** Option/accessory.

1 RCW: Warning of collision from the rear.

2 This function is not available on all markets.

Rear Collision Warning limitations

In some situations, it may be difficult for Rear Collision Warning (RCW) to warn the driver of a collision risk.
This may be the case if:

- the vehicle approaching from the rear is detected at a late stage
- the vehicle approaching from the rear changes lanes at a late stage.

NOTE

In certain markets, RCW does **not** warn with the direction indicators due to local traffic regulations – in such cases, that part of the function is deactivated.

NOTE

The warning with direction indicators for Rear Collision Warning* is deactivated if the collision warning distance in the City Safety function is set to the lowest level "Late".

NOTE

The function uses the vehicle's camera and radar sensor, which has certain general limitations.

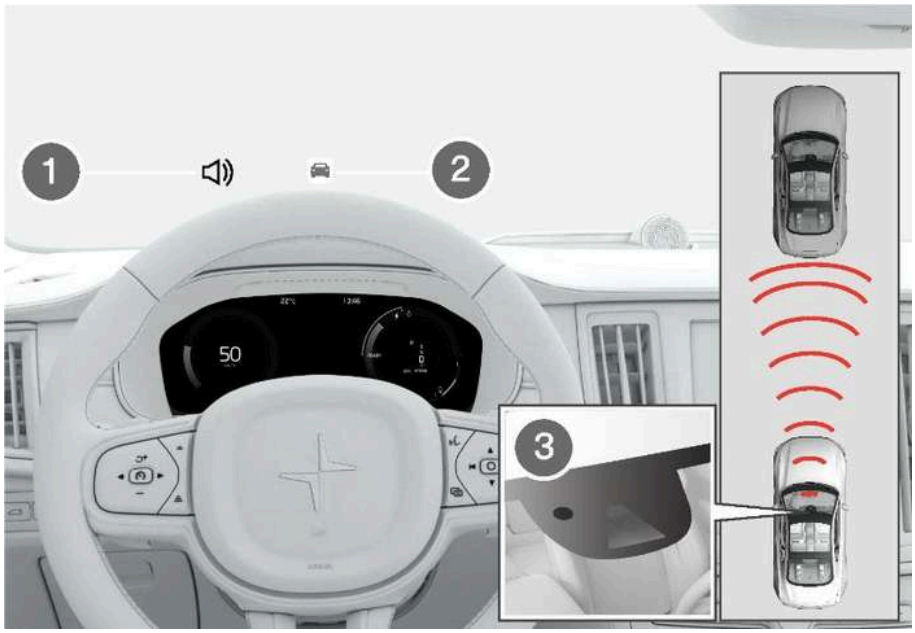
***** Option/accessory.

1 RCW: Warning of collision from the rear.

City Safety

City Safety™

City Safety1 can alert the driver with light, sound and pulsations in the brake pedal to help the driver detect pedestrians, cyclists, large animals and vehicles.



Function overview

1. Collision warning audible signal
2. Collision warning symbol
3. Camera/radar sensor distance monitoring

City Safety can help prevent a collision or lower the vehicle's speed at the point of impact.

The function can help the driver avoid a collision in e.g. stop-and-go traffic, when changes in the traffic ahead and driver distraction could lead to an incident. City Safety activates a brief, forceful braking in an attempt to stop your vehicle immediately behind the vehicle or object ahead.

The function assists the driver by automatically applying the brakes if there is an imminent risk of a collision and the driver does not react in time by braking and/or steering away.

City Safety is activated in situations in which the driver should have applied the brakes much earlier, which means that the system will not be able to assist the driver in all situations. The function is designed to be activated as late as possible to help avoid unnecessary intervention. Automatic braking will only be applied after or during a collision warning.

Normally, the occupants of the vehicle will not be aware of City Safety except when the system intervenes when a collision is imminent.

WARNING

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and help make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Manual about this function to learn of its limitations, which the driver must be aware of before using the function.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgment. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the vehicle is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

1 This function is not available on all markets.

City Safety sub-functions

City Safety[1] can help prevent a collision or lower the vehicle's speed at the point of impact. The function consists of several subfunctions.

Ability to reduce speed

If the speed difference between your vehicle and the obstacle is greater than the speeds given below, the City Safety auto-brake function cannot prevent a collision but can reduce its consequences.

Vehicles

City Safety can help prevent a collision with a vehicle ahead by reducing your vehicle's speed by up to 60 km/h (37 mph).

Cyclists

City Safety can help prevent a collision with a cyclist ahead by reducing your vehicle's speed by up to 50 km/h (30 mph).

Pedestrians

City Safety can help prevent a collision with a pedestrian ahead by reducing your vehicle's speed by up to 45 km/h (28 mph).

Large animals

If there is a risk of colliding with a large animal, City Safety can help reduce your vehicle's speed by up to 15 km/h (9 mph).

The braking function for large animals is primarily intended to mitigate the force of a collision at higher speeds. Braking is most effective at speeds above 70 km/h (43 mph) and less effective at lower speeds.

City Safety steps

City Safety carries out three steps in the following order:

1. Collision warning
2. Brake assistance
3. Auto-brake

1 - Collision warning

The driver is first alerted to the risk of an imminent collision.

A flashing warning symbol is shown on the windshield in the head-up display.



Collision warning symbol on the windshield

> **NOTE**
> Visual warnings on the windshield may be difficult to notice in cases of strong sunlight, reflections, extreme light contrasts, or if the driver is wearing sunglasses or is not looking straight ahead.

City Safety can detect pedestrians, cyclists or vehicles that are stationary, are moving in the same direction as your vehicle and are ahead of your vehicle. City Safety can also detect pedestrians, cyclists or large animals that are crossing the road in front of your vehicle.

If there is a risk of a collision with a pedestrian, large animal, cyclist or another vehicle, the driver will be alerted with light, sound and pulsations in the brake pedal. At lower speeds, during hard braking or if the accelerator pedal is pressed, the brake pedal pulsation warning will not be given. The intensity of the brake pedal pulsations varies according to the vehicle's speed.

2 - Brake assistance

If the risk of a collision increases after the collision warning, brake support will be activated.

If the system determines that the pressure the driver is exerting on the brake pedal is insufficient to prevent the collision, brake support will increase pressure.

3 - Auto-brake

The automatic braking function is activated at the last moment.

If the driver has not taken evasive action by this stage and a collision is imminent, the automatic braking function will be triggered. This occurs whether or not the driver is pressing the brake pedal. Full braking force will be applied to reduce the speed at impact or reduced braking effect will be applied if this is sufficient to avoid the collision.

The seat belt tensioner may be activated when the automatic braking function is triggered.

In certain situations, auto-braking may begin with a limited braking force before applying full braking force.

If City Safety has prevented a collision, the vehicle will be kept at a standstill until the driver takes action. If the vehicle has slowed to avoid colliding with a slower-moving vehicle ahead, your speed will be reduced to that vehicle's speed.

Auto-braking can always be cancelled if the driver presses hard on the accelerator pedal.

> **NOTE**
> When City Safety activates the brakes, the brake lights come on.

When City Safety applies the brakes, a text message will appear in the instrument panel to notify the driver that the function is/was activated.

> **WARNING**
> City Safety may not be used to change how the driver operates the vehicle. The driver must not only rely on City Safety to brake the vehicle.

1 This function is not available on all markets.

Setting a warning distance for City Safety

City Safety[1] is always active, but the function's warning distance can be adjusted.

> **NOTE**
> The City Safety function cannot be deactivated. It is activated automatically each time the engine/electric motor is started.

The alert distance determines the sensitivity of the system and regulates the distance at which the light, sound and brake pulsations will be activated.

To select warning distance:
Select Settings → My Car → IntelliSafe in the center display's Top view.
Under City Safety Warning, tap Late, Normal or Early to set the desired warning distance.
If the driver feels that the Early setting is giving too many warnings or finds them irritating, the Normal or Late warning distance settings can be selected instead.

If the driver feels that the warnings are too frequent and distracting, the warning distance can be reduced. This will reduce the total number of warnings, but it will also result in City Safety providing warnings at a later stage.

The Late warning distance setting should therefore only be used in exceptional cases, such as when a more dynamic driving style is preferred.

WARNING

- No automatic system can guarantee 100% correct function in all situations. You should therefore never test use of City Safety in the direction of people, animals or vehicles – this could lead to severe damage, serious personal injury or even death.
- City Safety warns the driver if there is a risk of collision, but the function cannot reduce the driver's reaction time.
- Even if the warning distance has been set to Early, warnings may be perceived as late in certain situations – e.g. when there are large speed differences or if the vehicle ahead suddenly brakes heavily.
- With the warning distance set to Early, warnings come further in advance. This may cause the warnings to come more frequently than with warning distance Normal, but is recommended since it can make City Safety more effective.

NOTE

The warning with direction indicators for Rear Collision Warning* is deactivated if the collision warning distance in the City Safety function is set to the lowest level "Late".

The seat belt tensioning and braking functions remain active.

1 This function is not available on all markets.

***** Option/accessory.

City Safety messages

See City Safety messages.

City Safety limitations

City Safety1 functionality may be reduced in certain situations.

Surroundings

Low objects

Hanging objects, such as flags for overhanging loads or accessories such as auxiliary lights or front protective grids that extend beyond the height of the hood, may limit City Safety functionality.

Slippery road conditions

The extended braking distance on slippery roads may reduce City Safety's capacity to help avoid a collision. In these types of situations, the Anti-lock Braking System and Electronic Stability Control (ESC2) are designed for optimal braking power with maintained stability.

Backlighting

The visual warning signal in the windshield may be difficult to detect in bright sunlight, if there are reflections, or if the driver is wearing sunglasses or not looking straight ahead.

Heat

If the temperature in the passenger compartment is high due to e.g. bright sunlight, the visual warning signal in the windshield may be temporarily disabled.

Camera and radar sensor's field of vision

The camera's field of vision is limited and in certain situations, it may be unable to detect pedestrians, large animals, cyclists or vehicles, or it may detect them later than expected.

Vehicles that are dirty may be detected later than clean vehicles, and in dark conditions, motorcycles may be detected late or not at all.

If a text message displayed in the instrument panel indicates that the camera or radar sensor is obstructed, it may be difficult for City Safety to detect pedestrians, large animals, cyclists, vehicles or lane markings in front of the vehicle. City Safety functionality may therefore be reduced.

Text messages may not be displayed for all situations in which the windshield sensors are blocked. The driver must therefore always keep the windshield in front of the camera/radar sensor clean.

> **NOTE**
> The function uses the vehicle's camera and/or radar units, which have certain general limitations.

Driver intervention

Backing up

City Safety is temporarily deactivated when the vehicle is backing up.

Low speed

City Safety is not activated at very low speeds under 4 km/h (3 mph). The system will therefore not intervene in situations in which your vehicle is approaching another vehicle very slowly, such as when parking.

Active driver

Action by the driver always has priority. City Safety will therefore not react or will react at a later stage with a warning or intervention in situations in which the driver is clearly steering and operating the accelerator pedal, even if a collision is unavoidable.

An active and aware driving style may therefore delay collision warnings and intervention in order to minimize unnecessary warnings.

Market limitations

City Safety is not available in all countries. If City Safety is not shown in the center display's Settings menu, your vehicle is not equipped with this function.

In the center display's Top view, tap:

- Settings → My Car → IntelliSafe

Important warnings

> **WARNING**
> The driver support system only issues a warning for obstacles detected by its camera and radar units, which means that warnings may come after a delay or not at all.
> - Never wait for a warning or assistance. Apply the brakes when necessary.

WARNING

- Warnings and brake interventions can be triggered late or not at all if the traffic situation or external influences prevent the camera and radar unit from properly detecting pedestrians, cyclists, large animals or vehicles ahead of the vehicle.
- To be able to detect vehicles at night, its front and rear lights must work and illuminate clearly.
- Warnings for stationary or slow-moving vehicles and large animals may be disabled due to darkness or poor visibility.
- Warnings and brake interventions for pedestrians and cyclists are disengaged at vehicle speeds over 80 km/h (50 mph).
- The system can provide effective warnings and brake intervention if the relative speed is lower than 50 km/h (30 mph).
- For stationary or slow-moving vehicles, warnings and brake interventions are effective at vehicle speeds of up to 70 km/h (43 mph).
- Speed reduction for large animals is less than 15 km/h (9 mph) and can be achieved at vehicle speeds over 70 km/h (43 mph). At lower speeds, the warning and brake intervention for large animals is less effective.
- Do not place, affix or mount anything on the inside or outside of the windshield, or in front of or around the camera and radar unit – this could disrupt camera-based functions.
- Objects, snow, ice or dirt in the area of the camera sensor can reduce the function, disengage it completely or give an improper function response.

WARNING

- Auto-braking can prevent a collision or reduce collision speed, but to ensure full brake performance the driver should always depress the brake pedal – even when the vehicle brakes automatically.
- The warning and steering assistance are only activated if there is a high risk of collision – you must therefore never wait for the collision warning or the function to intervene.
- The function does not activate automatic braking intervention during heavy acceleration.

IMPORTANT

Only a workshop may perform maintenance on driver support components – contact Polestar Customer Support.

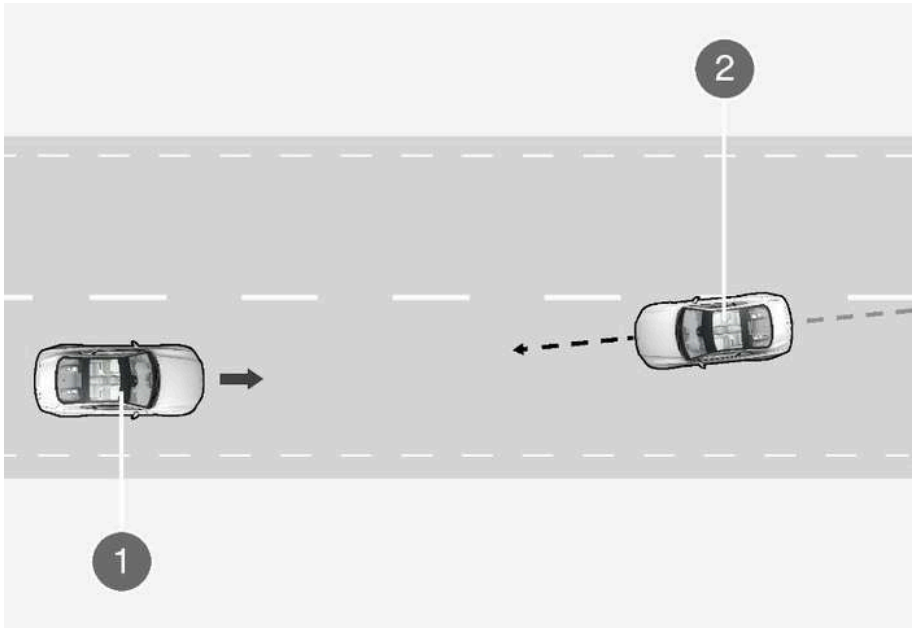
1 This function is not available on all markets.

2 Electronic Stability Control

City Safety braking for oncoming vehicles

City Safety can help you apply the brakes for an oncoming vehicle in your lane.

If an oncoming vehicle veers into your lane and a collision is unavoidable, City Safety can help reduce your vehicle's speed to attempt to mitigate the force of the collision.



1	Own vehicle
2	Oncoming vehicles

The following criteria must be met for the function to work:

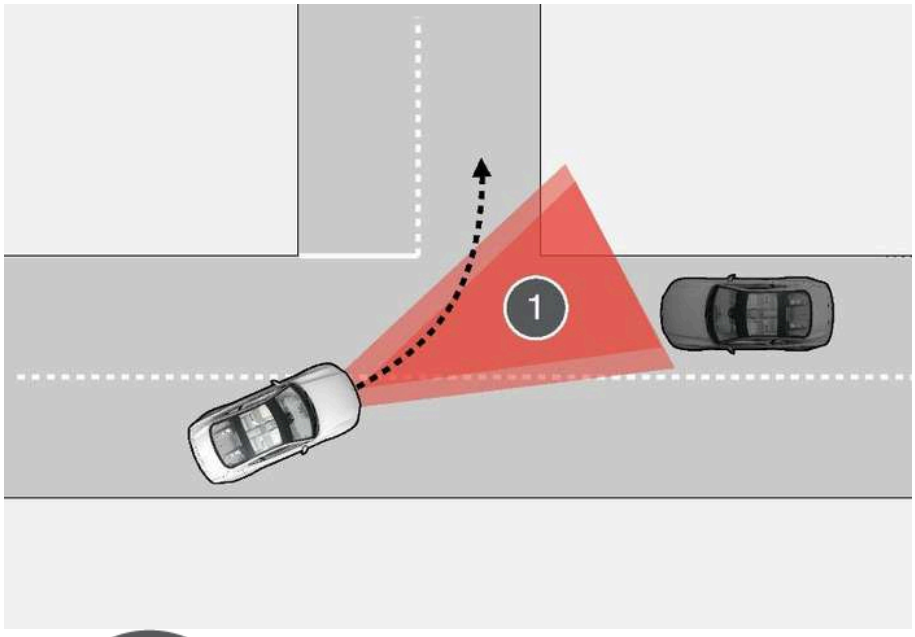
- your vehicle's speed must be above 4 km/h (3 mph)
- the road must be straight
- your lane must have clear side lane markings
- your vehicle must be positioned straight in your lane
- the oncoming vehicle must be positioned within your vehicle's lane markings
- the oncoming vehicle's headlights must be on
- the function can only handle “front-to-front” collisions
- the function can only detect vehicles with four wheels.

WARNING

Warnings and brake interventions due to an imminent collision with an oncoming vehicle always come very late.

City Safety in crossing traffic

City Safety1 can assist the driver when turning into the path of an oncoming vehicle in an intersection.





1. Sector in which City Safety can detect an oncoming vehicle in crossing traffic.

In order for City Safety to detect an oncoming vehicle in situations where there is a risk of a collision, that vehicle must be within the sector in which City Safety can analyze the situation.

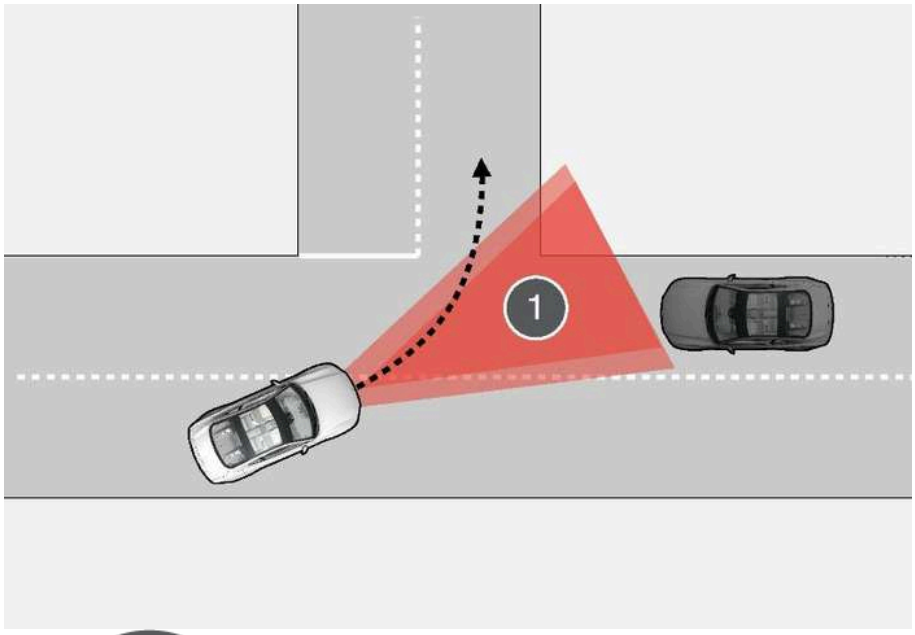
The following criteria must also be met:

- your vehicle's speed must be at least 4 km/h (3 mph)
- your vehicle must be making a left turn
- the oncoming vehicle's headlights must be on

1 This function is not available on all markets.

Limitations of City Safety in crossing traffic

In certain situations, it may be difficult for City Safety to help the driver avoid a collision with crossing traffic.





1. Sector in which City Safety can detect an oncoming vehicle in crossing traffic.

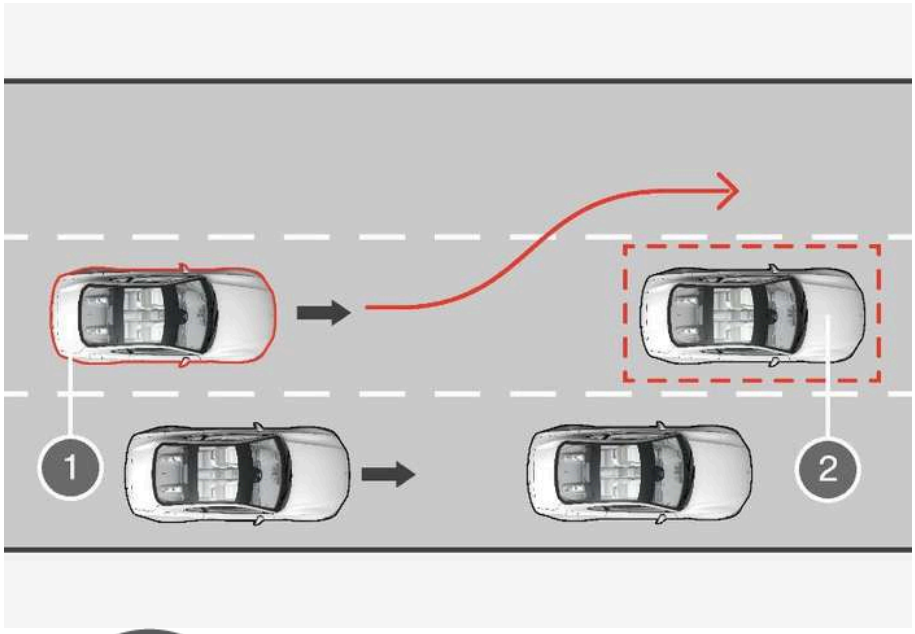
For example:

- On slippery roads when Electronic Stability Control (ESC) is actively operating.
- If an approaching vehicle is detected at a late stage.
- If the oncoming vehicle is partially obstructed by another vehicle or object.
- If the oncoming vehicle's headlights are off.
- If the oncoming vehicle is moving erratically and e.g. suddenly changes lanes at a late stage.

> **NOTE**
> The function uses the vehicle's camera and radar sensor, which has certain general limitations.

City Safety steering assistance for evasive maneuver

City Safety steering assistance can help the driver steer away from a vehicle/obstacle when it is not possible to avoid a collision by braking alone. City Safety steering assistance is always activated and cannot be switched off.



1. Your vehicle swerves away
2. Slow-moving/stationary vehicle or obstacle.

City Safety helps provide assistance by strengthening the driver's steering movements, but only if the driver has begun evasive action and the system detects that the driver's steering movements are not sufficient to avoid a collision.

The brake system is used simultaneously to further strengthen steering movements. The function also helps stabilize the vehicle after it has passed the obstacle.

City Safety steering assistance can detect:

- vehicles
- cyclists
- pedestrians
- large animals

City Safety steering assistance limitations during evasive maneuvers

City Safety steering assistance may have limited functionality in certain situations and not intervene, e.g.:

- at speeds outside the range of 50-100 km/h (30-62 mph)
- if the driver does not take evasive action
- if speed-dependent power steering wheel resistance is working at reduced power – e.g. during cooling due to overheating.

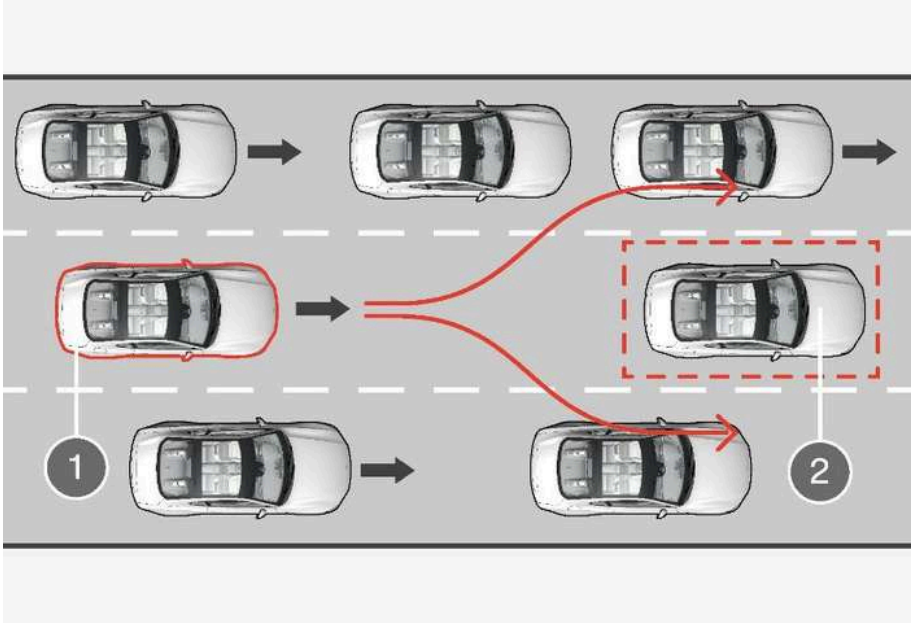
NOTE

The function uses the vehicle's camera and radar sensor, which has certain general limitations.

Automatic braking during delayed evasive maneuvers with City Safety

City Safety1 can assist the driver by automatically braking the vehicle when it is not possible to avoid a collision by steering alone.

City Safety assists the driver by periodically attempting to predict possible "escape routes" to the sides of the vehicle in the event a slow-moving or stationary vehicle were to be detected at a late stage.



Your vehicle (1) cannot detect any potential escape routes for veering away from the vehicle ahead (2) and may therefore apply the brakes at an earlier stage.

1	Own vehicle
2	Slow-moving/stationary vehicles

City Safety will not intervene to automatically apply the brakes if it is possible for the driver to avoid a collision by steering the vehicle.

However, if City Safety determines that an evasive maneuver would not be possible due to traffic in the adjacent lane(s), the function can assist the driver by automatically starting to apply the brakes at an earlier stage.

1 This function is not available on all markets.

Detecting obstacles with City Safety

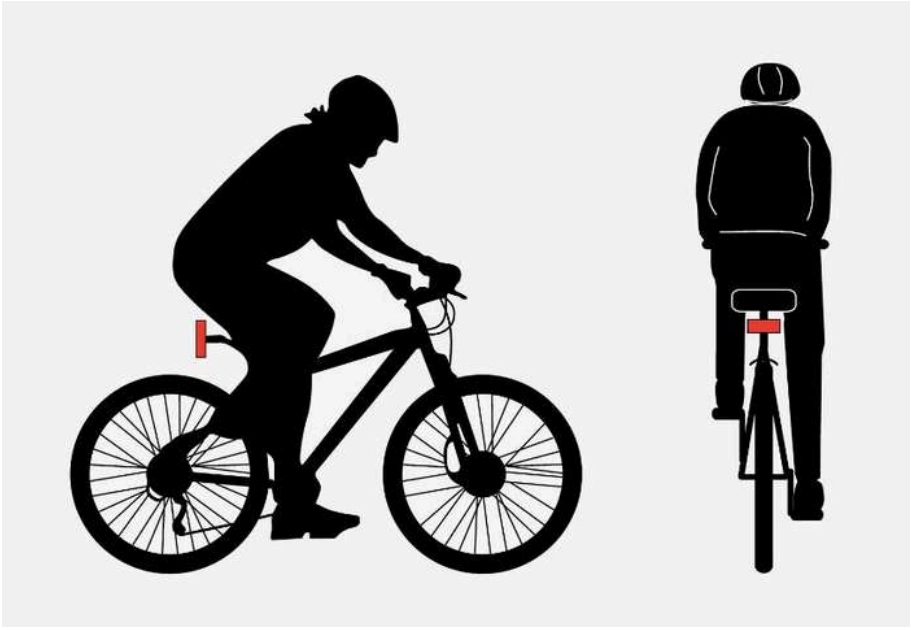
City Safety1 can help the driver detect other vehicles, cyclists, large animals and pedestrians.

Vehicles

City Safety can detect most vehicles that are stationary or are moving in the same direction as your vehicle. In some cases, it can also detect oncoming vehicles and crossing traffic.

For City Safety to be able to detect a vehicle in the dark, its headlights and taillights must be on and clearly visible.

Cyclists



Examples of what City Safety would interpret to be a cyclist: clear body and bicycle shapes.

For good performance, the system's function for cyclist detection needs the clearest possible information about the contours of the bicycle and of the cyclist's head, arm, shoulders, legs, torso and lower body in combination with normal human movements.

If large portions of the cyclist's body or the bicycle itself are not visible to the function's camera, it will not be able to detect a cyclist.

The system can only detect adult cyclists riding on bicycles intended for adults.

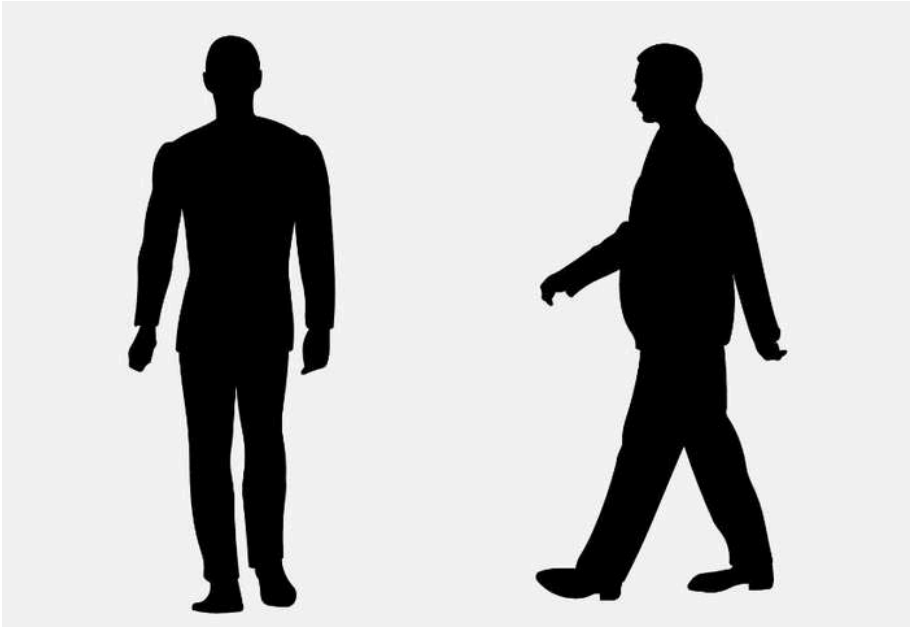
WARNING

City Safety is supplementary driver support, but it cannot detect all cyclists in all situations and, for example, cannot see:

- partially obscured cyclists.
- cyclists if there is poor contrast to the cyclist's background.
- cyclists in clothing that hides their body contour.
- bikes loaded with large objects.

In these cases, warnings and braking assistance may come later than usual or not at all. The driver is always responsible for ensuring that the vehicle is driven correctly and with a safety distance suitable for the speed.

Pedestrians



Examples of what the system considers to be a pedestrian: clear body contours.

For good performance, the system's function for pedestrian detection needs the clearest possible information about the contours of the pedestrian's head, arm, shoulders, legs, torso and lower body in combination with normal human movements.

In order to detect a pedestrian, there must be a contrast to the background, which could depend on clothing, weather conditions, etc. If there is little contrast, the person may be detected late or not at all, which may result in a delayed reaction from the system or no reaction at all.

City Safety can detect pedestrians even in dark conditions if they are illuminated by the vehicle's headlights.

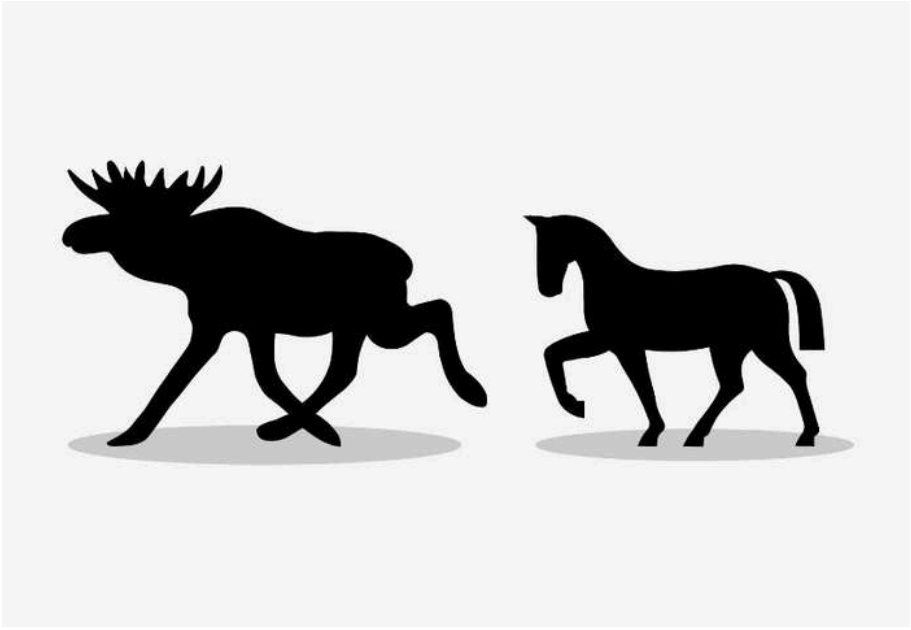
WARNING

City Safety is supplementary driver support, but it cannot detect all pedestrians in all situations and, for example, cannot see:

- partially obscured pedestrians, people in clothing that hides their body contour or pedestrians shorter than 80 cm (32 in.).
- pedestrians if there is poor contrast to the pedestrian's background.
- pedestrians who are carrying large objects.

In these cases, warnings and braking assistance may come later than usual or not at all. The driver is always responsible for ensuring that the vehicle is driven correctly and with a safety distance suitable for the speed.

Large animals



Examples of what City Safety would interpret as a large animal: stationary or moving slowly and with clear body contours.

For good performance, the system's function for detecting large animals (e.g. moose, horses, etc.) needs the clearest possible information about body contours. This entails being able to detect the animal straight from the side in combination with normal movements for that animal.

If parts of the animal's body are not visible to the function's camera, the system will not be able to detect the animal.

City Safety can detect large animals even in dark conditions if they are illuminated by the vehicle's headlights.

WARNING

City Safety is supplementary driver support, but it cannot detect all large animals in all situations and, for example, cannot see:

- partially obscured larger animals.
- larger animals seen from the front or from behind.
- running or fast moving larger animals.
- large animals if there is poor contrast to the animal's background.
- smaller animals such as cats and dogs.

In these cases, warnings and braking assistance may come later than usual or not at all. The driver is always responsible for ensuring that the vehicle is driven correctly and with a safety distance suitable for the speed.

1 This function is not available on all markets.

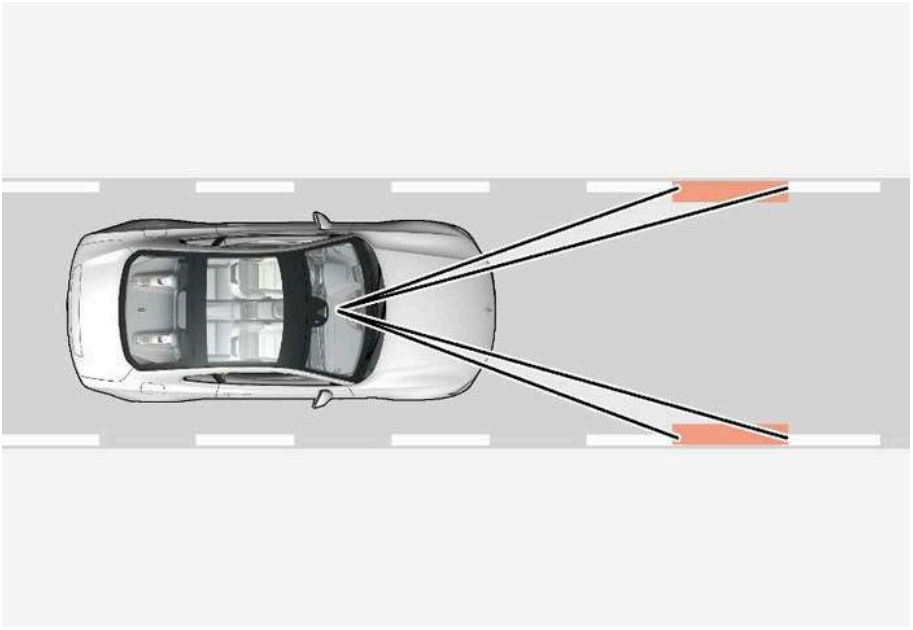
Driver Alert Control

Driver Alert Control

The Driver Alert Control (DAC) function is designed to help alert the driver to erratic behavior, e.g. if the driver is distracted or showing signs of fatigue.

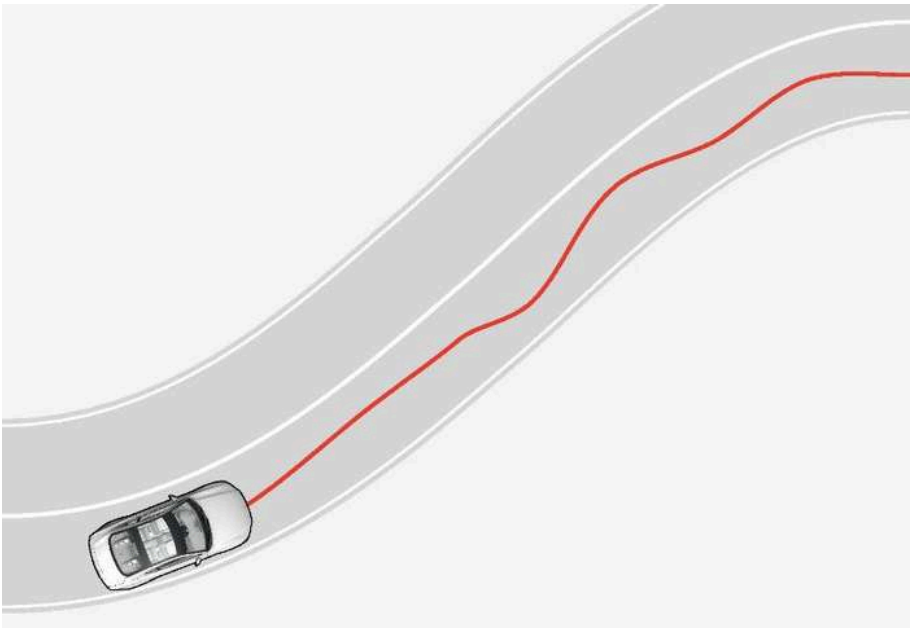
The objective of DAC is to detect slowly deteriorating driving behavior and is primarily intended to be used on major roads. The function is not intended for use in city traffic.

DAC is activated when the vehicle's speed exceeds 65 km/h (40 mph) and remains active as long as speeds are above 60 km/h (37 mph).



DAC detects the vehicle's position in the traffic lane.

A camera monitors the traffic lane's marker lines and compares the direction of the road with the driver's movements of the steering wheel.



The vehicle is moving erratically in the lane.



If driving behavior becomes considerably erratic, the driver will be alerted by this symbol in the instrument panel, an audible signal and the message Time for a break.

If the vehicle is equipped with Sensus Navigation and the Rest Stop Guidance function is activated, suggestions will also be provided for suitable places to take a break.

The warning will be repeated after a short time if driving behavior does not improve.

WARNING

Driver Alert Control must not be used to extend a period of driving. The driver should plan in breaks at regular intervals and make sure they are well rested.

WARNING

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and help make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Manual about this function to learn of its limitations, which the driver must be aware of before using the function.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgment. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the vehicle is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

WARNING

An alarm from Driver Alert Control should be taken very seriously since a sleepy driver is often not aware of their own condition.

If the alarm sounds or you feel fatigued:

- Stop the vehicle safely as soon as possible and rest.

Studies have shown that it is just as dangerous to drive while tired as it is to drive under the influence of alcohol or other stimulants.

Activating or deactivating Driver Alert Control

The Driver Alert Control (DAC) function can be activated or deactivated.
Tap Settings in the center display's Top view.
Select My Car → IntelliSafe → Driver Alert.
Select/deselect Alertness Warning to activate/deactivate the function.

Selecting guidance to a rest area if the Driver Alert Control warning has been given

In vehicles equipped with Sensus Navigation, the driver can activate a guide that can automatically suggest a suitable rest stop if the Driver Alert Control (DAC) warning is given.
The Rest Stop Guidance function can be switched on or off.

Tap Settings in the center display's Top view.
Select My Car → IntelliSafe → Driver Alert.
Select/deselect Rest Stop Guidance to activate/deactivate the function.

Driver Alert Control limitations

Driver Alert Control (DAC) functionality may be reduced in certain situations.
In certain situations, the system may provide a warning even if it has not detected a change in driving behavior, e.g.:

- in strong crosswinds
- on grooved road surfaces.

WARNING

In certain cases, driving behavior might not be affected despite the driver's fatigue – when using the Pilot Assist function – resulting in the driver not getting a warning from DAC.

It is therefore very important to always stop and take a break at the slightest sign of fatigue, regardless of whether the function has issued a warning or not.

NOTE

The function uses the vehicle's camera and radar sensor, which has certain general limitations.

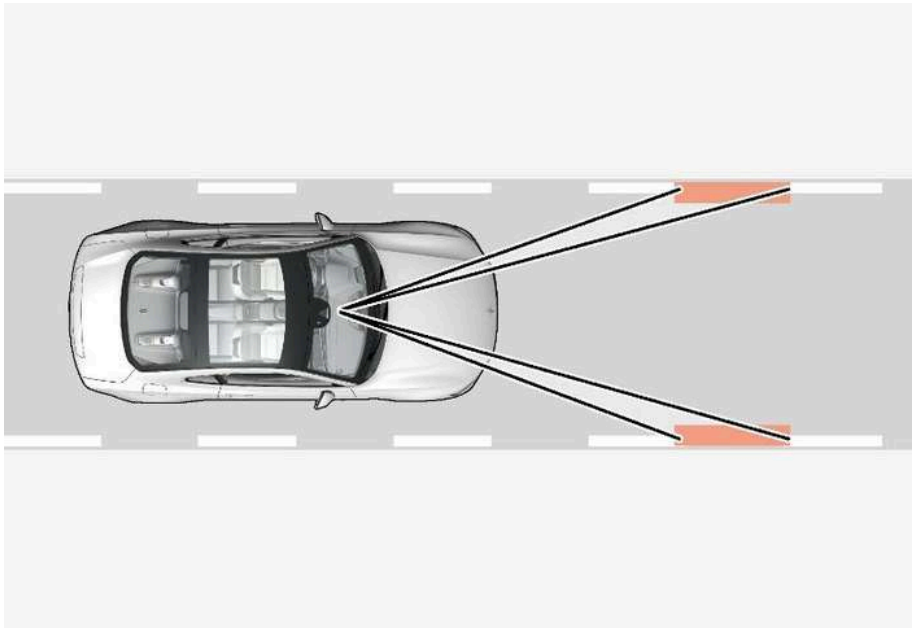
Lane Keeping Aid

Lane Keeping Aid

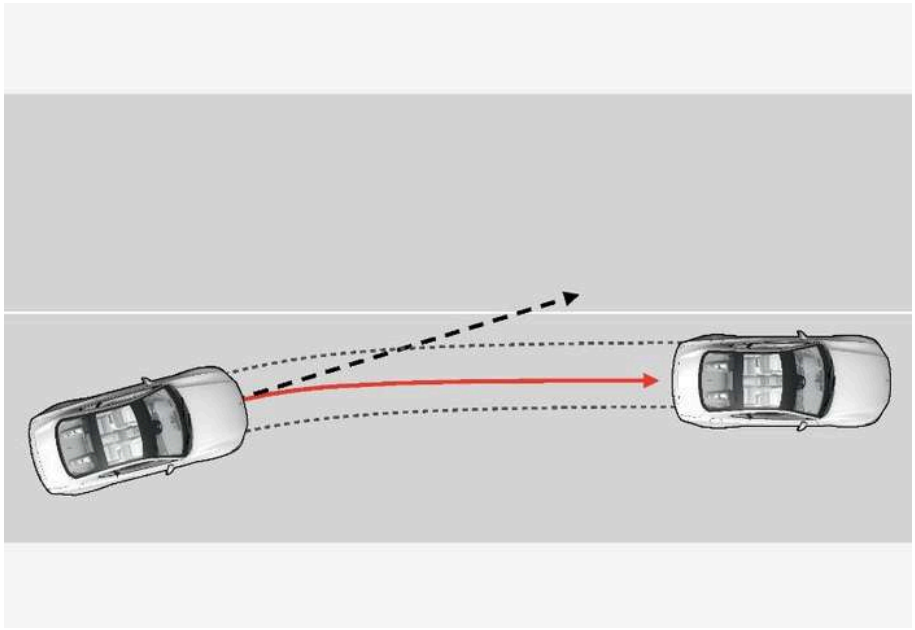
Lane Keeping Aid (LKA1) is designed to actively steer the vehicle on freeways, highways and other major roads to help the driver reduce the risk of the vehicle unintentionally veering out of the lane.
Lake Keeping Aid steers the vehicle back into the lane and/or alerts the driver using vibrations in the steering wheel.

Lane Keeping Aid is active at speeds between 65–200 km/h (40–125 mph) on roads with clearly visible traffic lane marker lines.

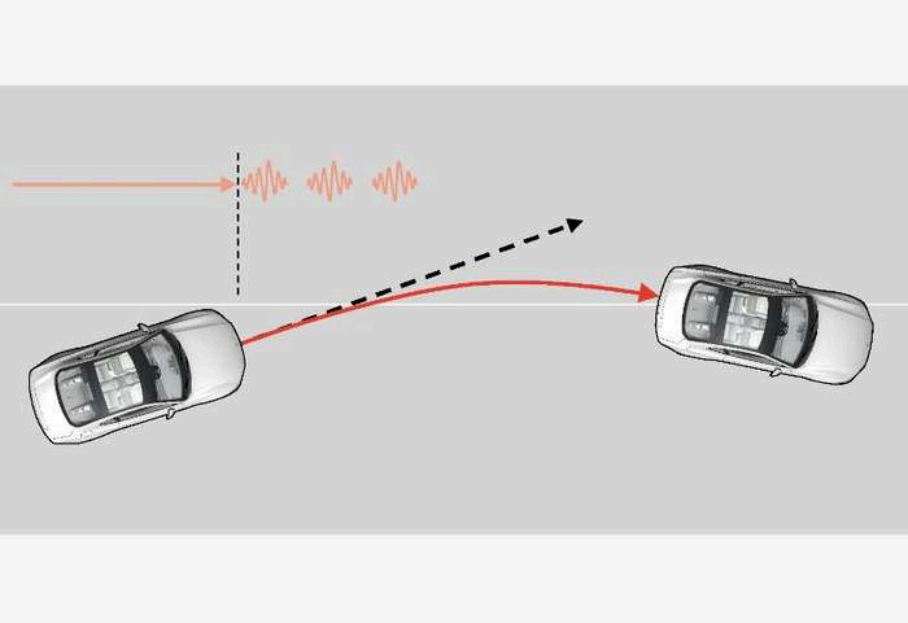
On narrow roads, the function may be unavailable and go into standby mode. The function will become available again when the road becomes sufficiently wide.



A camera monitors the road/traffic lane's marker lines.



Lane Keeping Aid steers the vehicle back into its lane.



Lane Keeping Aid alerts the driver using vibrations in the steering wheel.

Depending on the settings used, Lane Keeping Aid functions in different ways:

- Assist enabled: When the vehicle approaches a lane marker line, the function will actively steer the vehicle back into the lane using light pressure on the steering wheel.
- Warning enabled: If the vehicle is about to move over a lane marker line, the driver will be alerted by vibrations in the steering wheel.

You can also have steering assistance and alerts activated at the same time.

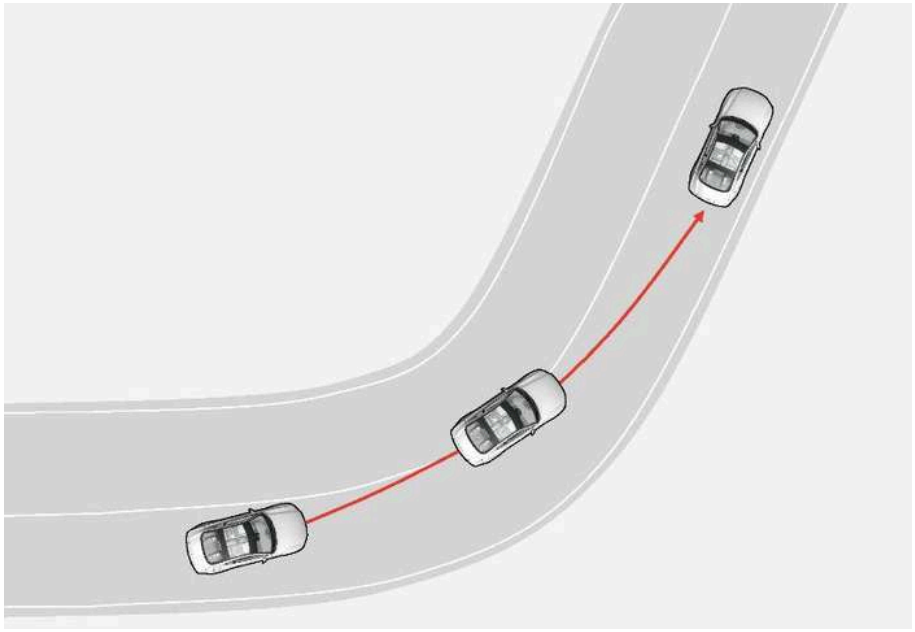
NOTE

When the direction indicators/turn signals are activated, the Lane Keeping Aid does not provide any warning or intervene with steering.

WARNING

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and help make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Manual about this function to learn of its limitations, which the driver must be aware of before using the function.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgment. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the vehicle is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

Lane Keeping Aid does not intervene



Lane Keeping Aid does not intervene in sharp inside curves.

In certain cases, such as when a turn signal is used or if the vehicle is allowed to straighten an inside curve, Lane Keeping Aid will not provide steering assistance or alerts.

Hands on the steering wheel

Steering assistance with Lane Keeping Aid only functions if the driver's hands are on the steering wheel, which the system continuously monitors.

If the driver's hands are not on the steering wheel, an audible signal will be given and a message will instruct the driver to actively steer the vehicle:

- Lane Keeping Aid – Apply steering

If the driver does not begin to steer the vehicle, the function will go into standby mode and this message will be displayed:

- Lane Keeping Aid – Standby until steering applied

The function will then be unavailable until the driver begins actively steering the vehicle again.

1 Lane Keeping Aid

Activating or deactivating Lane Keeping Aid

The Lane Keeping Aid (LKA1) function is optional – the driver can choose to have the function activated or deactivated.



Activate or deactivate the function using this button in the center display's Function view.

- GREEN button indicator light – the function is activated.
- GRAY button indicator light – the function is deactivated.

1 Lane Keeping Aid

Differences between Pilot Assist and Lane Keeping Aid

See Differences between Pilot Assist and Lane Keeping Aid.

Selecting type of assistance for Lane Keeping Aid

The driver can determine what types of assistance Lane Keeping Aid (LKA1) should provide if the vehicle veers from its lane.
Select Settings → My Car → IntelliSafe in the center display's Top view.
Under Lane Keeping Aid Mode, select what assistance the function should provide:

- Assist the driver will receive steering assistance but no warning.
- Warning – the driver is only warned through vibrations in the steering wheel.
- Both – the driver receives steering assistance and a warning through vibrations in the steering wheel.

1 Lane Keeping Aid

Lane Keeping Aid symbols and messages

See Lane Keeping Aid symbols and messages.

Lane Keeping Aid display

See Lane Keeping Aid display.

Lane Keeping Aid limitations

In certain demanding driving conditions, Lane Keeping Aid (LKA1) may not be able to properly assist the driver. In these situations, it is recommended that the function be deactivated.
Examples of such situations include:

- road work
- winter driving conditions
- poor road surfaces
- a very sporty driving style
- bad weather with reduced visibility
- roads with indistinct or no lane markings
- sharp edges or lines other than the lane's side markings
- when speed-dependent power steering wheel resistance is working at reduced power – e.g. during cooling due to overheating.

The function cannot detect barriers, railings or similar obstacles at the side of the lane.

> **NOTE**
> The function uses the vehicle's camera and radar sensor, which has certain general limitations.

1 Lane Keeping Aid

Steering assistance during collision risks

Steering assistance at risk of collision

The Collision avoidance assistance function can help the driver reduce the risk of the vehicle leaving its lane unintentionally and/or colliding with another vehicle or obstacle by actively steering the vehicle back into its lane and/or swerving.
The function consists of these sub-functions:

- Run-Off Mitigation with steering assistance
- Steering assistance during collision risks from oncoming traffic

After the system has automatically intervened, this text message will appear in the instrument panel:

Collision avoidance assistance – Automatic intervention

> **WARNING**
> - The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and help make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
> - The driver is advised to read all sections in the Manual about this function to learn of its limitations, which the driver must be aware of before using the function.
> - Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgment. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the vehicle is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

NOTE

It is always the driver who must decide how much the vehicle should be in control – the vehicle can never take command.

Activating or deactivating steering assistance during collision risks

The steering assistance function is optional – the driver can choose to have it activated or deactivated.



Activate or deactivate the function using this button in the center display's Function view.

- GREEN button indicator light – the function is activated.
- GRAY button indicator light – the function is deactivated.

The function is automatically activated each time the engine is started[1].

NOTE

When the Collision avoidance assistance function is deactivated, all subfunctions of the following are deactivated:

- Steering assistance at risk of run-off
- Steering assistance at risk of head-on collision

Although it is possible to deactivate the function, the driver is advised to keep it activated since it can help improve driving safety in most cases.

1 On some markets, the setting that was active when the engine was switched off is reactivated.

Symbols and messages for steering assistance during collision risks

See Symbols and messages for steering assistance during collision risks.

Steering assistance during collision risks limitations

The function may have limited functionality in certain situations and not intervene, e.g.:

- for smaller vehicles such as motorcycles

- if more than half of your vehicle has moved into the adjacent lane
- on roads/lanes with indistinct or no side lane markings
- outside the speed range 60-140 km/h (37-87 mph)
- when speed-dependent power steering wheel resistance is working at reduced power – e.g. during cooling due to overheating.

Functionality may also be reduced in other situations, such as:

- road work
- winter driving conditions
- narrow roads
- poor road surfaces
- a very sporty driving style
- bad weather with reduced visibility.

In these demanding driving conditions, the function may not be able to properly assist the driver. In these situations, it is recommended that it is turned off.

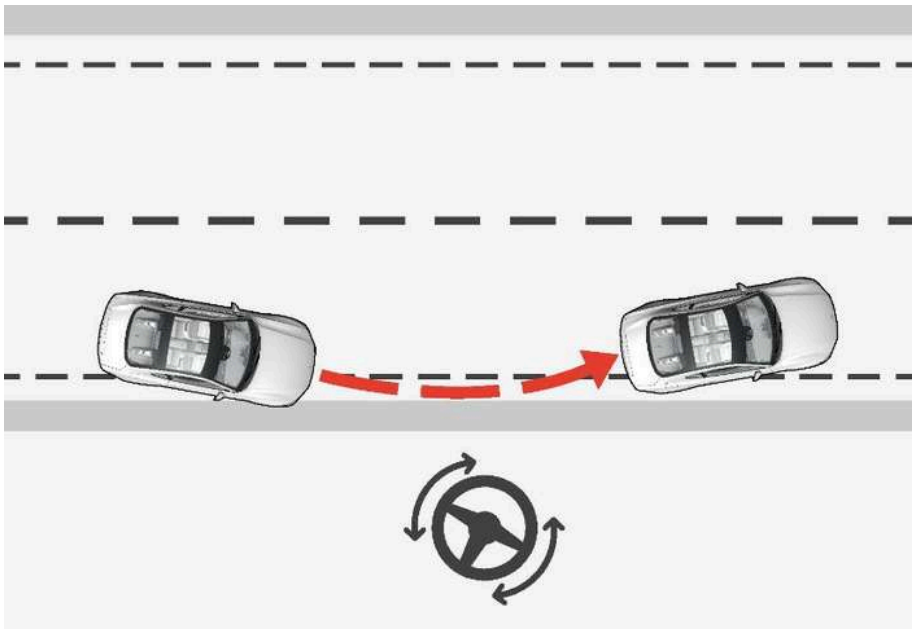
> **NOTE**
> The function uses the vehicle's camera and radar sensor, which has certain general limitations.

Run-Off Mitigation with steering assistance

Steering assistance has several sub-functions. Run-Off Mitigation with steering assistance can help the driver and reduce the risk of the vehicle inadvertently running off the road by actively steering the vehicle back onto the road. This function has two activation levels for intervention:

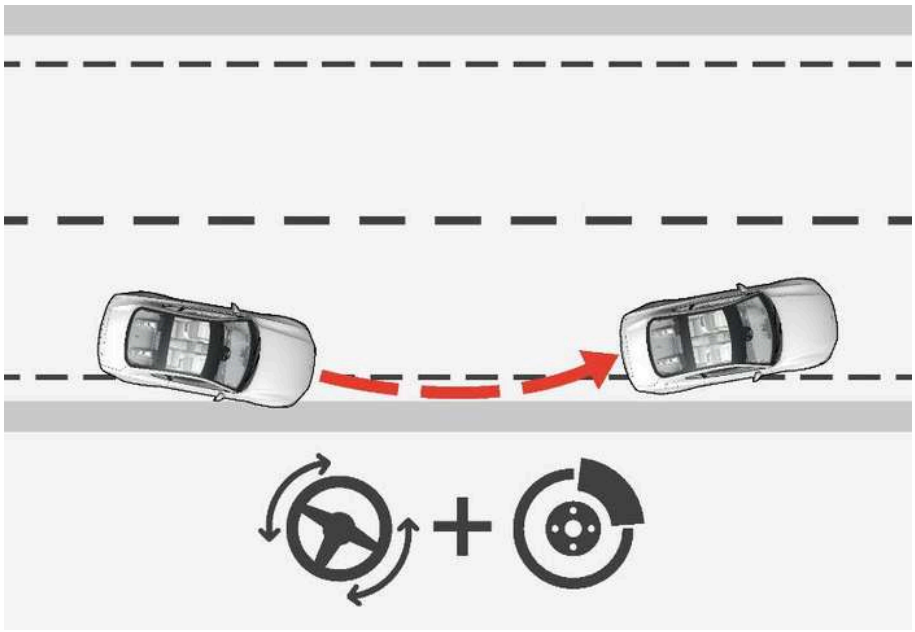
- Steering assistance only
- Steering assistance with braking

Steering assistance only



Intervention with steering assistance

Steering assistance with braking



Intervention with steering assistance and braking

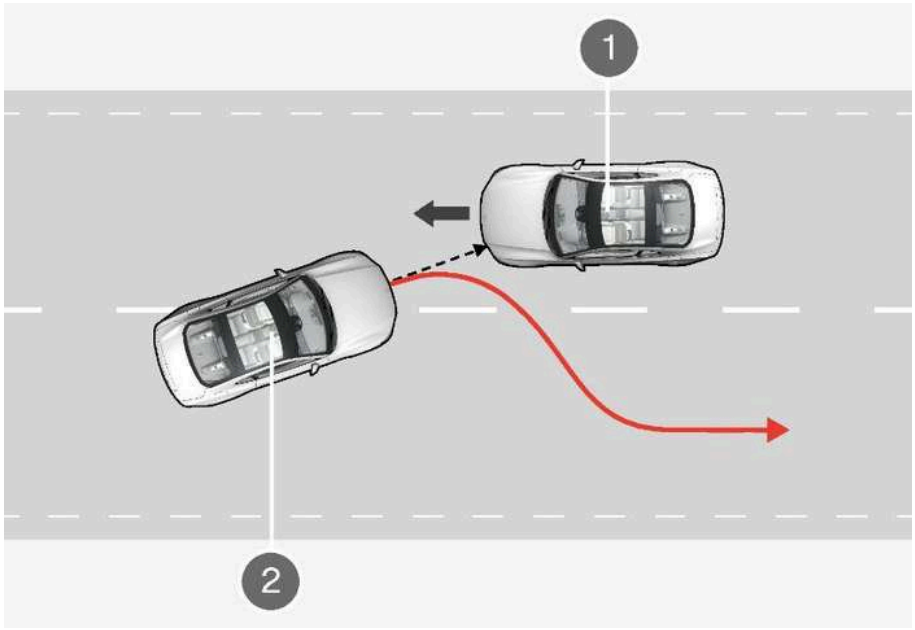
Braking intervention assists in situations where steering assistance alone is not sufficient. Braking force is automatically adapted according to the situation at the moment the vehicle begins to run off the road.
The function is active at speeds between 65-140 km/h (40-87 mph) on roads with clearly visible traffic lane markings/lines.

The system uses a camera to monitor the edges of the road and the painted side marker lines. If the vehicle is about to cross the edge of the road, the function will attempt to steer the vehicle back onto the road. If this is not sufficient to keep the vehicle on the road, the brakes will also be applied.

However, the function will **not** provide either steering assistance or braking if the turn signal is used. The function will also not be activated if it detects that the driver is actively operating the vehicle.

Steering assistance during collision risks from oncoming traffic

Steering assistance has several sub-functions. Steering assistance during collision risks from oncoming traffic can help a distracted driver who has not noticed that the vehicle is veering out of the lane.



The function provides assistance by swerving your vehicle back into your own lane.

1. Oncoming vehicles
2. Own vehicle

When steering assistance is activated, collision warning for driver support will also be activated. However, the brake pedal pulsations that are part of collision warning will not be activated.

The function is active at speeds between 60-140 km/h (37-87 mph) on roads with clearly visible traffic lane markings/lines.

If your vehicle is starting to veer from your own lane and a vehicle is approaching from the opposite direction, this function can help the driver steer the vehicle back into its own lane.

However, the function will **not** provide steering assistance if the turn signal is used. The function will also not be activated if it detects that the driver is actively operating the vehicle.

Electronic Stability Control

Electronic Stability Control

Electronic Stability Control

The Electronic Stability Control (ESC1) function helps the driver avoid skidding and improves the vehicle's directional stability.



This symbol will be displayed in the instrument panel when the system is intervening.

When the system has intervened to apply the brakes, a pulsing sound may be heard and the vehicle may accelerate more slowly than expected when the accelerator pedal is depressed.

The system consists of the following sub-functions:

- Stability control2
- Spin control and active yaw control
- Engine drag control

WARNING

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and help make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Manual about this function to learn of its limitations, which the driver must be aware of before using the function.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgment. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the vehicle is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

Stability control2

This function helps control the driving and braking force of each individual wheel in an attempt to stabilize the vehicle.

Spin control and active yaw control

This function is active at low speeds and brakes the wheels that are spinning to transfer additional power from wheels that are not spinning.

This function can also help prevent the wheels from spinning while the vehicle is accelerating.

Engine drag control

Engine drag control (EDC3) can help prevent inadvertent wheel lock, e.g. after downshifting or using engine braking when driving at low speeds on a slippery surface.

Inadvertent wheel lock while driving could impair the driver's ability to steer the vehicle.

1 Electronic Stability Control

2 Also called traction control.

3 Engine Drag Control

Electronic Stability Control symbols and messages

See Electronic Stability Control symbols and messages.

Electronic Stability Control in sport mode

The stability system (ESC1) is always activated and cannot be switched off. However, the driver can select ESC Sport Mode, which offers more active driving characteristics.
With the ESC Sport Mode sub-function selected, intervention from the system is reduced and more lateral movement is permitted, giving the driver more control of the vehicle than usual.

When ESC Sport Mode is selected, the function may seem to be disabled even though it continues to assist the driver.

ESC Sport Mode also helps provide more traction, even if the vehicle gets stuck or is driving on a loose surface such as deep snow or loose sand.

1 Electronic Stability Control

Activating or deactivating Sport mode for Electronic Stability Control

The stability system (ESC1) is always activated and cannot be switched off. However, the driver can select Sport mode, which offers more active driving characteristics.



Activate or deactivate the function using this button in the center display's Function view.

- GREEN button indicator light – the function is activated.
- GRAY button indicator light – the function is deactivated.



When ESC Sport Mode is activated, this symbol will illuminate with a steady glow in the instrument panel. It will remain on until the driver deactivates the function or until the engine is turned off. The system will return to normal mode the next time the engine is started.

The ESC Sport Mode function cannot be selected when any of the following functions are activated:

- Cruise control
- Adaptive Cruise Control*
- Pilot Assist*

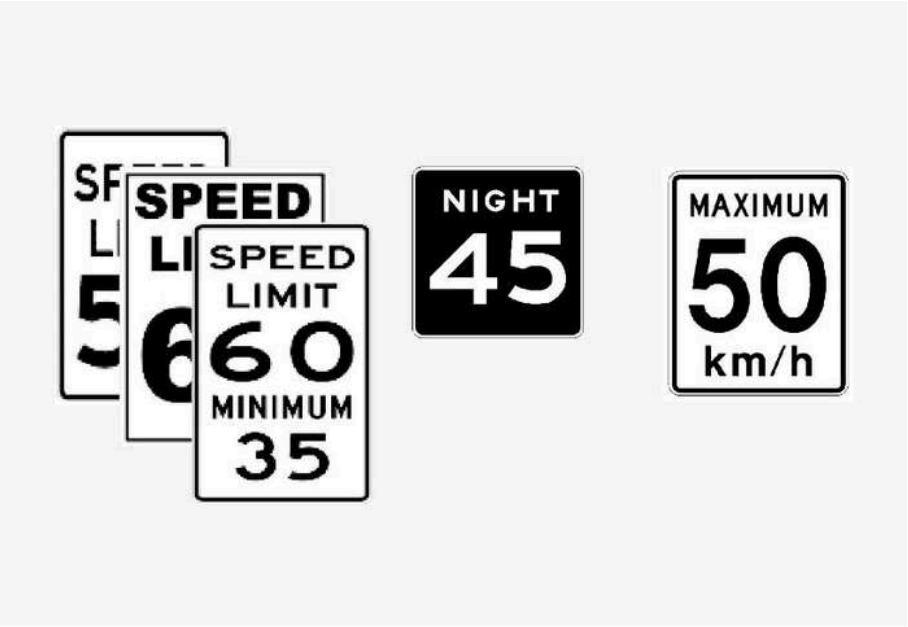
1 Electronic Stability Control

***** Option/accessory.

Road Sign Information

Traffic sign information

The Road Sign Information (RSI[1]) function can help the driver observe speed-related road signs.



Examples of signs that can be detected[2].

If the vehicle passes a speed limit sign, it will be displayed in the instrument panel and the head-up display.

There are also sub-functions for Road Sign Information (RSI[1]) that can alert the driver if the speed limit has been exceeded or if there are speed cameras nearby.

> **NOTE**
> In certain markets, the Road Sign Information function is only available in combination with Sensus Navigation.

> **WARNING**
> - The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and help make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
> - The driver is advised to read all sections in the Manual about this function to learn of its limitations, which the driver must be aware of before using the function.
> - Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgment. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the vehicle is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

1 Road Sign Information

2 Road signs differ according to market – the illustrations shown here are just some examples.

Road Sign Information and Sensus Navigation

If the vehicle is equipped with Sensus Navigation, speed-related information will be provided in the following situations:

- In cases where the speed limit is given indirectly, e.g. signs for highways or other major roads.
- If a previously detected speed sign is deemed to be no longer valid and no new sign has been passed.

NOTE

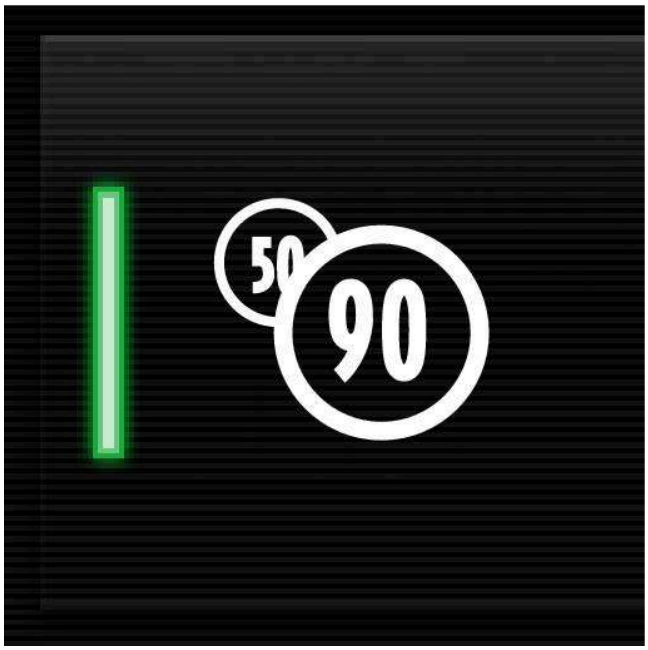
In certain markets, the Road Sign Information function is only available in combination with Sensus Navigation.

NOTE

If a downloaded third-party app is used for navigation, there is no support for speed-related information.

Activating or deactivating Road Sign Information

The Road Sign Information (RSI1) function is optional – the driver can choose to have the function activated or deactivated.



Activate or deactivate the function using this button in the center display's Function view.

- GREEN button indicator light – the function is activated.
- GRAY button indicator light – the function is deactivated.

1 RSI: Road Sign Information.

Road Sign Information limitations

Road Sign Information (RSI1) functionality may be reduced in certain situations.
The function could have reduced functionality due to e.g.:

- faded road signs
- signs located in a curve in the road
- twisted or damaged signs
- signs positioned high above the road
- fully/partially obstructed or poorly positioned signs
- signs partially or fully covered by frost, snow and/or dirt
- digital road maps2 that are outdated, incorrect or do not contain speed information3

NOTE

In certain markets, the Road Sign Information function is only available in combination with Sensus Navigation.

NOTE

The function uses the vehicle's camera and radar sensor, which has certain general limitations.

1 Road Sign Information

2 Vehicles equipped with Sensus Navigation.

3 Map data and speed information is not available for all areas.

Speed limit and speed camera warnings from Road Sign Information

There are sub-functions for Road Sign Information (RSI1) that can alert the driver if the speed limit has been exceeded or if there are speed cameras nearby.



Example of speed camera and speed limit information in the instrument panel

Speed limit warning



When Speed Warning is activated, the symbol for the current speed limit in the instrument panel2 will flash temporarily if that speed is exceeded.

The driver can be alerted if the vehicle is exceeding a detected speed limit and is approaching a speed camera.

Speed Limit Warning warns the driver if the vehicle has exceeded the applicable speed limit or the stored maximum speed. The warning will be repeated once after about 1 minute in that speed limit area if the driver does not slow down.

A new warning and message indicating that the speed limit has been exceeded will be provided only when the vehicle has entered a new/different speed limit area.

> **NOTE**
> For an audible alert to be provided if the speed is exceeded, the Speed Limit Warning function must be activated and the Road Sign Audio Warning sub-function must be **On**. Audible alerts are provided if the vehicle's speed exceeds the speed displayed by Road Sign Information in the instrument panel.

Speed camera warning



Vehicles equipped with Road Sign Information and Sensus Navigation can provide information on upcoming speed cameras in the instrument panel[3]

If the vehicle exceeds a detected speed limit with the Speed Limit Warning function activated, the driver is given a speed warning when the vehicle is approaching a speed camera if the navigation map for the vehicle's current location contains information on speed cameras.

> **NOTE**
> It is possible to receive an audible alert for speed cameras regardless of the vehicle's speed, whether or not the speed limit is exceeded, and even if the Road Sign Audio Warning function is deactivated.

1 Road Sign Information

2 Road signs differ by market – the illustration shown here is just an example.

3 Information on speed cameras on the navigation map is not available for all markets/areas.

Activating or deactivating warnings from Road Sign Information

The Road Sign Information (RSI[1]) sub-function Speed Limit Warning is optional – the driver can choose to have the sub-function activated or deactivated.

Activating Speed Warning

Select Settings → My Car → IntelliSafe → Road Sign Information in the center display's Top view.
Select Speed Limit Warning.
The function is activated and a speed limit selector is displayed.

Adjusting the Speed Warning limit

The driver can adjust the settings to be alerted at a higher speed than the posted speed limit.

Select Settings → My Car → IntelliSafe → Road Sign Information in the center display's Top view.
Select Speed Limit Warning.
The function is activated and a speed limit selector is displayed.
Tap the up/down arrows on the screen to adjust the speed at which the Speed Warning will be given.



Please note that the set warning limit will not be used when a speed camera symbol is displayed in the instrument panel.

Activating audible alert for Speed Warning

Select Settings → My Car → IntelliSafe → Road Sign Information in the center display's Top view.
Select/deselect Road Sign Audio Warning to activate/deactivate the audible alert.
When Road Sign Audio Warning is activated, the driver will also be alerted if the vehicle is approaching a one-way/"no-entry" road or entrance.

Activating speed camera alert

If the vehicle is equipped with Sensus Navigation and map data contains information on speed cameras, the driver can choose to receive an audible alert if the vehicle is approaching a speed camera.

Select Settings → My Car → IntelliSafe → Road Sign Information in the center display's Top view.
Select/deselect Speed Camera Audio Warning to activate/deactivate the speed camera audible alert.

1 Road Sign Information

Road Sign Information display

Road Sign Information (RSI1) displays road signs in different ways depending on the sign and situation.



Example2 of registered speed information.

When the function has registered a speed limit sign, the sign will be displayed as a symbol in the instrument panel and a colored marking will be shown in the speedometer's speed scale.

If the vehicle is equipped with Sensus Navigation, speed-related information will also be retrieved from map data, which means that the instrument panel can display or change information about speed limits even if the vehicle has not passed a speed-related sign.

Signs for "School" and "Children playing"



If the warning sign "School" or "Children playing" is included in the satellite navigator's map data3, a symbol of this type will be displayed in the instrument panel.

1 Road Sign Information

2 Road signs differ according to market – the illustrations shown here are just examples.

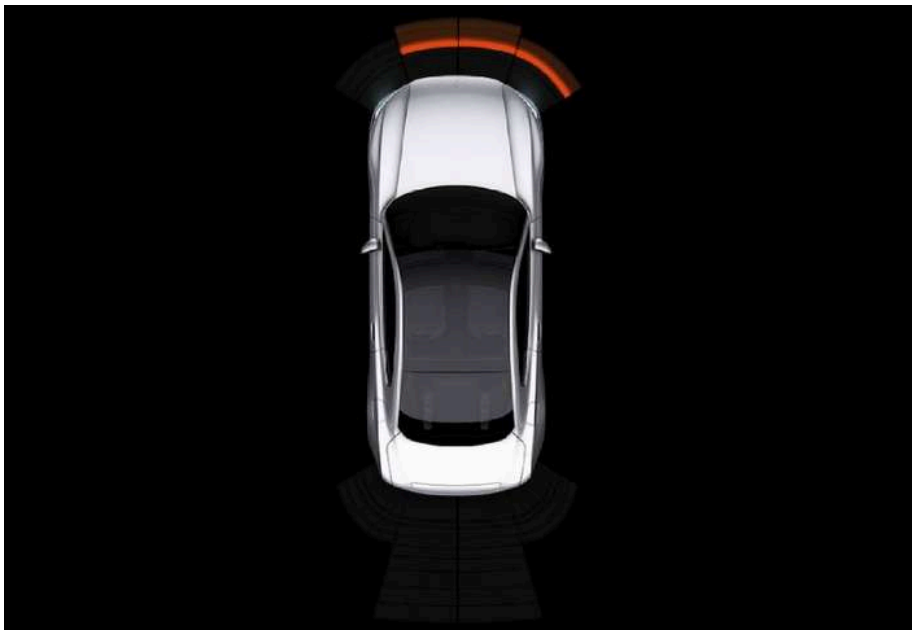
3 Only vehicles with Sensus Navigation.

Parking functions

Parking Assist

Park Assist System

The Park Assist (PAS1) function uses sensors to help the driver when maneuvering in tight spaces by indicating distances to obstacles using audible signals and graphics in the center display.



Display view showing obstacle zones and sensor sectors.

The center display shows an overview of the vehicle in relation to objects that have been detected.

The marked sector indicates where the obstacle is located. The closer the vehicle symbol is to a marked sector forward/rearward, the closer the detected obstacle is to your vehicle.

The side sectors change color as the distance between the vehicle and an object decreases.

The audible signals will also speed up the closer the obstacle is to the vehicle. The volume of the audio system will be automatically lowered.

Audible signals for obstacles in front and to the sides of the vehicle are active when the vehicle is moving but will cease after the vehicle has been stationary for approx. 2 seconds. Audible signals for obstacles behind the vehicle will remain active even when the vehicle is stationary.

If a detected obstacle is within approx. 30 cm (1 ft) from the front or rear of the vehicle, the tone will become constant and the active sensor's field closest to the vehicle symbol will be filled in.

At distances within approx. 25 cm (0.8 ft) from an obstacle to the sides of the vehicle, an rapid pulsing signal will be given and the active sector fields will change color from ORANGE to RED.

The volume of the Park Assist audible signals can be adjusted while the signal is being given using the >II knob or in the center display's Top view under Settings.

> **NOTE**
> Besides in the sector closest to the vehicle symbol, audible warnings are only provided for objects located directly in the vehicle's path.

WARNING

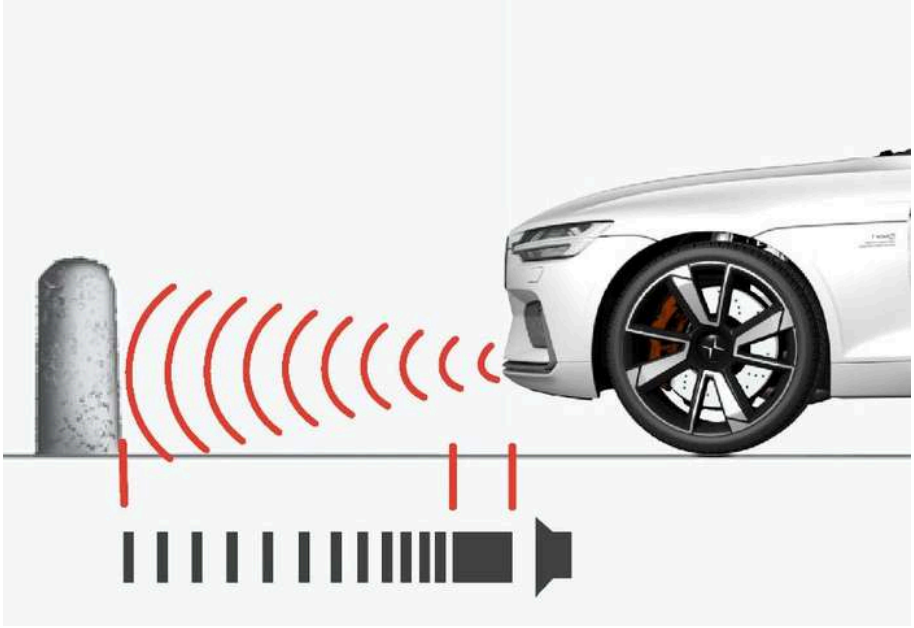
- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and help make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Manual about this function to learn of its limitations, which the driver must be aware of before using the function.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgment. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the vehicle is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

1 Park Assist System

Park Assist system front and back

Park Assist (PAS1) behaves differently depending on which part of the vehicle is approaching an obstacle.

Front camera



The warning signal has a continuous tone when the obstacle is less than approx. 30 cm (1 ft) from the vehicle.

The Park Assist system's front sensors are automatically activated when the engine is started. They are active at speeds below 10 km/h (6 mph).

The distance monitored extends approx. 80 cm (2.5 ft) in front of the vehicle.

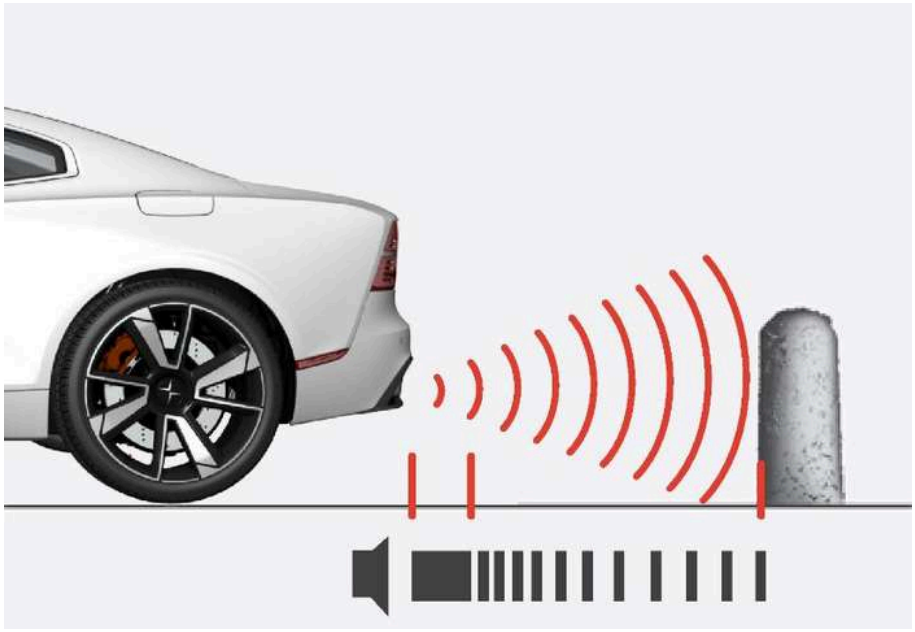
NOTE

The Park Assist system is deactivated when the parking brake is used or when **P** is selected on vehicles with automatic transmission.

IMPORTANT

When installing auxiliary lights: Make sure these do not obscure the sensors – the auxiliary lights could be perceived as an obstacle.

Back



The warning signal has a continuous tone when the obstacle is less than approx. 30 cm (1 ft) from the vehicle.

The rear sensors will be activated if the vehicle begins rolling backward or if reverse gear is engaged.

The distance monitored extends approx. 1.5 meters (5 ft) behind the vehicle.

1 Park Assist System

Activating or deactivating Park Assist

The Park Assist (PAS1) function can be activated or deactivated.
Park Assist's front and side sensors are automatically activated when the engine is started. The rear sensors are activated if the vehicle is moving backward or reverse gear is engaged.



Activate or deactivate the function using this button in the center display's Function view.

- GREEN button indicator light – the function is activated.

- GRAY button indicator light – the function is deactivated.

In vehicles equipped with Park Assist Camera, Park Assist can also be activated or deactivated from the relevant camera view.

1 Park Assist System

Park Assist symbols and messages

See Park Assist symbols and messages.

Park Assist limitations

Park Assist (PAS1) may not be able to detect all conditions in all situations and functionality may therefore be limited in certain cases.

The driver should be aware of the following limitations for Park Assist.

WARNING

- The parking sensors have dead/blind spots where objects cannot be detected.
- Pay particular attention to people and animals near the vehicle.
- Bear in mind that the front end of the vehicle may swing out towards oncoming traffic during the parking maneuver.

IMPORTANT

Objects such as chains, thin and glossy poles or low obstacles may end up in the "signal shadow" and then go temporarily undetected by the sensors – the pulsating tone may then unexpectedly stop instead of becoming a constant tone as expected.

The sensors cannot detect high objects, such as protruding ramps.

- In such situations, pay extra attention and maneuver/drive the vehicle very slowly or stop the current parking maneuver – there may be a high risk of damage to the vehicle or other objects since information from the sensors is not always reliable in such situations.

IMPORTANT

In some circumstances, the Park Assist System may produce false warnings due to external sound sources with the same ultrasonic frequencies as those the system works with.

Examples of such sources are horns, wet tires on asphalt, pneumatic brakes, exhaust noise from motorcycles, etc.

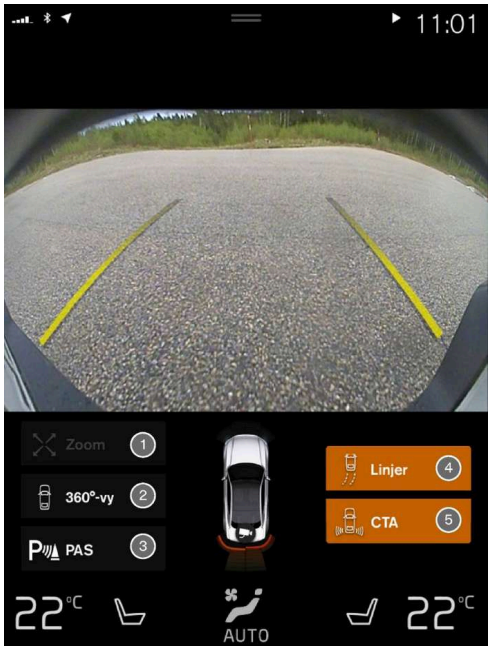
1 Park Assist System

Park Assist Camera

Park assist camera

The Park Assist Camera (PAC1) can help the driver when maneuvering in tight spaces by alerting the driver to obstacles using the camera screen and graphics in the center display.

The Park Assist Camera is a support function that is automatically activated when reverse gear is engaged. It can also be started manually from the center display.



Example camera view

1. Zoom2 - zoom in/out
2. 360° view - activate/deactivate all cameras
3. PAS3 – activates/deactivates Park Assist sensors
4. Lines - activate/deactivate trajectory lines

5. CTA* - activate/deactivate Cross Traffic Alert

Objects/obstacles may be closer to the vehicle than they appear on the display.

WARNING

- The parking sensors have dead/blind spots where objects cannot be detected.
- Pay particular attention to people and animals near the vehicle.
- Bear in mind that the front end of the vehicle may swing out towards oncoming traffic during the parking maneuver.

WARNING

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and help make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Manual about this function to learn of its limitations, which the driver must be aware of before using the function.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgment. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the vehicle is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

1 Park Assist Camera

2 The trajectory lines will not be displayed when zooming in.

3 Park Assist System

***** Option/accessory.

Activating Park Assist Camera

The Park Assist Cameras (PAC1) are automatically activated when reverse gear is engaged or can be started manually using one of the center display's function buttons.

Camera view when backing up

When reverse gear is engaged, the screen shows the rear view2.

Camera view when manually activating the camera



Activate the Park Assist Camera using this button in the center display's Function view.

The screen will first show the most recently used camera view. However, each time the engine is started, the previous side view will be replaced by the 360° view and a previously displayed zoomed-in rear view will be replaced by the regular rear view.

- GREEN button indicator light – the function is activated.
- GRAY button indicator light – the function is deactivated.

Automatically deactivating the camera

Front view switches off when the vehicle's speed reaches 25 km/h (16 mph) to help avoid distracting the driver. It will be automatically reactivated if the vehicle's speed falls below 22 km/h (14 mph) within 1 minute as long as the vehicle's speed has not exceeded 50 km/h (31 mph).

Other camera views switch off at 15 km/h (9 mph) and are not reactivated.

1 Park Assist Camera

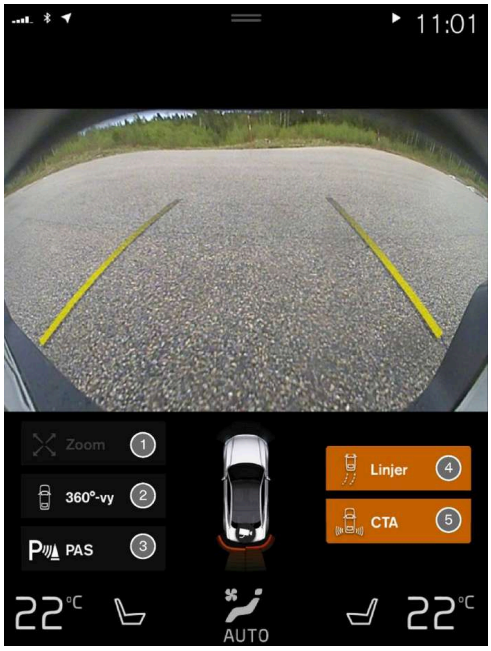
2 For the Canadian market, there is also the option of choosing 360° view. For the US market, rear view is standard and cannot be changed.

Park Assist Camera symbols and messages

See Park Assist Camera symbols and messages.

Park Assist Camera trajectory lines

The Park Assist Cameras (PAC1) use trajectory lines and fields on the screen to indicate the vehicle's position in relation to its immediate surroundings.



Example of trajectory lines

The trajectory lines show the anticipated trajectory for the vehicle's outermost dimensions based on the current position of the steering wheel and can help simplify parallel parking and backing into tight spaces.

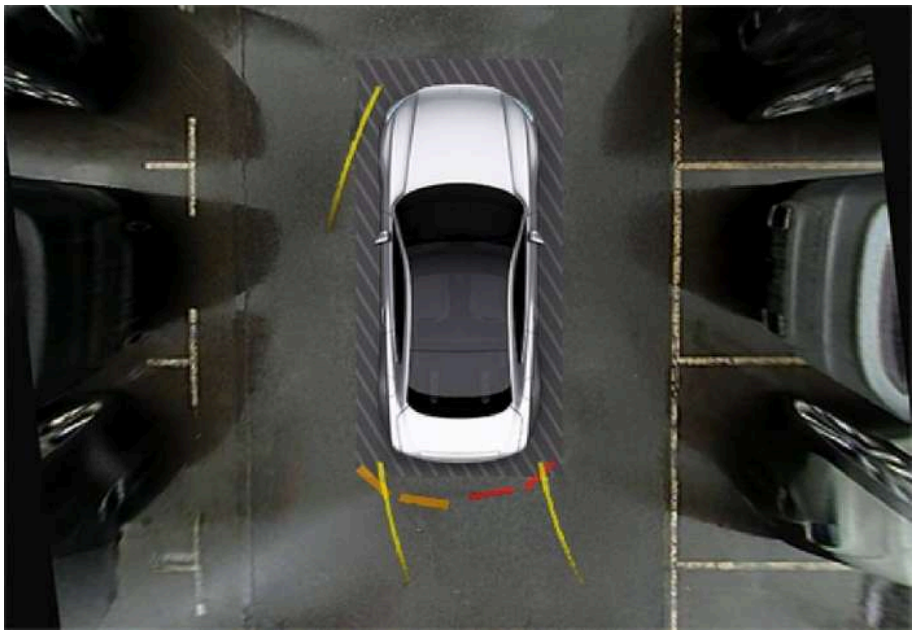
The lines on the screen are projected as if they were painted lines on the ground behind the vehicle and are directly affected by the way in which the steering wheel is turned. This makes it possible for the driver to see path the vehicle will take, even if he/she turns the steering wheel.

These lines also indicate the outermost limits that any object (rearview mirrors, corners of the body, etc.) extends out from the vehicle.

IMPORTANT

- Bear in mind that when the rearward camera view is selected, the screen only shows the area behind the vehicle – pay attention to the sides and front of the vehicle when steering while reversing.
- The same applies to the reverse – pay attention to what is happening with the rear parts of the vehicle when the front camera view is selected.
- Note that the guide lines show the **shortest** path – pay extra attention to ensure that the vehicle sides do not come in contact with/travel over anything when steering while driving forward or that the vehicle front moves toward/over anything when steering while backing up.

Trajectory lines in 360° view



360° view with trajectory lines

In the 360° view, trajectory lines are shown behind, in front of, or to the sides of the vehicle, depending on the direction of travel.

- When driving forward: Front lines
- When backing up: Side lines and rear lines

When the front or rear camera is selected, the trajectory lines will be shown regardless of the vehicle's direction of travel.

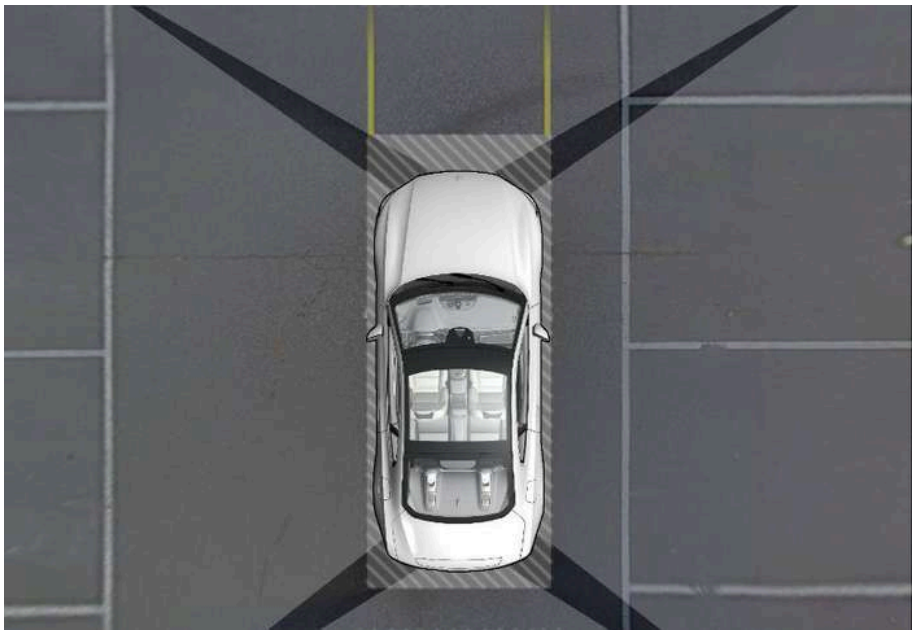
With a side camera selected, the trajectory lines will only be shown if the vehicle is backing up.

1 Park Assist Camera

Location and field of vision of Park Assist Cameras

The Park Assist Cameras (PAC1) can display a 360° panoramic view as well as separate views for each of the other cameras: rear, front, left and right.

360° view



The location of the cameras and their approximate fields of vision.

The 360° view function activates all Park Assist Cameras and all four sides of the vehicle are shown in the center display at once to help the driver see what is around the vehicle while maneuvering at low speeds.

From the 360° view, each camera view can be activated separately:

- Tap the screen to select the camera's field of vision, e.g. in the area in front/above the front camera.



The active cameras will be indicated by a camera symbol on the vehicle symbol in the center display.

If the vehicle is equipped with Park Assist System, the distance to detected obstacles will be illustrated by fields in different colors.

The cameras can be activated automatically or manually.

Back

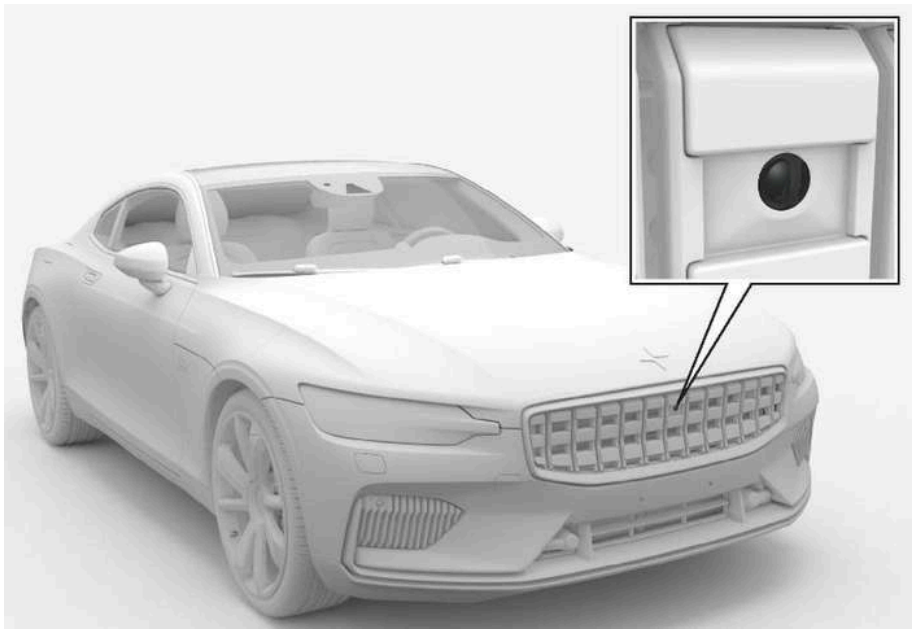


The rear camera is located above the license plate.

The rear camera shows a wide area behind the vehicle. Even part of the bumper may be visible.

Objects on the center display may appear to be leaning slightly. This is normal.

Front camera

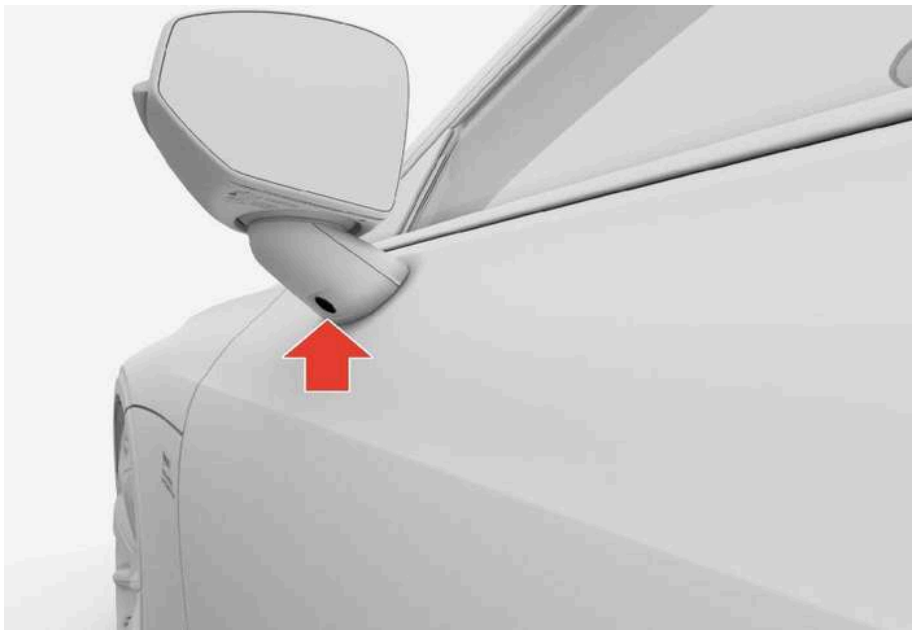


The front Park Assist Camera is located in the grille.

The front camera can be useful when pulling out from areas with limited visibility to the sides, e.g. when pulling out of a garage. The front camera is active at speeds up to 25 km/h (16 mph) and is automatically turned off when the vehicle exceeds this speed.

If the vehicle does not reach a speed of 50 km/h (30 mph) and speed falls below 22 km/h (14 mph) within 1 minute after the front camera turns off, the camera will be reactivated.

Side cameras



The side cameras are located in the rearview mirrors.

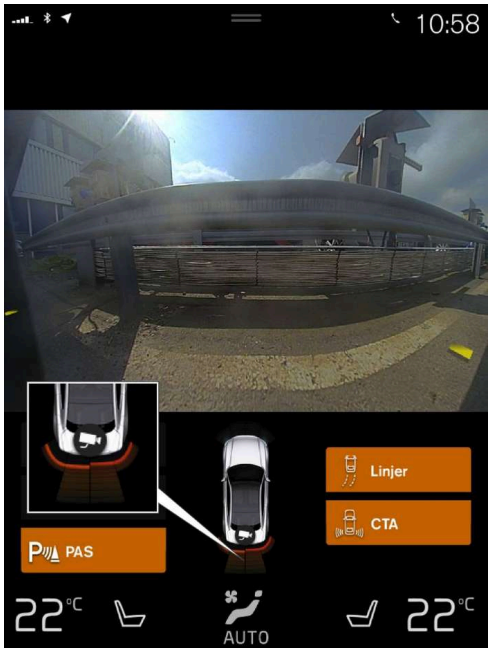
The side cameras can show views along each side of the vehicle.

1 Park Assist Camera

Park Assist sensor field

If the vehicle is equipped with Park Assist (PAS1), distances will be shown in the Park Assist Cameras' (PAC2) 360° view with colored fields for each sensor that has detected an obstacle.

Front and rear sensors



The screen can display colored sensor fields on the vehicle symbol.

The front and rear fields change colors (from YELLOW to ORANGE to RED) as the vehicle moves

closer to an obstacle.

Field color rearward	Distance in meters (feet)
Yellow	0.6-1.5 (2.0-4.9)
Orange	0.3–0.6 (1.0–2.0)
Red	0-0.3 (0-1.0)

Field color forward	Distance in meters (feet)
Yellow	0.6–0.8 (2.0–2.6)
Orange	0.3–0.6 (1.0–2.0)
Red	0-0.3 (0-1.0)

When the sensor field color is red, the audible pulsing sounds will change to a continuous tone.

1 Park Assist System

2 Park Assist Camera

Camera and radar sensor

Recommended camera and radar sensor maintenance

In order for the camera and radar sensors to function properly, they must be kept free of dirt, ice, snow, etc. and should be washed regularly with water and car washing detergent.

> **NOTE**
>
> Dirt, ice and snow covering the sensors could cause false warnings, reduced function, or no function.



Location of the Park Assist sensors



Location of rear radar sensors. Keep the marked area clean (on both the left and right sides of the vehicle).

- For best possible performance, it is important to keep the areas in front of the sensors clean.
- Do not attach any objects, tape or decals to the surface of the sensors.
- Clean the camera lenses regularly using lukewarm water and car washing detergent. Wash gently to avoid scratching the lens.

IMPORTANT

Only a workshop may perform maintenance on driver support components – contact Polestar Customer Support.

Camera/radar unit symbols and messages

Here are examples of some of the messages and symbols related to the camera and radar unit that may be displayed in the instrument panel.

Sensor blocked

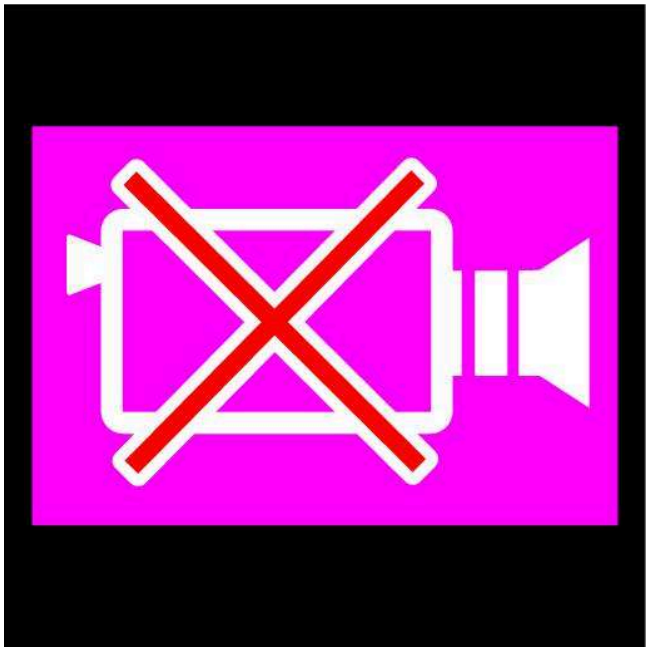


If this symbol and the message Windscreen sensorSensor blocked, see Manual is displayed in the instrument panel, it means that the camera and radar sensor are unable to detect other vehicles, cyclists, pedestrians and large animals in front of the vehicle and that the vehicle's camera and radar-based functions may be obstructed.

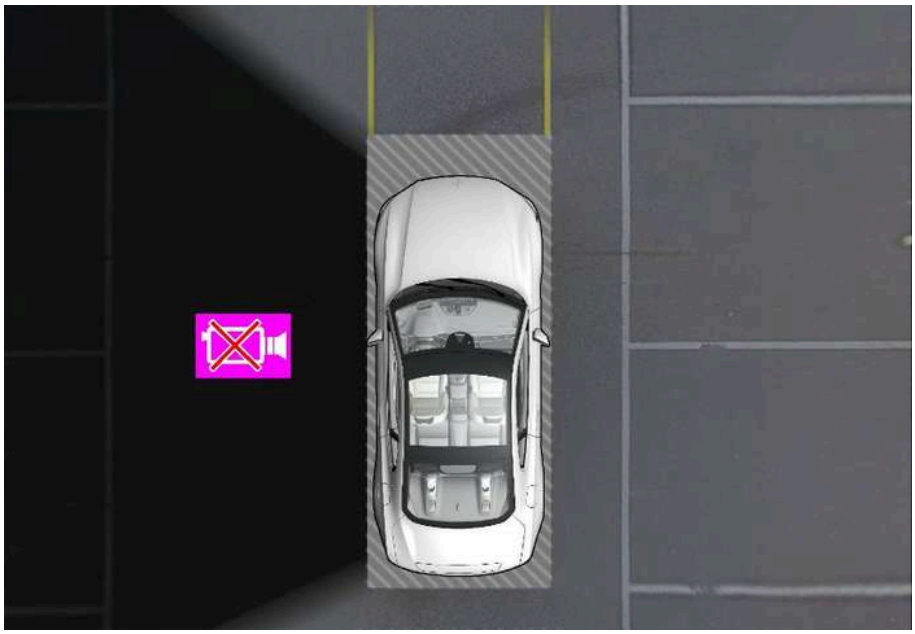
The following table shows some of the situations that can cause the message to be displayed, and suggested actions:

Cause	Action
The area of the windshield in front of the camera/radar sensor is dirty or covered by ice or snow.	Clean the windshield in front of the camera/radar sensor and remove dirt, ice and snow.
Thick fog, heavy rain or snow is blocking the radar signals or the camera's range of visibility.	No action. Heavy precipitation may sometimes prevent the camera/radar sensor from functioning.
Water or snow is spraying/swirling up and blocking the radar signals or the camera's range of visibility.	No action. Very wet or snow-covered roads may sometimes prevent the camera/radar sensor from functioning.
There is dirt between the inside of the windshield and the camera/radar sensor.	The windshield on the inside of the camera casing needs to be cleaned – contact Polestar Customer Support.
Bright sunlight.	No action. The camera/radar sensor will reset automatically when lighting conditions improve.

Defective camera



If a camera sector is dark and contains this symbol, this indicates that the camera is not functioning properly.



The vehicle's left-side camera is malfunctioning.

A dark camera sector may also be displayed in the following situations, but **without** the defective camera symbol:

- a door is open
- the trunk lid is open
- a rearview mirror is folded in

Camera/radar sensor limitations

The camera and radar sensor used by several of the driver support functions has certain limitations, which also affect the functions using the camera and radar sensor. The driver should be aware of the following limitations:

Camera and radar sensor limitations

Obstructed camera



The area marked in the illustration must be cleaned regularly and kept free of decals, objects, solar film, etc.

The camera is located on the upper interior section of the windshield along with the radar sensor.

Do not place, affix or mount anything on the inside or outside of the windshield, or in front of or around the camera and radar sensor – this could disrupt camera and radar-based functions. It could cause functions to be reduced, deactivated completely or to produce an incorrect function response.

High temperatures

If the temperature in the passenger compartment is very high, the camera/radar sensor will switch off temporarily for approx. 15 minutes after the engine is started to protect its electronic components. When the temperature has cooled sufficiently, the camera/radar sensor will automatically restart.

Damaged windshield

> **NOTE**
> Failure to take action could result in reduced performance for the driver support systems that use the camera and radar unit. It could cause functions to be reduced, deactivated completely or to produce an incorrect function response.

To avoid the risk of malfunction of the driver support systems that use the radar sensor, the following also apply:

- If there are cracks, scratches or stone chips on the windshield in front of any of the camera and radar sensor "windows" and this covers an area of about 0.5×3.0 mm (0.02×0.12 in.) or more, contact Polestar Customer Support to have the windshield replaced.
- Polestar advises **against** repairing cracks, scratches or stone chips in the area in front of the camera and radar sensor – the entire windshield should instead be replaced.
- Before replacing the windshield, contact Polestar Customer Support to verify that the right windshield has been ordered and installed.
- The same type of windshield wipers or wipers approved by Polestar should be used for replacement.
- If the windshield is replaced, the camera and radar sensor must be recalibrated by a workshop to help ensure proper functioning of all of the vehicle's camera and radar-based systems. Contact Polestar Customer Support.

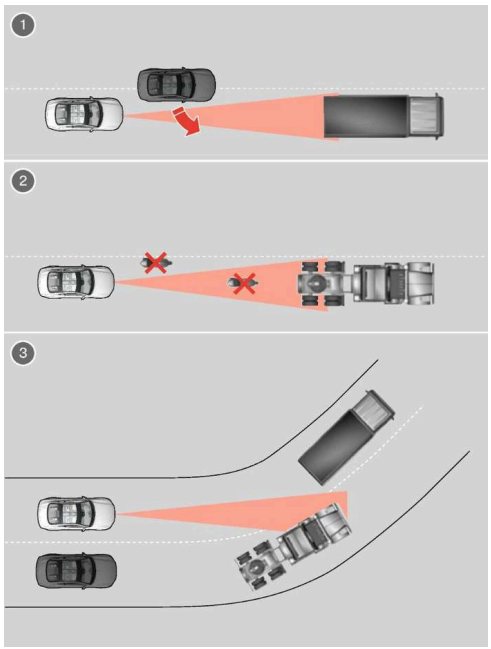
Additional radar limitations

Vehicle speed

The radar sensor's ability to detect a vehicle ahead is significantly reduced if the speed of the vehicle ahead differs greatly from your vehicle's speed.

Limited field of vision

The radar sensor has a limited field of vision. In some situations, it may detect a vehicle later than expected or not at all.



The radar sensor's field of vision



1. The radar sensor's detection of vehicles very close to your vehicle may be delayed in certain situations, e.g. if a vehicle pulls in between your vehicle and the vehicle directly ahead.

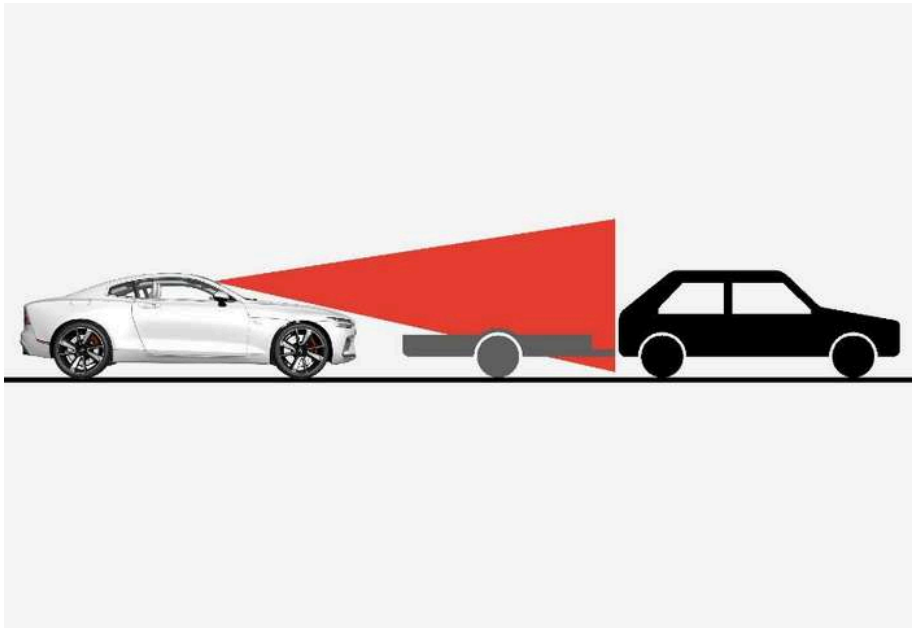


2. Small vehicles, such as motorcycles, or vehicles that are not driving in the center of the lane may remain undetected.



3. In curves, the radar may detect a different vehicle or lose sight of a target vehicle.

Low trailers



Low trailer in the radar shadow

Low trailers may also be difficult or even impossible for the radar to detect. The driver should be extra alert when driving behind vehicles towing low trailers when Adaptive Cruise Control or Pilot Assist is activated.

Additional camera limitations

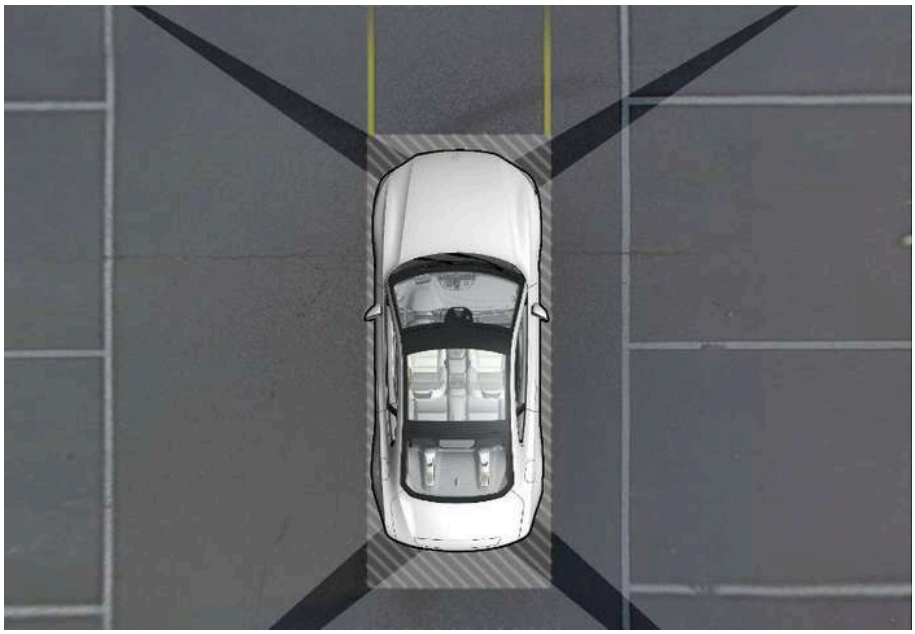
Reduced visibility

Cameras have the same limitations as the human eye. In other words, their “vision" is impaired by adverse weather conditions such as heavy snowfall/rain, dense fog, swirling dust/snow, etc. These conditions may reduce the function of systems that depend on the camera or cause these systems to temporarily stop functioning.

Strong sunlight, reflections from the road surface, ice or snow covering the road, a dirty road surface, or unclear lane marker lines may drastically reduce the camera’s ability to detect the side of a lane, a pedestrian, a cyclist, a large animal or another vehicle.

Additional Park Assist Camera limitations

Blind sectors



There are "blind" sectors between the cameras' fields of vision.

With the Park Assist Camera's 360° view selected, objects/obstacles may not be detected if they are located in the "joints" where the edges of the individual camera views meet.

> **WARNING**
> Even if it seems as though only a fairly small section of the screen image is obstructed, this may mean that a relatively large sector is hidden and an obstacle there may not be detected until it is very near the vehicle.

Lighting conditions

The camera image is automatically adjusted according to the current lighting conditions. This means that the brightness and quality of the image may vary slightly. Poor lighting conditions may result in reduced image quality.

Camera

The camera is used by several driver support systems to e.g. detect lane marker lines or road signs.



Location of the camera

The camera is used by the following functions:

- Adaptive Cruise Control*
- Pilot Assist*
- Lane Keeping Aid
- Steering assistance at risk of collision
- City Safety
- Driver Alert Control
- Traffic sign information
- Active high beam
- Park Assist System

* Option/accessory.

Radar sensor

The radar sensor is used by several driver support systems to detect other vehicles.



Location of radar sensor

The radar sensor is used by the following functions:

- Distance Alert*
- Adaptive Cruise Control*
- Pilot Assist*
- Lane Keeping Aid
- City Safety

Any modifications to the radar sensor may make its use illegal.

* Option/accessory.

Radar sensor type approval

Type approval for the vehicle's radar sensors for Adaptive Cruise Control* (ACC1), Pilot Assist* and BLIS2 are provided here.

Market	ACC & PA	BLIS	Type approval
Canada	✓		FCC ID: L2C0054TR IC: 3432A-0054TR FCC ID: L2C0055TR IC: 3432A-0055TR
		✓	Canada Standard RSS-310
USA	✓		FCC ID: L2C0054TR IC: 3432A-0054TR FCC ID: L2C0055TR IC: 3432A-0055TR
		✓	FCC ID: NBG01RS4

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and

(2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Ce dispositif de radiocommunication de catégorie II respecte la norme CNR-310 d’Industrie Canada. Le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Industrie Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes:

(1) l'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage, et

(2) l'utilisateur de l'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

Cet appareil est conforme aux CNR d’Industrie Canada a applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L’exploitation est autorisée à condition que l'appareil ne produise pas de brouillage préjudiciable et qu'il accepte tout brouillage, même celui susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

CAUTION TO USERS: Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term “IC:” before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

Note: This equipment complies with radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum distance of 20 cm between the radiator and your body.
For detailed information on type approval, contact Polestar Customer Support.

***** Option/accessory.

1 Adaptive Cruise Control

2 Blind Spot Information

Driver support systems

The vehicle is equipped with a number of driver support systems that can provide the driver with active or passive assistance in various situations.
The systems can, for example, help the driver:

- maintain a set speed
- maintain a set time interval to the vehicle ahead
- help prevent a collision by warning the driver and applying the brakes
- park the vehicle.

Some of the systems are standard and others are options. This also varies from market to market.

Driver support safety check at start

When you start the vehicle after the ignition has been completely switched off, a safety check of the vehicle's driver support systems will be displayed in the instrument panel. The check shows which driver support functions the vehicle has and if they are ready to be used.



The green dots indicate that everything looks good. If any system needs an extra check, this will be indicated by an orange dot and a message in the instrument panel.

> **NOTE**
> Available driver support systems may vary depending on the market, options, car model and model year.

Driver support warnings

If you find that the vehicle is acting in a way that you did not expect, one of the vehicle's safety-related functions may have been activated.

What is happening in your vehicle?

There are a number of functions in your vehicle that can actively help to improve safety in traffic, both for you and for other road users. To help prepare you in the event any of the functions is suddenly activated, an overview is provided here of some functions and how they might react. If a function is activated, you can also be notified of this via a text message in the instrument panel.

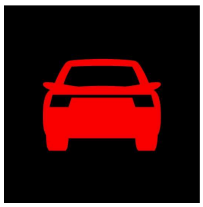
> **NOTE**
> Read the individual parts about each system to fully understand the functions and be notified of important warnings.

Warning with symbol, sound, light or vibration

The safety functions in your vehicle can alert you in different ways. They can provide alerts through e.g. vibrations in the steering wheel, brake pulse alerts, lights or audible signals, or through symbols in the instrument panel.

Alerts can also be shown in the head-up display.

City Safety™



City Safety is a function that can help prevent or mitigate a collision with pedestrians, cyclists, large animals or other vehicles. Light, sound and pulsations in the brake pedal are provided to alert of a possible collision and help the driver act in time to prevent it. If the driver does not react to the warning and the risk of collision is determined to be imminent, City Safety can automatically apply the brakes.

- Brake pedal pulsations, lights and audible signals.
- The brakes will be applied in certain situations if the driver does not act within a reasonable amount of time.

Lane Keeping Aid (LKA1)



Lane Keeping Aid can help you reduce the risk of the vehicle inadvertently veering out of its own lane. Because you can set preferences for how the function provides assistance, individual experiences of this safety function may vary.

- Assist: If the function detects that the vehicle is approaching a lane marker line, you will feel light pressure applied to the steering wheel. Both hands must be on the steering wheel for this function to work.
- WARNING: If the function detects that the vehicle is approaching a lane marker line, you will be alerted through vibrations in the steering wheel.
- Both: You are alerted with vibrations and light pressure on the steering wheel.

Steering assistance at risk of collision

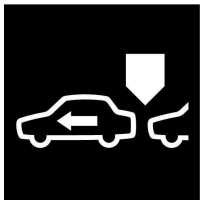


The assistance during collision risks function can help you reduce the risk of the vehicle inadvertently veering out of its lane and/or colliding with another vehicle or obstacle. The function can assist by helping you steer the vehicle back into its own lane and/or swerve out of the way.

When you start the function, three sub-functions will be activated that can assist in various situations. How the function is experienced can therefore differ depending on which sub-function is activated.

- Run-Off Mitigation with steering assistance: If the camera detects that the vehicle is about to cross the edge of the road, the function may attempt to steer the vehicle back into its own lane. The function may also attempt to apply the brakes if it determines that steering assistance is insufficient. No steering or braking intervention will be provided if you have the turn signals on or if the function determines that the driver is actively driving the vehicle.
- Steering assistance during collision risks from oncoming traffic: If the vehicle is about to leave its own lane while an oncoming vehicle is approaching, the function can provide steering assistance to help you steer the vehicle back into its own lane. No steering or braking intervention will be provided if you have the turn signals on or if the function determines that the driver is actively driving the vehicle.
- Steering assistance during collision risks from behind: If the vehicle is about to leave its own lane while another vehicle is behind and to the side of your vehicle, in your blind spot or rapidly approaching from behind, the function can assist by steering the vehicle back into its own lane. The function can provide steering assistance even if the turn signals are on and you are actively driving the vehicle.

Rear Collision Warning (RCW)*



RCW is a system that can help you avoid being hit from behind by an approaching vehicle. If the system detects a collision risk from behind, it can alert you and provide the following types of assistance depending on the situation.

- Rapid flashing of direction indicators.
- At lower speeds, RCW can tension the seat belts by activating the seat belt tensioners and the Whiplash Protection System.
- If the vehicle is stationary, the brakes can be applied.

Blind Spot Information (BLIS)



BLIS is designed to help provide assistance in heavy traffic with several lanes moving in the same direction by alerting the driver to rapidly approaching vehicles and to the presence of vehicles in the "blind spot" area behind and to the side of your vehicle.



- Warning with an indicator light in the door mirror, with steady and flashing lights.

Driver Alert Control (DAC)



DAC is designed to help alert the driver to erratic behavior, e.g. if the driver is distracted or showing signs of fatigue.

- Audible signal combined with a symbol in the instrument panel and the message Time for a break soon?.

Distance Alert*2



Distance Alert can warn you if the distance to the vehicle ahead decreases to an unsafe distance.

- Audible alert and/or a symbol in the windshield's head-up display.

Cross Traffic Alert (CTA)*



CTA is a function designed to alert the driver of crossing traffic when the vehicle is backing up.

- Audible signal from the left or right speaker depending on the direction from which the object is approaching

- Icon in the instrument panel
- Icon in the Park Assist Camera's Top view

Whiplash Protection System (WHIPS)

WHIPS is a function that can help protect against whiplash injury. The system consists of energy absorbing backrests and seat cushions as well as specially designed head restraints in the front seats.

> **WARNING**
>
> The functions described here are supplementary aids - they cannot manage all situations in all conditions.
>
> The driver is always responsible for ensuring that the vehicle is driven in a safe manner and in accordance with applicable traffic rules and regulations.

1 Lane Keeping Aid

***** Option/accessory.

2 Distance Alert

Speed-dependent steering wheel resistance

See Speed-dependent steering wheel resistance.

Drive modes when using time interval to vehicle ahead

The driver can choose different drive modes to determine how driver support should maintain a time interval to the vehicle ahead.
Settings are made using the DRIVE MODE controls.

Select one of the following:

- Pure - Driver support will focus on providing good fuel economy, which will increase the time interval to the vehicle ahead.
- Hybrid - Driver support will focus on following the set time interval to the vehicle ahead as smoothly as possible.
- Power - Driver support will focus on following the set time interval to the vehicle ahead more exactly, which could mean faster acceleration and heavier braking.

IntelliSafe – driver support and safety

See IntelliSafe – driver support and safety.

Braking assist after a collision

In a collision in which the activation level is reached for the pyrotechnic seat belt tensioners or airbags, or if a collision with a large animal is detected, the vehicle's brakes will be automatically activated. This function is intended to help prevent or reduce the effects of any subsequent collision.
After a serious collision, it may no longer be possible to control and steer the vehicle. In order to avoid or mitigate a possible further collision with a vehicle or an object in the vehicle's path, the brake assist system is activated automatically to help stop the vehicle safely.

The brake lights and hazard warning flashers are activated during braking. When the vehicle has stopped, the hazard warning flashers will continue to flash and the parking brake will be applied.

If braking is not appropriate, e.g. if there is a risk of being hit by passing traffic, the driver can override the system by depressing the accelerator pedal.

This function assumes that the brake system is intact after a collision.

Electric motor and charging

This section contains information about charging for electric power and about symbols and messages in the instrument panel related to charging. You will also find information about long-term storage of vehicles with electric power.

Charging hybrid battery

Charging status in the instrument panel

Charging status is indicated in the instrument panel using both graphics and messages. This information is displayed as long as the instrument panel is active.

Graphic	Message	Meaning
	Fully charged at: [Time] displayed along with an animated blue pulsing light through the charging cable.	Charging is in progress and the approximate time at which the batteries will be fully charged is displayed.
	Charging complete is displayed. An image will be superimposed over the graphic of the vehicle with a green LED indicator light in the socket.	The batteries are fully charged.
	Charging error will be displayed. The LED indicator light in the charging socket will be red.	Malfunction. Make sure the charging cable is correctly connected to the vehicle's charging socket and to the 120/240 V outlet (alternating current).

NOTE

If the instrument panel is not used, it will go dark after a period of time. To reactivate the display:

- depress the brake pedal,
- open one of the doors, or
- put the ignition in mode I by turning the START knob clockwise and then releasing.

Opening and closing the charging socket cover

The cover for the hybrid batteries' charging socket opens manually.



1
Press in the rear edge of the charger door and release.

2
Open the door.

3
Remove the charging socket's protective cover and secure it in the holder on the inside of the charger door. Make sure the cover's rubber stopper is bent downward to prevent the cover from falling out of the holder.

Perform the following steps in reverse to close the charger door.

Charging status in the vehicle's charging socket

The charging status is indicated by an LED light in the charging socket.



Location of the LED indicator light in the vehicle's charging socket.

The LED indicator light shows the current charge status during charging. If the LED indicator light is not illuminated, check to make sure the cable is securely connected in the wall outlet and in the outlet in the vehicle. The white, red, amber or blue lights are activated when the passenger compartment lighting is switched on - they remain switched on for a while after the passenger compartment lighting has been switched off.

LED indicator light's color	Meaning
White	Courtesy light
Yellow	Wait mode1 – waiting for charging to start.
Green	Charging completed2.
Flashing green	Charging is in progress3.
Red	Malfunction.
Blue	Timer-based charging activated in the Polestar 1 app.

1 E.g. after a door has been opened or if the charging cable handle is not locked in place.

2 The light will go out after a short time.

3 The more slowly the light flashes, the closer the battery is to being fully charged.

Charge cable

The charging cable is used to recharge the vehicle's hybrid batteries.



The charging cable is stored in the storage bag on the right side of the trunk.

WARNING

Only use the charging cable provided with your vehicle or a replacement cable recommended by Polestar.

Specifications, charging cable	
Enclosure class Compliance	IP67 SAE J1772
Ambient temperature	-32 ºC to 50 ºC(-25 ºF till 122 ºF)

WARNING

- The charging cable must be grounded when in use. It is equipped with a cord with a grounding conductor and a grounding plug. The plug must be inserted into an appropriate outlet that is properly installed and grounded in accordance with all local codes and ordinances and is not damaged in any way.
- Children should be supervised when in the vicinity of the charging cable when it is plugged in.
- High voltage is present in your electric meter housing and power distribution service panel. Contact with high voltage can cause death or serious personal injury.
- Do not use the charging cable if it is damaged in any way. Damaged or malfunctioning charging cables may only be repaired by a workshop – contact Polestar Customer Support for more information.
- Always position the charging cable so that it will not be driven over, stepped on, tripped over or otherwise damaged, or cause personal injury.
- Disconnect the charger from the wall outlet before cleaning it.
- Never connect the charging cable to an extension cord or a multiple plug socket.
- Do not use any adapters between the charging cable and electrical outlet.
- Do not use an external timer between the charging cable and electrical outlet.

Also, refer to the manufacturer's instructions for using the charging cable and its components.

IMPORTANT

Power strips, extension cords, surge protectors or similar devices must not be used together with the charging cable since this may involve a risk of fire, electric shocks, etc.

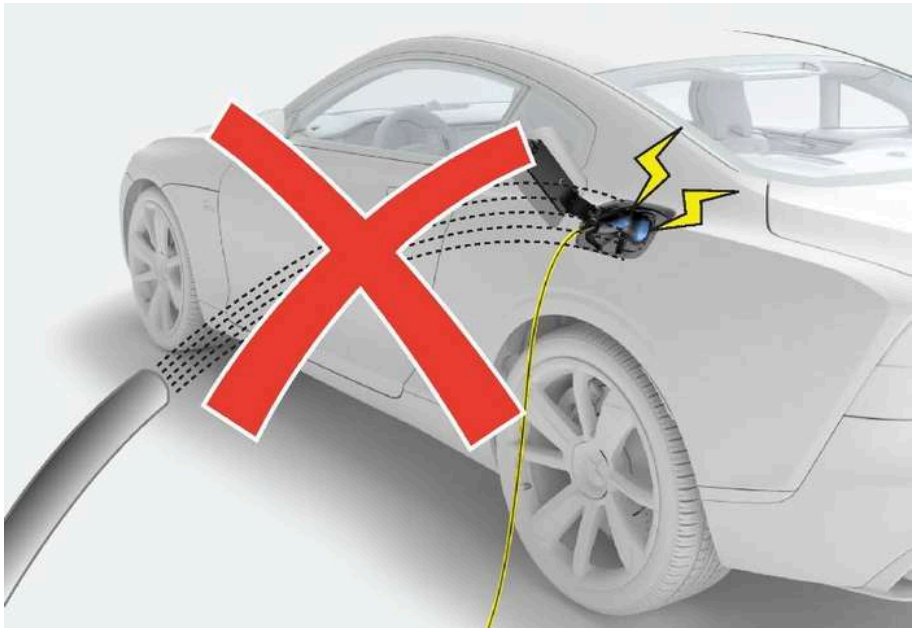
An external timer or adapter may not be used between the 120/240 V outlet (AC, alternating current) and the charging cable.

IMPORTANT

Never detach the charging cable from the 120/240 V outlet (AC, alternating current) while charging is in progress – the 120/240 V outlet could be damaged in such circumstances. Always interrupt charging first and then disconnect the charging cable – first from the vehicle's charging socket and then from the 120/240 V outlet.

IMPORTANT

Wipe the charging cable with a clean cloth lightly moistened with water or a mild detergent. Do not use chemicals or solvents.



WARNING

The charging cable and its components must not be rinsed or immersed in water.

IMPORTANT

Avoid exposing the charging module and its plug to direct sunlight. In such cases, the overheating protection in the plug could reduce or cut off charging of the hybrid batteries.

Charging cable components



1	Charge module
2	240 V adapter clip

3	240 V adapter
4	Charge coupler
5	Release button

Charging cable residual current device

The charging cable has a circuit breaker that helps protect against current overloads and thermal overheating.

WARNING

Charging the hybrid batteries may only be done from approved, grounded 120/240 V outlets (AC, alternating current). If the electrical circuit or electrical socket's capacity is not known, let a licensed electrician inspect the electrical circuit's capacity. Using a charge level that exceeds the electrical circuit's or electrical outlet's capacity may start a fire or damage the electrical circuit.

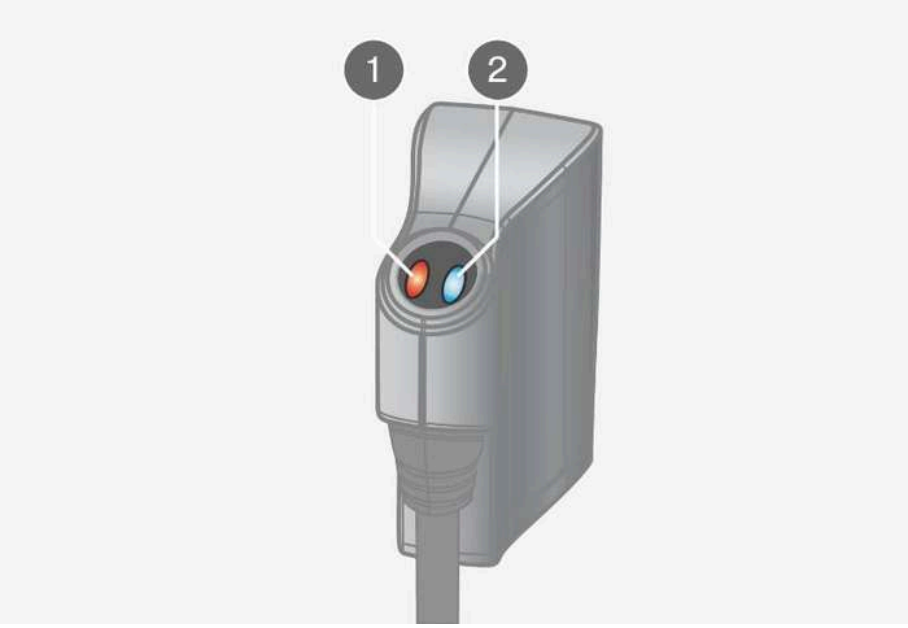
WARNING

- The charging cable's residual current breaker helps protect the vehicle's charging system but cannot ensure that an current overload will never occur.
- Never use visibly worn or damaged electrical sockets. Doing so could lead to fires or serious injury.
- Never connect the charging cable to an extension cord.
- Contact Polestar Customer Support for information on the maintenance or replacement of the hybrid batteries.
- Only use the recommended charging cord.
- Do not use an external timer between the charging cord and the electrical outlet.
- Do not use any adapters between the charging cable and the electrical outlet.

If the charging cable's residual current device is triggered, the blue indicator light in the charging module will not illuminate when the charging cable is plugged into an electrical outlet (or the red warning light will glow steadily). Have the outlet checked by a licensed electrician or try using another wall outlet.

Charging status in the charging cable's charging module

The red and blue lights in the charging module indicate the status of ongoing and completed charging.



Charge module: 1. Red warning light, 2. Blue status indicator

A printed Manual and accompanying supplement can also be ordered. Contact Polestar Customer Support to order.

When the charge module is initially plugged into a wall outlet, the red warning light will flash once to indicate that a startup safety check has been performed. When the safety check has been completed, the blue status indicator will glow steadily and the red warning light will be off. The charger is now ready to be used. If the red warning light continues to flash or glows steadily, a fault has been detected and the charger will not deliver power to the vehicle. Contact Polestar Customer Support.

When the charging cable is connected to the vehicle's charging socket, the blue light will flash once.

Charging cable connected to the vehicle's charging socket:

Indicator light's color	Meaning
Flashing blue	Charging is in progress. The light flashes about once every other second
Solid blue	Charging completed. This will also be indicated in the instrument panel
Solid red	Malfunction.

Temperature monitoring of the charging cable

To help ensure the vehicle's hybrid batteries are reliably charged each time they are connected, charging is stopped if the temperature in the charging cable becomes too high and reaches a critical limit.

> **IMPORTANT**
> If charging is often unintentionally interrupted, both the charging cable and the vehicle's charging system should be checked. Contact Polestar Customer Support for more information.

Charging of the hybrid batteries

In addition to a conventional fuel tank, the vehicle is also equipped with two rechargeable lithium-ion hybrid batteries. The hybrid batteries are charged using the charging cable, which is stowed in the storage bag in the side panel of the trunk. The charging bag is attached using a magnetic snap and can be removed by lifting it straight up.

The hybrid batteries can also be charged at charging stations using the integrated charge module. The charging stations can be equipped with either a fixed charging cable or a socket in which a special charging cable with a matching connector (a mode 3 charging cable) can be plugged in.

Rapid charging

In addition to charging via a 230 V outlet (alternating current), the vehicle also supports direct-current rapid charging at charging stations supporting the CCS (Combined Charging System) standard. Charging with direct current usually enables higher charging output and thereby shorter charging times. The highest charging output is normally achieved when the charge level of the hybrid batteries is 0-80%. When the charge level rises, the output will be decreased to reduce wear.

WARNING

California Proposition 65

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

NOTE

Polestar recommends a charging cable according to SAE J1772 that supports temperature monitoring.

WARNING

The hybrid electrical system in your vehicle uses high voltage electrical current. Any damage to this system or to the hybrid batteries may result in the danger of overheating, fire, or serious injury. If the vehicle is involved in a collision or exposed to flooding, fire, etc., contact Polestar Customer Support. Prior to this inspection, the vehicle should be parked outdoors at a safe distance from any building or potentially flammable materials.

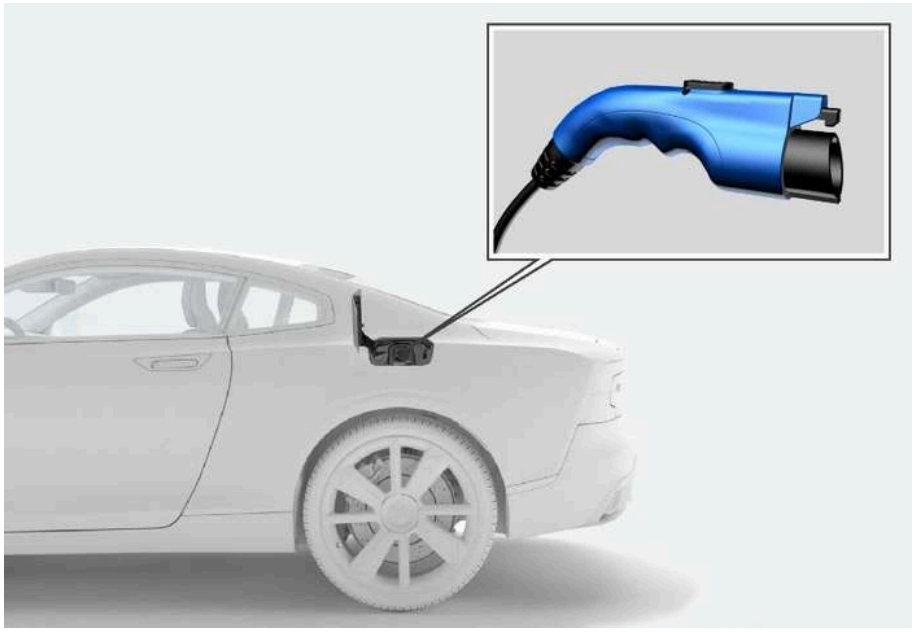
The charging time for the hybrid batteries depends on the charging output used.

NOTE

The capacity of the hybrid batteries diminishes somewhat with age and use, which could result in increased use of the gasoline engine and consequently, slightly higher fuel consumption.

WARNING

If the hybrid batteries need to be replaced, contact Polestar Customer Support.



Charging cable handle and charging socket.

Charging status is indicated in three ways:

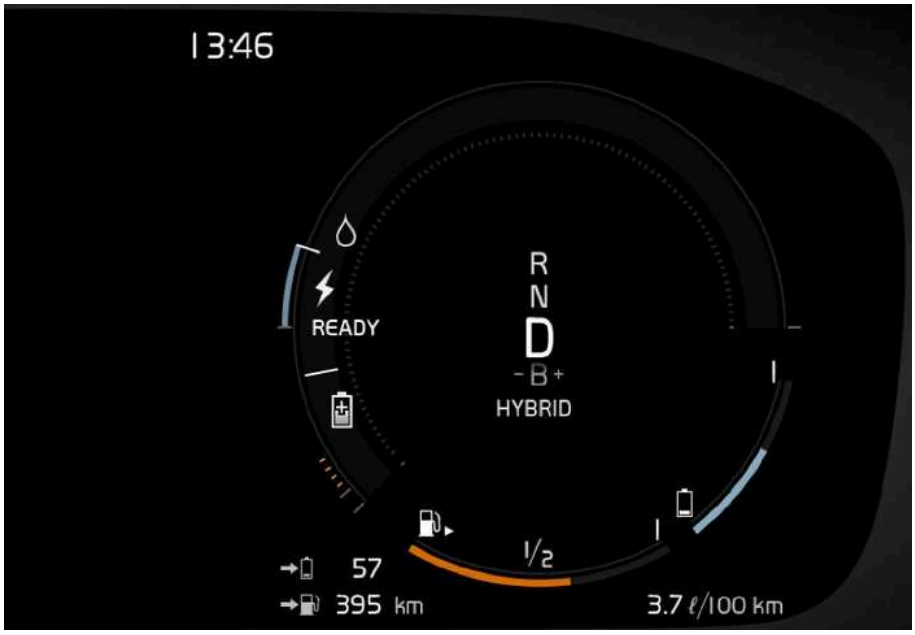
- The indicator lights in the charging module (the unit connected to the wall outlet).
- Indicator light in the vehicle's charging socket.
- Images and text in the instrument panel.

The start battery is charged while the hybrid batteries are charging and stops charging when the hybrid batteries are fully charged. The vehicle cannot be driven while it is being charged.

If the temperature of the hybrid batteries is below -10 ºC (14 ºF) or above 40 ºC (104 ºF), some of the vehicle's functions may be reduced or not available at all because the capacity of the hybrid batteries is reduced outside this temperature range.

The electric motor cannot be used if the temperature of the batteries is too low or too high. If the PURE drive mode is selected, the gasoline engine will start.

Charging using the gasoline engine



The vehicle is generating current to recharge the batteries, e.g. during light braking or engine braking on a downslope.

The vehicle can also generate current to the hybrid batteries to charge them.

- The hybrid batteries can also be recharged by lightly depressing the brake pedal, i.e. during light braking. This converts the vehicle's kinetic energy to electrical energy, which is used to charge the hybrid batteries.
- In gear position B, the electric motor brakes the vehicle when the accelerator pedal is released and the hybrid batteries are recharged at the same time.
- The combustion engine can also help recharge the hybrid batteries.

Initiating charging of the hybrid batteries

Charging with charging cable (alternating current)

Only use the charging cable supplied with the vehicle or a replacement cable recommended by Polestar.

The vehicle's hybrid batteries are charged using the charging cable between the vehicle and a 120/240 V outlet (alternating current) or charging station (mode 3).

IMPORTANT

Never connect the charging cable if there is a risk of a thunderstorm or there is lightning.

NOTE

Polestar recommends a charging cable according to SAE J1772 that supports temperature monitoring.

WARNING

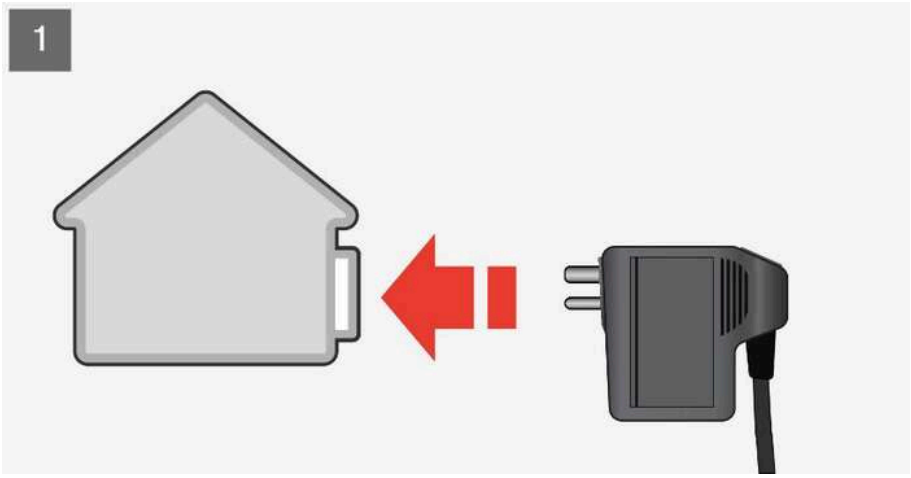
- The charging cable must be grounded when in use. It is equipped with a cord with a grounding conductor and a grounding plug. The plug must be inserted into an appropriate outlet that is properly installed and grounded in accordance with all local codes and ordinances and is not damaged in any way.
- Children should be supervised when in the vicinity of the charging cable when it is plugged in.
- High voltage is present in your electric meter housing and power distribution service panel. Contact with high voltage can cause death or serious personal injury.
- Do not use the charging cable if it is damaged in any way.A damaged or malfunctioning charging cable may only be repaired by an authorized workshop. Contact Polestar Customer Support for more information.
- Always position the charging cable so that it will not be driven over, stepped on, tripped over or otherwise damaged, or cause personal injury.
- Disconnect the charger from the wall outlet before cleaning it.
- Never connect the charging cable to an extension cord or a multiple plug socket.
- Do not use any adapters between the charging cable and electrical outlet.
- Do not use an external timer between the charging cable and electrical outlet.

Also, refer to the manufacturer's instructions for using the charging cable and its components.

IMPORTANT

Make sure that the 120/240 V outlet (AC, alternating current) has a power capacity sufficient for charging electric vehicles. If you are uncertain of the capacity, have the outlet checked by a licensed electrician.

Take out the charging cable from the storage bag on the right side of the trunk. Note that the ignition must be switched off completely before charging.



1

Plug the charging cable into a 120/240 V outlet. Never use an extension cord.



2

Open the charger door. Push the charging handle all the way into the vehicle's socket.

The charging cable handle will lock into place and charging will begin within 5 seconds. When charging starts, the green LED light in the charging socket will begin to flash. The approximate remaining charging time or the charging status will be displayed in the instrument panel.

Battery charging may be temporarily interrupted if the vehicle is unlocked. Charging will resume within a few minutes.

IMPORTANT

Never detach the charging cable from the 120/240 V outlet (AC, alternating current) while charging is in progress – the 120/240 V outlet could be damaged in such circumstances. Always interrupt charging first and then disconnect the charging cable – first from the vehicle's charging socket and then from the 120/240 V outlet.

Rapid charging (direct current)

The vehicle's hybrid batteries can be charged quickly using DC power at charging stations supporting the CCS (Combined Charging System) standard.

NOTE

Charging stations supporting CCS are usually clearly marked CCS or Combo. Note that the vehicle must be switched off before charging.

Remove the charging cable from the charging station's storage socket.
Open the charger door. Remove the charging socket cover and plug the charging cable all the way into the vehicle's charging socket. The charging cable automatically locks into the charging socket.
Follow the instructions in the charging station's user interface to authorize the charging. Charging will begin after the charging station completes an insulation test. This may take a minute or so.
When charging starts, the green LED light in the charging socket will begin to flash. The approximate remaining charging time or the charging status will be displayed in the instrument panel.
Rapid charging will not normally be interrupted if the vehicle is unlocked. Charging can be stopped by pressing the key's unlock button twice in quick succession. Rapid charging cannot be resumed automatically if interrupted because the charging station will require reauthorization.

NOTE

During charging, water from the air conditioning may condense and drip from underneath the vehicle. This is due to the cooling of the hybrid batteries.

Stopping charging of the hybrid batteries

Charging with charging cable (alternating current)

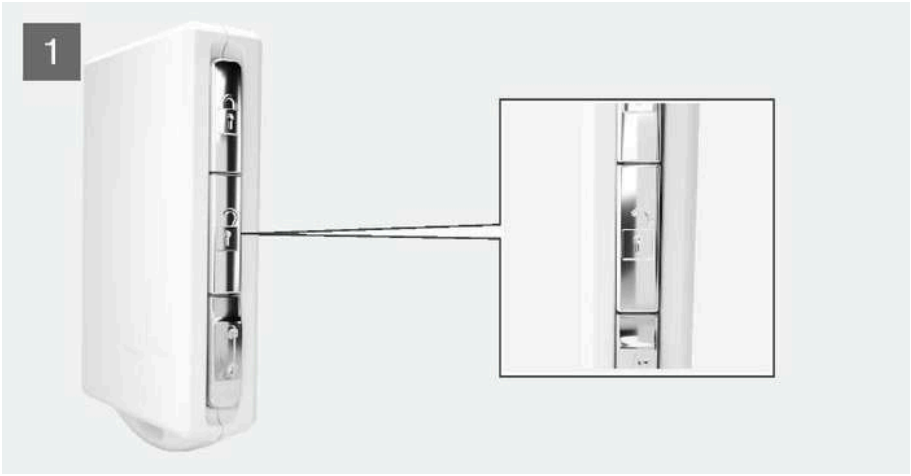
To stop charging of the hybrid battery, unlock the vehicle, unplug the charging cable from the vehicle's charging socket and then unplug the cable from the 120/240 V outlet (alternating current).

IMPORTANT

Before the charging cable is removed from the vehicle's charging socket, the vehicle must be unlocked using the unlock button on the key. This must be done even if the vehicle's doors are already unlocked. If the vehicle is not unlocked using the unlock button, the charging cable or system may be damaged.

NOTE

Always unlock the vehicle so that charging is cut off before the connection to the 120/240 V outlet (AC, alternating current) is disconnected. Note that the charging cable must be disconnected from the vehicle's charging socket before it is disconnected from the 120/240 V outlet, partly to prevent damage to the system and party to prevent unintentional interruption of charging.



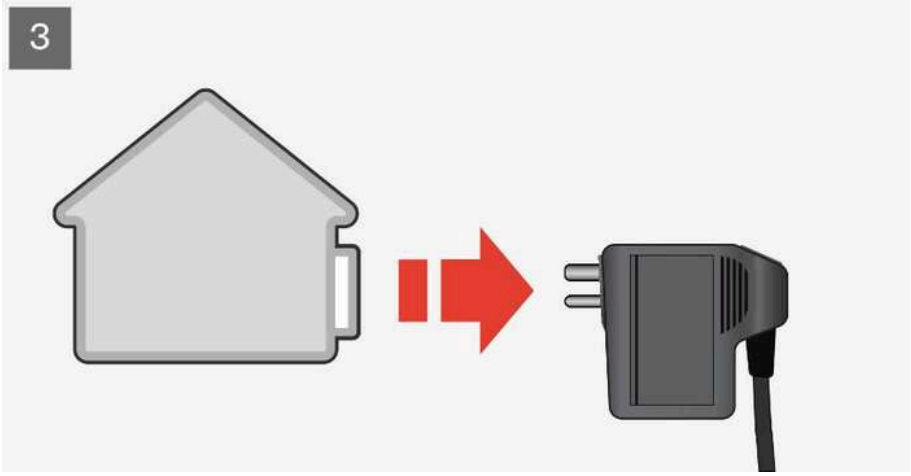
1

Unlock the vehicle with the key. Charging will stop.



2

Press the lock button on the charging cable's handle. The handle will be released/unlocked. Unplug the cable from the vehicle's charging socket and close the charger door.



3

Unplug the cable from the 120/240 V outlet.

Stow the charging cable in the storage compartment on the right side of the trunk.

Charging cable automatically locks

If the charging cable cannot be removed from the charging socket, it will automatically lock into place again after unlocking to maximize charging and range and to enable preconditioning before driving. The charging cable can be removed again if the vehicle is unlocked using the key. For vehicles with Passive Entry, the handle can be used to lock and unlock.

During rapid charging (direct current), the charging cable will not automatically lock into place again. To restart interrupted rapid charging, remove the charging cable from the vehicle's charging socket, then plug it in again and follow the instructions on the charging station's user interface.

Rapid charging (direct current)

Finish charging by following the instructions in the charging station's user interface, remove the charging cable from the vehicle's charging socket and plug it into the charging station's storage socket. Rapid charging can also be stopped by pressing the key's unlock button twice in quick succession.

> **IMPORTANT**
>
> Never attempt to remove the charging cable from the vehicle while charging is in progress. Always stop charging first and then unplug the charging cable after the charging socket lock automatically unlocks.

Stop rapid charging via the charging station's user interface or by pressing the vehicle's unlock button twice in quick succession – charging will stop and the lock in the charging socket will automatically unlock. This may take a few seconds.
Unplug the charging cable from the vehicle's charging socket and close the cover.
Plug the charging cable into the charging station's storage socket or hang it back in the designated location.

Unlocking the vehicle during rapid charging

Rapid charging will not normally be interrupted if the vehicle is unlocked. If rapid charging is stopped, it will not resume automatically because the charging station requires reauthorization of charing via the user interface. If rapid charging is stopped, the charging cable will not automatically lock into place again. To restart interrupted rapid charging, remove the charging cable from the vehicle's charging socket, then plug it in again and follow the instructions on the charging station's user interface.

Charging output

Charging output is used to charge the hybrid batteries and precondition the vehicle. Charging is performed by connecting a charging cable between the vehicle's charging socket and a 120/240 V electrical socket (alternating current) or via a charging station.

When the charging cable is activated, a message will be displayed in the instrument panel and an indicator light in the vehicle's charging socket will illuminate. Charging output is primarily used for battery charging, but is also used for preconditioning. The vehicle's start battery is charged along with the hybrid batteries.

IMPORTANT

Never detach the charging cable from the 120/240 V outlet (AC, alternating current) while charging is in progress – the 120/240 V outlet could be damaged in such circumstances. Always interrupt charging first and then disconnect the charging cable – first from the vehicle's charging socket and then from the 120/240 V outlet.

NOTE

- In extremely cold or hot weather, part of the charging current is used to heat/cool the hybrid batteries and the passenger compartment, resulting in a longer charging time.
- The charging time is longer if preconditioning has been selected. The time required depends primarily on the ambient temperature.
- For rapid charging, the highest charging output is achieved when the hybrid batteries are almost discharged. When the charging level rises, output will be decreased to reduce wear.

Fuse

There are normally several 120/240 V power consumers in one fuse circuit, which means that more than one power consumer (e.g. lighting, vacuum cleaner, electric drill, etc.) may use the same fuse.

Hybrid battery gauge

See Hybrid battery gauge.

Hybrid gauge

See Hybrid gauge.

Drive systems

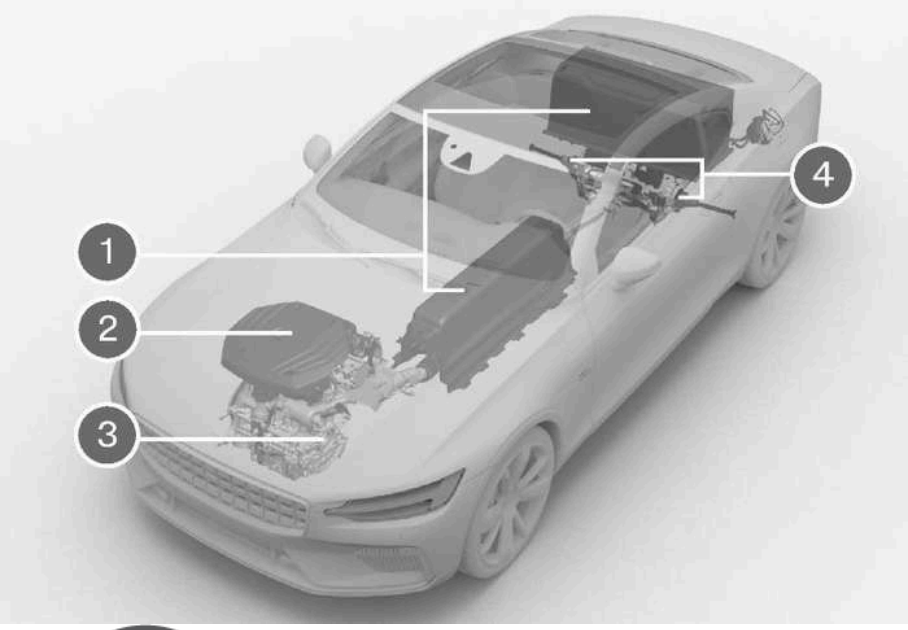
Polestar combines a gasoline engine for the front wheels and two electric motors for the rear wheels.

Two drive systems

Depending on the selected drive mode and power available in the electric motors, the drive systems can either be used separately or in tandem.

The electric motors are supplied current from the hybrid batteries. One is located in the tunnel console and the other behind the rear seat in the trunk. The hybrid batteries can be charged from wall outlets or at a special charging station. The gasoline engine can also charge the hybrid batteries using a special high-voltage generator.

Both the gasoline engine and the electric motors can generate power directly to the wheels. An advanced control system coordinates both the drive systems to help optimize driving economy.



1. Hybrid batteries – The vehicle is equipped with two hybrid batteries. The function of the hybrid batteries is to store energy. This energy is provided by plugging the charging cable into an electrical outlet, through regenerative braking or from the high-voltage generator. The batteries provide energy for electric propulsion and e.g. preconditioning.
2. Gasoline engine - The gasoline engine starts when the charge level in the hybrid batteries is too low to provide the power output requested by the driver.
3. High-voltage generator1 – The high-voltage generator charges the high-voltage batteries. It also functions as a starter motor for the gasoline engine. Can provide the combustion engine with extra electrical current.
4. Electric motors – The vehicle is equipped with two electric motors that power the vehicle in electric mode. They provide extra torque and power during acceleration as well as electric four-wheel drive functionality. The electric

motors provide adapted power to each rear wheel for extra stability2, for example when cornering. They regenerate braking energy into electrical current.

1 CISG (Crank Integrated Starter Generator) – combined high-voltage generator and starter.

2 Torque vectoring.

Starting and stopping the gasoline engine

An advanced control system determines the distance that the vehicle can be driven on the gasoline engine or electric motors, or both operating systems at the same time. When driving on only the electric motor, the vehicle may automatically start the combustion engine due to outside circumstances, e.g. low ambient temperatures. This is completely normal. The combustion engine will also always start when the hybrid battery is nearly fully discharged.

Climate settings at low temperatures

At low ambient temperatures, the combustion engine will sometimes start automatically to help achieve the desired passenger compartment temperature and air quality. The amount of time the combustion engine is running can be affected by

- lowering the temperature
- reducing blower speed
- activating Pure drive mode.

Using the electric motor in hot or cold weather

At very low or high ambient temperatures, the electric motor's driving range and power may be reduced and affect how often the combustion engine automatically starts.

Emission control system

To help ensure that the emission control system is as energy-efficient as possible, the combustion engine will run for several minutes after it is started. The amount of time the combustion engine needs to be used varies depending on the temperature of the three-way catalytic converter.

> **WARNING**
>
> **California Proposition 65**
>
> Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

Hold and Charge functions

In certain situations, it can be useful to control the hybrid battery's charge level while driving. This is possible with the Hold and Charge functions.
Hold and Charge are available in all drive modes. The functions will switch off if Pure drive mode is activated.

Function buttons for Hold and Charge

The functions can be activated in the center display's Function view.

Hold



Battery level sustained for later use.

This function retains the charge in the hybrid battery for the electric motor and saves available electrical current for use at a later time, such as when driving in an urban area or residential neighborhood.

The vehicle will function as in normal hybrid driving with a discharged battery - in addition to reusing energy from e.g. regenerative braking, the combustion engine will be used more frequently to maintain the charge in the battery.

Charge



Engine charges hybrid battery.

This function charges the hybrid battery with the help of the combustion engine for increased use of the electric motor at a later time.

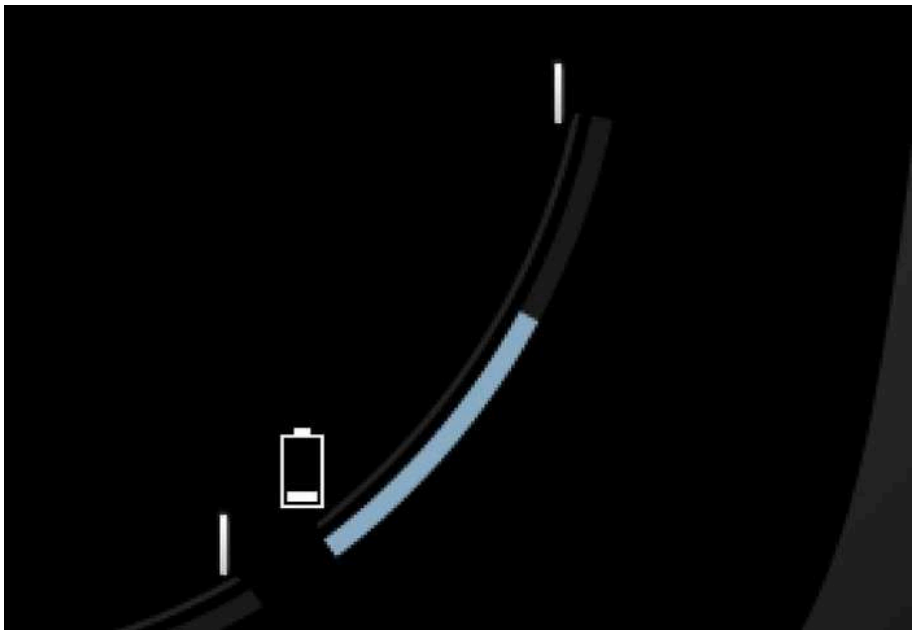
Symbols in the instrument panel



The



symbol is displayed in the hybrid battery gauge when Hold is activated.



The  symbol is displayed in the hybrid battery gauge when Charge is activated.

Drive modes

Drive modes affect the vehicle's driving characteristics in different ways to enhance and simplify the driving experience in certain types of situations.
Drive modes enable easy access to the vehicle's many functions and settings in different driving situations. Each drive mode is adapted to help optimize driving characteristics.

- Steering
- Engine/transmission/all-wheel drive
- Brakes
- Instrument panel
- Climate control settings

Select the drive mode that is adapted to the current driving conditions. Keep in mind that not all drive modes are available in all situations.

Available drive modes

> **WARNING**
> Please be aware that there is no sound from the engine when the vehicle is being powered on electricity and it may be difficult to detect by children, pedestrians, cyclists and animals. This is particularly true at low speeds, e.g. in parking lots.

WARNING

Do not leave the vehicle in an unventilated area with a drive mode activated and the combustion engine switched off. The engine will start automatically if the charge level in the hybrid battery is low and the resulting exhaust gases can be very harmful to people and animals.

Hybrid

- This is the vehicle's normal mode when the two electric motors and the combustion engine are working together.

The vehicle starts in Hybrid mode. The control system uses both the electric motor and the gasoline engine – separately or in tandem – and adapts utilization with regard to performance, fuel consumption and comfort. Driving capacity on the electric motors alone is determined by factors such as the hybrid batteries' charge level, the need for heating or cooling in the passenger compartment, etc.

With a well-charged hybrid battery, it is possible to drive solely on electric power. When the accelerator pedal is pressed, only the electric motors will be activated until the batteries reach a certain charge level. Above this level, the current in the battery cannot supply the power requested by the accelerator pedal and the combustion engine will start.

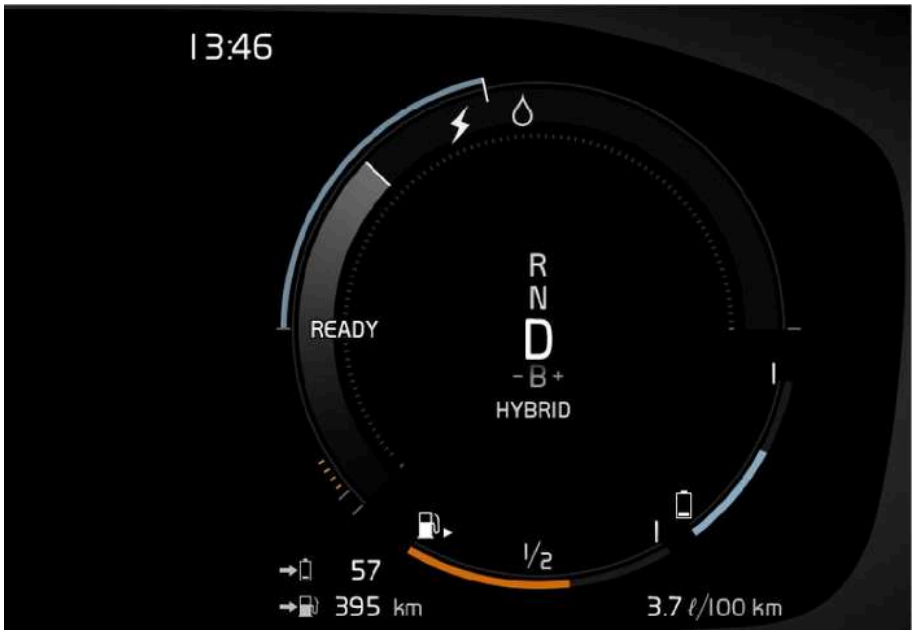
When the hybrid battery's charge level is low, the combustion engine will start more frequently to save the remaining current in the battery. Rapid-charge the vehicle1 or charge the hybrid battery from a 120-240 V outlet using the charging cable. Alternatively, activate Charge in Function view to restore the ability to drive using only electric propulsion.

This drive mode is designed for low energy consumption with a mix between the electric motor and gasoline engine, without compromising on climate comfort or driving experience. When faster acceleration is requested by the driver, the electric driveline will be utilized to help provide maximum additional power.

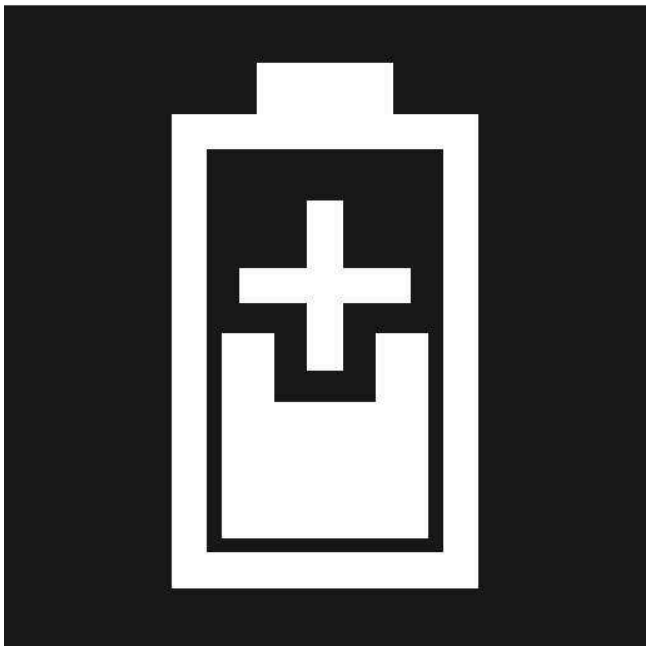
The vehicle also monitors the driving conditions and automatically engages all-wheel drive if necessary. All-wheel drive and extra electric power are always available regardless of the battery's charging status.

Information in the instrument panel

When driving in Hybrid mode, a hybrid gauge will be displayed in the instrument panel. The gauge will indicate the amount of electrical current required when the driver depresses the accelerator pedal. The marker between the lightning and the drop shows how much current is available.



The instrument panel gauge when both the electric motor and the combustion engine are being used.



The instrument panel also shows how much current is being restored to the battery (regenerated) during light braking.

Pure

- Uses the electric motors only, with the lowest possible energy consumption and lowest possible carbon dioxide emissions.

This drive mode is fully electric and the vehicle is propelled using the rear-axle electric motors, which means that the vehicle is rear-wheel driven. The combustion engine starts if acceleration performance is limited, e.g. on very steep inclines.

This drive mode may also be unavailable

- if the vehicle's speed goes above 160 km/h (100 mph)
- if the hybrid battery charge level is too low
- if factors such as cold weather affect the system or components.

Pure mode is adapted for the longest possible driving distance with electric propulsion and is primarily intended for use in city driving. This drive mode does not offer four-wheel drive. This can cause some limitations in poor road conditions or cold weather.

Constant AWD

- Improves the vehicle's traction and handling by increasing all-wheel drive.

This drive mode locks the vehicle in all-wheel drive. An adapted distribution between front and rear axle torque provides effective control, stability and traction, e.g. on slippery roads or when towing another vehicle. The Constant AWD drive mode is always available regardless of the hybrid battery's charge status.

Both the combustion engine and the electric motors are engaged to enable all-wheel drive, which results in higher fuel consumption.

In drive modes other than Pure mode, the vehicle automatically adapts the need for all-wheel drive according to the road surface, and can activate the electric motors or start the gasoline engine as needed.

Power

- The vehicle gets sportier driving characteristics and a faster acceleration response.

This drive mode adapts the combined power from the combustion engine and the electric motors by providing power to both the front and rear wheels. Gear shifting will be faster and more distinct, steering response is faster and the transmission will prioritize gears with a higher traction force.

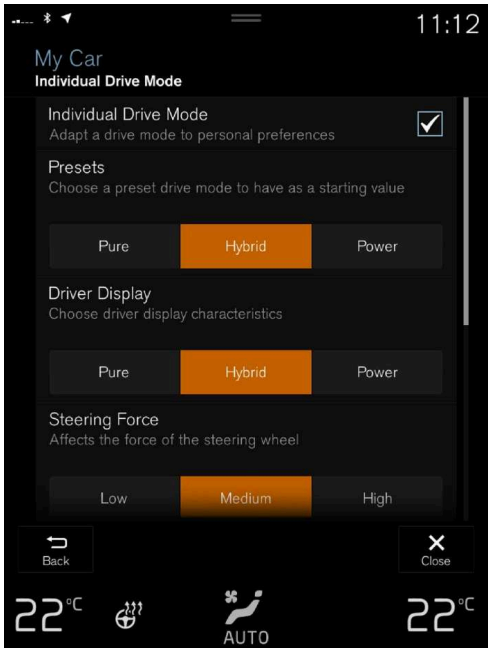
Both the combustion engine and the electric motors are engaged to enable all-wheel drive, which results in higher fuel consumption.
This drive mode is adapted for optimal performance and response during acceleration. It changes the throttle response, gear shifting program and turbo boost system. Steering and brake response is also adapted. The Power drive mode is always available regardless of the hybrid battery's charge status.

Individual

- Customizes drive mode to personal preferences.

Select one of the drive modes as a basis and adjust the settings to achieve your preferred driving characteristics. These settings will be stored in your driver profile.

Individual drive mode is only available if it has been activated in the center display.



Settings view for Individual drive mode.

Tap Settings in the Top view.
Tap My Car → Individual Drive Mode and select Individual Drive Mode.
Under Presets, select one of the following drive modes as a basis: Pure, Hybrid or Power.

The following settings can be modified:

- Driver Display
- Steering Force
- Powertrain Characteristics
- Brake Characteristics

Using the electric or combustion engine

An advanced control system determines the distance that the vehicle can be driven on the combustion engine, electric motors, or all three at the same time.

Its primary function is to use the motor/engine and the current available in the hybrid battery as efficiently as possible based on the characteristics of the various drive modes and the power output requested by the driver by pressing the

accelerator pedal.

In certain cases, temporary limitations in the system or mandatory functions to help maintain a low overall emissions level may result in greater use of the combustion engine.

1 Rapid charging is carried out using direct current at special CCS (Combined Charging System) stations

General information about hybrid operation

Hybrid vehicles are driven just like any other vehicle, but certain functions differ from a vehicle powered exclusively by gasoline. The electric motors power the vehicle primarily at low speeds; the gasoline engine is used at higher speeds or during more active driving.

The instrument panel displays information specific to hybrid operation – charging information, selected drive mode, distance to discharged battery and charge level of the hybrid batteries.

Different drive modes can be selected while driving, e.g. electric power only or, if more power is needed, a combination of electric and gasoline power. The vehicle calculates a combination of driveability, driving experience, environmental impact and fuel economy for the selected drive mode.

In order to function optimally, the hybrid batteries (and their electrical drive systems) and the gasoline engine (and its drive systems) must be at the correct operating temperature. Battery capacity can be considerably reduced if the batteries are too cold or too hot. Preconditioning prepares the vehicle's drive systems and passenger compartment before driving to help reduce both wear and energy consumption. It also helps increase the hybrid batteries' range.

The hybrid batteries that power the electric motors are recharged using the charging cable. They can also be recharged during light braking and through engine braking in gear selector position B. The combustion engine can also help recharge the hybrid batteries.

Important

> **WARNING**
> Charging the vehicle can affect the function of an implanted pacemaker or other medical equipment. People with an implanted pacemaker are recommended to consult a doctor before charging the first time.

No electrical current

Keep in mind that if there is no electrical current to the vehicle, i.e. the ignition is switched off or the start battery is discharged, certain functions such as brakes, power steering, etc. will not work.

> **WARNING**
> If the vehicle does not have electrical current and both the fuel engine and the electric motors are switched off, the brakes cannot be used to stop the vehicle.

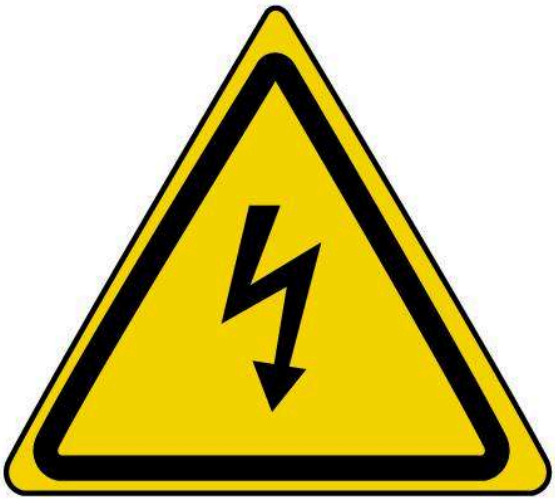
Towing not permitted

Never tow a hybrid vehicle behind another vehicle, as this could damage the electric motors.

Exterior motor noise

> **WARNING**
> Please be aware that there is no sound from the engine when the vehicle is being powered by the electric motors and it may be difficult to detect by children, pedestrians, cyclists and animals. This is especially true at low speeds.

High-voltage electrical current



WARNING

A number of electrical components in the vehicle use high-voltage current and can be extremely dangerous if handled incorrectly. These components and any orange wiring in the vehicle may only be handled by trained and qualified Polestar service technicians.

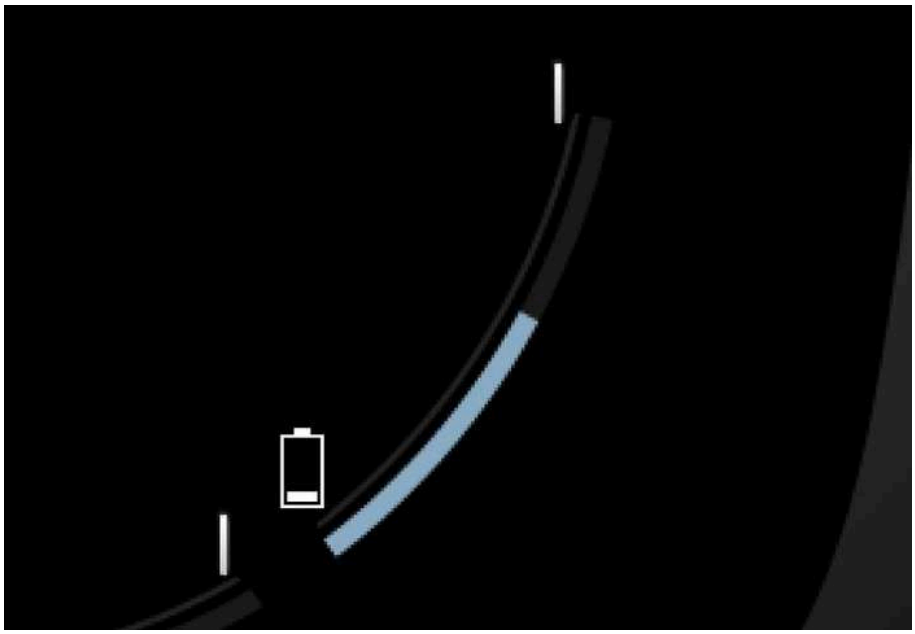
Do not touch anything that is not clearly described in the Manual.

Hybrid-related symbols and messages in the instrument panel

See Hybrid-related symbols and messages in the instrument panel.

Recommendations for long-term storage

To help minimize degradation of the hybrid batteries if the vehicle is not driven for a prolonged period (longer than 1 month), the hybrid battery charge level should be kept at approx. 25% according to the gauge in the instrument panel. Do as follows:



If the hybrid battery charge level is high, drive the vehicle until the charge level is approximately 25%. If the charge level is low, charge the batteries until the level reaches approximately 25%.
If the vehicle is not driven for more than 6 months or the charge level of the hybrid batteries is noticeably below the 25% mark, charge the batteries to about 25% to help compensate for the natural battery discharge that occurs in long-term storage. Regularly check the charge level using the gauge in the instrument display.

> **NOTE**
> Store the vehicle in as cool a location as possible to minimize batteries aging during long-term storage. In the summer, park the vehicle indoors or in a shady location, whichever is cooler.

The recommended tire inflation pressure during long-term storage is 330 kPA (48 PSI). Check the inflation pressure of the tires and adjust to the correct pressure, which can be found on the vehicle's tire information decal or certification label.

Using the electric motor only

When using the electric motor, the vehicle provides a combination of good fuel economy, low emissions and high performance.
For energy-efficient driving:

- Select Pure drive mode.
- Maintain a steady speed and a generous following distance to traffic ahead to minimize braking.
- When braking is necessary, brake gently using the brake pedal. This will help recharge the hybrid battery.
- Reduce current consumption in the passenger compartment by reducing e.g. fan speed, electric heating, or air conditioning use.

Also follow the general economical driving advice regarding speed, tires and load to maximize range.

Factors affecting electric motor range

A number of factors affect the electric motor's driving range. The ability to achieve a long driving range varies according to the outside conditions and to how the vehicle is driven.
The certified value for the distance that can be driven using the electric motor should not be considered an expected driving range. The actual range is dependent on a number of factors.

Factors affecting driving range

The driver can influence some factors affecting driving range, but not all.

The longest range is achieved under very favorable conditions when all factors positively influence range.

Factors the driver cannot control

There are several outside conditions that affect range to varying degrees:

- the current traffic situation
- driving short distances
- topography
- ambient temperature and headwinds
- road conditions and road surface.

The table shows the approximate relationship between ambient temperature and driving range with normal climate settings and with climate settings turned off.

Up to a certain limit, warmer ambient temperatures increase the electric motor's driving range.

Ambient temperature	Climate settings turned off	Normal climate settings
30 °C (86 °F)	95 %	80 %
20 °C (68 °F)	100 %	90%
10 °C (50 °F)	90 %	80 %
0 °C (32 °F)	80 %	60 %
-10 °C (14 °F)	70 %	40 %

Factors the driver can control

The driver should be aware that the following factors help conserve energy and improve driving range:

- charging the battery regularly
- preconditioning
- Pure drive mode
- climate control settings
- speed and acceleration
- the Hold function
- tires and tire pressure.

The table shows the approximate relationship between constant speed and driving range. Driving at a lower constant speed helps increase the electric motor's driving range.

Constant speed	
100 km/h (62 mph)	50 %
80 km/h (50 mph)	70 %
60 km/h (37 mph)	90 %
50 km/h (31 mph)	100 %

NOTE

- The values shown in the table refer to a new vehicle.
- None of the values are absolute, but are instead affected by e.g. driving style, environment and other conditions.

Battery recycling

Start batteries contain lead and must be recycled in an environmentally sound manner at the end of their service life. Consult with Polestar Customer Support if you have any questions or concerns about the disposal of this type of waste.

Hybrid batteries

For electric propulsion, the vehicle is equipped with two hybrid batteries. One is located under the tunnel console and one is located behind the rear seat in the trunk. These are maintenance-free and rechargeable lithium-ion batteries. Some parts of the rear hybrid batteries are visible through a clear panel in the trunk. Only authorized workshop personnel may handle hybrid batteries.

NOTE

The vehicle cannot be started if the hybrid battery is discharged.

If both the start battery and the hybrid battery are discharged, both batteries must be recharged. In this situation, it is not possible to first charge only the hybrid battery. The start battery must have a certain charge level in order for the hybrid battery to be charged.

WARNING

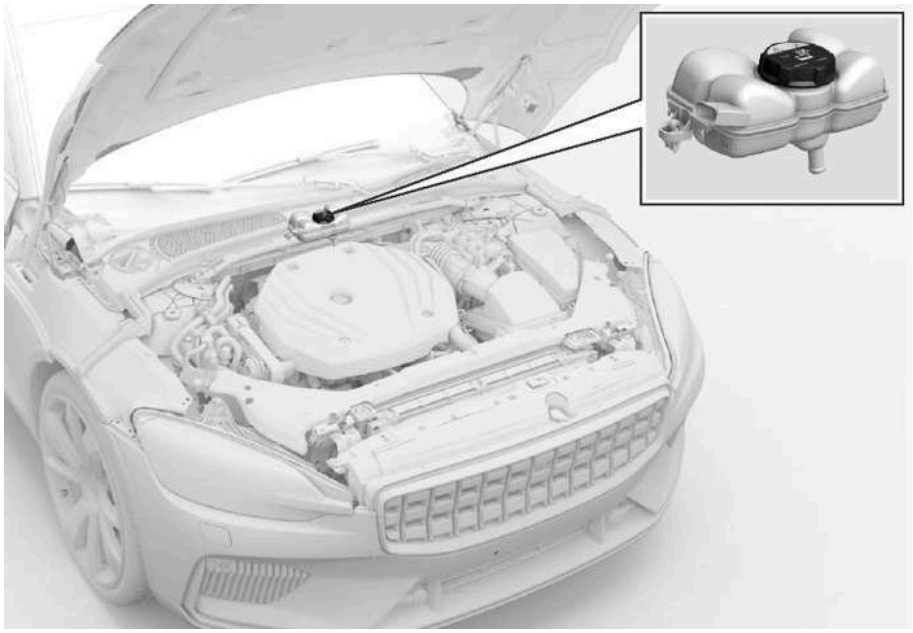
Only a workshop may replace a hybrid battery – contact Polestar Customer Support.

Hybrid battery service life and capacity

The capacity of the hybrid battery decreases with age and use, which could result in increased use of the combustion engine, leading to higher fuel consumption and reduced electric motor range.

Coolant

The hybrid battery's cooling system has its own expansion tank.



IMPORTANT

The hybrid battery's coolant should only be refilled by a workshop – contact Polestar Customer Support.

Specifications for hybrid battery

Type: Lithium-ion

Power reserve: 34 kWh.

Starting and driving

This section contains information about how to start and turn off the vehicle and about the different ignition modes. You will also find information about brakes, transmission, steering wheel paddles, drive modes, refueling, jump starting, towing, etc.

Starting and switching off vehicle

Electronic immobilizer

See Electronic immobilizer.

Starting the vehicle

The vehicle can be started using the start knob in the tunnel console when the key is in the passenger compartment. You can also use your phone as a key if you have Digital Key installed on your phone.



Start knob in the tunnel console.

WARNING

Before starting:

- Buckle your seat belt.
- Adjust the seat, steering wheel and mirrors.
- Make sure you can fully depress the brake pedal.

Make sure the key or phone is in the vehicle.
Press and hold down the brake pedal1 as far as possible. Make sure that gear selector position P or N is selected.
Turn the start knob clockwise and release. The control will automatically return to the original position.

WARNING

- Never use more than one inlay mat at a time on the driver's floor. If any other type of floor mat is used, remove the original mat from the driver's seat floor before driving. All types of mats must be securely anchored in the attachment points in the floor. Make sure the floor mat does not impede the movement of the brake pedal or accelerator pedal in any way, as this could be a serious safety hazard.
- Polestar's floor mats are specially manufactured for your vehicle. They must be properly secured in the attachment points in the floor to help ensure they cannot slide and become trapped under the pedals.

IMPORTANT

If the hybrid battery is discharged and the engine has not responded after 3 attempts – wait for 3 minutes before starting a new attempt. Starting capability increases if the starter battery is given time to recover.

IMPORTANT

The vehicle cannot be started if the charging cable is plugged in. Make sure that the charging cable is unplugged from the charging socket before attempting to start the vehicle.

NOTE

With a cold start, idling speed may be considerably higher than normal. This is done to get the emissions system up to normal operating temperature as quickly as possible, which minimizes exhaust emissions and protects the environment.

IMPORTANT

- When starting in cold weather, the automatic transmission may shift up at slightly higher engine speeds than normal until the automatic transmission fluid reaches normal operating temperature.
- Do not race a cold engine immediately after starting. This could prevent fluids from properly lubricating vital components in the engine before it has reached the proper operating temperature.
- The engine should be idling when the gear selector is moved. Never accelerate until the gear is fully engaged. Accelerating rapidly before a gear is properly engaged could lead to harder wear of components.
- To help prevent the transmission oil from overheating, select P or N when idling at a standstill for prolonged periods of time.

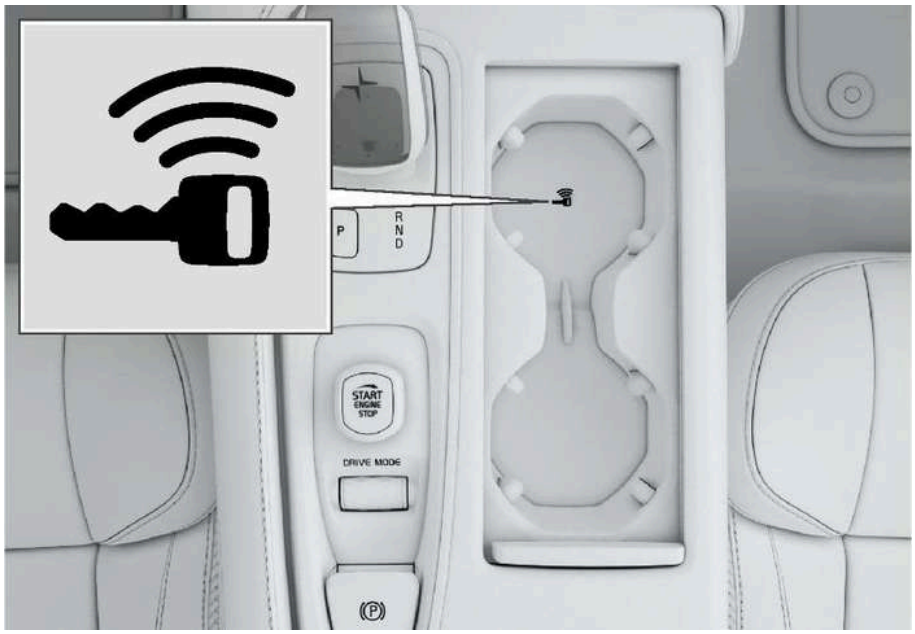
The starter motor will crank until the engine starts or until overheating protection is triggered.

During normal start conditions, the vehicle's electric motor will be prioritized and the gasoline engine will remain off. This means that once the start knob is turned clockwise, the electric motor has been "started" and the vehicle is ready to be driven. The warning and information symbols in the instrument panel will go out and the selected theme will be displayed to indicate that the electric motor is activated.

In some situations, such as in cold weather or if the hybrid battery's charge level is too low, the gasoline engine will start instead.

Error messages

If the Vehicle key not found message is shown in the instrument panel at start, place the key or the phone with Digital Key at the backup reader and then make a new start attempt.



Location of the backup reader in the tunnel console.

NOTE

When the key is placed in the backup reader, make sure that no other vehicle keys, metal objects or electronic devices (e.g. cellular phones, tablets, laptops or chargers) are in the backup reader. Multiple vehicle keys close to each other in the backup reader can disrupt their functionality.

If Vehicle startSystem check, wait is displayed in the instrument panel while attempting to start the vehicle, wait until the message disappears and try again to start the vehicle.

WARNING

Never remove the key or phone with Digital Key that is being used from the vehicle while driving.

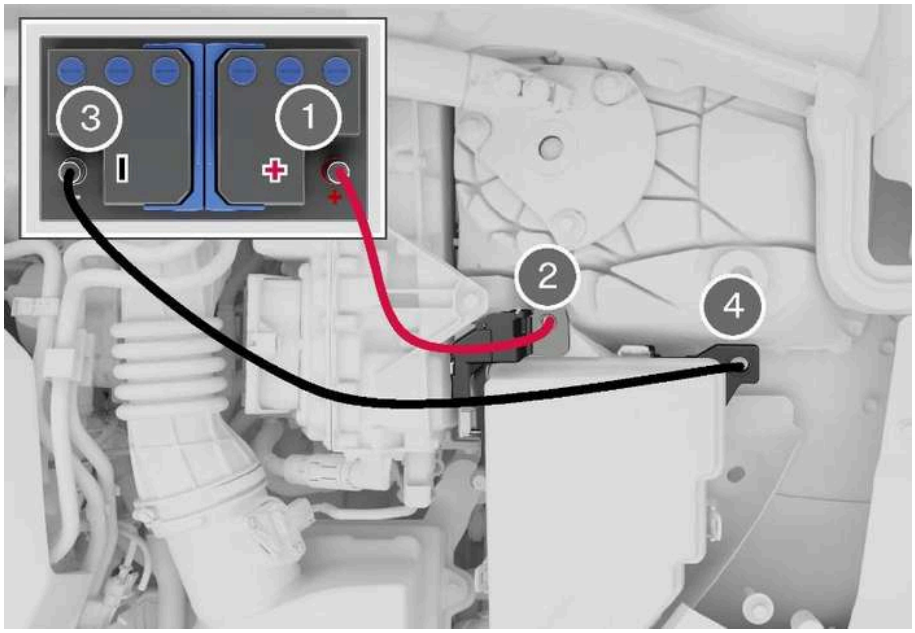
WARNING

- Always take the key or phone with Digital Key with you from the passenger compartment when you leave the vehicle and make sure the ignition is in mode **0**.
- Always put the gear selector in P and apply the parking brake before leaving the vehicle. Never leave the vehicle unsupervised while the engine is running.
- Always open the garage door fully and make sure that ventilation is very good before starting the engine in a garage. The exhaust fumes produced by the vehicle contain carbon monoxide, which is invisible and odorless but very toxic.

1 If the vehicle is moving, it is only necessary to turn the start knob clockwise to start the engine.

Jump starting using another battery

If the start battery is discharged, current from another battery can be used to start the vehicle.



Jumper cable connecting points.

IMPORTANT

The charging point of the vehicle is only intended for jump starting the vehicle in question. The charging point is not intended for jump-starting another vehicle. Using the charging point to start another vehicle could cause a fuse to blow, which would cause the charging point to stop working.

To avoid short circuits or other damage, the following steps are recommended when jump starting the battery:

Put the ignition in mode 0.
Make sure the auxiliary battery (the battery used to jump start the discharged battery) has a voltage of 12 volts.
If the auxiliary battery is in another vehicle, turn off that vehicle's engine and make sure that the vehicles are not touching each other.
Clamp the red jumper cable onto the auxiliary battery's positive (+) terminal (1).

IMPORTANT

Connect the jump cable carefully to prevent short circuits with other components in the engine compartment.

Fold back the cover over your vehicle's positive (+) jump start terminal (2).
Clamp the other end of the red jumper cable to your vehicle's positive (+) jump start terminal (2).
Clamp the black jumper cable onto the auxiliary battery's negative (-) terminal (3).
Clamp the other end of the black jumper cable to your vehicle's negative (-) ground point (4).
Make sure the jumper cables are securely attached to help prevent sparks while jump starting.
Start the engine of the assisting vehicle and let it run for a few minutes at a higher idling speed than normal, about 1500 rpm.
Start your vehicle's engine. If the engine does not start, allow an additional 10 minutes of charging time and then try to start the engine again.

NOTE

When the engine is started under normal conditions, the vehicle's electrical drive motor is prioritized – the gasoline engine remains off. This means that after the start knob has been turned clockwise, the electric motor has "started" and the vehicle is ready to be driven. Start of the electric motor is indicated by the indicator lights on the instrument panel going out and its preselected theme illuminating.

IMPORTANT

Do not touch the connections between the cable and the vehicle during the start attempt. Risk of sparking.

Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order – first the black cables and then the red cables.

Make sure that none of the clamps of the black jumper cables come into contact with either vehicle's positive (+) jump start terminals or either of the red jumper cable's connected clamps.

WARNING

PROPOSITION 65 VARNING!WARNING! Battery posts, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the state of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. Wash hands after handling.

WARNING

- Batteries generate hydrogen gas, which is flammable and explosive. A spark caused by an incorrectly connected jumper cable could be enough to make the battery explode.
- Do not connect the jumper cable to any part of the fuel system or to any moving parts. Avoid touching hot manifolds.
- Battery fluid contains sulfuric acid. Do not allow battery fluid to contact eyes, skin, fabrics or painted surfaces.
- If contact occurs, flush the affected area immediately with water. Obtain medical help immediately if eyes are affected.
- Never expose the battery to open flame or electric spark. Do not smoke near the battery. Failure to follow the instructions for jump starting can lead to injury.

NOTE

The vehicle cannot be started if the hybrid battery is discharged.

NOTE

If the starter battery has been discharged to the extent that the vehicle does not have normal electrical functions and the engine must then be jump-started with an external battery or a battery charger, the Start/Stop function may remain activated. If the Start/Stop function shortly thereafter auto-stops the engine, there is a huge risk that auto-start of the engine will fail due to insufficient battery capacity since the battery had not had time to recharge.

If the vehicle has been jump-started or if there has not been enough time for the battery to be charged with a battery charger, the Start/Stop function should be temporarily deactivated until the battery has been recharged by the vehicle. At an ambient temperature of about +15°C (about 60°F), the battery must be charged by the vehicle for at least one hour. At lower ambient temperatures, the charging time can increase to 3-4 hours. It is advisable to charge the battery with an external battery charger.

Switching off the vehicle

The vehicle can be switched off using the start knob in the tunnel console.



Start knob in the tunnel console.

Turn the start knob clockwise and release to switch off the vehicle. The control will automatically return to the original position.
If the vehicle rolls:

Turn clockwise and hold the knob until the vehicle switches off.

Ignition modes

See Ignition modes.

Selecting ignition mode

See Selecting ignition mode.

Transmission

The kickdown function

Kickdown can be used when maximum acceleration is needed, e.g. when passing.
When the accelerator pedal is depressed all the way to the floor (past the normal full accelerator position), the transmission will automatically engage kickdown, i.e. immediately shift down to a lower gear.

If the accelerator pedal is released from the kickdown position, the transmission will automatically shift up again.

Safety function

The transmission control module is equipped with a downshift protection feature to help prevent the engine from overheating.

In some conditions, the transmission will prevent downshifting/kickdown if this would lead to such high engine speed (rpm) that the engine could be damaged. If the driver still attempts downshifting or kickdown at a high rpm, nothing will happen and the original gear will remain selected.

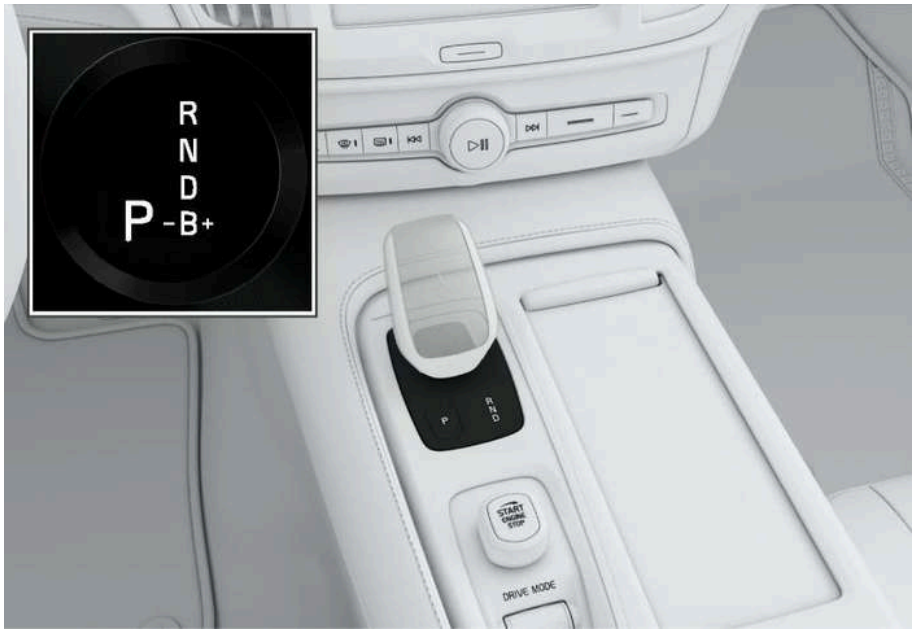
With kickdown, the vehicle can downshift one or more steps at a time depending on the engine speed. The vehicle upshifts when the engine reaches its maximum rpm to prevent engine damage.

Transmission

The transmission is part of the vehicle's driveline (power transmission) between the engine and the drive wheels. The function of the transmission is to change gears depending on speed and power needs.
The vehicle has an 8-speed automatic transmission and two electric motors for rear-wheel drive. The number of gears allows the motors' torque and power band to be effectively utilized. Two of the gears are overdrive gears that save fuel when driving at a constant engine speed. The gear selector or the steering wheel paddles can be used to shift up or down manually. The instrument panel shows the gear currently in use.

Automatic transmission

In vehicles with an automatic transmission, the system selects the gear so that driving will be as energy-efficient as possible. The transmission also has a manual mode.



Overview of gear selector and gear shift pattern in the instrument panel

The instrument panel shows which gear is currently in use:

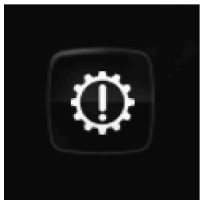
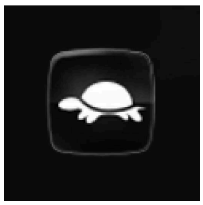
R, N, D or B. P position is electric.

For manual shifting, the gear indicator in the instrument panel displays the gear currently being used.

> **IMPORTANT**
> Check the operating temperature of the transmission to help avoid damage to any of the drive system components. If there is a risk of overheating, a warning symbol will appear in the instrument panel and a text message will be displayed. Follow the recommendations given.

Symbols in the instrument panel

If a problem should occur with the transmission, a symbol and a message will appear in the instrument panel.

Symbol	Meaning
	Information and messages related to the transmission. Follow the recommendations provided.
	Hot or overheated transmission. Follow the recommendations provided.
	Reduced performance/Acceleration performance reduced In the event of a temporary fault in the driveline, the vehicle may go into a "limp home" mode with reduced power output to help avoid damage to the driveline.

Gear selector positions

An appropriate gear is selected automatically depending on the need for speed and power.

Selecting gears

The gear selector is a shift-by-wire selector, where shifting is done electronically instead of mechanically. This makes shifting easier and the gear positions more distinct.



Gear selector and gear selector positions overview.

Change gear position by pushing the spring-loaded gear selector forward or rearward, or to the side for manual shifting.

Gear selector positions

Park - P



Gear selector and P position overview

Park is activated using the P button located next to the gear selector.

In P mode, the transmission is mechanically locked.

Select P when the vehicle is parked or when starting the engine. The vehicle must be stationary when Park is selected.

To move to another gear from Park, the brake pedal must be depressed and the ignition in mode II.

When parking – apply the parking brake before shifting to Park.

WARNING

Always apply the parking brake when parking on an incline. Selecting a gear or **P** position may not be sufficient to keep the vehicle stationary in all situations.

NOTE

The gear selector must be in position **P** in order to lock the vehicle and enable the alarm.

Help functions

The system will automatically shift to P

- if the ignition is switched off while D or R is selected.
- if the driver unbuckles the seat belt and opens the driver's door while the vehicle is running with the gear selector in a gear other than P.

To park a vehicle with an unbuckled seat belt and open door – end P mode by shifting to R or D again.

The system will not automatically shift to P if the ignition is switched off while the gear selector is in the neutral position (N). This is to make it possible to wash the vehicle in an automatic car wash in which the vehicle is pulled forward on rolling wheels.

Reverse - R

Select R when backing up. The vehicle must be stationary when Reverse is selected.

Neutral - N

No gear is selected and the engine can be started. Apply the parking brake if the vehicle is stationary with the gear selector in N.

To move the gear selector from N to another gear, the brake pedal must be depressed and the ignition in mode II.

D drive mode

D is the normal driving gear position. The transmission shifts up or down automatically depending on acceleration and speed.

The vehicle must be stationary when the gear selector is moved from R to D.

Brake - B



Brake position overview B in instrument panel.

From the B position, it is possible to shift manually. B can be selected at any time while driving. When the accelerator pedal is released, the electric motor brakes the vehicle and the hybrid battery is recharged at the same time. This offers additional opportunities to recharge the hybrid battery, since the battery is charged even when the brake pedal is not depressed.

Select the brake position by moving to the side from position D. The currently selected gear will be displayed in the instrument panel.

- Push the gear selector to the right toward "+" (plus) and release to shift up one gear.
- Push the gear selector to the left toward "–" (minus) and release to shift down one gear.
- Push the gear selector rearward to return to D mode.

For smooth shifting and engine performance, the transmission will shift down automatically if the vehicle's speed becomes too low for the selected gear.

All Wheel Drive (AWD)

All-wheel drive (AWD1), also called four-wheel drive, means that power is distributed to all four wheels, which improves traction.
The two electric motors that drive the rear wheels enable electric all-wheel drive functionality. All-wheel drive reacts differently depending on which drive mode is selected.

1 All Wheel Drive

Using the steering wheel paddles to shift

See Using the steering wheel paddles to shift.

Shiftlock

The automatic transmission's shiftlock function helps prevent inadvertently moving the gear selector between different positions.

Automatic shiftlock

The automatic shiftlock has a separate safety system.

From Park - P

To move to another gear from P (Park), the brake pedal must be depressed and the ignition in mode II.

From Neutral - N

If the gear selector is in N and the vehicle has been stationary for at least 3 seconds (with or without the engine running), the gear selector will be locked in that position.

To move the gear selector from N to another gear, the brake pedal must be depressed and the ignition in mode II.

Messages in the instrument panel

If the gear selector is locked in position, a message will appear in the instrument panel, e.g. Gear lever Press brake pedal to activate gear lever.

There is no mechanical shiftlock function.

Brakes

Brakes

Brake Assist System

The brake enhancing system, (BAS1), helps increase braking force and can thereby reduce braking distance.
The system monitors the driver's braking habits and increases braking force when necessary. Braking force can be increased up to the point at which the ABS intervenes. The function is deactivated when pressure on the brake pedal is decreased.

1 Brake Assist System

Braking on salted roads

When driving on salted roads, a layer of salt may form on the brake discs and brake pads.

This could increase stopping distance. Maintain an extra large safety distance to the vehicle ahead. Make sure to also:

- Apply the brakes from time to time to help remove salt. Make sure braking does not pose a risk to any other road users.
- Gently apply the brakes when you have finished driving and before driving again.

Braking on wet roads

Prolonged driving in heavy rain without braking may cause braking effect to be slightly delayed the first time the brakes are applied.
This may also occur after washing the vehicle. It will then be necessary to apply greater pressure to the brake pedal. You should therefore maintain a greater distance to the vehicle ahead.

Firmly apply the brakes after washing the vehicle or driving on wet roads. This helps warm up the brake discs, enabling them to dry more quickly and protecting them against corrosion. Consider the current traffic situation when braking.

Brakes

The brake pedal is used to apply the vehicle's regular brakes, which are part of the brake system.
The vehicle is equipped with two brake circuits. If one brake circuit is damaged, the brake pedal will go down further when depressed. More pressure will then be required from the driver for normal braking effect.

> **WARNING**
> The power brakes only work when the electric motor or combustion engine is running.

If the brake pedal is used when the engine is switched off, greater pressure must be applied to brake the vehicle.

In very hilly areas or when driving with a heavy load, gear position B can be used to augment the brakes with engine braking.

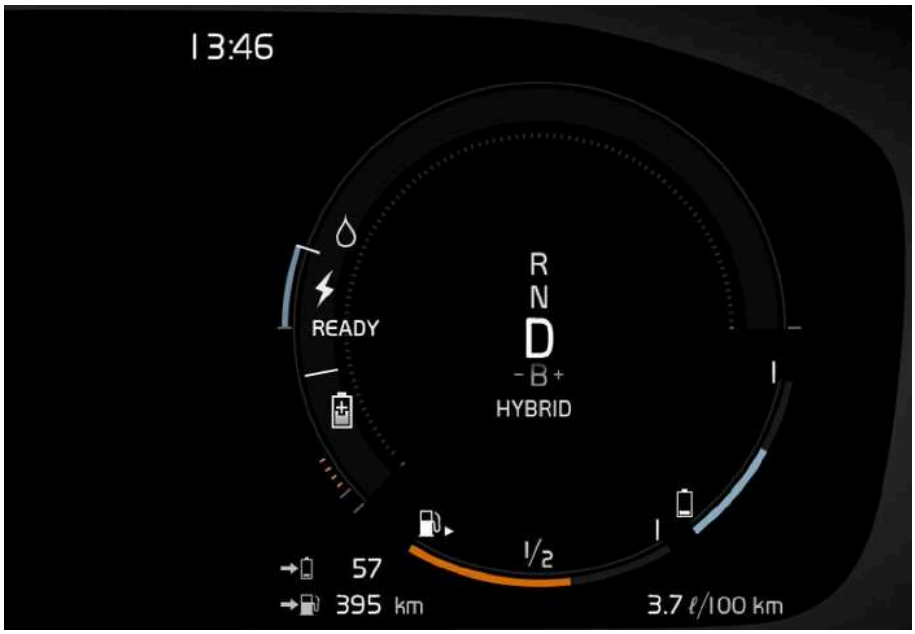
Anti-lock brakes

The vehicle is equipped with an Anti-lock Braking System (ABS[1]), which helps prevent the wheels from locking and helps maintain steering control when braking.

After the vehicle is started, a brief test of the ABS system is automatically performed when the driver releases the brake pedal. An additional automatic test of the system may be performed when the vehicle is traveling at a low speed.

Light braking charges the hybrid battery

When the brakes are applied lightly, the electric motor braking function is used. This converts the vehicle's kinetic energy into electrical energy, which is used to charge the hybrid battery. When the battery is being charged with the electric motor braking function, this will be indicated in the instrument panel.



When the battery is being charged with the electric motor braking function, this will be indicated in the instrument panel.

This function is active at speeds in the range of 150-5 km/h(93-3 mph). When braking at speeds outside of this range, or during harder braking, the hydraulic braking system is used to augment braking. This is indicated in the instrument panel with the pointer down in the red area.

Symbols in the instrument panel

Symbol	Meaning
 2  3	Check the brake fluid level. If the level is low, fill brake fluid and check to determine the reason for the loss of brake fluid.
 2	Fault in pedal sensor.

Symbol	Meaning
 3	
 2  3	Steady glow for 2 seconds after the engine is started: Automatic function check. Steady glow for more than 2 seconds: Fault in the ABS system. The vehicle's regular brake system is still working, but without the ABS function.
	If the message Brake pedalCharacteristics changed Service required is displayed, the "Brake-by-wire" system is not functioning properly. Greater pressure will be required to brake the vehicle.

WARNING

If the warning symbols for both brake fault and ABS fault are lit simultaneously, there may be a fault in the brake system.

- If the level in the brake fluid reservoir is normal when this happens, contact Polestar Customer Support.
- If the brake fluid has fallen below the MIN level in the brake fluid reservoir, the vehicle should not be driven until the brake fluid has been filled. The reason for the brake fluid loss must be checked.

1 Anti-lock Braking System

2 In Canada.

3 In the US.

Maintenance of the brake system

Regularly check the brake system components for wear.

To keep the vehicle as safe and reliable as possible, follow the Polestar service intervals specified in the Status and Warranty booklet. After replacing brake pads and brake discs, braking effect is not adapted until they are "broken in" by

driving a few hundred kilometers (miles). Compensate for the reduced braking effect by applying greater pressure to the brake pedal. Polestar recommends only using Polestar-approved brake pads.

> **IMPORTANT**
>
> The brake system's components should be regularly checked for wear.
>
> Contact Polestar Customer Support for information on procedures.

Parking brake

Parking brake

The parking brake helps keep the vehicle stationary by mechanically locking two wheels.



The parking brake controls are located in the tunnel console between the seats.

When the electric parking brake is being applied, a faint sound can be heard from the brake's electric motor. This sound can also be heard during the automatic function check of the parking brake.

If the vehicle is stationary when the parking brake is activated, it will only be applied to the rear wheels. If it is activated while the vehicle is moving, the normal brakes will be used on all four wheels. Braking will be transferred to only the rear wheels when the vehicle is almost stopped.

Activating and deactivating the parking brake

Use the parking brake to help keep the vehicle stationary when it is parked.

Activating the parking brake



Pull up the control.
The symbol in the instrument panel will illuminate when the parking brake is activated.
Make sure the vehicle is stationary.

Symbol in the instrument panel

Symbol	Meaning
 1  2	The symbol will be illuminated when the parking brake is activated. A flashing symbol indicates that a fault has been detected. Read the message in the instrument panel.

Automatic activation

The parking brake is applied automatically

- when the ignition is switched off and the setting for automatically activating the parking brake is activated in the center display.
- when the gear selector is moved to P on a steep hill.
- if the auto-hold brake function (automatic brake application when the vehicle is stationary) is activated and
  - the vehicle has been stationary for a prolonged period of time (5-10 minutes),

- the vehicle is switched off
- the driver exits the vehicle.

Emergency braking

In an emergency, the parking brake can be activated when the vehicle is moving by pulling and holding up the control. The braking process is canceled when the control is released or if the accelerator pedal is depressed.

> **NOTE**
> In case of emergency braking at high speeds, a signal sounds during the brake procedure.

Deactivating the parking brake



Deactivating manually

Depress the brake pedal firmly.
Press the control.
The parking brake will release and the symbol in the instrument panel will go out.

Deactivating automatically

Start the vehicle.
Depress the brake pedal firmly. Move the gear selector to D or R and press the accelerator pedal.
The parking brake will release and the symbol in the instrument panel will go out.

> **NOTE**
> For automatic deactivation to be possible, the driver's seat belt must be buckled or the driver's door closed.

1 Canadian models.

2 US models.

Parking on a hill

Always use the parking brake when parking on a hill.

WARNING

Always apply the parking brake when parking on an incline. Selecting a gear or **P** position may not be sufficient to keep the vehicle stationary in all situations.

If the vehicle is pointing uphill:

- Turn the front wheels so they are pointing **away from** the curb.

If the vehicle is pointing downhill:

- Turn the front wheels so they are pointing **toward** the curb.

Heavy load uphill

Heavy loads could cause the vehicle to roll backward when the parking brake is released automatically on steep uphill gradients. To help avoid this, pull the control upward while you are driving away. Release the control when the vehicle gains traction.

Settings for automatically activating the parking brake

See Settings for automatically activating the parking brake.

Parking brake malfunction

If you are unable to deactivate or activate the parking brake after several attempts, contact Polestar Customer Support. A audible warning signal will sound if the parking brake is activated while the vehicle is being driven.

If the vehicle must be parked before the problem is rectified, turn the wheels as when parking on an incline and put the gear selector in P.

Low battery charge level

If the battery charge level is too low, it will not be possible to activate or deactivate the parking brake. Connect an auxiliary battery to the vehicle if the battery is discharged.

Replacing brake pads

Due to the design of the electric parking brake, the rear brake pads must be replaced by a workshop. Contact Polestar Customer Support.

Symbols in the instrument panel

Symbol	Meaning
 1	A flashing symbol indicates that a fault has been detected. See the message in the instrument panel.

Symbol	Meaning
 2	
 1  2	Fault in the brake system. See the message in the instrument panel.
	Information message in the instrument panel.

1 Canadian models.

2 US models.

Brake fluid specifications

The medium in the hydraulic brake system is called brake fluid and is used to transfer braking force from e.g. pressure on the brake pedal via a master brake cylinder to one or more slave cylinders, which in turn act on a mechanical brake.
Recommended grade: Polestar Original or similar fluid that meets a combination of Dot 4, 5.1 and ISO 4925 class 6.

> **NOTE**
> Changing or filling brake fluid should be entrusted to an authorized workshop.

Brake functions

The vehicle's brakes are used to reduce speed or prevent the vehicle from rolling.
In addition to the wheel brakes and parking brakes, the vehicle is also equipped with a number of automatic brake assist functions. These systems help the driver by e.g. keeping the vehicle stationary when the brake pedal is not depressed (e.g. at a traffic light or intersection) or when starting up a hill.

Depending on how the vehicle is equipped, the following brake assist functions may be included:

- Auto-hold brake function at a standstill (Auto Hold)
- Hill Start Assist (Hill Start Assist)
- Braking assist after a collision
- City Safety

Auto-hold brakes

With the Auto-hold brake function, the driver can release the brake pedal and the brakes will remain applied, for example, when the vehicle has stopped at a traffic light or intersection.
When the vehicle stops, the brakes are activated automatically. The function can use either the normal brakes or the parking brakes to keep the vehicle stationary and works on flat surfaces or hills. If the driver has their seat belt fastened or if the driver's door is closed, the brakes will disengage automatically when the vehicle starts driving.

> **NOTE**
> When braking to a stop on an uphill or downhill gradient, depress the brake pedal with slightly more force than usual before releasing to ensure that the vehicle cannot move at all.

The parking brake is activated if

- the vehicle is switched off
- the driver's door is opened
- the driver's seat belt is removed
- the vehicle has been stationary for a prolonged period of time (5-10 minutes)

Symbols in the instrument panel

Symbol	Meaning
	This symbol illuminates when the function is using the normal brakes to keep the vehicle stationary.
 1  2	This symbol illuminates when the function is using the parking brake to keep the vehicle stationary.

1 Canadian models.

2 US models.

Activating and deactivating Auto-hold at a standstill

The Auto-hold brake function at a standstill is activated with the button in the tunnel console.



Press the button in the tunnel console to activate or deactivate the function.
The indicator light in the button will illuminate when the function is activated. The function will remain active the next time the vehicle is started.

When shutting off



If the function is active and holding the vehicle stationary using the normal brakes (A symbol lit in the instrument panel), the brake pedal must be depressed while pressing the button in order to deactivate Auto-hold.

- The function will remain off until it is reactivated.

- When Auto-hold is switched off, Hill Start Assist (HSA) will remain active to help prevent the vehicle from rolling backward when starting up a hill.

Braking assist after a collision

See Braking assist after a collision.

Hill Start Assist

The function for assisting when starting the vehicle on inclines (HSA1) helps prevent the vehicle from rolling backward when starting on an uphill gradient. When backing up a hill, HSA helps prevent the vehicle from rolling forward.
The function retains pressure from the brake pedal in the brake system for several seconds after the brake pedal has been released.

This temporary braking effect is released after a few seconds or when the driver begins driving.

Hill Start Assist is available even when the Auto-hold brake function is switched off.

1 Hill Start Assist

Drive systems

Drive systems

See Drive systems.

Starting and stopping the gasoline engine

See Starting and stopping the gasoline engine.

Drive modes

See Drive modes.

Drive modes

Drive modes when using time interval to vehicle ahead

See Drive modes when using time interval to vehicle ahead.

Hold and Charge functions

See Hold and Charge functions.

Drive modes

See Drive modes.

Changing drive mode

Select the drive mode that is adapted to the current driving conditions.

The drive mode is changed using the control in the tunnel console.

Keep in mind that not all drive modes are available in all situations.

To change drive mode:



Press the DRIVE MODE control.
A pop-up menu will appear in the center display.
Roll the wheel upward or downward to the desired drive mode.
Press the drive mode control or tap its button in the center display to confirm the selection.
The selected drive mode is shown in the instrument panel.

Using the electric motor only

See Using the electric motor only.

All Wheel Drive (AWD)

See All Wheel Drive (AWD).

Driving recommendations

Towing using a towline

This section refers to one vehicle being towed behind another using a towline.
Never attempt to tow the vehicle behind another vehicle as this could damage the electric motors. The vehicle must instead be lifted onto a tow truck and transported with all four wheels on the bed or lifting platform of the truck (no wheels may touch the road).

Towing another vehicle

Towing another vehicle requires a lot of power - use the Constant AWD drive mode. This helps charge the hybrid battery and improve the vehicle's driving and roadholding characteristics.

Before towing another vehicle, check applicable speed limit regulations.

Jump starting

Never attempt to tow the vehicle to start the engine as this could damage the electric motors. Use an auxiliary battery if the start battery's charge level is so low that the engine cannot be started.

> **IMPORTANT**
> Attempts to tow-start the vehicle could cause damage to the electrical drive motors and three-way catalytic converter.

Hill Start Assist

See Hill Start Assist.

Braking on salted roads

See Braking on salted roads.

Braking on wet roads

See Braking on wet roads.

Parking on a hill

See Parking on a hill.

Service stations

You can use the vehicle's navigation system to find a route to the nearest service station.
While you are stopped to refuel, it can be a good idea to perform a quick inspection of the vehicle, such as checking tire pressure, lights, wiper blades, filling washer fluid, etc.

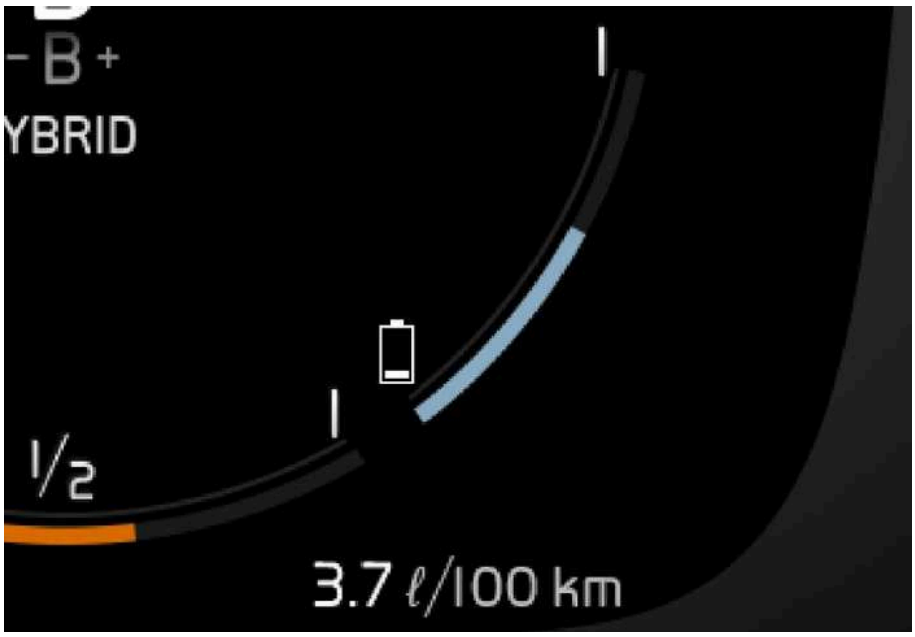
Using the electric motor only

See Using the electric motor only.

Electric driving range

The vehicle's driving range depends on a number of factors. The ability to achieve a long driving range varies according to the outside conditions and to how the vehicle is driven.
The certified value for the distance that can be driven should not be considered an expected driving range. The certified value should primarily be used to compare the results of different vehicles obtained in special test cycles.

Range in instrument panel



When the vehicle leaves the factory, or after a factory reset, range is based on the certified value

After the vehicle has been driven for a period of time, range will be based on historic driving patterns. The amount of history used depends on the battery's level of charge. The range therefore adapts more quickly to changed driving patterns the less charge there is in the battery.

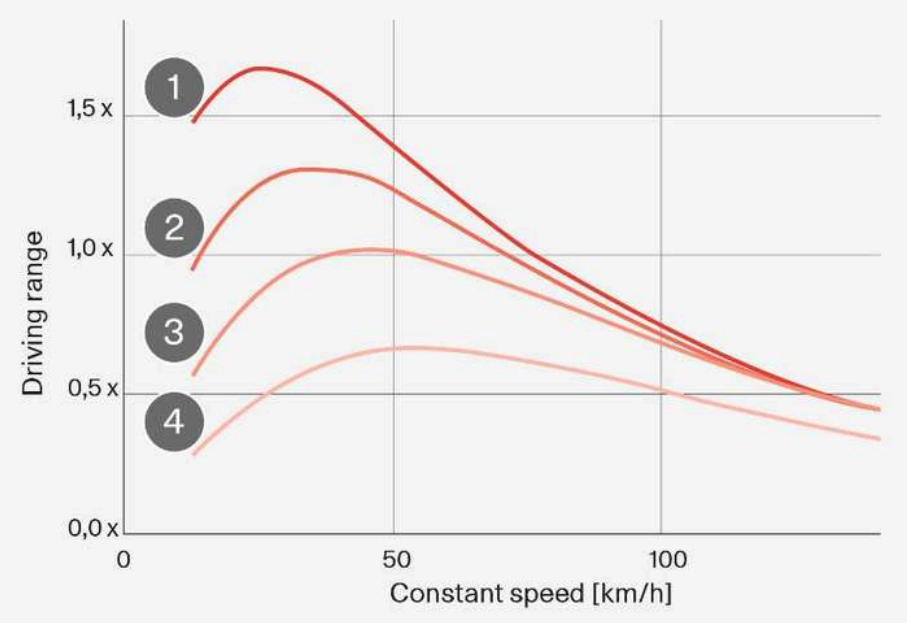
Factors affecting driving range

In addition to historical trip data, there are several other factors that affect range. The longest range is achieved under very favorable conditions when all factors positively influence range.

Examples of factors that affect range:

- speed
- climate control settings
- topography
- preconditioning
- tires and tire pressure
- the current traffic situation
- temperature and weather
- road conditions.

Range based on speed and ambient temperature



1. 20 °C (68 °F) ambient temperature and passenger compartment climate control off.
2. 20 °C (68 °F) ambient temperature and passenger compartment climate control on.
3. 35 °C (95 °F) ambient temperature and passenger compartment climate control on.
4. -10 °C (14 °F) ambient temperature and passenger compartment climate control on.

The graph shows the approximate relationship between constant speed and driving range. Driving at a lower constant speed helps increase the electric motor's driving range.

Higher ambient temperature and deactivated climate system are also more favorable for range.

Economical driving

To achieve the longest possible driving range, the driver should plan the trip and adapt driving style and speed to the current situation.

Before driving

- Whenever possible, precondition the vehicle before driving by connecting the charging cable to an electrical outlet.
- If preconditioning is not possible when it is cold outside, use seat and steering wheel heating first. Avoid heating the entire passenger compartment to reduce the amount of current being taken from the hybrid battery.
- The type of tires and inflation pressure used could affect energy consumption – consult Polestar Customer Support for advice on suitable tires.
- Remove unnecessary items from the vehicle - the heavier the load, the higher the fuel consumption.

While driving

- Activating drive mode Pure.
- Activate the Hold function at higher speeds during journeys that are longer than the range of the electricity.
- Whenever possible, avoid using the Charge function to charge the hybrid battery.
- Maintain a steady speed and a generous following distance to traffic ahead to minimize braking.
- The hybrid battery is recharged during light braking using the brake pedal.
- Higher speeds increase energy consumption because air resistance increases with speed.
- In a cold climate, reduce heating of the windshield/rear window, mirrors, seats and the steering wheel.
- Avoid driving with the windows open.
- Do not use the accelerator pedal to keep the vehicle stationary on an uphill gradient. Instead, activate the braking function at a standstill.
- If possible, turn off the climate system when driving shorter distances after preconditioning.

After driving

- If possible, park in a climate-controlled garage with vehicle charging outlets or stations.

Preparing for a long trip

It is important to have the vehicle's systems and equipment checked carefully before driving long distances.
Check that

- the engine is running properly and that fuel consumption is normal
- there are no leaks (fuel, oil or other fluid)
- the brake pedal is functioning properly
- tire tread depth and air pressure are at correct levels. Change to snow tires when driving in areas where there is a risk of snowy or icy roads
- the start battery is sufficiently charged
- the wiper blades are in good condition

It could also be a good idea to make sure the maps in the navigation system are up to date, and to check requirements for vehicle loads, ferries, car trains, etc.

Keep in mind that data roaming charges may apply if the vehicle is connected to the Internet while in another country or service area.

Battery drain

The electrical functions in the vehicle drain the battery to varying degrees. Avoid using ignition mode II when the engine is switched off. Use ignition mode I instead, as this uses less electrical current.
Note that certain accessories may also drain power from the electrical system. Do not use functions that use a lot of electrical current when the engine is turned off. Examples of such functions are:

- blower
- headlights
- windshield wipers
- audio system (especially at high volume).

If the starter battery voltage is low, a message is shown in the driver display. The vehicle's energy-saving function will then turn off or reduce certain functions, such as the blower and/or the audio system.

Charge the battery by starting the engine and let it run for at least 15 minutes (driving charges the battery faster than letting the engine idle).

Driving through standing water

It may be necessary to drive the vehicle through standing water, e.g. deep puddles or flooding on the road. This must be done with great caution.
To help prevent damage to the vehicle when driving through water:

- Do not drive in water higher than the floor of the vehicle. If possible, check the depth of the water at its deepest point before driving through it. Be particularly careful when driving through flowing water.
- Do not drive faster than walking speed.
- Do not stop the vehicle in the water. Drive carefully forward or back the vehicle out of the water.
- Remember that waves created by passing vehicles could cause the water level to rise above the vehicle's floor level.
- Avoid driving through salt water to help avoid the risk of corrosion.

> **IMPORTANT**
> Because it can be difficult to determine the water depth, Polestar recommends not driving through standing or running water. The driver is always responsible for operating the vehicle in a safe manner and adhering to all applicable laws and regulations.

When you have passed the water, press lightly on the brake pedal and check that the brakes are functioning properly. Water, mud, slush, etc. can make the brake linings slippery, resulting in delayed braking effect.

Winter driving

It is important to check the vehicle before driving in cold/snowy conditions to make sure it can be driven safely.
Before the cold season arrives:

- Make sure the engine coolant contains 50% antifreeze. This mixture helps protect the engine from frost erosion down to approx. –35 °C (–31 °F). Do not mix different types of antifreeze as this could pose a health risk.
- Keep the fuel tank well filled to prevent condensation from forming.
- Check the viscosity of the engine oil. Oil with low viscosity (thinner oil) improves cold-weather starting and reduces fuel consumption when driving with a cold engine.
- Check the condition and charge level of the start battery. Cold weather places greater demands on the start battery and reduces its capacity.

- Use washer fluid containing antifreeze to help prevent ice from forming in the washer fluid reservoir.

See separate section for engine oil recommendations.

Slippery driving conditions

To help optimize traction and roadholding, Polestar recommends using snow tires on all wheels whenever there is a risk of snow or ice on the road.

> **NOTE**
> Certain countries require use of winter tires by law. Not all countries permit the use of studded tires.

Practice driving on slippery surfaces under controlled conditions to learn how the vehicle reacts.

Overheating of engine and transmission

See Overheating of engine and transmission.

Fuel

Fuel gauge

See Fuel gauge.

Fuel

Polestar recommends the use of detergent gasoline to control engine deposits.

Deposit control gasoline (gasoline with detergent additives)

Detergent gasoline is effective in keeping injectors and intake valves clean. Consistent use of deposit control gasolines will help ensure good driveability and fuel economy. If you are not sure whether the gasoline contains deposit control additives, check with the service station operator.

> **NOTE**
> Polestar recommends not using external fuel injector cleaning systems, e.g. do not add detergent additives to gasoline before or after refueling.

Unleaded fuel

All Polestar vehicles have a three-way catalytic converter and must only use unleaded gasoline. US and Canadian regulations require that pumps delivering unleaded gasoline are labeled "UNLEADED". Only the nozzles of these pumps will fit in your vehicle's fuel filler inlet. It is unlawful to dispense leaded fuel into a vehicle labeled "unleaded gasoline only". Leaded gasoline damages the three-way catalytic converter and the heated oxygen sensor system. Repeated use of leaded gasoline will lessen the effectiveness of the emission control system and could result in loss of emission warranty coverage. State and local vehicle inspection programs will make detection of misfueling easier, possibly resulting in emission test failure for misfueled vehicles.

NOTE

Some U.S. and Canadian gasolines contain an octane enhancing additive called methyl-cyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT). If such fuels are used, your Emission Control System performance may be affected, and the Check Engine Light (malfunction indicator light) located on your instrument panel may light. If this occurs, contact Polestar Customer Support.

Gasoline containing alcohol and ethers, "Oxygenated fuels"

Some fuel suppliers sell gasoline containing "oxygenates" which are usually alcohols or ethers. In some areas, state or local laws require that the service pump be marked indicating use of alcohols or ethers. However, there are areas in which the pumps are unmarked. If you are not sure whether there is alcohol or ethers in the gasoline you buy, check with the service station operator. To meet seasonal air quality standards, some areas require the use of "oxygenated" fuel.

Polestar permits the use of the following "oxygenated" fuels. However, the specified octane ratings must still be met.

Alcohol - Ethanol

Fuels containing up to 10% ethanol by volume may be used. Ethanol may also be referred to as Ethyl alcohol, or "Gasohol".

Ethers - MTBE/ETBE: Fuels containing up to 22% MTBE/ETBE by volume may be used.

Methanol

Do not use gasolines containing methanol (methyl alcohol, wood alcohol). This practice can result in vehicle performance deterioration and can damage critical parts in the fuel system. Such damage may not be covered under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Octane rating

Polestar requires premium fuel (91 octane1 or higher) and recommends AKI 93 for best performance and fuel economy. See decal examples in illustrations 1 and 2.

Minimum octane

Decals



Illustration 1: Sample fuel pump octane label1.



Illustration 2: Decal on the inside of the fuel filler flap on vehicles that require premium fuel2.

TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline

Polestar endorses the use of "TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline" where available to help maintain engine performance and reliability. TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline meets a new standard jointly established by leading automotive manufactures to meet the needs of today's advanced engines. Qualifying gasoline retailers (stations) will, in most cases, identify their gasoline as having met the "TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline" standards.

> **NOTE**
> Information about TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline is available at www.toptiergas.com.

NOTE

When switching to higher octane fuel or changing gasoline brands, it may be necessary to fill the tank more than once before a difference in engine operation is noticeable.

Fuel Formulations

Do not use gasoline that contains lead or manganese as a knock inhibitor, and do not use lead additives. Besides damaging the exhaust emission control systems on your vehicle, lead has been strongly linked to certain forms of cancer.

Many fuels contain benzene as a solvent. Unburned benzene has been strongly linked to certain forms of cancer. If you live in an area where you must fill your own gas tank, take precautions. These may include:

- standing upwind away from the filler nozzle while refueling
- refueling only at gas stations with vapor recovery systems that fully seal the mouth of the filler neck during refueling
- wearing neoprene gloves while handling a fuel filler nozzle.

Use of Additives

With the exception of gas line antifreeze during winter months, do not add solvents, thickeners, or other store-bought additives to your vehicle's fuel, cooling, or lubricating systems. Overuse may damage your engine, and some of these additives contain organically volatile chemicals. Do not needlessly expose yourself to these chemicals.

WARNING

Never carry a cell phone that is **switched on** while refueling your vehicle. If the phone rings, this may cause a spark that could ignite gasoline fumes, resulting in fire and injury.

WARNING

Carbon monoxide is a poisonous, colorless, and odorless gas. It is present in all exhaust gases. If you ever smell exhaust inside the vehicle, make sure the passenger compartment is ventilated and contact Polestar Customer Support.

Demanding driving

In demanding driving conditions, such as when driving in hot weather or for prolonged periods at high altitudes, it may be a good idea to switch to a higher-octane fuel (AKI[1] 91 or higher) or to switch to another brand of gasoline in order to fully utilize the vehicle's engine capacity and optimize traction.

1 AKI (Anti Knock Index) is an average value of RON (Research Octane Number) and MON (Motor Octane Number) - (RON)+(MON)/2

2 For supplementary information, see the vehicle's Status and Warranty booklet.

Emission controls

Three-way catalytic converter

- Keep your engine properly tuned. Certain engine malfunctions, particularly involving the electrical, fuel or distributor ignition systems, may cause unusually high three-way catalytic converter temperatures. Do not continue to operate your vehicle if you detect engine misfire, noticeable loss of power or other unusual operating conditions, such as engine overheating or backfiring. A properly tuned engine will help avoid malfunctions that could damage the three-way catalytic converter.
- Do not park your vehicle over combustible materials, such as grass or leaves, which can come into contact with the hot exhaust system and cause such materials to ignite under certain wind and weather conditions.

- Excessive starter cranking (in excess of one minute), or an intermittently firing or flooded engine can cause three-way catalytic converter or exhaust system overheating.
- Remember that tampering or unauthorized modifications to the engine, the Engine Control Module, or the vehicle may be illegal and can cause three-way catalytic converter or exhaust system overheating. This includes: altering fuel injection settings or components, altering emission system components or location or removing components, and/or repeated use of leaded fuel.

> **NOTE**
> Unleaded fuel is required for vehicles with three-way catalytic converters.

Heated oxygen sensors

The heated oxygen sensors monitor the oxygen content of the exhaust gases. Readings are fed into a control module that continuously monitors engine functions and controls fuel injection. The ratio of fuel to air into the engine is continuously adjusted for efficient combustion to help reduce harmful emissions.

Refueling

Service stations

See Service stations.

Fuel tank volume

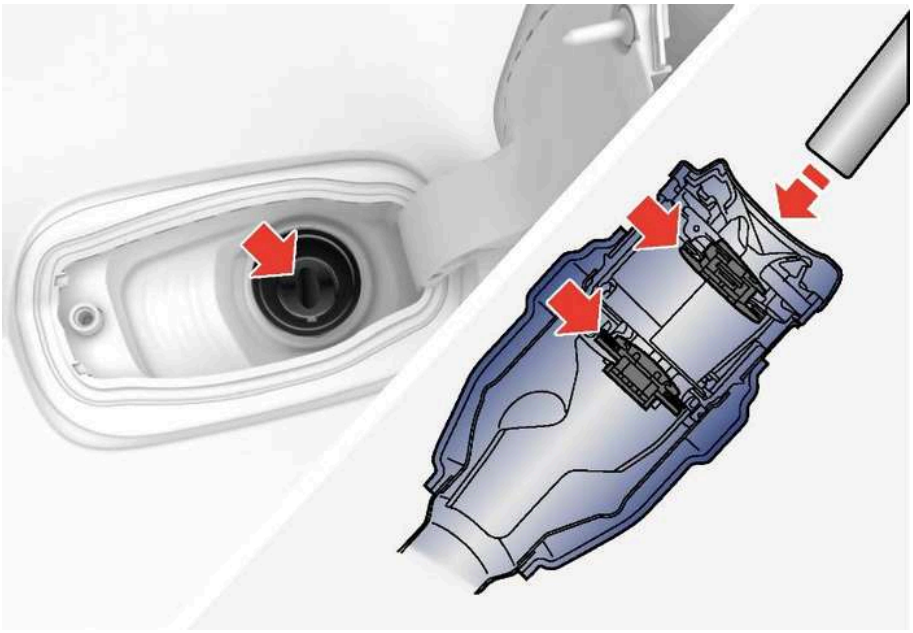
The fuel tank's refillable volume is shown in the table below.

Liter (approx)	60
US gallons (approx)	15.9

Refueling

The fuel tank is equipped with a fuel filling system without a cover.

Refueling the vehicle at a service station



It is important to insert the pump's nozzle past both of the two flaps in the fuel filler pipe before beginning fueling.

Instructions for fueling:
Turn off the engine and open the fuel filler door.

> **NOTE**
>
> Refueling must be done within approximately 15 minutes of opening the fuel filler door. After this time, the valve opened by pushing the button for opening the fuel filler door will close and it will no longer be possible to refuel without the pump's nozzle switching off.
>
> If the valve is closed before refueling is complete - press the button again and wait until the driver display shows the message Fuel tank Ready for refueling.

Select a fuel approved for use in the vehicle. For more information on approved fuels, see the section on “Fuel”.

Insert the pump's nozzle into the fuel filler pipe's opening. There are two flaps just inside the fuel filler pipe and the pump's nozzle must push both of these flaps open before fuel can be added.
Avoid overfilling the tank. Do not press the handle on the filler nozzle again after it has initially stopped pumping.
The fuel tank is now filled.

> **NOTE**
>
> An over-full tank may overflow in hot weather.

> **IMPORTANT**
>
> Avoid spilling gasoline during refueling. In addition to causing damage to the environment, gasolines containing alcohol can cause damage to painted surfaces, which may not be covered under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Refueling from a fuel container

When refueling from a fuel container, use the funnel stowed in the side storage compartment in the trunk.

Open the fuel filler door.

Insert the funnel into the fuel filler pipe's opening. There are two flaps just inside the fuel filler pipe and the tube section of the funnel must push both of these flaps open before fuel can be added.

WARNING

California Proposition 65

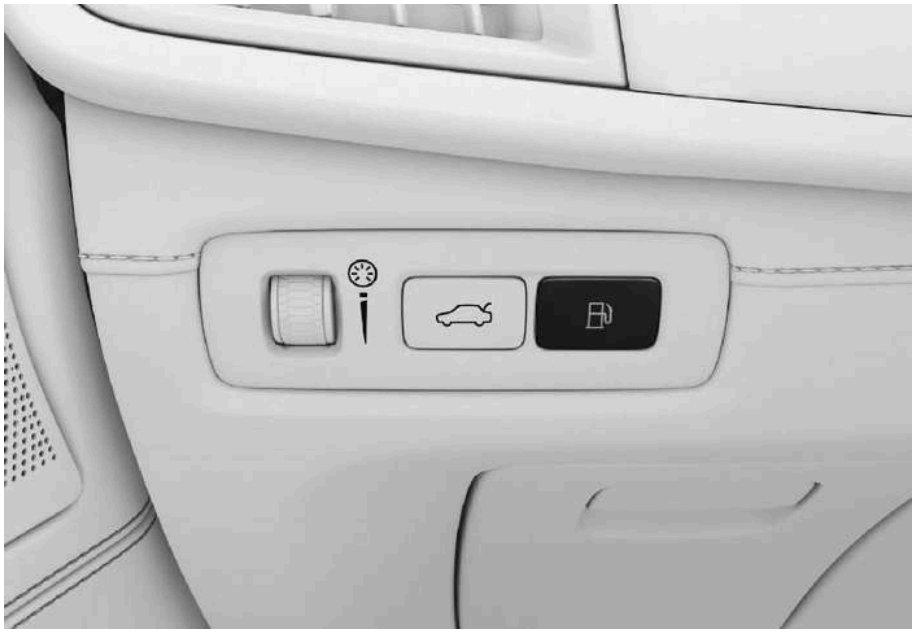
Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

Opening/closing the fuel filler door

A button on the instrument panel is used to unlock the fuel filler door.



An arrow next to the fuel pump symbol in the instrument panel indicates the side of the vehicle on which the fuel filler door is located.



Press the button on the dashboard.
Pressure equalization in the fuel tank causes a slight delay before the fuel filler door opens. The message Preparing for refuel Fuel lid will be unlocked when ready will appear in the instrument panel. When the system is ready, the message Fuel tank Ready for refueling will be shown. If the gasoline engine is activated when the button is pressed, it will usually be deactivated and the vehicle will switch to electric propulsion.

> **NOTE**
> Refueling must be done within approximately 15 minutes of opening the fuel filler door. After this time, the valve opened by pushing the button for opening the fuel filler door will close and it will no longer be possible to refuel without the pump's nozzle switching off.
>
> If the valve is closed before refueling is complete - press the button again and wait until the driver display shows the message Fuel tank Ready for refueling.

After refueling, press the fuel filler door lightly to close it.

Emission control system

Emission controls

See Emission controls.

Electric motor and charging

Charging hybrid battery

Charging status in the instrument panel

See Charging status in the instrument panel.

Opening and closing the charging socket cover

See Opening and closing the charging socket cover.

Charging status in the vehicle's charging socket

See Charging status in the vehicle's charging socket.

Charge cable

See Charge cable.

Charging cable residual current device

See Charging cable residual current device.

Charging status in the charging cable's charging module

See Charging status in the charging cable's charging module.

Temperature monitoring of the charging cable

See Temperature monitoring of the charging cable.

Charging of the hybrid batteries

See Charging of the hybrid batteries.

Initiating charging of the hybrid batteries

See Initiating charging of the hybrid batteries.

Stopping charging of the hybrid batteries

See Stopping charging of the hybrid batteries.

Charging output

See Charging output.

Hybrid battery gauge

See Hybrid battery gauge.

Hybrid gauge

See Hybrid gauge.

Drive systems

See Drive systems.

Starting and stopping the gasoline engine

See Starting and stopping the gasoline engine.

Hold and Charge functions

See Hold and Charge functions.

Drive modes

See Drive modes.

General information about hybrid operation

See General information about hybrid operation.

Hybrid-related symbols and messages in the instrument panel

See Hybrid-related symbols and messages in the instrument panel.

Recommendations for long-term storage

See Recommendations for long-term storage.

Using the electric motor only

See Using the electric motor only.

Factors affecting electric motor range

See Factors affecting electric motor range.

Battery recycling

See Battery recycling.

Hybrid batteries

See Hybrid batteries.

HomeLink

HomeLink®

See HomeLink®.

Using HomeLink®

Once HomeLink® is programmed, it can be used instead of the separate remote controls.
Press and hold the programming button. The garage door, gate, alarm system, etc. will be activated (this may take several seconds). If the button is held down for more than 20 seconds, reprogramming will begin. The indicator light will glow steadily or flash when the button has been pressed. The original remote controls may be used concurrently with HomeLink® if desired.

NOTE

When the ignition is switched off, HomeLink® will be active for at least 7 minutes.

NOTE

HomeLink® cannot be used if the car is locked and the alarm is armed from the outside.

WARNING

- If you use HomeLink® to open a garage door or gate, be sure no one is near the gate or door while it is in motion.
- Do not use HomeLink® with any garage door opener that lacks safety stop and reverse features as required by US federal safety standards (this includes any garage door opener model manufactured before April 1, 1982). A garage door that cannot detect an object – signaling the door to stop and reverse – does not meet current U.S. federal safety standards. For more information, contact HomeLink at: www.homelink.com.

* Option/accessory.

1 Certain markets only.

Programming HomeLink®

Follow these instructions to program HomeLink®, reset all programming, or program individual buttons.

NOTE

In some vehicles, the ignition must be on or in the "accessory position" before HomeLink® can be programmed or used. It can be a good idea to put new batteries in the remote control being replaced by HomeLink® for faster programming and better radio signal transmission. The HomeLink® buttons should be reset before programming.

WARNING

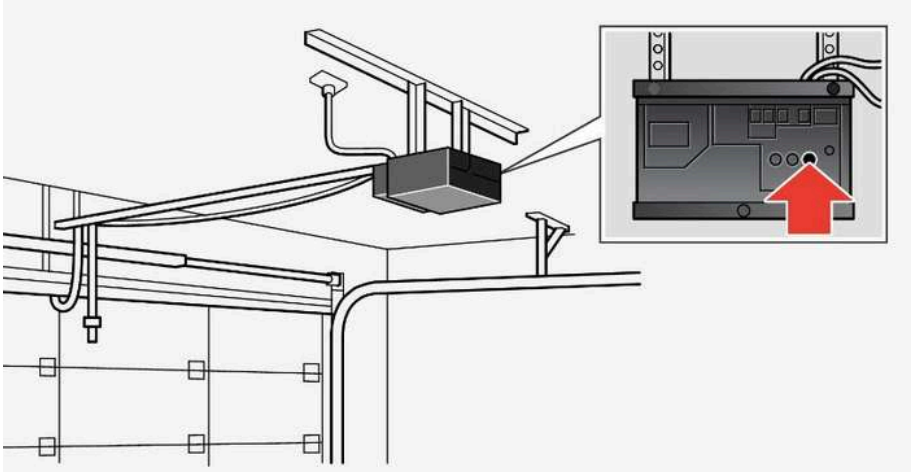
While HomeLink® is being programmed, the garage door or gate being programmed may be activated. Make sure that no one is near the door or gate during programming. When programming a garage door opener, it is advised to park outside of the garage.

Point the remote control at the HomeLink® button to be programmed and hold it about 2-8 cm (1-3 inches) from the button. Do not obstruct the HomeLink® indicator light.

Note: Some remote controls are more effective at programming HomeLink® from a distance of about 15-20 cm (6-12 inches). Keep this in mind if you experience any programming difficulties.

Press and hold both the remote control button and the HomeLink® button to be programmed.
Do not release the buttons until the indicator light has stopped flashing slowly (about once a second) and either flashes quickly (about 10 times a second) or glows steadily.
If the indicator light glows steadily: Indication that programming is complete. Press the programmed button twice to activate.

If the indicator light flashes quickly: The device being programmed with HomeLink® may have a security function that requires an extra step. Try pressing the programmed button twice to see whether the programming works. Otherwise, continue with the following steps.



Locate the "training" button1 on the receiver for the e.g. garage door opener. It is usually located near the antenna bracket on the receiver.
Press and release the "training" button once. Programming must be completed within 30 seconds after pressing the button.

Press and release the HomeLink® button to be programmed. Repeat the press/hold/release sequence a second time.
For some receivers, the sequence may need to be repeated a third time.
Programming is now completed and the garage door, gate, etc. should now be activated when the programmed button is pressed.

If you experience any difficulties programming, please contact HomeLink® at: www.HomeLink.com, or call 1–800–355–3515.

Programming individual buttons

To program an individual HomeLink® button:
Press and hold the desired button for about 20 seconds.

When the indicator light on HomeLink® starts flashing slowly, it is possible to program as usual.

Note: If the button you are reprogramming does not program with a new device, it will return to the previously saved programming.

Resetting the HomeLink® buttons

It is only possible to reset all HomeLink® buttons at once. It is not possible to reset individual buttons. Individual buttons can only be reprogrammed.

Press and hold the outer buttons (1 and 3) on HomeLink® for about 10 seconds.
When the indicator light goes from a steady glow to flashing, the buttons have been reset and are ready for reprogramming.

1 The name and color of the button varies depending on the manufacturer.

Type approval for HomeLink®

See Type approval for HomeLink®.

Compass

Compass

An integrated compass in the upper right corner of the rearview mirror shows the direction the vehicle is traveling.



Rearview mirror with compass.

Eight different compass directions are shown with the abbreviations: N (north), NE (northeast), E (east), SE (southeast), S (south), SW (southwest), W (west) and NW (northwest).

Activating and deactivating the compass

An integrated compass in the upper right corner of the rearview mirror shows the direction the vehicle is traveling.
The compass is automatically activated when the vehicle is started.

To deactivate/activate the compass manually:

Use a paper clip or similar object to press the button on the bottom of the mirror.
If the compass is deactivated when the vehicle is switched off, it will not be activated the next time the vehicle is started. The compass will then need to be activated manually.

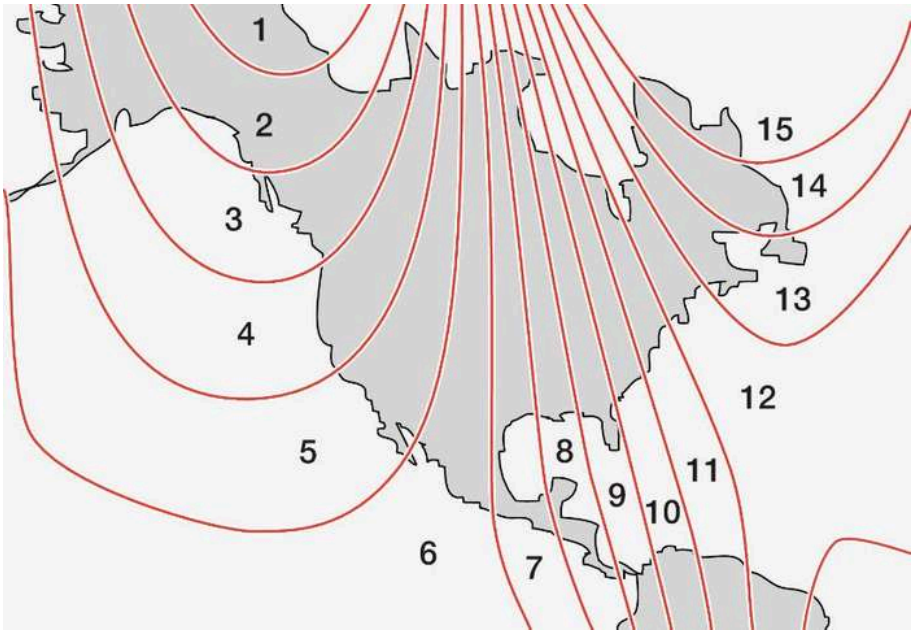
Calibrating the compass

The globe is divided into 15 magnetic zones. The compass should be calibrated if the vehicle is driven from one zone to another.
Stop the vehicle in a large, open area away from steel constructions and high-voltage power lines.

Start the engine and switch off all electrical equipment (climate system, wipers, etc.) and make sure all doors are closed.

> **NOTE**
> Calibration may fail or not even be initiated if electrical equipment is not turned off.

Hold the button on the bottom of the rearview mirror pressed for about 3 seconds (using e.g. a paper clip). The number of the current magnetic zone is shown.



Magnetic zones.

Press the button on the underside of the mirror repeatedly until the desired magnetic zone (1–15) appears (see the map of magnetic zones).
Wait until the display again shows C, or press and hold the button on the underside of the rearview mirror for approx. 6 seconds until C is displayed.
Drive slowly in a circle at a speed of no more than 10 km/h (6 mph) until a compass direction is shown in the display. This indicates that calibration is complete. Drive in a circle two more times to fine-tune the calibration.
If C is shown in the display when the windshield heating function is activated, perform step 6 above with the heating function on.
Repeat the above procedure as needed.

Towing

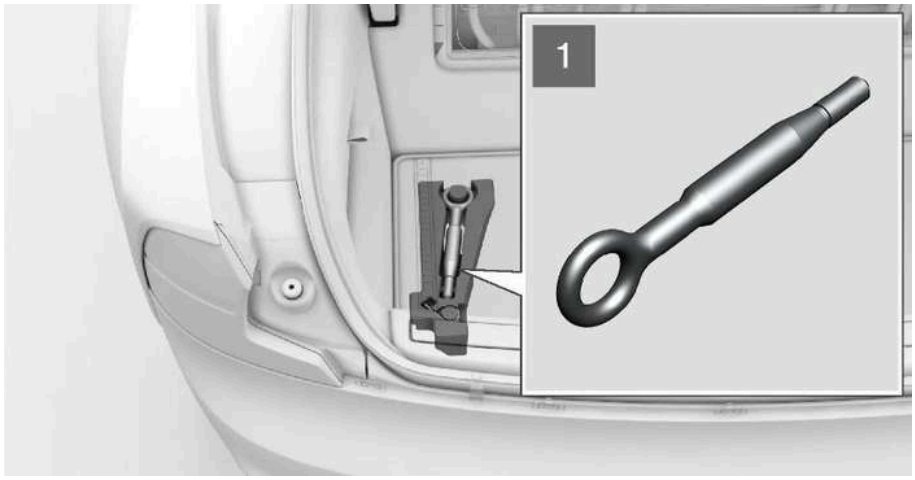
Towing using a towline

See Towing using a towline.

Attaching and removing the towing eyelet

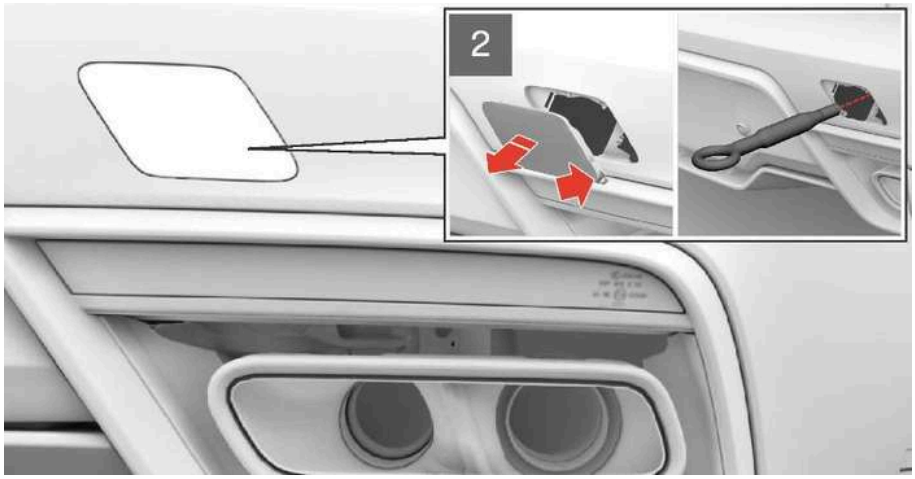
Use the towing eyelet to tow another vehicle. Screw the towing eyelet securely into place in the threaded outlet behind the cover on the right-hand side of the rear bumper.

Attaching the towing eyelet



1

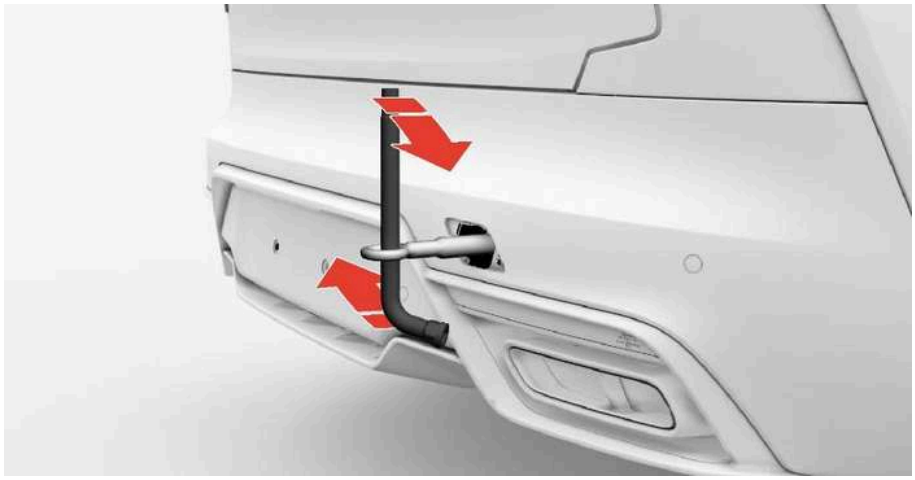
Take out the towing eyelet, which is stored in a foam block under the floor in the cargo compartment.



2

Remove the cover by pressing on the mark with a finger while folding out the opposite side/corner.

The cover turns along its center line and can then be removed.
Screw the towing eyelet into place as far as possible.



Fasten the eyelet securing by, for example, inserting a lug wrench through it and using this as a lever.

IMPORTANT

It is important that the towing eye is screwed in securely as far as possible.

Removing the towing eyelet

Unscrew the towing eyelet after use and return it to its storage location in the foam block.

Replace the cover on the bumper.

Recovery

This section refers to transporting the vehicle with a tow truck or similar vehicle.
Call a professional towing service for assistance.

In certain conditions, the towing eyelet can be used to pull the vehicle onto a flatbed tow truck.

IMPORTANT

Note that the vehicle must always be towed raised with all wheels on the tow truck.

WARNING

No person or object should be behind the tow truck when the vehicle is lifted onto the bed of the truck.

Safety mode

See Safety mode.

Starting and moving the vehicle when it is in safety mode

See Starting and moving the vehicle when it is in safety mode.

Suspension

Suspension

The shock absorbers control the vehicle's body movements as needed and dampen the impact of road irregularities. This is done to provide optimal comfort and function while driving.

Manually adjustable shock absorbers

Polestar 1 is equipped with Öhlins adjustable shock absorbers. There are three recommended positions for setting of the front and rear shock absorbers. In addition to the factory setting, Performance, there is also a stiffer setting, Performance +, and a softer setting, Dynamic.

Performance +

In Performance + mode, the vehicle's suspension feels stiffer. This mode is designed for driving on smoother roads and works well in combination with Power drive mode.

Performance

Performance mode is designed for daily driving on public roads. This mode is the vehicle's default mode.

Dynamic

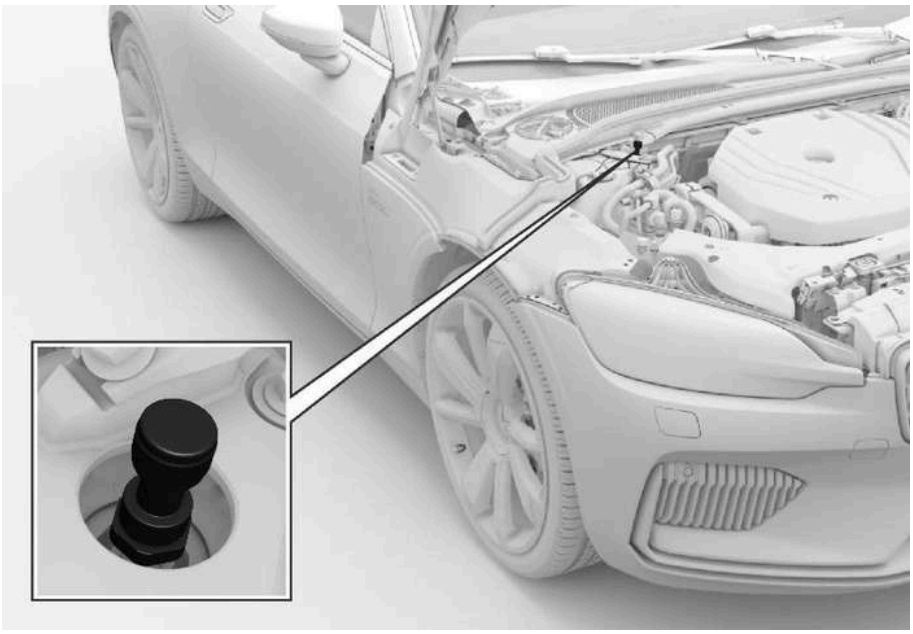
Dynamic mode provides softer suspension that minimizes road irregularities while maintaining control.

Adjusting suspension settings

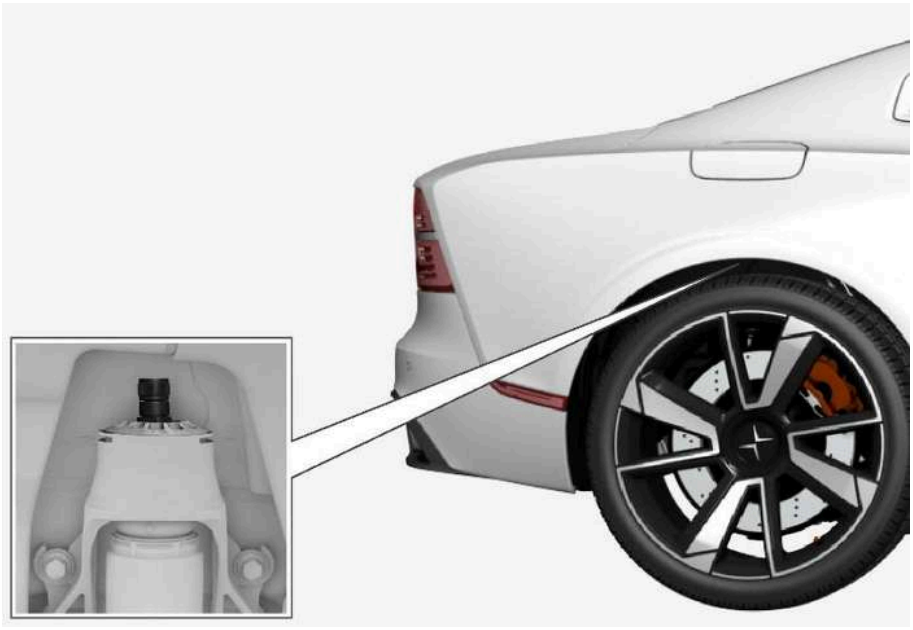
The shock absorber settings can be adjusted for driving in other conditions or on particular road surfaces.

Location of adjustment knobs

There are four adjustment knobs, two for the front shock absorbers and two for the rear. There are adjustment knobs above each wheel. The adjustment knobs for the front wheels are located under the engine compartment hood. The adjustment knobs for the rear wheels are located above each wheel in the wheel housing.



Location of adjustment knob, front wheel.



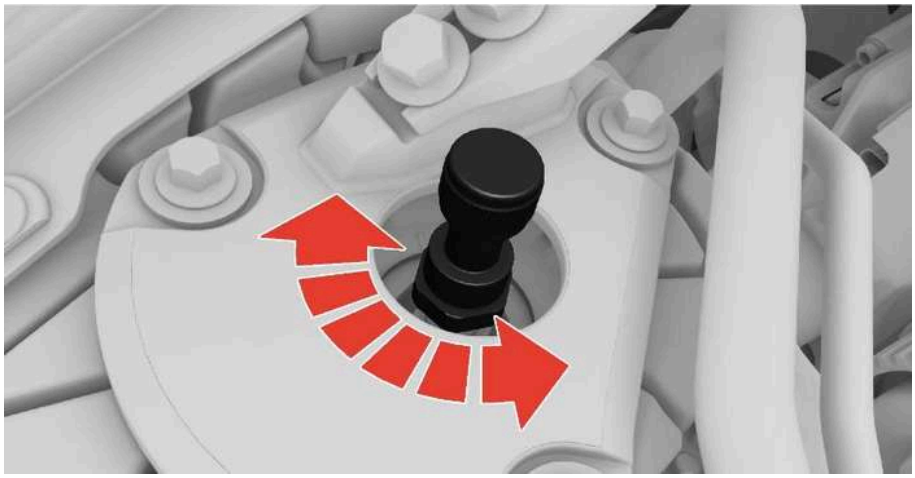
Location of adjustment knob, rear wheel.

NOTE

The closer to position 0 the adjustment knob is set, the stiffer the suspension.

Adjusting front suspension settings

Make sure the adjustment knob is set to 0 before starting the adjustment. This makes it easier to determine what adjustment position is set.



Turn the adjustment knob clockwise or counterclockwise to change the adjustment position.

1

Turn the knob clockwise until it stops to get to adjustment position 0.

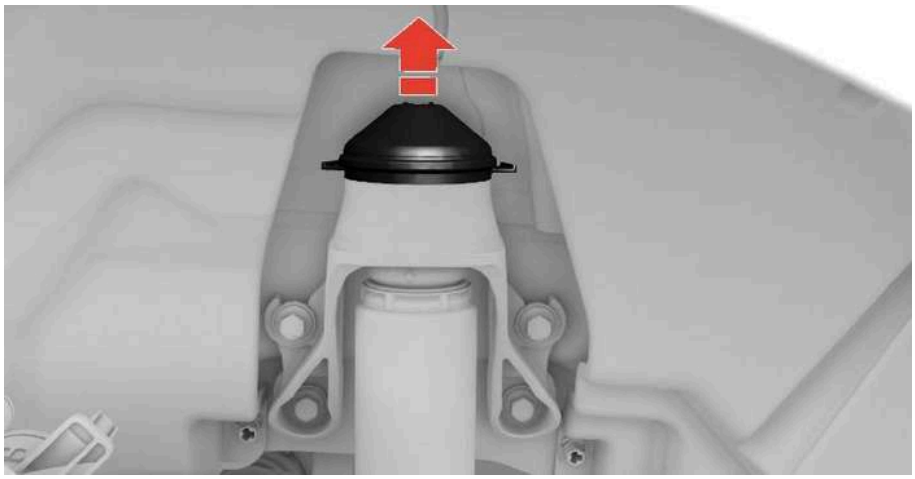
2

Turn the knob counterclockwise to the desired adjustment position. You should feel and hear a click each time the adjustment position is changed.

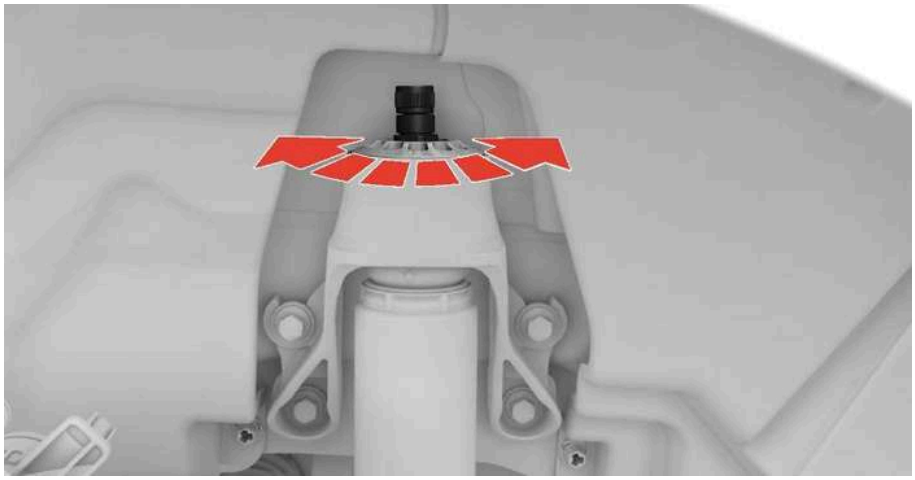
Then follow the same procedure for the second tire.

Adjusting rear suspension settings

The rear adjustment knobs are located above the tire inside the wheel housing. To access the rear adjustment knobs, the vehicle must be raised using a jack; see separate section.



The rubber cap is located above the adjustment knob.



Turn the adjustment knob clockwise or counterclockwise to change the adjustment position.

1

Remove the protective rubber cap over the adjustment knob.

2

Turn the knob clockwise until it stops to get to adjustment position 0.

3

Turn the adjustment knob counterclockwise to the desired adjustment position. You should feel and hear a click each time the adjustment position is changed.

When the desired position has been reached, replace the protective rubber cap. Then follow the same procedure for the second tire.

> **NOTE**
> For optimal performance, Polestar recommends that the adjustment knobs are set at the same position for each axle.

Recommended positions

Position	Front	Rear
Performance +	adjustment position 2	adjustment position 3
Performance	adjustment position 9	adjustment position 10
Dynamic	adjustment position 15	adjustment position 16

Spoiler

Active spoiler

The vehicle is equipped with an adaptive spoiler located in the vehicle's trunk lid. The spoiler is designed to increase stability at high speeds. The spoiler can also be extended manually from its retracted and flush position.

Automatic extension and retraction of spoiler

The spoiler is automatically extended from its flush position in the trunk lid when the vehicle reaches a speed of 100 km/h (62 mph). The spoiler is extended when the vehicle's speed is reduced to 70 km/h (43 mph).

WARNING

Heavy loads of ice and snow could damage the spoiler. Make sure to keep the bumper clean.

WARNING

Make sure the spoiler is retracted to its flush position in automatic car washes or when using a high-pressure wash.

Symbols in the instrument panel

A number of messages relating to the active spoiler can be shown in the instrument panel in the event of a fault.

Symbol	Message	Meaning
	Spoiler malfunctionStay below 200 km/h or Spoiler malfunctionStay below 125 mph	Something is preventing extension of the spoiler. Make sure that ice or another object is not blocking the spoiler. If you experience any problems, contact Polestar Customer Support.
	Spoiler blockedSee Manual	Something is preventing retraction of the spoiler. Make sure that ice or another object is not blocking the spoiler. If you experience any problems, contact Polestar Customer Support.

Spoiler settings

The spoiler can be manually extended/retracted using the buttons on the inside of the driver's door. The spoiler only has two positions – fully extended or fully retracted.

Extending the spoiler

To retract the spoiler, press and hold the button with the downward-facing arrow on the inside of the driver's side.



Overview of button on the inside of the driver's door.

The vehicle must be in at least ignition mode **II**.

Hold the button down until the spoiler is completely extended.
The indicator light will glow steadily when the spoiler is fully extended.

> **WARNING**
> Be aware of the risk of injury when raising the spoiler at low speeds.

Retracting the spoiler

To retract the spoiler, press and hold the button with the downward-facing arrow on the inside of the driver's side.



Overview of button on the inside of the driver's door.

The vehicle must be in at least ignition mode **II**.
Press and hold the button until the spoiler is fully retracted and the indicator light goes out.

Audio, media and Internet

This section contains information about the radio, media player, phone, voice control, apps, etc. and which settings you can adjust. You will also find information about how to connect the vehicle to the Internet and how to connect your cellular phone to the vehicle.

Radio

HD Radio

HD Radio™

HD Radio is a brand name registered by the DTS, Inc.1. They are the developer of a broadcasting technology called IBOC or In Band On Channel, which refers to the method of transmitting a digital radio broadcast signal centered on the same frequency as the FM station's present frequency.

Introduction



Display when the radio is receiving an HD Radio broadcast (generic illustration)

> **NOTE**
> HD Radio volume may fade in and out at times due to coverage limitations.

The IBOC system is referred to as a "hybrid" since it is both analog and digital. During hybrid operation, receivers still continue to receive the analog (non-digital) signal. HD Radio receivers incorporate both modes of reception, where the receiver will automatically switch to the analog signal if the digital signal cannot be decoded or is lost by the receiver.

When you have tuned to an HD Radio station, the HD symbol will appear in the infotainment system display. The symbol will be displayed in different colors:

- **Grayed-out symbol**: No HD Radio broadcast reception
- **White symbol**: the radio is actively receiving an HD broadcast

- **Orange symbol**: the radio is receiving an HD broadcast with digital sound

More information about HD Radio and IBOC can be found on DTS, Inc.'s website, www.dts.com.

Artist Experience™

A radio station's logo and album art can be displayed. If a station opts to provide this information, it is broadcast once every 12 minutes, which means that there may be a delay before the logo/album art appear on the screen. The radio can store 100 station logos so the next time the radio is tuned to the same station, the logo will be displayed immediately. Album art is synched with the artist that you are currently listening to.

Ball game mode

This feature means that a main FM station (HD1) will broadcast live events, where the content of the programming is more important than sound quality, in analog mode only to help prevent the delay between analog and digital broadcasting. The HD Radio symbol will be white during live broadcasts and "Live" will be displayed next to the symbol.

Benefits of digital broadcasting

- Better sound (FM sounds near CD quality).
- Some FM frequencies offer a greater number of listening choices through multicasting (consisting of a frequency's main channel and any sub-channels that may also be available on that particular frequency.)
- When receiving a digital signal there is no multipath disturbance or hisses/pops/crackling due to outside influences.

How HD Radio ™ Technology broadcasting works

HD Radio works similarly to conventional radio and broadcasts of this type are available in many areas of the United States. However, there are a few key differences:

- Instead of transmitting one analog signal, stations send out a bundled signal – both analog and digital.
- An HD Radio receiver can receive both digital and analog broadcasts. Depending on the terrain and location of the vehicle (which will influence the signal strength), the receiver will determine which signal to receive.

1 HD Radio™ technology is manufactured under license from DTS, Inc. U.S. and Foreign Patents. HD Radio™ and the HD and HD Radio logos are proprietary trademarks of DTS, Inc.

HD Radio™ sub-channels

In many cases, a main HD Radio station (FM wavebands only) will also have sub-channels offering additional types of programming or music.

Sub-channels



Example of an HD Radio station with sub-channels

If any sub-channels are available, they will listed below the main channel on the screen. In this example, WILD-FM HD2 is a sub-channel.

Selecting sub-channels

To listen to a station's sub-channel(s), tap the station on the screen or press the forward/back arrow keys on the right-side steering wheel keypad or below the screen.

Sub-channels can also be saved as radio favorites.

If you tap a sub-channel favorite, it may take up to **6 seconds** before the channel becomes audible. If you tap a station while you are out of digital range of the transmitter, No reception will be displayed.

Activating and deactivating the HD Radio™

HD Radio is deactivated when the car leaves the factory.
When listening to an HD Radio station and driving through areas with weak HD signals (fringe areas), you may experience that the radio repeatedly switches between analog/digital and digital/analog reception. If this happens, it may be desirable to switch HD off.

Carry out the following to activate or deactivate HD Radio:
Drag down the top view and tap on Settings.
Press Media and FM Radio.
Press HD Radio FM to activate/deactivate the function.
If HD radio is deactivated, the radio will be unable to receive digital broadcasts but it will continue to function as a conventional radio (analog FM receiver). Please note that when HD is switched off, it will not be possible to tune in to sub-channels.

HD Radio™ limitations

Limitations

- **Main channel vs. sub-channels (FM only)**: The main channel is the only channel that can receive in hybrid mode (both digital and analog). If a frequency has sub-channels, they are broadcast in digital mode only. The main FM

channel will be displayed as, for example, "WRIF-FM HD1". The sub-FM channels will be displayed as"WRIF-FM HD2", "WRIF-FM HD3", etc.

- **Reception coverage area**: Due to current IBOC transmitter power limitations, the reception coverage area in digital mode is somewhat more limited than the station's analog coverage area. Be aware that, like all radio transmission technology, terrain, time of day, vegetation and buildings can have a positive or negative effect on radio reception.
- **Analog to digital/digital to analog blending**: Analog to digital blending will occur as the signal strength reaches a preset threshold in the receiver. This will be noticeable in fringe areas (areas with weak reception) and is normal.

> **NOTE**
> There may be a noticeable difference in sound quality when a change from analogue to digital or digital to analogue occurs, such as:
>
> - Volume increase or decrease
> - Equalizer settings, i.e., Bass/ Midrange/Treble cut or boost
> - Time alignment (Digital program material in extreme cases can be as much as 8 seconds behind the analogue). This will noticeable as a "stuttering" effect.
>
> **The above items are dependant on the broadcaster's equipment settings and do not indicate a fault in the vehicle's radio receiver or antenna systems**.

Sirius XM satellite radio

SiriusXM® Satellite radio

The SiriusXM® Satellite system broadcasts from of a number of high elevation satellites in geosynchronous orbit.

Listening to satellite radio

The digital signals from the satellites are line-of-sight, which means that physical obstructions such as bridges, tunnels, etc, may temporarily interfere with signal reception.

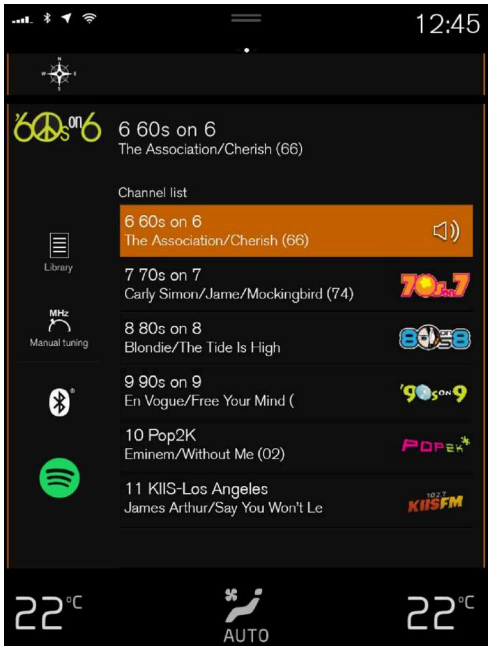
Avoid any obstructions, such as metallic objects transported on roof racks or in a ski box, or other antennas that may impede signals from the SiriusXM® satellites.

Selecting SiriusXM® Satellite radio mode

From the center display's Home view, swipe from right to left to come to App view.



Tap the SiriusXM® Satellite radio icon.



Home view with SiriusXM® Satellite radio activated

If there is no subscription activated, tap channel 1, where you will be prompted on the screen to phone SiriusXM®.

If a cell phone is paired and connected to the vehicle, you can also subscribe by:

From Home view, pull down the Settings menu.

Open the settings menu for SiriusXM® Satellite radio.
Tap Unsubscribed Services

To call SiriusXM®, enter the phone number. They will activate the subscription of your choice. This may take several minutes.

When the subscription has been activated, tap the SiriusXM® Satellite radio icon to start the function and display the channel list included in your subscription.

Use SiriusXM® Satellite radio

SiriusXM® Satellite radio offers several features for finding and listening to music, news, sporting events, etc. being broadcast on satellite radio stations.

SiriusXM® Satellite radio functions



With SiriusXM® Satellite radio activated, tap Library to display a screen offering the following functions:

- Search (the magnifying glass icon)
- Channels
- Favorites
- Categories

If you have used this view previously, you will be returned to the most recently used one.

Search

Tap the magnifying glass to display a screen where you can enter text using the center display's keyboard or by writing in the free-text field to search for e.g., a station number, an artist, song title, etc.

Channels

Tap to display a complete list of the channels included in your subscription. Tap a channel name to listen. If a subscription to a channel has expired, its name will be grayed-out on the screen.

For quick access to a channel that you often listen to, tap the star to the right of the channel's name. It will then be added to your list of favorites.

Favorites

Tap to display the channels that you have added to this list. Tap a channel name to listen.

Categories/Genres

Tap to display the categories available. Tap a category or genre name to display the channels that it contains and then tap a channel to listen.

If you have activated alerts (see the “Alerts” section below) and an alert is activated for an artist, song or team, temporary virtual categories will also be created and displayed. The channels currently broadcasting the song, artist or broadcasting a program with the selected team will be listed in a virtual category.

EPG (Electronic Program Guide)

On the center display's Home view, tap EPG for information about e.g., when a program is being broadcast and its name, description, artist, etc. If no information is currently available, No information will be displayed.

Alerts

If this feature has been selected under SiriusXM Settings, the Alerts button will be displayed on the Home view.

To add e.g. an artist's name, song title or a sports team to the list of alerts:
Tune to a channel that is broadcasting a song, game, etc., of your choice.
Tap the Alerts button.
A pop-up window will be displayed showing a list of alerts (nothing will be displayed if the selected channel does not support the alert function).
Select one of the alternatives in list (only one can be selected at a time).
The song/artist/team will now be added to the list of alerts. Favorite sports teams can also be added to the list using “Game Alert” in the SiriusXM satellite radio settings.
When your choice is being broadcast on a channel, you will be informed by a pop-up.

iTunes tagging

From the center display's Top view, tap SiriusXM Settings. Tap the iTunes Tagging menu. Tap the iTunes Tagging box to activate/deactivate this function and tap Close to return to Home view. Tap Tags List to display a list of all tagged songs.

If the function is activated, the iTunes tag button will be displayed in Home view. If a song is played that you would like to buy in the iTunes store, tap this button while the song is playing to tag it. If a song with iTunes Tagging information is available, the button will be selectable. Tap the button to tag the song. If you would like to buy a tagged song via iTunes, Tap the iTunes tag button.

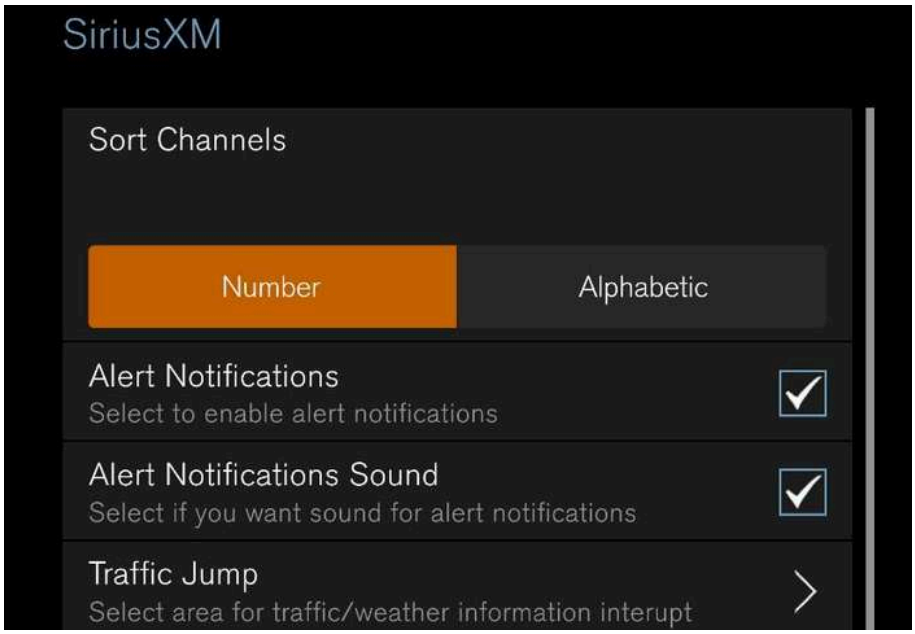
To buy a song in iTunes, begin by connecting an iPhone/iPod/iPad to the USB port in the tunnel console. The iTunes tagging list will automatically be transferred to the device and removed from the list in the vehicle. If the device is connected when a song is tagged, the data will automatically be saved in the device. To purchase the song, consult the iTunes support page.

SiriusXM® Satellite radio settings

There are numerous settings that can be made to enhance your SiriusXM® Satellite radio listening experience.

Settings

Drag down the top view and tap on Settings → Media → SiriusXM. The following alternatives will be displayed:



Traffic Jump

Tap to display a list of cities from which you can choose to get traffic/weather information (or Traffic jump off to deactivate the feature). Tap to select a city (JUMP will be displayed on the Home screen next to Library). Tap Back to return to the list of settings or Close to return to the Home screen.

From the Home screen, tap JUMP to activate the function. When traffic/weather information is available from the selected city, the radio will automatically tune to the channel providing the information. When the information/announcement is finished, the radio will automatically return to the channel that you were previously listening to.

During an announcement, tap JUMP to interrupt the message and return to the station that you were currently listening to.

Alert Notifications

Tap the box to activate/deactivate. When activated, you will be notified if a song, artist, etc. that you have selected is playing. You will be asked if you want to listen.

Alert Notifications Sound

Opt to receive an audible alert when one of your selected choices is being played.

Sort Channels

Select how to sort your channels list.

iTunes Tagging

Tap to display a menu with the options: iTunes Tagging and Tags List. With this feature activated, songs can be tagged for later purchase from the iTunes store.

Game Alerts

Tap to display a list of sports.

Tap a sport to display a list of teams and tap a box on the right side of the screen to select a team as a favorite. An alert will then be provided when information about the team is being broadcast.

Tap Confirm below the list to return to the list of sports.

Tap Back to return to the list of settings or Close to return to the main screen.

Unsubscribed Services

If you have a SiriusXM® Satellite radio subscription, any channels not included in the subscription will be listed here. Call SiriusXM™ to subscribe. The phone number will be shown on the screen. If a cell phone is paired and connected to the vehicle, tap the phone number to make the call.

Skipped Stations

Tap to display a list of channels that you would like to skip (hide). Hide channels from the channel list by tapping the boxes to the right of the screen. Skipped (hidden) channels will not be shown in the channel list. However, a channel previously selected as a favorite will still be displayed in the list of favorites, even it has been added to the skip list.

Skipped Categories

Tap to display a list of categories. Tap a category to skip (hide) it. It will not be displayed in the list of categories.

SiriusXM Travel Link®

SiriusXM Travel Link is a subscription feature offered by SiriusXM® satellite radio that can provide information about e.g., weather forecasts, weather alerts, service stations, sports, etc. in the vicinity of the vehicle.

Starting SiriusXM Travel Link

> **NOTE**
> SiriusXM Travel Link services are only available in vehicles equipped with the Sensus Navigation system.

From the center display's App view, tap Travel Link to activate the feature. A disclaimer text will be displayed. Tap OK to display a list of SiriusXM Travel Link services:

- Alerts
- Fuel
- Sports
- Weather
- Favorites

In order to use one or more of these services, the user has to subscribe to the ones desired.

To subscribe to a SiriusXM Travel Link service:
Open the center display's Top view.
Tap Settings.
Press SiriusXM Travel Link and Subscription Status.
To subscribe, call the phone number listed on the screen.
Any services not subscribed will be grayed out and contain the text Service not subscribed.

When the services have been activated (subscribed), tap the one of your choice to start it.

The following applies for all of the SiriusXM Travel Link services:

- Pressing the Back button will take you back to the previous screen
- Pressing the Close button will take you to the SiriusXM Travel Link home screen.

NOTE

If the Close button is used to return to the SiriusXM Travel Link home screen, the following applies (the Weather service is used here as an example):

- If you have already used the Weather function, tapping Weather again in the SiriusXM Travel Link home screen **before using any other SiriusXM Travel Link service** will return you to the point where you left the Weather service.
- If another SiriusXM Travel Link service is used (e.g., Fuel, Sports, etc.) before you return to the Weather service, you will be returned to the default Weather view (in this case, Local).

The same principle applies to all of the SiriusXM Travel Link services.

Favorites

Many SiriusXM Travel Link selections can be saved for easy access as favorites by tapping the "star" icon next to the selection where applicable.

To display a list of your stored selections, tap the Favorites application in the SiriusXM Travel Link home screen.

SiriusXM Travel Link® - Fuel

This SiriusXM Travel Link service provides information and guidance to service stations near the vehicle providing the type of fuel that you prefer/require for your vehicle.
From the SiriusXM Travel Link home screen, to show fuel information:
Tap the Fuel button to display the main fuel screen.
The following categories are shown:

- Search (the magnifying glass icon)
- Nearby
- Recommended
- Favorites
- Brands

Tap one of the alternatives to display its screen.

NOTE

In each of the categories listed, tapping the Select fuel type button near the bottom of the screen opens a sub-view where you can specify the type of fuel preferred/required (Regular, Midrange, Premium, Electric 120V, etc.) Tap Done to return to the previous screen.

Search

Tap the magnifying glass icon. If the function is supported in the current context, a keyboard will appear on the screen. Enter the text of your choice and tap Search for detailed information if available.

Nearby

Tap for a list of service stations in the vicinity of the vehicle, with the nearest station at the top of the list.

The following information will be provided where available:

- For vehicles using gasoline, the price information for regular gasoline (unless another grade/type of fuel has been selected in Select fuel type)
- For electric vehicles/hybrids, information about charging stations, showing the total number of charging ports and the number of ports currently not in use

- the distance to the station
- a star icon to set the service station as a favorite

Tap the name of a service station to display more detailed information.

For guidance to the service station, tap the Start navigation or Add as waypoint buttons. See the Sensus Navigation supplement for additional information about using the navigation system.

Recommended

Tap for a list of service stations near the vehicle, displayed according to the price of regular gasoline (unless another grade/type of fuel has been selected in Select fuel type) or of stations offering the greatest number of available charging ports for electric vehicles/hybrids. The station offering the lowest price/most available charging ports will be displayed at the top of the list. Tap the name of a service station to display more detailed information.

Favorites

Tap for a list of service stations that have been stored as favorites. Tap the name of a service station to display more detailed information.

In addition to the Select fuel type button at the bottom of the screen, tap the Edit button to delete individual stations from the list or tap Delete to clear the list. Tap Done to return to the previous screen.

Brands

Tap Brands to display a list of service station brands in the area.
Tap a brand to display a list of service stations affiliated with that brand (BP, Exxon, etc.).
Tap the name of a service station to display more detailed information.
In addition to the Select fuel type button at the bottom of the screen, tap the Sort button to arrange the list according to Nearest or Cheapest/Recommended. Tap Done to return to the previous screen.

1 This service is not available in Canada.

SiriusXM Travel Link® – Sports

This SiriusXM Travel Link service provides information about sporting events, tournaments, teams, leagues, etc.
From the SiriusXM Travel Link home screen, to display sports information:
Tap the Sports button to display the main sports screen.
A number of sports categories will be listed (Football, Baseball, Basketball, etc.)

Tap a sport to select a league in that sport (NFL, MLB, etc.) or a sport organization (PGA, LPGA, etc.).

The following is an example of the result of tapping Baseball:
MLB (Major League Baseball) will be displayed.
Tap MLB to display the two leagues in Major League Baseball (American League or National League).
Tap one of the league names to display the divisions in the league.
Tap one of the divisions to display:

- In progress: play-by-play information about a match/game/tournament currently in progress. Continue tapping to display. In the detailed view, you can also select a radio station that is currently broadcasting an ongoing sporting event
- Headlines for MLB: Tap to display brief headline information
- Scheduled: schedules for coming matches, games, etc.
- Scores: match/game results

The same principle applies to all sports.

SiriusXM Travel Link® – Notifications

This SiriusXM Travel Link service provides notifications of potential weather problems or other emergency situations in the vicinity of the vehicle.
From the SiriusXM Travel Link home screen, to show notifications:
Tap the Alerts button to display this screen.

- If any notifications are currently available, a message will appear at the top of the screen. They can also be listed from the Settings menu in the center display's Top view.
- If no notifications are available, No active alerts will be displayed.

Types of notifications

To select the types of notifications to be displayed:
From the Alerts screen, tap the Select alerts button at the bottom of the screen.
This displays the types of notifications that can be displayed. Tap the box to the right of each type of notification to select/deselect it.
Tap Done when you have made your selections. You will return to the Alerts screen.

Information about a notification

If any notifications have been displayed on the screen, tap one for more detailed information (i.e., the location of the weather problem on a map and a description of the situation).

If a phone number is available in a notification, a Call button will be displayed. Tap this button for additional information.

SiriusXM Travel Link® – Weather

This SiriusXM Travel Link service provides weather-related information near the vehicle, at a local ski resort, etc.
From the SiriusXM Travel Link home screen, to display weather-related information:
Tap the Weather button to display this screen.
At the top of the screen, the following categories will be displayed:

- Search (the magnifying glass icon)
- Local
- Ski condition
- Areas
- Favorites

Tap the category of your choice.

Search

Tap the magnifying glass icon. If the function is supported in the current context, a keyboard will appear on the screen. Enter the text of your choice and tap Search for detailed information from the SiriusXM Travel Link database.

Local[1]

Information from the closest weather station will be displayed and the following alternatives are available:

- Map view
- Today
- 5 days

Map view

Tap the map to display it in full-screen mode. Tap Back to return to the original map view.

Tap Map options to display the following alternatives.

- Weather radar
- Storm attributes
- Surface features
- Tropical storm tracks
- Winds

Tap the relevant box to the right of the option to select/deselect it. Tap Done to confirm and return to the previous screen or Cancel.

Today

Tap to see the current temperature, or the temperature in 3/6 hours.

Tap Back to return to the Local screen or Close to return to the SiriusXM Travel Link home screen.

5 days

Tap to see weather information for the coming 5 days.

Tap Back to return to the Local screen or Close to return to the SiriusXM Travel Link home screen.

Ski condition

Tap to display a list of ski areas in the vicinity of the vehicle. Tap a name in the list for information such as if the ski area is open/closed, temperature, wind conditions, snow conditions, the number of lifts that are in operation, etc.

- Weather locations
- Ski location

Tap Map view to display a map and a weather legend.

Tap Map options to display the following alternatives.

- Weather radar
- Storm attributes
- Surface features
- Tropical storm tracks
- Winds

Tap the relevant box to the right of the option to select/deselect it. Tap Done to confirm and return to the previous screen or Cancel.

Areas

Tap Areas to display a list of areas/locations in states from the SiriusXM Travel Link database.

Scroll to a state and tap to display:

- Weather locations: tap arrow to the right to display a list of towns. Scroll to desired town and tap for detailed weather information. You can choose Map view, today, 5 days or Favorites (star)
- Ski locations: tap arrow at right to display local ski areas. Tap an area for detailed info.

For information about storing a location, state, town, etc. as a favorite, see the heading "Favorites" in the article "SiriusXM Travel Link."

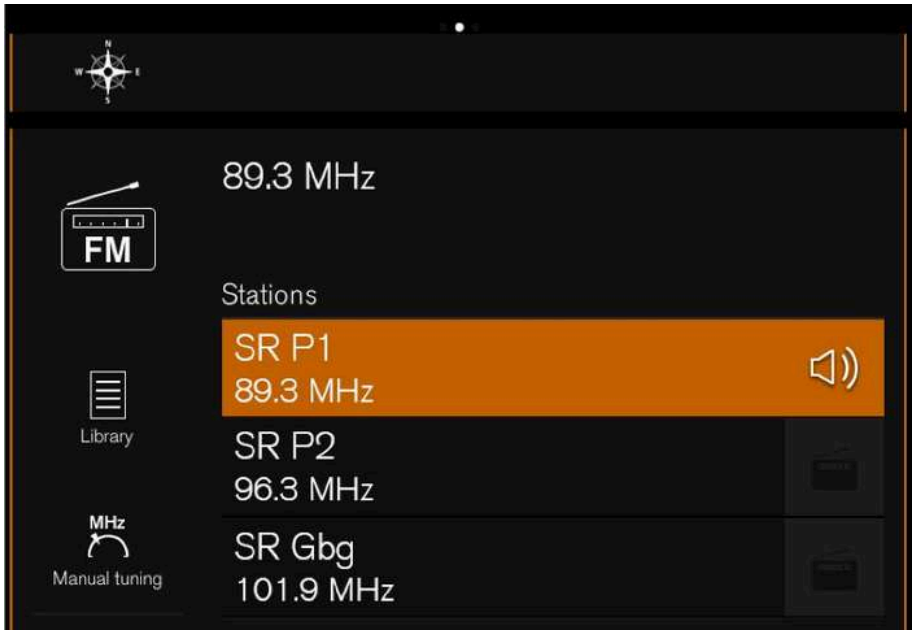
1 This is the weather default unless another alternative has been selected.

Voice control for radio and media

See Voice control for radio and media.

Radio

The radio can receive broadcasting from the FM waveband with HD Radio™ Technology and SiriusXM® Satellite radio. When the vehicle has an Internet connection, it is also possible to listen to web radio.





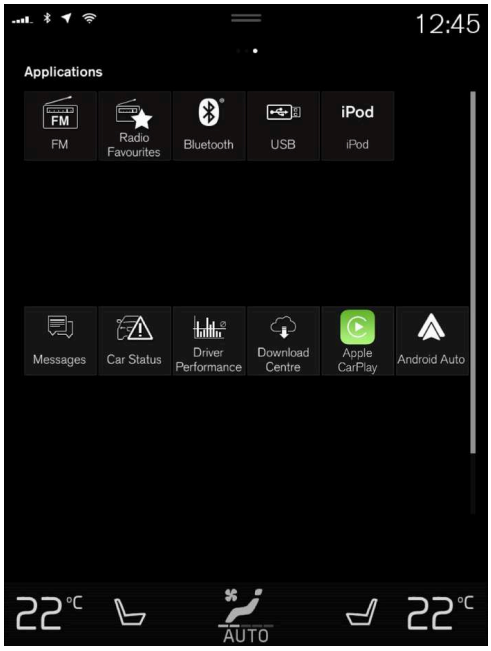
The radio can be controlled using voice commands, the right-side steering wheel keypad or the center display.

IMPORTANT

Do not use solar film with a metalized surface on the rear window. This can interfere with reception because the vehicle's radio antenna is located inside the window.

Starting the radio

The radio is started from the center display's App view.
Open the desired waveband (e.g. FM) from App view.



Select a radio station.

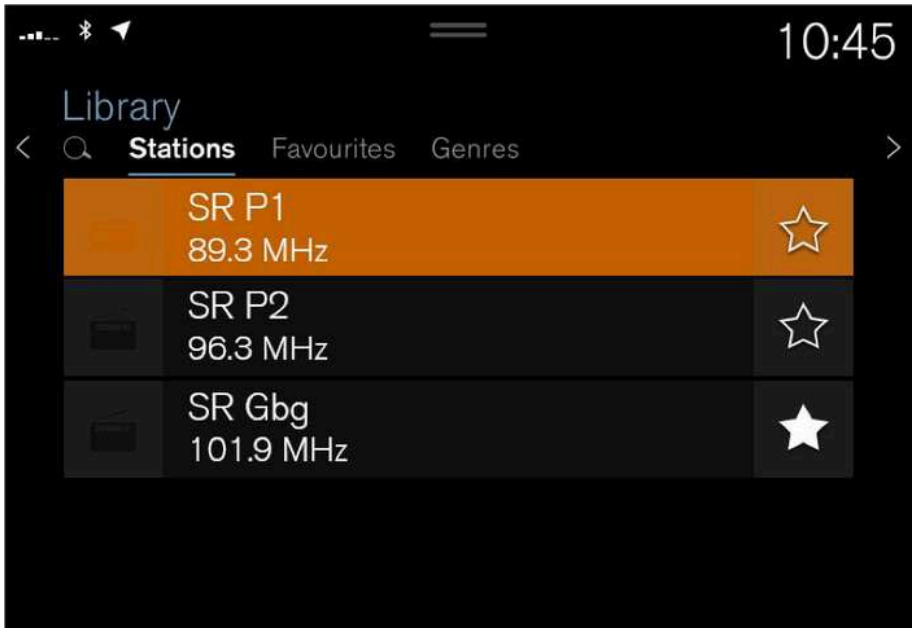
Changing waveband and radio station

Instructions for changing wavebands, waveband lists and radio stations in the selected list are provided here.

Changing wavebands

Swipe from App view on the center display and select the desired waveband (e.g. FM) or open the App menu in the instrument panel with the right-side steering wheel keypad and make your selection there.

Changing a list in a waveband



Tap Library.
Select playback from Stations, Favorites or Genres.
Tap the desired station in the list.
Favorites – only plays selected favorite channels.

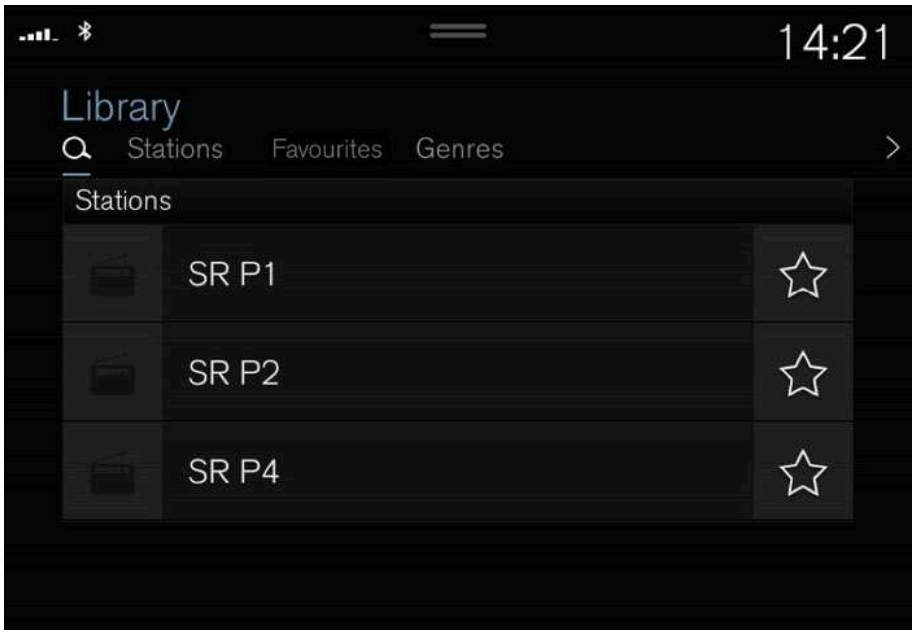
Genres - only plays channels broadcasting the selected genre or program type, e.g. pop, classical, etc.

Changing radio stations in a selected list

Press ⏮ or ⏭ under the center display or on the right-side steering wheel keypad.
Move step-by-step through the selected list.
It is also possible to change radio station in the selected list via the center display.

Searching for a radio station

The radio automatically compiles a list of the radio stations that are sending out the strongest signals in the vehicle's current location.



Searching is performed in different ways depending on the waveband selected:

- FM, stations, genres and frequency.

Tap Library.
Tap 🔍.
Search view will displayed and the keyboard will open.
Enter a search word/phrase.
The search will start and change as characters are entered. Search results will be displayed by category.

Searching for a station manually



Searching manually makes it possible to find and tune to stations that are not on the automatically compiled list of the strongest stations in the area.

Tap Manual tuning, drag the control or tap ⏮ or ⏭. Press and hold to skip to the next available station in the frequency band. You can also use the right-side steering wheel keypad.

Radio settings

There are a number of different radio functions that can be activated and deactivated.

Canceling a traffic message

A current broadcast (e.g. a traffic message) can be temporarily interrupted by pressing ◯ in the right-side steering wheel keypad or tapping Cancel in the center display.

Activating and deactivating radio functions

Pull down Top view and select Settings → Media and the desired waveband to see available functions.

FM Radio

- HD Radio FM: HD Radio™ Technology: makes it possible to achieve a sound quality comparable with a CD.
- Show Broadcast Information: shows information on program content, artists, etc.
- Freeze Program Name: select to stop the program service name from scrolling continuously. Instead it freezes after 20 seconds.

SiriusXM® Satellite radio

Pull down Top view and select Settings → Media → SiriusXM to show a list of available options.

RBDS

RBDS radio
RBDS (Radio Broadcast Data System) enables certain functionality1, such as:

- Searches for program types or new broadcasts

- Text information about currently broadcast programs

1 Certain stations only.

Storing radio channels in the Radio favorites app

It is possible to add a radio station in the Radio favorites app and in the list of favorites for the waveband (e.g. FM). Instructions for adding and removing radio channels are provided below.

Radio favorites



The radio favorites app shows stored radio channels from all wavebands.

Open the Radio favorites app from App view.
Tap the desired station in the list to listen.

Adding and deleting radio favorites

Tap ☆ to add a radio channel to the waveband's list of favorites or the Radio favorites app.
Tap Library, select Edit and tap 🗑 to delete a radio channel from the list of favorites.
When you delete a radio channel from the Radio favorites app, the channel will also be deleted from that waveband's list of favorites.

Media player

Video

Video

The media player can play videos from USB-connected devices.
Video is not available when the vehicle is moving; only audio will be played. Video will resume when the vehicle is stationary.

Information on compatible media formats is provided in a separate section.

Playing video

The USB app in App view is used to play videos.
Connecting media source (USB device).
Open the USB app from App view.
Tap the title you would like to play.
Playback will begin.
If the USB device also contains music and audio tracks, it may be difficult to locate the video files. To find them, go to Library and select the video tab.

Playing DivX®

The DivX Certified® device must be registered to play purchased DivX video-on-demand (VOD) movies.
Tap Settings in the Top view.
Tap Video → DivX® VOD to get a registration code.
Go to vod.divx.com for more information and to complete the registration process.

Video settings

You can change some language settings for video playback.
Audio Language and Subtitle Language can be adjusted with the video player in full-screen mode or by opening Top view and tapping Settings → Media → Video.

Streaming media via Bluetooth®

The vehicle's media player is equipped with Bluetooth and can play audio files from Bluetooth-enabled external devices such as cellular phones and tablets.
In order for the media player to be able to wirelessly play audio files from an external device, the device must be connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth.

Connecting a device via Bluetooth®

Connect a Bluetooth® device to the vehicle to wirelessly play media and give the vehicle an Internet connection if it is available.
Many cellular phones on the market currently offer wireless Bluetooth® technology, but not all phones are fully compatible with the vehicle.

The procedure for connecting a media device is the same as for connecting a cellular phone to the vehicle via Bluetooth®.

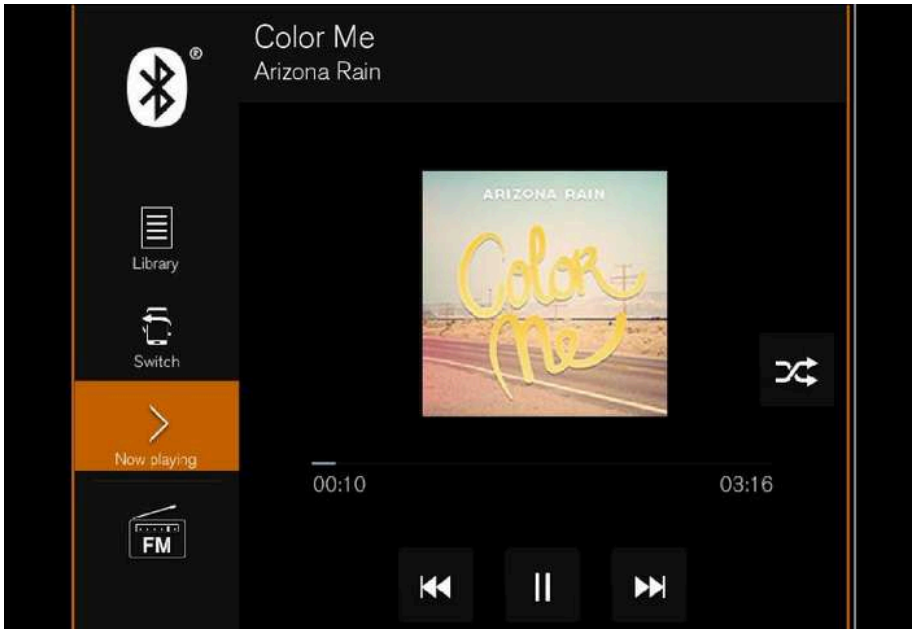
> **NOTE**
> For some phones, the Bluetooth volume on the phone must be manually set to 100% in order for the audio volume in the vehicle to be high enough. This setting needs to be made for each phone that is connected. The setting is adjusted separately for phone calls and media streaming. The system will then remember the setting and it will not need to be repeated the next time the phone is connected.

Voice control for radio and media

See Voice control for radio and media.

Media player

The media player can play audio from external audio sources connected via USB port or Bluetooth. It can also play video format via the USB port.
When the vehicle is connected to the Internet, it is also possible to listen to web radio, audio books and to access music services via apps.





The media player is controlled from the center display. Several functions can also be controlled using voice commands or the right-side steering wheel keypad.

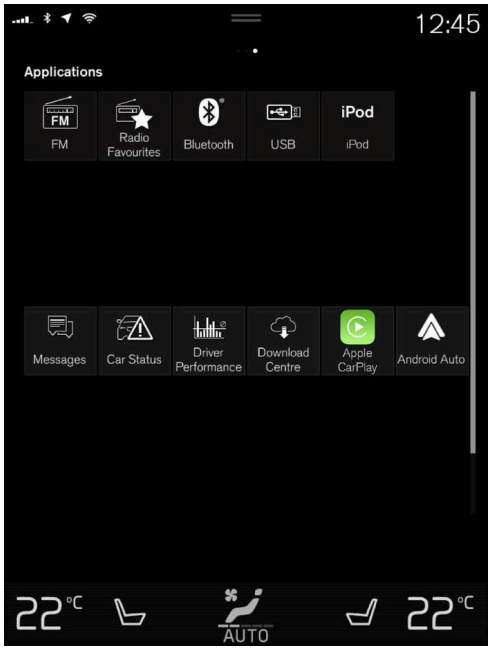
The radio, which is also handled by the media player, is described in a separate section.

Playing media

The media player is controlled from the center display. Several other functions can also be controlled using the right-side steering wheel keypad or by using voice commands.

The radio can also be controlled in the media player. See the section describing the radio.

Starting a media source



App view. (Generic illustration.)

USB flash drive

Inset a USB flash drive.
Open the USB app from App view.
Select the track you would like to play.
Playback will begin.

MP3 player and iPod®

> **NOTE**
>
> To start playback from an iPod, the iPod app must be used (not USB).
>
> When an iPod is used as source, the car's audio and media system has a menu structure similar to the iPod player's own menu structure.

Connect a media source.
Start playback in the connected media source.
Open the app (iPod, USB) from App view.
Playback will begin.

Bluetooth-connected device

Activate Bluetooth in the media source.
Connect a media source.
Start playback in the connected media source.
Open the Bluetooth app from App view.
Playback will begin.

NOTE

For some phones, the Bluetooth volume on the phone must be manually set to 100% in order for the audio volume in the vehicle to be high enough. This setting needs to be made for each phone that is connected. The setting is adjusted separately for phone calls and media streaming. The system will then remember the setting and it will not need to be repeated the next time the phone is connected.

Media with Internet connection

Medial playback from apps with Internet connection:
Connect the vehicle to the Internet.
Open the app from the App view.
Playback will begin.
Read the separate section on how to download apps.

Video

Connect a media source.
Open the USB app from App view.
Tap the title you would like to play.
Playback will begin.

Apple CarPlay

CarPlay is described in a separate section.

Android Auto

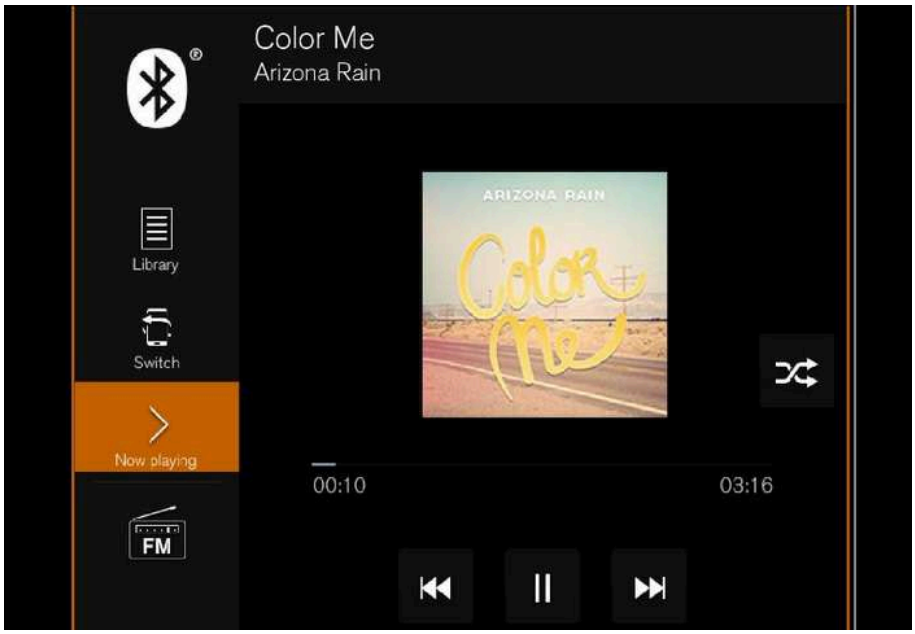
Android Auto is described in a separate section.

Controlling and changing media

Media playback can be controlled using voice commands, the steering wheel keypad or the center display.



The media player can be controlled using voice commands, the right-side steering wheel keypad or the center display.



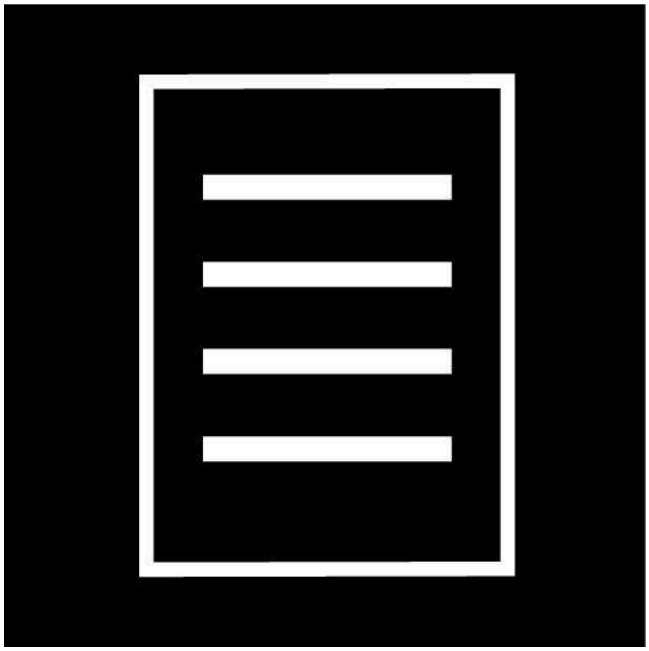
Volume - turn the knob under the center display or tap ▲ ▼ on the right-side steering wheel keypad to raise or lower the volume.

Play/pause - tap the image for the track you would like to play, or press the button below the center display or ◯ on the right-side steering wheel keypad.

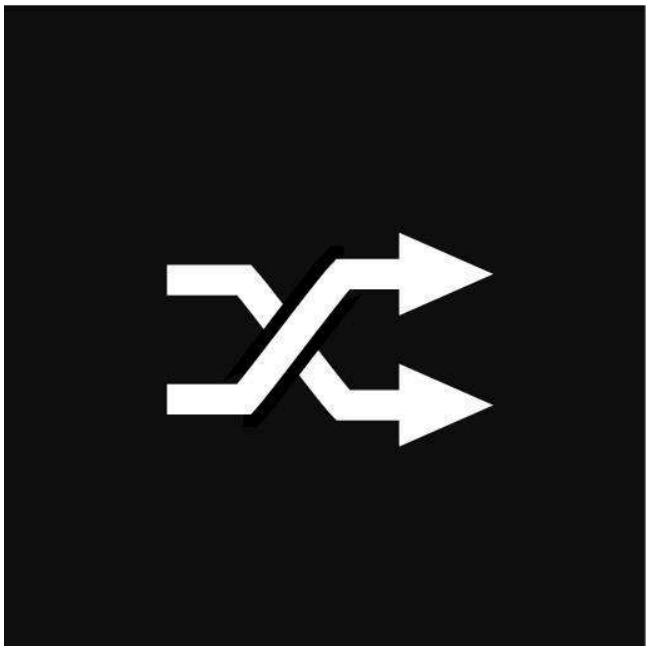
Changing track/song - tap the desired track in the center display, or press ⏮ or ⏭ below the center display or on the right-side steering wheel keypad.

Rewinding/fast-forwarding - tap the time axis in the center display and drag it sideways, or press and hold ⏮ or ⏭ below the center display or on the right-side steering wheel keypad.

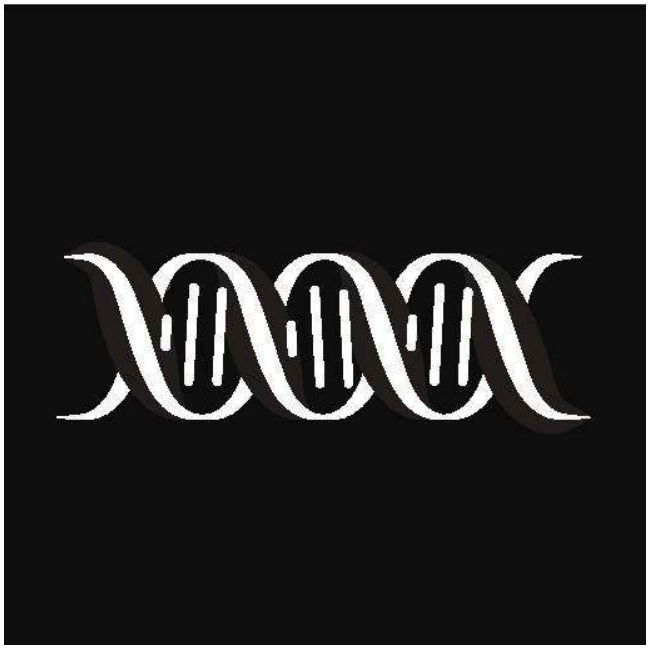
Changing media source - select from among previous sources in the app, tap the desired app in App view or use the right-side steering wheel keypad to select the app in the app menu .



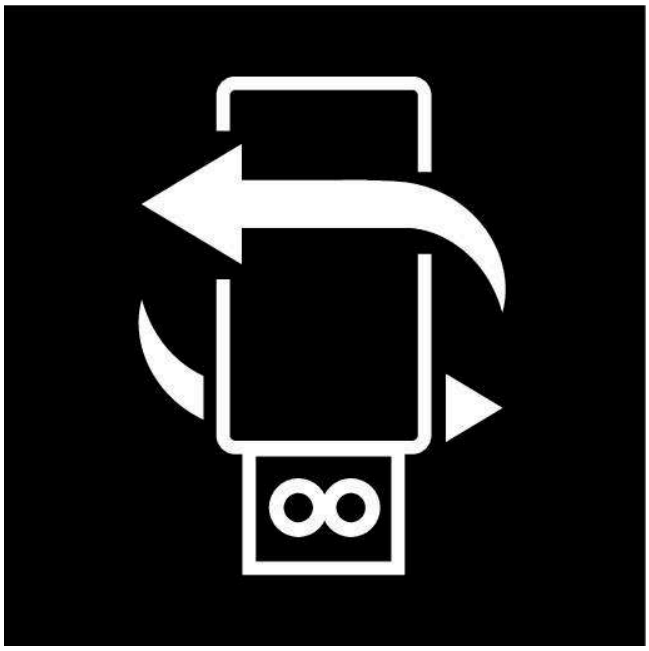
Library - tap the button to play from the library.



Shuffle - tap the button to play tracks in a random order.



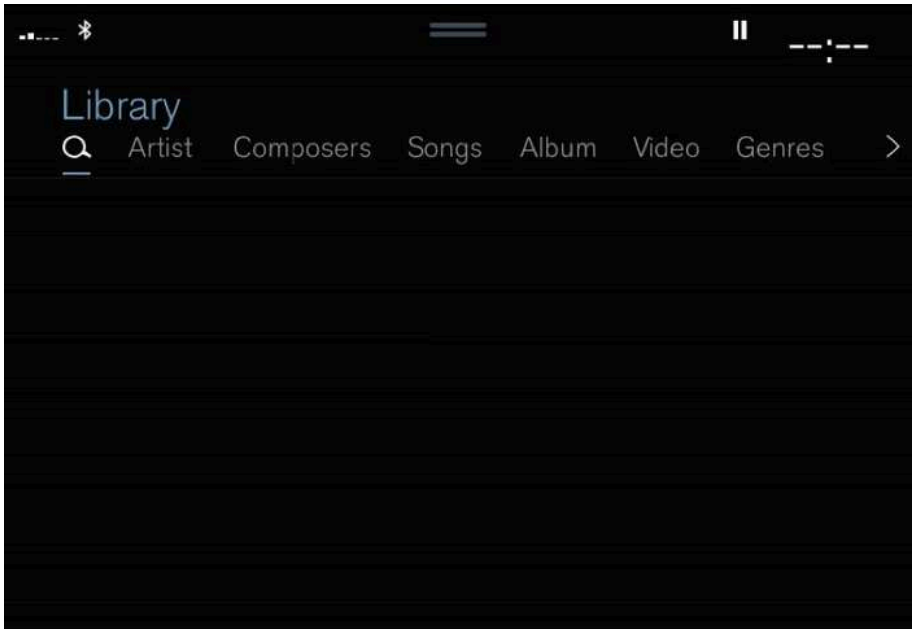
Similar - tap the button to use Gracenote to search for similar music on the USB device and create a playlist from the music found. The playlist can contain up to 50 tracks.



Change device - tap the button to toggle between USB devices when more than one is connected.

Media searches

Searches can be performed to locate a specific artist, composer, song title, album, video, audio book or playlist. If the vehicle is connected to the Internet, it is also possible to search for podcasts (online digital media).



Tap .
Search view will displayed and the keyboard will open.
Enter a search word/phrase.
Tap Search.
A search will be performed on connected devices and the results will be displayed by category.
Swipe the screen horizontally to display each category separately.

Compatible file formats for media

In order to play media, the following file formats must be used.

Audio files

Format	File extension	Codec
MP3	.mp3	MPEG1 Layer III, MPEG2 Layer III, MP3 Pro (mp3 compatible), MP3 HD (mp3 compatible)
AAC	.m4a, .m4b, .aac	AAC LC (MPEG-4 part III Audio), HE-AAC (aacPlus v1/v2)
WMA	.wma	WMA8/9, WMA9/10 Pro
WAV	.wav	LPCM
FLAC	.flac	FLAC

Video files

Format	File extension
MP4	.mp4, .m4v
MPEG-PS	.mpg, .mp2, .mpeg, .m1v
AVI	.avi
AVI (DivX)	.avi, .divx
ASF	.asf, .wmv
MKV	.mkv

Subtitles

Format	File extension
SubViewer	.sub
SubRip	.srt
SSA	.ssa

DivX®

DivX-certified devices have been tested for high-quality DivX (.divx, .avi) video playback. When you see the DivX logo, you have the freedom to play your favorite DivX movies.

Profile	DivX Home Theater
Video codec	DivX, MPEG-4
Resolution	720x576
Audio speed (bit rate)	4.8Mbps
Frame rate	30 fps
File extension	.divx, .avi
Max. file size	4 GB

Audio codec	MP3, AC3
Subtitles	XSUB
Special functions	Multiple subtitles, multiple audio, resume play
Reference	Meets all requirements of the DivX Home Theater profile. Visit divx.com for more information and software tools to convert your files into DivX Home Theater video.

Gracenote®

Gracenote identifies artists, albums, tracks and any associated images that can be displayed during playback.

Gracenote MusicID® is a standard for music recognition. It can identify and analyze the metadata of music files and present information about the music. Metadata from different sources may sometimes be inconsistent or insufficient.

Because Gracenote supports phonetic processing of artist name, album titles and genres, voice commands can be used to control music playback.

Tap Settings in the Top view.
Tap Media → Gracenote®.
Choose settings for Gracenote data:

- Gracenote® Online Search - search Gracenote's online database for currently playing media.
- Gracenote® Multiple Results - select how Gracenote data should be displayed if there are multiple search results.

1 - the file's original data will be used.
2 - Gracenote data will be used.
3 - Gracenote or original data can be selected.

- None - no result will be displayed.

Updating Gracenote

The contents of the Gracenote database are continuously updated. Download the latest update to take advantage of improvements.

Updating Gracenote®

Polestar is constantly working to keep your vehicle up to date. It is therefore a good idea to update Gracenote® at regular intervals. Use an empty USB memory stick to perform the update.

Update files

Download the update files to an empty USB memory of at least 8 GB. The memory must have one of the following formats: FAT32, NTFS or exFAT.

To download the Gracenote® update files, click Downloads in the top menu at support.polestar.com. Under the heading **Gracenote®**, click Update Gracenote and then select the relevant system for your vehicle.

Instructions for updating

Click on "Download for Mac" or "Download for Windows".
Select Execute to install the download program.
Click New download to download the file to a USB memory.
You can verify that the download/copying to the USB memory has worked correctly before you install the file in the vehicle by pressing Check downloads in the download program.

Take the USB memory with the downloaded file to your vehicle and switch on the infotainment system.
Insert the USB memory in the USB port. If there are two USB inputs the second one must not be used at the same time.
The system automatically detects the availability of an update and a message appears on screen showing that updating is in progress.
When installation is complete, a notification is displayed indicating that the update has been installed. The USB memory can now be removed.

If you experience any problems with the update, contact Polestar Customer Support.

Updating tips

- An update takes about 15 minutes and the infotainment system must be on. Use a battery charger or keep the vehicle's engine running while the update is in progress, for example during a trip.
- Gracenote® is updated all the time. Keep an eye out for new updates.

Playing media via the USB port

External audio sources, such as an iPod® or MP3 player, can be connected to the audio system via the vehicle's USB port.
Devices with rechargeable batteries can be charged when they are connected via the USB port and the ignition is in mode **I**, **II** or the engine is running.

The content on the external source can be read faster if it only contains data of a compatible format. Video files can also be played via the USB port.

Some MP3 players have their own file system that the vehicle has support for.

Connecting a device via the USB port

External audio sources, such as an iPod® or MP3 player, can be connected to the audio system via any of the vehicle's USB ports.
The phone must be plugged into the USB port with the white frame to use Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.



USB ports (type A) in the tunnel console. Route the cable forward to help avoid pinching when the cover is closed.

Technical specifications for USB devices

For the contents of USB devices to be read, the following specifications must be met.
Any folder structures will not be shown in the center display during playback.

	Max. number
Files	15 000
Folders	1 000
Folder levels	8
Playlists	100
Tracks in a playlist	1 000
Subfolders	No limit

Technical specifications for the USB-A connector

- Type A port
- Version 2.0
- Voltage 5 V
- Max. current 2.1 A

Phone

Connecting a phone

Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth automatically

A phone can be automatically connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth. The phone must have first been paired with the vehicle.
Only the two most recently connected phones can be connected automatically.
Activate Bluetooth in the phone before turning the vehicle's ignition to mode I.
Turn the ignition to I or higher.
The phone will be connected.

Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth for the first time

Pair a Bluetooth-enabled phone to the vehicle to make calls, send/receive text messages and wirelessly play media from the vehicle, or connect the vehicle to the Internet.
Two Bluetooth devices can be connected at the same time, but in that case, only one will be used for wireless playback. The most recently paired phone will be automatically connected to make calls, send/receive text messages, play media or use as an Internet connection. It is possible to change what the phone is used for under Bluetooth Devices via the settings menu in the center display's Top view. The cellular phone must be equipped with Bluetooth and support tethering.

After the device has been connected/registered for the first time via Bluetooth, the device no longer needs to be visible/searchable. It just needs to have Bluetooth activated. A maximum of 20 paired Bluetooth devices can be stored in the vehicle.

There are two ways to pair a phone to the vehicle. Searching for the phone from the vehicle or searching for the vehicle from the phone.

Option 1 - searching for the phone from the vehicle

Make the phone discoverable/visible using its Bluetooth function.
Open the phone tile in the center display.

- If no phone has been paired to the vehicle, tap Add phone.
- If a phone has been paired to the vehicle, tap Change . Tap Add phone in the pop-up window.

A list of available Bluetooth devices will be displayed. The list will be updated as new devices are discovered.
Tap the name of the phone you would like to connect.
Make sure that the code displayed in the vehicle matches the one in the phone. If it does, confirm the code in both places.
In the phone, accept or cancel the options for selecting the phone's contacts and text messages.

> **NOTE**
> - The message function must be activated in certain phones.
> - Not all cell phones are fully compatible and may not be able to display contacts and messages in the vehicle.

Option 2 - searching for the vehicle from the phone

Open the phone tile in the center display.

- If no phone has been paired to the vehicle, tap Add phone → Make vehicle discoverable.
- If a phone has been paired to the vehicle, tap Change . Tap Add phone → Make vehicle discoverable in the pop-up window.

Activate Bluetooth in the phone.
Search in the phone for Bluetooth devices.
A list of available Bluetooth devices will be displayed.
Select the vehicle's name from the list of devices in the phone.
A pop-up window for the connection is shown in the car. Confirm the connection.
Make sure that the code displayed in the vehicle matches the one shown in the external device. If it does, confirm the code in both places.
In the phone, accept or cancel the options for selecting the phone's contacts and text messages.

> **NOTE**
> - The message function must be activated in certain phones.
> - Not all cell phones are fully compatible and may not be able to display contacts and messages in the vehicle.

> **NOTE**
> If the phone's operating system is being updated, it is possible that the connection will be interrupted. Delete the phone from the vehicle and reconnect.

Compatible phones

Many cellular phones on the market currently offer wireless Bluetooth technology, but not all phones are fully compatible with the vehicle.

Disconnecting a Bluetooth-connected phone

A Bluetooth-connected phone can be disconnected from the vehicle.

- When the phone is out of range of the vehicle, it will be automatically disconnected. If a call is in progress when the phone is disconnected from the vehicle, the call will be transferred from the vehicle's speakers and microphone to the cellular phone.
- The phone can also be disconnected by manually deactivating Bluetooth.

Switch between phones connected via Bluetooth

It is possible to switch between Bluetooth-connected phones.
Open the phone tile.
Tap Change or pull down Top view and tap Settings → Communication → Bluetooth Devices → Add device.
A list of available Bluetooth devices will be displayed.
Tap the name of the phone you would like to connect.

Disconnecting Bluetooth-connected devices

Phones or other devices in the list of registered Bluetooth devices can be removed.
Tap Settings in the Top view.
Tap Communication → Bluetooth Devices.
A list of registered Bluetooth devices is displayed.
Tap the name of the device you would like to remove.
Tap Remove device and confirm.
The device is no longer registered in the vehicle.

Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth manually

A phone can be manually connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth. The phone must have first been paired with the vehicle.
Activate Bluetooth in the phone.
Open the phone tile.
A list of available phones will be displayed.
Tap the name of the phone you would like to connect.
The phone will be connected.

Apple CarPlay

Apple® CarPlay®

With CarPlay, you can listen to music, make phone calls, get driving instructions, send/receive messages and use Siri, all while remaining focused on driving.



CarPlay works with select iOS devices.

Information about supported apps and compatible iOS devices is available on the Apple website: www.apple.com/ios/carplay/. Using apps that are not compatible with CarPlay could cause the connection between the device and the vehicle to be broken. Please note that Polestar is not responsible for the content of CarPlay.

When using map navigation via CarPlay, guidance will only be shown on the center display and not in the instrument panel or head-up display.

When navigation is started through Apple CarPlay, any current route guidance from the vehicle's own systems will be discontinued.

CarPlay apps can be controlled from the center display, an iOS device or with the right-side steering wheel keypad (for certain functions). The apps can also be voice-controlled using Siri. Press and hold the button on the steering wheel to start voice control with Siri. Press briefly to activate the vehicle's own voice control system. If Siri cuts off too soon, press and hold the 1 button on the steering wheel.

By using Apple CarPlay you acknowledge the following: Apple CarPlay is a service provided by Apple Inc. under its terms and conditions. Polestar is thus not responsible for Apple CarPlay or its features/applications. When using Apple CarPlay, certain information from your car (including its position) is transferred to your iPhone. In relation to Polestar, you are fully responsible for your and any others person’s use of Apple CarPlay.

1 Apple and CarPlay are registered trademarks of Apple Inc.

Using Apple® CarPlay®

To use CarPlay, the Siri voice control must be activated in your iOS device. The device must also have an Internet connection via Wi-Fi or a mobile network for all functions to work.

Connecting an iOS device and starting CarPlay

> **NOTE**
> CarPlay can only be used if Bluetooth is disabled. A cell phone or media player connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth will therefore not be available when CarPlay is active. An alternative source must be used to provide an Internet connection for the vehicle's apps. Use Wi-Fi or the vehicle's integrated modem.

To start CarPlay from an iOS device that has not previously been connected:
Plug the iOS device with support for CarPlay into the USB port with the white frame.
Read the terms and conditions and then tap Accept to connect.
The CarPlay tile will open and compatible apps will be displayed.
Tap the desired app.
The app will start up.

Starting CarPlay

To start CarPlay from an iOS device that has previously been connected:
Plug the iOS device into the USB port with the white frame.
If the auto start setting is selected – the name of the device will be displayed. The CarPlay tile will open automatically when Home view is displayed when the iOS device is connected.
If the CarPlay tile does not open automatically, tap the name of the device. The CarPlay tile will open and compatible apps will be displayed.
If any other app is active in the same tile, tap Apple CarPlay in App view.
The CarPlay tile will open and compatible apps will be displayed.
Tap the desired app.
The app will start up.
CarPlay will run in the background if another app is started, or is already active when the device is connected, in the same view. To display CarPlay in the tile, tap the CarPlay icon in App view.

Switching connection between CarPlay and iPod

CarPlay to iPod

Tap Settings in the Top view.
Proceed to Communication → Apple CarPlay.
Uncheck the box for the iOS device that should no longer start CarPlay automatically when the USB cable is connected.
Remove and then reinsert the iOS device into the USB port.
Open the iPod app from App view.

iPod to CarPlay

Tap Apple CarPlay in App view.
Read the information in the pop-up window and then tap OK.
Remove and then reinsert the iOS device into the USB port.
The Apple CarPlay tile will open and compatible apps will be displayed[1].

1 Apple, CarPlay, iPhone and iPod are registered trademarks of Apple Inc.

Tips when using Apple® CarPlay®

Here are some useful tips for when you use CarPlay®.

- Update your iOS device with the latest version of the iOS operating system and ensure that the apps have been updated.
- In the event of a problem with CarPlay, unplug the iOS device from the USB port and then plug it in again. Otherwise, try to close the app on the device that is not working and then restart the app, or try closing all apps and restart your device.
- If the apps do not appear when CarPlay starts (black screen), try minimizing and expanding the tile for CarPlay.
- Using apps that are not compatible with CarPlay may sometimes cause the connection between the iOS device and the vehicle to be broken. Information about supported apps and compatible devices can be found on Apple's

website. You can also search for CarPlay in the App Store to find information about apps that are compatible with CarPlay in your market.

- You can use Siri to write or dictate messages or have them read aloud. Messages are read aloud and dictated in the language selected in the Siri settings. When you write/dictate messages, no text will be shown in the vehicle's center display, but the text will be shown in your iOS device. When using Siri, note that it is the phone's microphones that are used and the quality therefore depends on the phone's location.
- If the device is connected to the vehicle through Bluetooth, the connection will be broken when CarPlay is used. Resume Internet connection in the vehicle by tethering using the device's Wi-Fi hotspot.
- Some of CarPlay's functions (such as voice calls and messages) interrupt the use of the vehicle's own functions and CarPlay will instead be automatically displayed. If you do not wish this to happen, deselect display of the corresponding function in CarPlay under the phone's notification settings.
- CarPlay only works with iPhone[1].

> **NOTE**
> Availability and functionality can vary depending on market.

1 Apple, CarPlay and iPhone are registered trademarks owned by Apple Inc.

Apple® CarPlay® settings

Settings for an iOS device connected through CarPlay[1].

Automatic start

Tap Settings in the Top view.
Tap Communication → Apple CarPlay and select the desired setting:

- Check the box - CarPlay will start automatically when the USB cable is connected.
- Uncheck the box - CarPlay will not start automatically when the USB cable is connected.

A maximum of 20 iOS devices can be stored in the list, which may be worth noting if many people share the vehicle, e.g. in a car pool. When the list is full and a new device is connected, the oldest one will be deleted.

To delete the list, the settings must be rest in the center display (factory reset).

System Volumes

Tap Settings in the Top view.
Tap Sound → System Volumes to change the settings for the following:

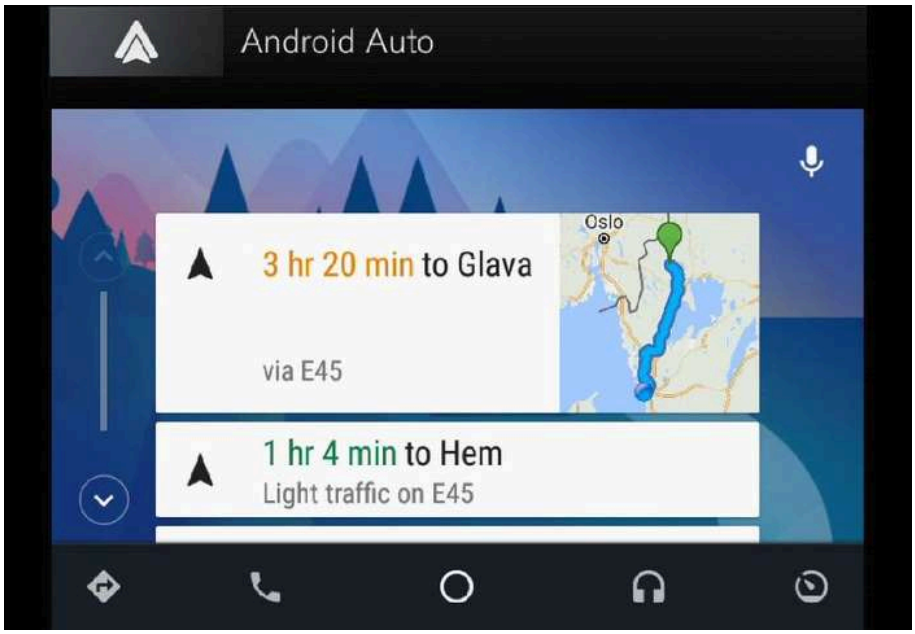
- Voice Control
- Navi Voice Guidance
- Phone Ringtone

1 Apple and CarPlay are registered trademarks of Apple Inc..

Android Auto

Android Auto

Android Auto lets you listen to music, make calls, get driving directions and use apps customized for your vehicle from an Android device. Android Auto can be used with selected Android devices.



For information on supported apps and compatible Android devices, please go to www.android.com/auto/. For third-party apps, see Google Play. Please note that Polestar is not responsible for the content of Android Auto.

Android Auto is started from App view. After Android Auto has been initially started, the app will start automatically the next time the device is connected. The automatic start setting can be deactivated in Settings.

> **NOTE**
> When a device is connected to Android Auto, it is possible to stream to another media player via Bluetooth. Bluetooth is active while Android Auto is in use.

When using navigation guidance provided by Android Auto, navigation will only be shown on the center display and not in the instrument panel or head-up display.

Android Auto can be controlled from the center display, with the right-side steering wheel keypad or by using voice commands. Press and hold the button on the steering wheel keypad to start Google Assistant and press briefly to deactivate it.

By using Android Auto, you acknowledge the following: Android Auto is a service provided by Google Inc. under its terms and conditions. Polestar is not responsible for Android Auto or its features or applications. When you use Android Auto, your car transfers certain information (including its location) to your connected Android phone. You are fully responsible for your and any other person's use of Android Auto.

Use Android Auto

To use the Android Auto app, the app must be installed on the Android device and the device must be connected to the vehicle's USB port.

Connecting an Android device for the first time

Connect the Android device to the USB port with the white frame.
Read the information in the pop-up window and then tap OK.
Tap Android Auto in App view.
Read the terms and conditions and then tap Accept to connect.
The Android Auto tile will open and compatible apps will be displayed.
Tap the desired app.
The app will start up.

From a previously connected Android device

Connect the device to the USB port with the white frame.
If the auto start setting is selected - the name of the device will be displayed.
Tap the name of the device – the Android Auto tile will open and compatible apps will be displayed.
If the automatic start setting is not activated - open the Android Auto app from App view.
The Android Auto tile will open and compatible apps will be displayed.
Tap the desired app.
The app will start up.
Android Auto will run in the background if another app is started in the same tile. To display Android Auto in the tile, tap the Android Auto icon in App view.

Tips when using Android Auto

Here are some useful tips for when you use Android Auto.

- Ensure that your apps are updated.
- When starting the vehicle, wait until the center display has started, connect the device and then open Android Auto from the app view.
- In the event of problems with Android Auto, unplug your Android device from the USB port and then plug it in again. Otherwise, try closing the app on the device and then restarting the app.
- When a device is connected to Android Auto it is still possible to play media via Bluetooth to another media player. The Bluetooth function is on when Android Auto is used.
- If the Android Auto icon is grayed out, it means that a device is no longer connected. When you connect your device, the icon will light up. If there is no icon at all, the vehicle does not support connecting a device for this purpose.
- If the device is connected to the vehicle through Bluetooth, the connection will be broken when Android Auto is used. Resume Internet connection in the vehicle by tethering using the device's Wi-Fi hotspot.
- A maximum of 20 Android devices can be stored at the same time, which may be worth noting if many people share the vehicle, e.g. in a car pool. When the list is full and a new device is connected, the oldest one will be deleted. A factory reset must be performed to delete the list.

Android Auto settings

Settings for Android devices initially connected with Android Auto.

Automatic start

Tap Settings in the Top view.
Tap Communication → Android Auto and select setting:

- Check the box - Android Auto will start automatically when the USB cable is connected.
- Uncheck the box - Android Auto will not start automatically when the USB cable is connected.

A maximum of 20 Android devices can be stored in the list. When the list is full and a new device is connected, the oldest one will be deleted.

A factory reset must be performed to delete the list.

System Volumes

Tap Settings in the Top view.
Tap Sound → System Volumes to change the settings for the following:

- Voice Control

- Navi Voice Guidance
- Phone Ringtone

Settings for Bluetooth devices

Settings for Bluetooth-connected devices.
Tap Settings in the Top view.
Tap Communication → Bluetooth Devices and select settings:

- Add device - start the procedure for pairing a new device.
- Previously paired devices - lists registered/paired devices.
- Remove device - remove a connected device.
- Allowed services for this device - select what the device will be used for: making calls, sending/receiving messages, streaming media, Internet connection.
- Internet connection connect the vehicle to the Internet using the device's Bluetooth connection.

Bluetooth® declaration of conformity

USA

FCC CAUTION

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. This transmitter must not be co-located or operated in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

Canada

This device complies with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) this device may not cause interference, and

(2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

> **NOTE**
> For some phones, the Bluetooth volume on the phone must be manually set to 100% in order for the audio volume in the vehicle to be high enough. This setting needs to be made for each phone that is connected. The setting is adjusted separately for phone calls and media streaming. The system will then remember the setting and it will not need to be repeated the next time the phone is connected.

Bluetooth cell phone compatibility

Bluetooth is a wireless technology that enables connectivity between multiple media devices. To connect a phone to Polestar's Bluetooth system, the phone must be compatible with the vehicle. Polestar continuously evaluates Bluetooth phones in order to determine whether they are compatible.

Compatible phones and functions

Not all phones are compatible with Polestar's Bluetooth system. Phones that can be connected to Polestar's Bluetooth system may also have different functions and not all functions in the system are available in all phones.

For information about compatibility, see support.polestar.com.

My phone is not on the list

If your phone is not on the list of phones that have been tested by Polestar, some or even all of the functions may still be available.

Connecting the vehicle to the Internet via a Bluetooth-connected phone

Establish an Internet connection using Bluetooth and tethering from a phone and get access to multiple connected services in your vehicle.
To connect the vehicle to the Internet via a Bluetooth-connected phone, the phone must first be paired with the vehicle via Bluetooth.
Make sure that the phone supports Internet sharing (tethering) and that the function is activated. In an iPhone, the function is called "personal hotspot". In Android phones, the function can have different names, but is often called "hotspot". For iPhone phones, the "personal hotspot" menu page must also be open until the Internet connection has been made.
If the phone has been connected via Bluetooth previously, tap Settings in the center display's Top view.
Tap Communication → Bluetooth Devices.
Mark the window for Bluetooth Internet connection under the heading Internet connection.
If a different connection is being used, confirm the connection change.
Your vehicle is now connected to the Internet via your Bluetooth-connected phone.

> **NOTE**
> The cellular phone and network operator must support tethering (sharing of Internet connection) and the subscription must include data traffic.

> **NOTE**
> When using Apple CarPlay, it is only possible to connect the vehicle to the Internet using Wi-Fi or the vehicle's modem.

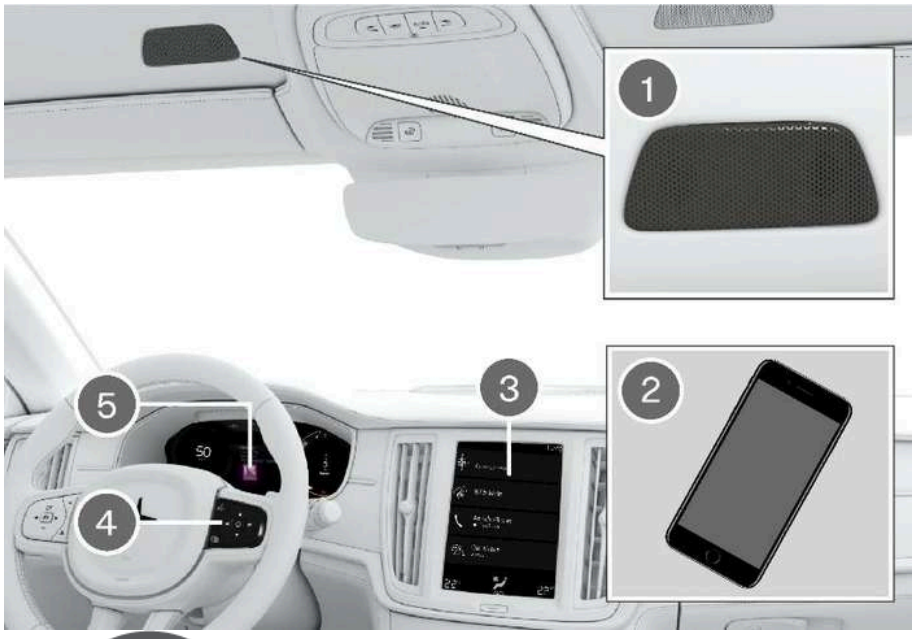
Phone

A phone equipped with Bluetooth can be wirelessly connected to the vehicle's integrated hands-free system.
The audio and media system offers hands-free functionality for remotely controlling a number of the phone's features. The phone's integrated controls can also be used, even when it is connected to the vehicle.

When the phone has been paired and connected to the vehicle, it can be used as an Internet connection or to make or receive calls, send or receive text messages or wirelessly play music.

The phone is controlled from the center display, and the App menu (accessed using the right-side steering wheel keypad) and voice commands can also be used to control certain functions.

Overview



1. Microphone.
2. Phone.
3. Phone handling in the center display.
4. Keypad for controlling phone functions shown in the center display and voice commands.
5.

5. Instrument panel.

Voice control for cellular phones

See Voice control for cellular phones.

Phone settings

When the phone is connected to the car, the following settings can be made:
Tap Settings in the Top view.
Tap Communication → Phone and select settings:

- Ringtones – selection of ring tone. It is possible to use ring tones from the vehicle or from a phone. Some phones are not fully compatible and it may not be possible to use the phone's ring tones in the vehicle.
- Sort Order - select sort order in the contact list.

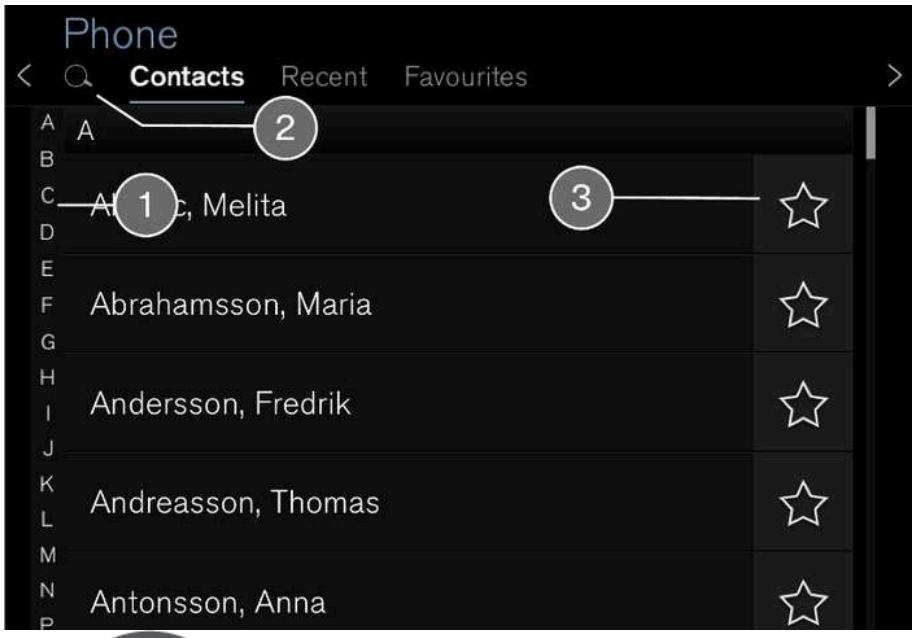
> **NOTE**
> For some phones, the Bluetooth volume on the phone must be manually set to 100% in order for the audio volume in the vehicle to be high enough. This setting needs to be made for each phone that is connected. The setting is adjusted separately for phone calls and media streaming. The system will then remember the setting and it will not need to be repeated the next time the phone is connected.

Call notifications in head up display

Tap Settings in the center display's Top view.
Tap My Car → Displays → Head-Up Display Options.
Select Show Phone.

Managing the phone book

When a phone is connected with Bluetooth to the vehicle, contacts can be managed directly in the center display.
Up to 3,000 contacts can be displayed from the phone selected in the center display.



1. Scroll by letter or

   #

   to find contacts. Only letters matching existing contacts in the phone book will be shown.

2. Search contacts - tap

   to search by phone number or name in the phone book.

3. Favorites - tap

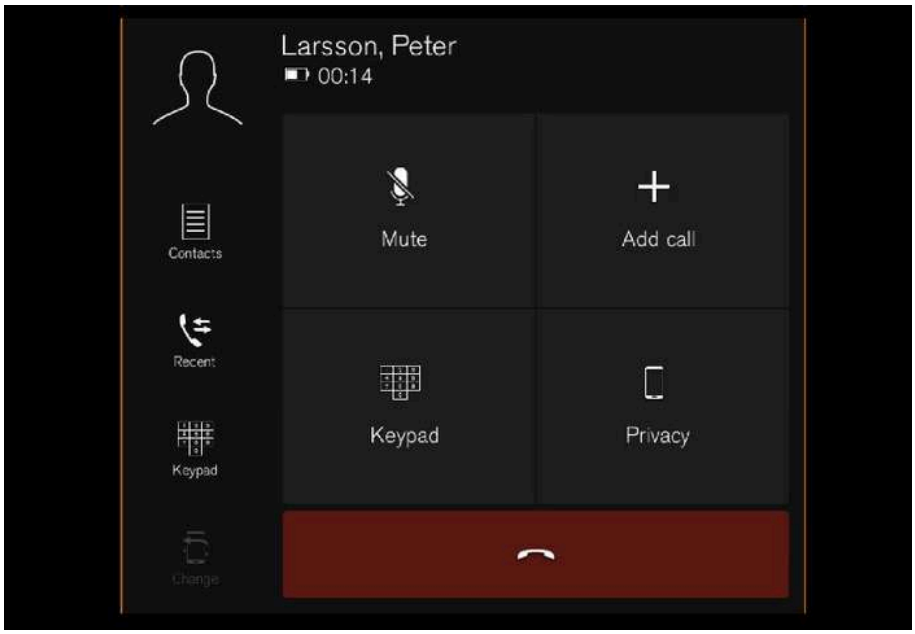
   to add/remove a contact from the list of favorites.

Sorting

The phone book is sorted in alphabetical order and special characters and numbers are sorted under # . The list can be sorted by either first name or last name. This is adjusted in your cellular phone settings.

Handling phone calls

Handling phone calls in the vehicle for a Bluetooth-connected cellular phone.



Generic illustration.

Making calls

Open the phone tile.
Initiate a call by selecting the phone number from the recent calls list, entering the number on the keypad or selecting a number from the phone book (list of contacts). You can search or scroll to find a contact in the phone book. Tap ☆ in the phone book to add a contact to Favorites.
Tap to make a call.
Tap to end the call.
Calls can also be made from the list of recent calls using the app menu, which can be opened using the button on the right-side steering wheel keypad.

Making multiple calls

While the call is in progress:
Tap Add call.
Select from the list of recent calls, favorites or contacts.
Tap an item/row in the list of recent calls or for the contact in the phone book.
Tap Swap call to switch between calls.
Tap to end the current call.

Group (conference) calls

While multiple calls are in progress:
Tap Join calls to merge ongoing calls.
Tap to end the call.

Incoming calls

Incoming phone calls will be shown on the instrument panel and in the center display. Manage the calls using the right-side steering wheel keypad or the center display.

Tap Answer/Reject.
Tap to end the call.

Incoming calls while another call is in progress

Tap Answer/Reject.
Tap to end the call.

Privacy

While a call is in progress, tap Privacy and select setting:

- Switch to mobile phone - the hands-free function will be disabled and the call will proceed on the cellular phone.
- Driver focused - the microphone in the ceiling liner on the passenger side will be muted and the call will proceed using the vehicle's hands-free function.

> **NOTE**
> For some phones, the Bluetooth volume on the phone must be manually set to 100% in order for the audio volume in the vehicle to be high enough. This setting needs to be made for each phone that is connected. The setting is adjusted separately for phone calls and media streaming. The system will then remember the setting and it will not need to be repeated the next time the phone is connected.

Handling text messages

A Bluetooth-connected cellular phone's text messages can be handled in the vehicle.
Text message functionality needs to be activated in certain phones. Not all phones are fully compatible and therefore cannot display contacts and messages in the vehicle.

Handling text messages in the center display

Text messages are only shown in the center display if the relevant setting is made.



Tap Messages in App view to handle text messages in the center display.

> **NOTE**
>
> **When the vehicle is moving:**
>
> - Only one row of the message will be displayed. Tap Read out to have the entire message read aloud.
> - The center display's keyboard cannot be used.

Reading text messages in the center display aloud



Tap the icon to have the message read aloud.

Sending text messages in the center display[2]

It is possible to reply to text messages or create a new message.

- To reply to a text message - tap the name of the contact who sent the message and then tap Answer.
- To create a new message - tap Create new. Select a contact or enter a phone number.

Write the message.
Tap Send.

Handling text messages in the instrument panel

Text messages are only shown in the instrument panel if the relevant setting is made.

Reading new text messages in the instrument panel aloud

To have the message read aloud, select Read out using the steering wheel keypad.

Dictating replies in the instrument panel

After the text message has been read aloud, it is possible to answer briefly with dictation if the vehicle has an Internet connection.
Tap Answer using the steering wheel keypad. A dictation dialog will start.

Message alert

Alerts can be activated and deactivated in the text message settings.

1 Only applies to certain markets. Contact Polestar Customer Support for more information.
2 Only certain phones can send messages via the vehicle. The connected phone must support Bluetooth Message Access Profile (MAP).

Text message settings

Settings for handling text messages received through a connected phone can be personalized.

Tap Settings in the Top view.
Tap Communication → Text Messages and select settings:

- Notification in center display - display text message notifications in the center display's status bar.
- Notification in driver display - displays notifications in the driver's display and incoming messages can be managed using the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.
- Text message tone - select tone for incoming text messages.

Apps

Available apps in vehicle

Pandora

Pandora is an online service which allows you to access music. With Pandora you can create personal stations from a favorite artist, track or genre.

Create Pandora account

Pandora is a free service. In order to use the service, you must have an account that you create on the Pandora website2.

Bookmark music track

You can bookmark a track. For more information about the track or album, log in to the Pandora website3.

Tips when using Pandora

If you experience problems with Pandora, check that you have a working internet connection and good signal strength.

When using Pandora it is possible to skip over six tracks per station and per hour.

It is not possible to search forward or back through the tracks in the vehicle version of the app.

1 Availability varies depending on market.
2 It is not possible to create an account from the vehicle.
3 Cannot be viewed from the vehicle.

Park and Pay

Park and Pay is an app that can help you find vacant parking spaces. In some cases, you can also pay for your parking via the app. Park and Pay can be used if the vehicle is equipped with Sensus Connect and Sensus Navigation.

The Park and Pay app

With the Park and Pay app you can find free parking spots and pay for your parking. The payment service is available in parking locations that are connected to the payment providers supported by Park and Pay. These locations are indicated in the app by an icon in the list view as well as under "detailed information" for each parking spot. There you will also find information about payment providers and parking identification.

Using Park and Pay

You do not need to register an account to use the Park and Pay app, but if you want to pay for your parking via the app, you need to register on the payment provider's website.

The Park and Pay app is a free service but you will be charged by the payment provider if you use the payment function. Note that data usage charges may be incurred depending on subscription. Contact your internet provider for more information about data usage costs.

Price example

The detailed view for parking spaces shows a price example, which can vary depending on the time and date. The price stated once you have set the estimated time for parking is the actual cost of the parking for the estimated time.

End parking

If you use a parking space where you only pay for the time you parked, the app will ask you to enter the estimated time for parking so that you do not forget to end parking. If you end parking before it expires, you will only pay for the time you parked2.

Tips when using Park and Pay

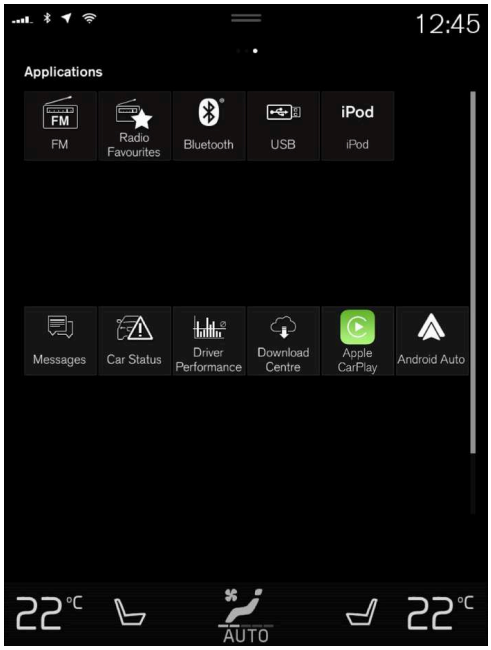
If you experience problems with Park and Pay, check that you have a working internet connection and good signal strength.

1 Availability varies depending on market.

2 This only applies for payment providers who support payment for ended parking.

Apps

The App view contains applications (apps) that provide access to certain vehicle services.
Swipe the center display screen from right to left to access the App view from the Home view. This view displays downloaded apps (third-party apps) as well as apps for integrated functions, such as FM radio.



App view (generic illustration)

Several basic apps are always available. More apps such as web radio and music services can be downloaded when the car is connected to the Internet.

Some apps can only be used when the vehicle is connected to the Internet.

Start an app by pressing the app in the center display's app view.

All apps used should be updated to the latest version.

Available apps in vehicle

Polestar offers a wide range of services, apps and programs that can be downloaded to the vehicle.
Sensus Connect gives you access to apps for entertainment, navigation and service in the vehicle. To see what apps are available for download, go to Download Center in the vehicle's center display.

Tips when using apps

Many apps require an Internet connection to use certain functions[1].

If an app isn't working as expected, try deleting and then re-installing the app.

> **NOTE**
> The selection of available apps may vary from market to market. Support for services from Polestar's third-party suppliers may also vary. It may be the case that one or several apps are not available on the market where the vehicle is sold or used.

1 There may be a charge for transmitting data over the Internet, depending on your service plan.

Download apps

New apps can be downloaded when the vehicle is connected to the Internet.

> **NOTE**
> Data downloading can affect other services such as transfer data, e.g. web radio. If the affect on other services is experienced as problematic, the download can be interrupted. Alternatively, it may be appropriate to switch off or cancel other services.

> **NOTE**
> When downloading using a phone, pay extra attention to the data traffic costs.

Open the Download Center app in App view.



Select New apps to open a list of apps that are available but are not installed in the vehicle.
Tap on the row for an app in order to expand in the list and get more information about the app.
Select Install to start the download and installation of the app.
The current status of the download and installation will be shown.

If a download cannot be started immediately, a message will be displayed. The app will remain in the list and it will be possible to reattempt downloading.

Canceling a download

Tap Abort to cancel a download in progress.
Note that only a download can be cancelled. An installation cannot be cancelled once it has begun.

Deleting apps

When the vehicle is connected to the Internet, it is possible to uninstall apps.
If the app is being used, it must be closed before it can be uninstalled.
Open the Download Center app in App view.



Select Application updates to open a list of all installed apps.
Find the desired app and select Uninstall to begin uninstalling the app.
When the app has been uninstalled, it will be removed from the list.

Updating apps

Apps can be updated when the vehicle is connected to the Internet.

> **NOTE**
> Data downloading can affect other services such as transfer data, e.g. web radio. If the affect on other services is experienced as problematic, the download can be interrupted. Alternatively, it may be appropriate to switch off or cancel other services.

> **NOTE**
> When downloading using a phone, pay extra attention to the data traffic costs.

If an app is being used while an update is in progress, it will be restarted to complete the update.

Update all

Open the Download Center app in App view.



Select Install all.
The update will begin.

Update certain apps

Open the Download Center app in App view.
Select Application updates to open a list of all available updates.
Find the desired app and select Install.
The update will begin.

Polestar ID

See Polestar ID.

Create a Polestar ID

See Create a Polestar ID.

Google Local Search

Using the Google Local Search app, you can search for restaurants, hotels and gasoline stations and a lot more along your route directly in your vehicle's center display.

Functions in Google Local Search

Google Local Search is a free service. No registration is needed to access the online database. However, you need an Internet connection to be able to use the service2.

Using the Google Local Search app you can, among other things, search for locations, restaurants, hotels and other businesses along the route and in the vicinity of your destination.

In Google Local Search, you can also access information on different search results such as addresses, distances, opening times and telephone numbers. The app includes the option to call a business directly from the vehicle, and you can get directions to a destination by sending an address to the vehicle's navigation system.

In Google Local Search you can read, and in some cases listen to, reviews and see user ratings for, among other things, restaurants and hotels. You can also browse through and look at images linked to search results and you have access to photographs from Google Street View which can make it easier to find your way to a desired location or business.

Operating

The keyboard for searching in Google Local Search is locked while driving and reviews are limited to three rows.

Tips when using Google Local Search

If you experience problems with Google Local Search, check that you have a working internet connection and good signal strength.

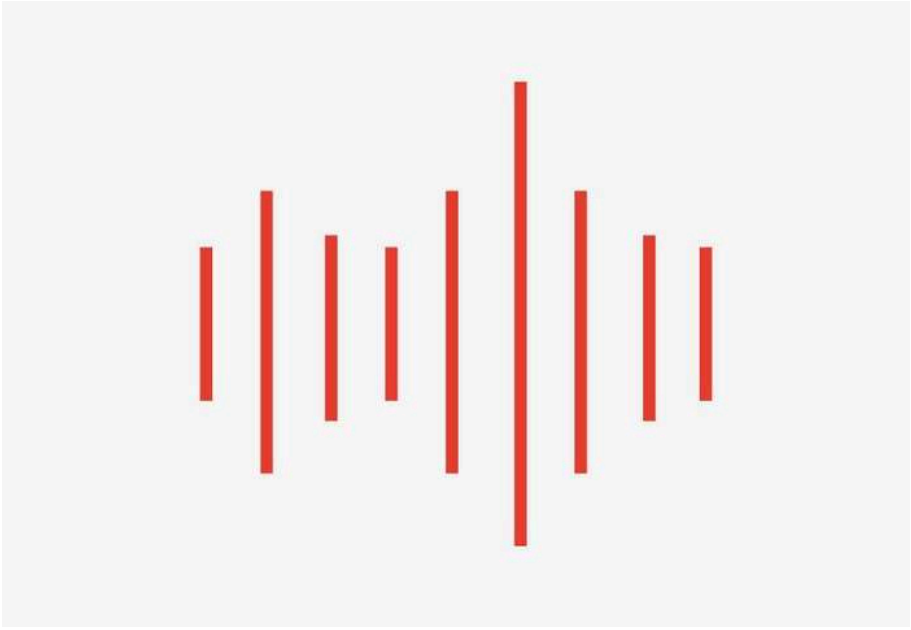
1 Availability varies depending on market.

2 There may be a charge for transmitting data over the Internet, depending on your service plan.

Record & Send

Record & Send is a vehicle app that allows you to record personal voice messages and send them to a any recipient.

Making and sending recordings



When the app starts, two options will be shown: enter recipient and record by pressing the microphone symbol.
Tap Recipient and enter the email address you would like to send the recording to.
Tap the microphone symbol to start recording.
Record the message.
Tap the microphone symbol again to stop recording.
You will be asked if you would like to send the recording or delete it.

Open voice recording

When a recording is sent, the recipient receives an e-mail that can be opened in a standard e-mail program, either in a cellular phone or a computer. The recording is included as an attachment file in MP3 format.

Open software

To compress recordings in MP3 format, use the open software library LAME. You can read more about LAME on their website: www.mp3dev.org.

1 Availability varies depending on market.

Spotify

Use the Spotify app to listen to music when the vehicle is connected to the Internet.

Getting started with Spotify with Sensus Connect

A Spotify Premium account is required to use Spotify. Currently, it is not possible to create an account from the app in your vehicle, but you can easily create an account from the Spotify website. If you have already created a Spotify Premium account, you can of course use this.

Internet connection when using Spotify

To use Spotify in your vehicle, the app must have access to the Internet. Offline mode is currently not available.

Sound quality

In the app settings, you can adjust sound quality between Normal, High and Extreme.

- Normal (96 kbps)
- High (160 kbps)
- Extreme (320 kbps)

Functions

The Spotify app offers a range of options and functions, such as:

- Free text search
- Auto search
- Play/Pause/Resume
- Browse through albums, playlists, news, etc.
- Add/remove music tracks from your library
- Log in/out
- Skip between music tracks
- Spotify Connect
- Spotify Radio

> **NOTE**
> Polestar does not save information that is used in the Spotify app, with the exception of locally stored data that is necessary for the app to work. Passwords are never saved and if you log out of the app, you must re-enter both the username and password to log in again.

Delete user details

To delete user details, log out of the Spotify app via the settings menu. The user details are also deleted at a factory reset of the center display.

Tips when using Spotify

If Spotify is not performing as expected, check your Internet connection and signal strength.

1 Availability varies depending on market.

Spotify license agreement

See Spotify license agreement.

TuneIn

TuneIn is a radio app that can be used when the vehicle is connected to the Internet. TuneIn offers over 100,000 global live radio stations from every continent and over two million on-demand programs (e.g. podcasts, concerts and interviews).

TuneIn account

It is not necessary to create a TuneIn account to use the app, but it is recommended for access to more functions. To create an account, go to www.tunein.com.

Sound quality

You can choose between basic, medium or high streaming sound quality. Bandwidth usage depends on the selected quality. See the specifications below for more information.

Speed (kbps)	Duration (hours)	Size (MB)
32 (Basic sound quality)	1	14
64 (Basic sound quality)	1	28
96 (Medium sound quality)	1	42
128 (High sound quality)	1	56

Tips when using TuneIn

If TuneIn is not performing as expected, make sure your Internet connection is working and has a strong signal.

1 Availability varies depending on market.

Using TuneIn

With the Internet radio service TuneIn, you can, for example, play local radio and save radio stations as favorites.

Starting TuneIn

Download the TuneIn app from Download Center in App view.
Open the TuneIn app in App view.
The vehicle connects to TuneIn. The first time you do this the music will buffer, which can take a few seconds.

Accessing account information

Open the TuneIn app in App view.
Expand the view and click on Sign in.
A pop-up window will appear for login.
Enter your username and password, then press Sign in.
Account information is now available.

Categories

With TuneIn, it is easy to scroll through different categories.

Open the TuneIn app in App view.
Expand the view and click on Library.
A list of stations and categories appears.

Selecting favorites

When you log in to a TuneIn account in the vehicle, favorites will be synchronized with that account. If no account is used for login, favorites will instead only be saved in the vehicle.

In expanded view: Click a radio station to select it as a favorite.
Mark the star icon to the right.
The station has now been added to favorites.

Weather

The Weather app gives you access to daily and weekly weather forecasts for the vehicle's local area or for the selected location.

Using Weather

Use the app settings to set the location for weather information. The settings can be accessed in the display mode for the app. You can also change settings for measuring wind speed in this mode.

Weather is a free service and no account is required to use the service[2].

Tips when using Weather

If Weather is not performing as expected, make sure your Internet connection is working and has a strong signal.

1 Availability varies depending on market.

2 There may be a charge for transmitting data over the Internet, depending on your service plan.

WikiLocations

With the WikiLocations app, you can read Wikipedia articles related to the vehicle's location and destination.

The WikiLocations app

WikiLocations provides access to Wikipedia-based content. The app allows you to access articles, images and summaries related to the vehicle's location and destination.

Only articles that have been assigned a geographic location are shown in WikiLocations. The app only shows articles that match the vehicle's language settings and articles in English.

Using WikiLocations

WikiLocations is a free service and no account is required to use the service[2].

Use the steering wheel knob for safer use of the app while you drive.

Tips when using WikiLocations

If WikiLocations is not performing as expected, make sure your Internet connection is working and has a strong signal.

1 Availability varies depending on market.

2 There may be a charge for transmitting data over the Internet, depending on your service plan.

Yelp

With the Yelp app, you can find local companies (e.g. restaurants or stores) and read users' ratings and reviews of companies near you.

The Yelp app

With Yelp, you can search for e.g. restaurants, stores, spas or local services, or read reviews of companies.

Reviews appear depending on the language they are written in. If a review cannot be read, it may be because the review is not written in your language.

Using Yelp

Yelp is a free service and no account is required to use the service. However, you do need an Internet connection to use the service[2].

Use the steering wheel control for safer use of the app while driving.

Search for companies nearby

To search for companies near the vehicle's destination, the destination must be entered into the navigation system.

In order to get the best possible results, try to use specific terms, where the free-text search matches the company name and the text in the reviews.

Tips when using Yelp

If it is not possible to start navigation to a selected company, this is probably because Yelp does not have information about the company's precise position. The same applies if it is not possible to see the company on the map.

If Yelp is not performing as expected, make sure your Internet connection is working and has a strong signal.

1 Availability varies depending on market.

2 There may be a charge for transmitting data over the Internet, depending on your service plan.

Internet connection

Internet-based services

Apps

See Apps.

Terms of use and data sharing

See Terms of use and data sharing.

Activating and deactivating data sharing

See Activating and deactivating data sharing.

Data sharing for Polestar Connect

Data sharing is enabled by default for Polestar Connect. This means that you do not need to enable data sharing for the service when you purchase a new vehicle or e.g. after a factory reset.
You can choose to disable data sharing for Polestar Connect. Note that most Polestar Connect functions need to be able to share data in order for you to use them. If you have connected your vehicle to the Polestar 1 app, a notification will be displayed in the app if the data sharing function is disabled for the service.

The data sharing settings are only enabled by default for your Polestar Connect. Data sharing will remain disabled for your other connected services and downloaded apps and will need to be enabled in order to be used.

Driver profile data sharing

When you begin using a new driver profile, the data sharing preferences for the profile will be set to the vehicle's default settings and be disabled.
If you want to begin using a new driver profile, data sharing must be enabled for the connected services the profile wants to use. This applies even if you have previously enabled data sharing for connected services for other driver profiles.

Sometimes, after a workshop visit or after a software update, some settings in your vehicle may be reset to their default settings. Because the data sharing settings are unique to each driver profile, data sharing must be reactivated individually for each profile.

NOTE

When you buy a Polestar, the dealer can often provide assistance with settings in the vehicle and go through the various setting options with you. Among other things, this could mean that data sharing was already activated for connected services in the new car at the time of delivery.

If you then begin using a new driver profile, the data sharing settings for the new profile will be deactivated and must then be activated for the connected services you want to use. This also applies to data sharing settings for downloaded apps.

Checking which driver profile is being used

The data sharing settings may be different for different driver profiles in your vehicle. For example, one profile may have data sharing enabled for only one connected service, while another has the function enabled for all services and downloaded apps.

If you find that some apps or connected services do not seem to be working as they should in your vehicle, e.g. if you are repeatedly asked to allow data sharing for certain functions, check which driver profile is active and for which services the profile has activated data sharing.

You can switch driver profile under Profile in Top view in your center display.

You can always choose to enable data sharing for the connected services you want to be able to use in a driver profile, but if the profile has protected and saved its settings, all of the changes you make will be temporary. This is because all settings for a protected driver profile will revert to the latest saved settings when the vehicle is switched off and locked.

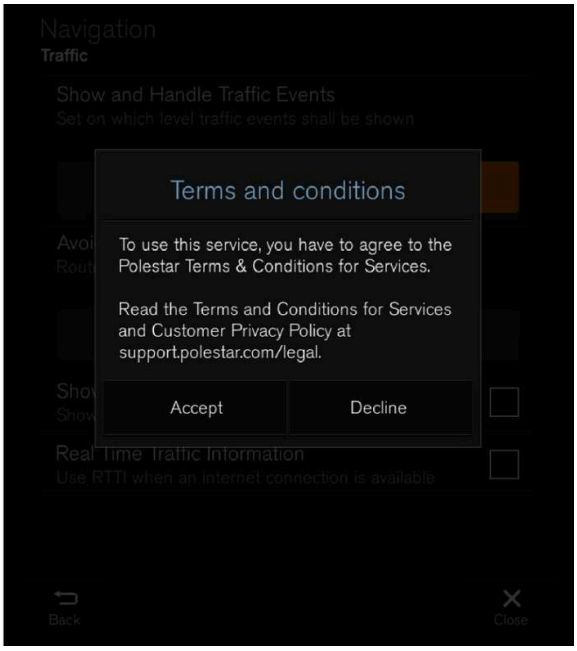
To save changes made in a protected driver profile, go to Settings → System → Driver Profiles → Edit Profile in your center display and tap the button at the bottom of the screen to save changes for the profile.

Data sharing for services

If you haven't activated data sharing for a connected service or for downloaded apps, you can do this when you start them in your center display. The first time you start a service, or after e.g. a factory reset or certain software updates, you must also accept Polestar's terms and conditions for connected services.

Enabling data sharing when starting a service

Select the function or service you want to activate.
The first time the service is used, and also e.g. a factory reset or certain software updates, you will first need to accept Polestar's terms and conditions for connected services in order to continue.



Accept data sharing for the service or cancel.
If you choose to accept, data sharing will be enabled and you can begin using the service.

Enabling data sharing when starting an app

To accept data sharing for an app that needs the function, start the app and tap **accept** in the pop-up window.

You can disable data sharing for services and apps in the settings menu under System → Privacy and data → Data Sharing.

Polestar ID

See Polestar ID.

Create a Polestar ID

See Create a Polestar ID.

Real Time Traffic Information (RTTI)

When the vehicle is connected to the Internet, the driver can access enhanced traffic information (RTTI2) about traffic congestion, closed roads and other circumstances that could affect travel time.
If the RTTI service is activated, information about traffic events and flow is continuously retrieved from an online service. When a vehicle requests traffic flow information, anonymous data about traffic flow in the vehicle's location is also provided, which helps enable the service to function. Anonymous data is only sent when RTTI is activated. If the service is not activated, no data will be provided.

The service may need to be reactivated e.g. following certain software updates, after a workshop visit or when creating a new driver profile.

Current traffic information is shown in the navigation system for highways/freeways, major roads, secondary roads and in some cases urban routes.

The amount of traffic information shown on the map depends on the distance to the vehicle and is only shown within approximately 120 km (75 miles) from the vehicle's location.

Text and symbols on the map are displayed in the usual way and the traffic flow shows how fast the traffic is moving on a road in comparison with the road's speed limit. The traffic flow is shown on the map on each side of the road with a colored line in each direction.

- Green - no disturbances.
- Orange - slow-moving traffic.
- Red - congestion/traffic jam/accident.
- Black - road closed.

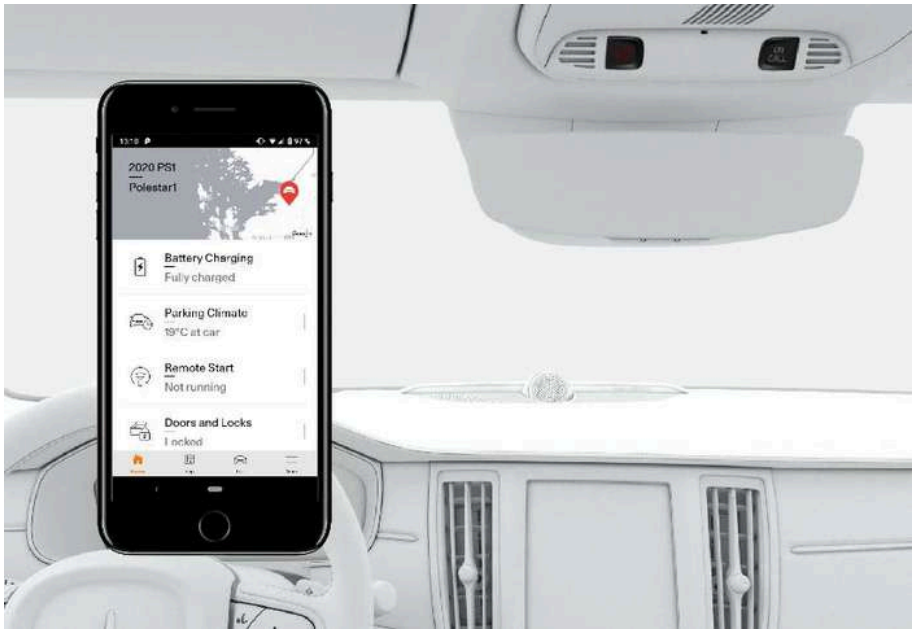
> **NOTE**
> Traffic information is not available in all areas/countries.
>
> Coverage areas for traffic information is continuously extended.

1 Certain markets only.

2 Real Time Traffic Information

Polestar Connect

Polestar Connect provides direct contact with the vehicle and extra comfort and assistance 24 hours a day.
The functions are available via the Polestar 1 app and the ON CALL and SOS buttons in the vehicle's ceiling console:



For example, you can lock and unlock the vehicle or check the fuel level directly on a phone via the Polestar 1 app. If an accident occurs, emergency assistance can be sent to the vehicle in the form of e.g. ambulance and police. In less critical situations, e.g. a flat tire, roadside assistance can be called out.

> **NOTE**
> The SOS button must only be used in the event of accident, illness or an external threat against the vehicle and its passengers. The SOS function is only intended for emergency situations. Misuse could incur extra charges.
>
> The Polestar 1 app and the ON CALL button can be used for all other services, including roadside assistance.

The Polestar Connect system

Polestar Connect is connected to the vehicle's safety and alarm systems and to other systems in the vehicle, such as lock and climate systems. The vehicle has an integrated modem for communication with Polestar Assistance and the Polestar 1 app. GNSS (Global Navigation Satellite System) is used to locate the vehicle.

Personal data processing

In order to provide you with all the functions of the Polestar Connect service, certain information, including personal data, must be processed. Read more about privacy at polestar.com/privacy.

Contacting Polestar Assistance

To contact Polestar Assistance, use the vehicle's ON CALL button or the Polestar 1 app.

Connecting the vehicle to the Internet via a Bluetooth-connected phone

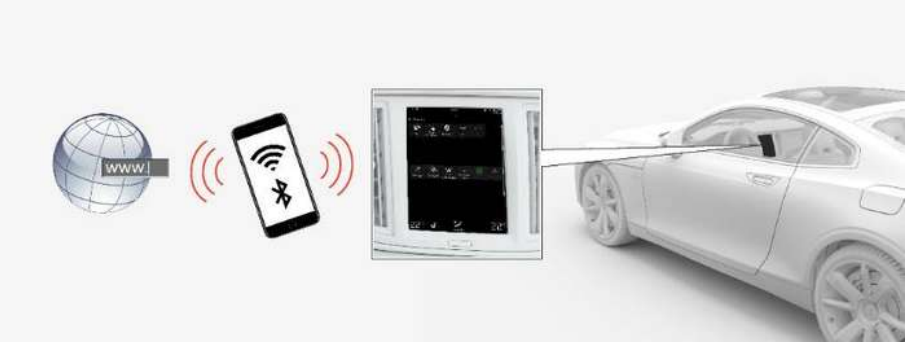
See Connecting the vehicle to the Internet via a Bluetooth-connected phone.

Internet-connected vehicle

When the vehicle is connected to the Internet, it is possible to use web radio and music services via apps, download software and contact retailers from the vehicle.
The vehicle can be connected to the Internet using Bluetooth, Wi-Fi or the vehicle's integrated modem (SIM card).

When the vehicle is connected to the Internet, it is possible to share the vehicle's Internet connection (Wi-Fi hotspot) so that other devices, e.g. tablets, can access the Internet1.

The Internet status is shown by a symbol in the center display's status bar.



NOTE

Data (data traffic) is transfered when using the internet, which can incur additional costs.

Activating data roaming can cause additional charges.

Contact your network operator about data traffic costs.

NOTE

When using Apple CarPlay, it is only possible to connect the vehicle to the Internet using Wi-Fi or the vehicle's modem.

NOTE

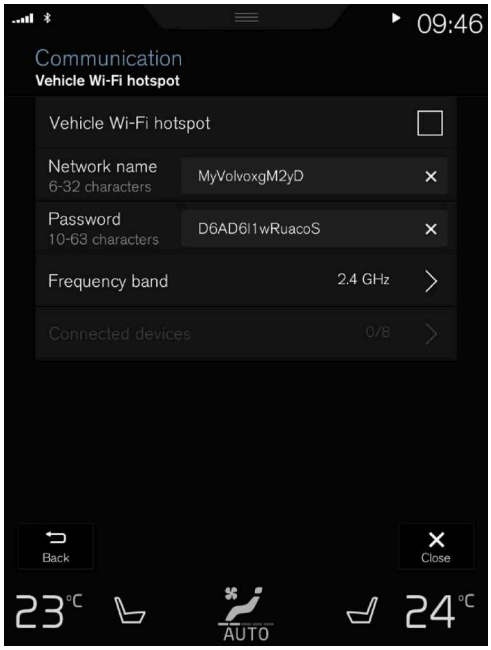
When using Android Auto, it is possible to connect the vehicle to the Internet using Wi-Fi, Bluetooth or the vehicle's modem.

Read **Terms and Conditions for Services** and **Customer Privacy Policy** at support.polestar.com before connecting the car to the Internet.

1 This is not possible when the vehicle is connected to another Wi-Fi hotspot.

Sharing Internet from the vehicle via Wi-Fi hotspot (tethering)

When the vehicle is connected to the Internet, other devices may share the vehicle's Internet connection1.



The network service provider (SIM card) must support Internet sharing (tethering).
Tap Settings in the Top view.
Tap Communication → Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.
Tap Network name to assign a name to the hotspot.
Tap Password and create a password. This password can then be used to connect other devices to this hotspot.
Tap Frequency band and select a frequency for the hotspot to use to transmit data. Please note that selecting a frequency is not possible on all markets.
Activate/deactivate by tapping to check/uncheck the Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot box.
If Wi-Fi is being used to connect to the Internet, confirm the change of connections.
It is now possible for external devices to connect to the vehicle's Wi-Fi hotspot.

NOTE

Activation of Wi-Fi hotspot can cause additional charges from your network operator.

Contact your network operator about data traffic costs.

The connection status is shown by a symbol in the center display's status bar.

Tap Connected devices to see a list of currently connected devices.

1 This does not apply when the vehicle is connected to the Internet via Wi-Fi.

Connecting the vehicle to the Internet via a phone (Wi-Fi)

Establish an Internet connection using Wi-Fi through Internet sharing (tethering) from a phone and get access to the connected services in your vehicle.
Make sure that the phone supports Internet sharing (tethering) and that the function is activated. In an iPhone, the function is called "personal hotspot". In Android phones, the function can have different names, but is often called "hotspot". For iPhone phones, the "personal hotspot" menu page must also be open until the Internet connection has been made.
Tap Settings in the Top view.
Proceed to Communication → Wi-Fi.
Activate/deactivate by tapping to check/uncheck the Wi-Fi box.
If a different connection is being used, confirm the connection change.
Tap the name of the network you would like to connect.
Enter the network password.
The vehicle will connect to the network.
Please note that certain cellular phones will disable Internet sharing (tethering) when the connection to the vehicle has been broken, e.g. when the phone has been removed from the vehicle. The phone's tethering function will then need to be reactivated the next time the phone's hotspot is used to connect to the Internet.

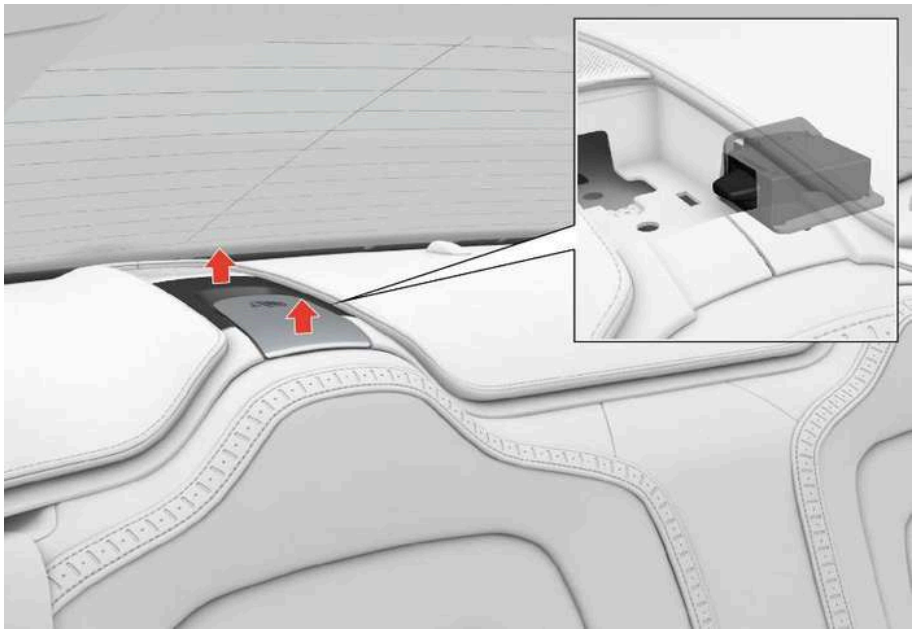
When a phone is connected to the vehicle, it will be saved for future use. To display a list of saved networks or to manually delete saved networks, tap Settings → Communication → Wi-Fi → Saved networks.

> **NOTE**
> The cellular phone and network operator must support tethering (sharing of Internet connection) and the subscription must include data traffic.

Technical and security requirements for Wi-Fi connection are described in a separate section.

Connecting the vehicle to the Internet via vehicle modem (SIM card)

It is possible to establish an Internet connection via the vehicle modem and a personal SIM card (P-SIM).
Vehicles equipped with Polestar Connect will use the vehicle modem Internet connection for the services.



The SIM card is located under the cover of the upper right-side child restraint anchor at the edge of the rear-seat parcel shelf.

Insert a personal SIM card in the holder.

Note that the vehicle's card reader requires **mini SIM** cards.

Tap Settings in the Top view.
Tap Communication → Vehicle Modem Internet.
Activate/deactivate by tapping to check/uncheck the Vehicle modem Internet box.
If a different connection is being used, confirm the connection change.
Enter the SIM card's PIN code.
The vehicle will connect to the network.

Vehicle modem settings

Your vehicle is equipped with a modem that can be used to connect the vehicle to the Internet. It is also possible to share this Internet connection over Wi-Fi.
Tap Settings in the Top view.
Tap Communication → Vehicle Modem Internet and select settings:

- Vehicle modem Internet - select this to use the vehicle's modem to connect to the Internet.
- Data usage - tap Reset to reset the counter for the amount of data received and sent.
- Network

Select carrier - select a service provider manually or automatically.
Data roaming - if the box is checked, the vehicle modem will attempt to connect to the Internet when the vehicle is outside its home network (e.g. if you are in another country). Please note that this could entail additional charges. Consult with your service provider for data roaming terms under your contract.

- SIM card PIN

Change PIN - a maximum of 4 digits can be entered.
Disable PIN - select whether a PIN code will be required to access the SIM card.

- Send request code - used to e.g. download or check the balance remaining on a prepaid phone card. This function is specific to your service provider.

No or poor Internet connection

Factors affecting the Internet connection.
The amount of data transmitted depends on the services or apps currently in use in the vehicle. Streaming music, for example, involves the transmission of a large amount of data, and this requires a good connection and a strong signal.

Phone to vehicle

Internet connection speed may vary depending on the location of the cellular phone in the vehicle. Move the phone closer to the center display to increase signal strength. Make sure that nothing is between the phone and center display that could be blocking the signal.

Phone to network operator

The speed of the mobile network varies depending on the coverage in the vehicle's current location. Coverage may be poorer in e.g. tunnels, mountainous areas, deep valleys or indoors. Connection speed is also dependent on the subscription you have with your service provider.

> **NOTE**
> If you experience any problems with data traffic, contact your network service provider.

Restarting the phone

If you experience any Internet connection problems, it may help to restart your phone.

Deleting Wi-Fi networks

Networks that are not needed can be deleted.
Tap Settings in the Top view.
Proceed to Communication → Wi-Fi → Saved networks.
Tap Forget to delete the network.
Confirm the selection.
The vehicle will no longer connect to the deleted network.

Deleting all networks

All networks can be deleted at once by performing a factory reset. Please note that all user data and system settings will be restored to original default factory settings.

Wi-Fi technology and security

Networks must meet certain criteria in order for the vehicle to connect.
It is possible to connect to the following types of networks:

- Frequency – 2.4 or 5 GHz[1].
- Standards – 802.11 a/b/g/n.
- Security type – WPA2-AES-CCMP.

The vehicle's Wi-Fi system is designed to handle Wi-Fi devices inside the vehicle.

Performance may be impaired if multiple devices are using a frequency at the same time.

1 Selecting a frequency is not possible on all markets.

Audio, media and Internet

The audio and media system consists of a media player and a radio. A cellular phone can also be connected through Bluetooth to use hands-free functions or play music in the vehicle. When the vehicle is connected to the Internet, it is also possible to use apps to play media.



Audio and media overview

The functions can be controlled using voice commands, the steering wheel keypad or the center display. The number of speakers and amplifiers varies depending on the audio system installed in the vehicle.

System updates

The audio and media system is continuously improved. System updates should be downloaded as soon as new updates are available.

License agreement for audio and media

See License agreement for audio and media.

Tips for handling Internet connection problems

If you are having difficulty connecting the vehicle to the Internet, there are a few things you can try:

- If the clock has been reset, e.g. after the current to the battery has been cut in the event of a service visit, you must reset the clock before you can connect the vehicle to the Internet.
- Certain phones switch off Internet sharing after contact with the vehicle has been broken, for example if the phone that shares the Wi-Fi network is removed from the vehicle. To reconnect to the Internet, activate tethering (portable/personal hotspot) in the phone.
- If the Internet connection via vehicle modem (P-SIM) is lost, the vehicle will automatically attempt to reconnect to the Internet.

Hard disk storage space

It is possible to view how much space is remaining on the vehicle's hard disk.

Storage information for the vehicle's hard disk can be shown, including total capacity, available capacity and how much space is used for installed apps. The information is found under Settings → System → System Information → Storage.

Sound settings

Sound reproduction quality is preset but can also be adjusted.
The system's volume is normally adjusted using the volume control below the center display or the right-side steering wheel keypad. This applies, for example, when playing music or the radio or during phone calls and active traffic messages.

> **NOTE**
> For some phones, the Bluetooth volume on the phone must be manually set to 100% in order for the audio volume in the vehicle to be high enough. This setting needs to be made for each phone that is connected. The setting is adjusted separately for phone calls and media streaming. The system will then remember the setting and it will not need to be repeated the next time the phone is connected.

Sound reproduction

The audio system is precalibrated using digital signal processing. This calibration takes into account speakers, amplifiers, passenger compartment acoustics, listener location, etc. There is also a dynamic calibration that takes into account the volume control's position and the vehicle's speed.

Personal settings

Different settings are available in Top view under Settings → Sound.

Premium Sound (Bowers & Wilkins)

- Tone - setting for e.g. bass, treble, equalizer, etc.
- Balance - balance between right/left and front/rear speakers.
- System Volumes – adjusts volume in the various systems of the car, e.g. Voice Control, Park Assist and Phone Ringtone.

Sound Experience

Sound experience is an app that provides access to additional sound settings.
Sound Experience is opened from the center display's App view and the following settings are possible:

Premium Sound (Bowers & Wilkins)

- Studio – sound settings can be adjusted to be primarily adapted for Driver, All and Rear.
- Individual stage - surround sound mode with settings for intensity and enclosure.
- Concert hall - reproduces the acoustics of Gothenburg's Concert Hall



Recreate the acoustics from the Gothenburg Concert Hall.

Customer Privacy Policy

See Customer Privacy Policy.

Sensus - connection and entertainment

See Sensus - connection and entertainment.

Terms and Conditions for Services

See Terms and Conditions for Services.

Polestar Connect

This section provides information on Polestar Connect and how you can use the vehicle's ON CALL and SOS buttons to contact Polestar Support or summon emergency assistance. You will also find information on the Polestar Connect app.

Polestar Connect services

Connecting the vehicle to the Internet via vehicle modem (SIM card)

See Connecting the vehicle to the Internet via vehicle modem (SIM card).

Assistance with Polestar Connect

Polestar Connect can provide extra security and assistance in the event of a flat tire, breakdown, accident, etc. Polestar Connect not only offers extra comfort and control via the Polestar 1 app, but also a number of assistance services via the SOS and ON CALL buttons in the ceiling, such as emergency assistance in the event of an accident, theft notification, help during a trip and remote unlock.

Emergency assistance with Polestar Connect

Press the SOS button to contact Polestar Assistance, or an emergency call center in an emergency situation.

Polestar Assistance

To summon assistance in the event of an illness or an external threat to the vehicle or passengers, Polestar Assistance can be alerted manually by pressing and holding the SOS button for at least 2 seconds. Polestar Assistance is notified, determines the vehicle's location, and tries to establish voice contract with the driver to find out what type of help is needed.

If voice contact cannot be established, Polestar Assistance will contact the required emergency service (police, ambulance, tow truck, etc.).

Emergency number

When the collision alarm has been activated, the system will attempt to establish contact with the country's Polestar Assistance. If this is not possible, the call will go directly to the emergency phone number for the country/region in which the vehicle is currently located.

The ON CALL and SOS buttons can be deactivated when the vehicle's ignition is in mode I, II or if the engine is running:

Tap Settings.
Tap Communication → Polestar Connect.
Select SOS/On Call button lock to deactivate.

Automatic Crash Notification with Polestar Connect

If a collision occurs, the vehicle reports this automatically to Polestar Assistance or an emergency call center, which can send out emergency assistance.

Polestar Assistance

When the vehicle's safety system is triggered, e.g. in an accident in which the activation level of the seat belt tensioner or airbag is reached, the vehicle will automatically call Polestar Assistance and a message will be sent containing information such as the vehicle's location.

1. Polestar Assistance will attempt to establish voice contact with the driver to determine the extent of the accident and the need for assistance.
2. Polestar Assistance will then contact the appropriate emergency service (police, ambulance, tow truck, etc.).

If voice contact cannot be established, Polestar Assistance will contact emergency services for appropriate action.

Emergency number

When the collision alarm has been activated, the system will attempt to establish contact with the country's Polestar Assistance. If this is not possible, the call will go directly to the emergency phone number for the country/region in which the vehicle is currently located.

Remote Vehicle Immobilizer (RVI) with Polestar Connect

If the vehicle is stolen, an immobilizer can be activated remotely.
If the vehicle has been stolen, the owner can contact Polestar Assistance or the authorities.

> **NOTE**
> This applies even if the vehicle has been opened and stolen using the associated remote key.

After consulting with the authorities, Polestar Assistance can deactivate the keys to prevent the vehicle from being started. A deactivated vehicle can only be started by contacting Polestar Assistance and after authorization has been verified using your PIN code. Polestar Assistance will then activate the vehicle.

Remote Door Unlock and Remote Door Lock with Polestar Connect

The vehicle can be remotely unlocked via Polestar Assistance. It can also be locked and unlocked using the Polestar 1 app.

Remote Door Unlock via Polestar Assistance

If the vehicle's key has been lost or locked in the vehicle, the doors can be unlocked remotely within 5 days with assistance from Polestar Assistance.

Contact Polestar Assistance via the Polestar 1 app.
After confirming that the caller requesting the remote unlock is the vehicle owner or another authorized person by verifying the PIN code, Polestar Assistance will send a signal to unlock the vehicle.
Press the door handle to unlock the vehicle.
All doors can now be opened normally.

> **NOTE**
> If the door handles are not pressed in within a predetermined time set by Polestar Assistance, the vehicle will be relocked.

> **NOTE**
> If the vehicle is in a parking garage or similar enclosed area, the remote unlock function may be limited due to poor signal reception.

Locking and unlocking using the Polestar 1 app

The status of all doors and windows will be displayed. The driver can remotely lock and unlock the vehicle for up to five days after the vehicle has been locked. For security reasons, your Polestar ID password is required to unlock your vehicle using the Polestar 1 app.

Theft Notification (TN) with Polestar Connect

When the vehicle's alarm is armed, the vehicle owner will receive a message to the phone number registered with the delivery center and then a notification in the Polestar 1 app.
If the alarm is not switched off within a short period of time, a Polestar Assistance operator will be automatically alerted. The operator will attempt to contact the vehicle owner by phone. If it turns out that the vehicle is being used by an unauthorized person, tracking can be started. The police will then be notified.

If the alarm is turned off using the key, the service will be interrupted.

Help during a trip with Polestar Connect

If you e.g. get a flat tire, run out of gas or have a dead battery, you can summon assistance using the ON CALL button or the Polestar 1 app.
Hold the ON CALL button in the ceiling depressed for at least 2 seconds to establish voice contact between Polestar Assistance and the driver. The aim of this is to agree on what assistance is required[1].

> **NOTE**
>
> The SOS button must only be used in the event of accident, illness or an external threat against the vehicle and its passengers. The SOS function is only intended for emergency situations. Misuse could incur extra charges.
>
> The Polestar 1 app and the ON CALL button can be used for all other services, including roadside assistance.

The ON CALL and SOS buttons can be deactivated when the vehicle's ignition is in mode I, II or if the engine is running:

Tap Settings.
Tap Communication → Polestar Connect.
Select SOS/On Call button lock to deactivate.

Roadside assistance costs

The costs for Roadside Assistance are included for the first 3 years when you purchase a new Polestar. Polestar Customer Support can inform you of the status of your Roadside Assistance agreement.

Polestar Connect can help you get back on the road, even if your Roadside Assistance agreement has expired. If this is the case, you will be asked to pay the cost for the service that is sent out to you.

> **NOTE**
>
> If you do not have a valid road assistance agreement, additional recovery costs may apply.

1 For emergency assistance via the SOS button or automatic collision alarm, Polestar Assistance or the public emergency call center can be set as a priority contact. See the separate section for how to set this.

Assistance via Polestar Connect

Polestar Assistance can offer support in the event of a breakdown or if your vehicle unexpectedly becomes immobilized.

Polestar Assistance is available 24 hours a day, 7 days a week and can be reached by pressing the ON CALL button in the ceiling console or via the Polestar 1 app.

If you have other questions about your vehicle, contact Polestar Customer Support, which can be reached by phone or via the online form or chat feature on the website.

Practical information about Polestar Connect

Connecting the vehicle to the Internet via vehicle modem (SIM card)

See Connecting the vehicle to the Internet via vehicle modem (SIM card).

Getting started with Polestar Connect

To get started with Polestar Connect, you need to carry out certain preparations.

Exploring the Polestar 1 app

Before picking up the vehicle from the delivery center, you are recommended to download the free-of-charge Polestar 1 app and test it in demo mode. Demo mode makes it possible to explore the majority of functions and provides information on how the app is used.

Activating Polestar Connect

When the vehicle is picked up, the delivery center will activate the Polestar Connect system and the owner will receive an automatically generated PIN code for Polestar Connect. The PIN code is used for security reasons to identify the owner (or another authorized person such as a family member) and works as a vehicle key.

Polestar Connect subscription

The vehicle has a valid Polestar Connect subscription.

A free subscription is initiated when the vehicle is purchased and the system is activated. This subscription is valid for a limited time, but can be extended. Contact Polestar Customer Support for more information.

> **NOTE**
> Automatic Crash Notification and the SOS button function even without a subscription.

Polestar ID and linking the Polestar 1 app to your vehicle

A Polestar ID is required to use Polestar Connect. Once a Polestar ID has been created, the Polestar 1 app needs to be linked to the vehicle.

> **NOTE**
> To use the services in the Polestar 1 app, the vehicle must have a valid Polestar Connect subscription and the app must be linked with the vehicle.

Buying a pre-owned vehicle with Polestar Connect

If you have purchased a pre-owned vehicle with Polestar Connect, it is important to delete the data from the previous owner and add you own details for the service to work. Contact Polestar Customer Support for assistance.

Polestar Connect PIN code

The PIN code is used for security reasons to verify that a person is authorized to use Polestar Connect services in a particular vehicle.
The four-digit PIN code is automatically generated by Polestar Assistance. The code is sent to the vehicle owner and is used to identify persons authorized to use certain Polestar Connect services.

Using the Polestar Connect PIN code

For security reasons, a Polestar Connect PIN code is required for the following services:

- Linking the Polestar 1 app to your vehicle.
- Remote vehicle unlock via Polestar Assistance.
- Setting up new app users for your vehicle.
- Canceling your Polestar Connect subscription via the app, e.g. if the vehicle changes owners.

If you have forgotten or want to change your PIN code

If you have forgotten your PIN or need to change it (for example, when buying a used vehicle with Polestar Connect), contact Polestar Assistance via the ON CALL button or the Polestar 1 app. The new code will be sent to the vehicle's owner.

If an incorrect PIN code has been entered in the app multiple times

If an incorrect PIN code has been entered incorrectly 10 times in a row, the account will be locked. To use the app again, a new PIN code must be selected and a new app account created following the same process used to create the previous app account.

Difference between Polestar ID password and Polestar Connect PIN code

The Polestar ID password is required to log in to the Polestar 1 app. The PIN code for Polestar Connect is the four-digit code used for the above services. The PIN code shows that the user is authorized.

Backup battery for Polestar Connect

If the main battery has no electrical current, the Polestar Connect backup battery will take over so that the system can still be used.
The backup battery has a limited lifespan. When the battery requires servicing or replacement, a message (Polestar ConnectService required) is shown in the instrument panel.

If the message persists, contact Polestar Customer Support.

Polestar Connect abroad

Polestar Connect services may vary when driving in other countries.
When you push the SOS button, you will always be connected to Polestar Assistance for the market in which the vehicle is currently located. An emergency call center is contacted if Polestar Assistance is not available in that market.

When you press the ON CALL button, you will always be connected to your home country's Polestar Assistance.

Polestar Connect services will not be available in countries without roaming agreements.

For more information, contact Polestar Customer Support.

Polestar Connect availability

To save battery power, the Polestar Connect system is programmed to shut down when the vehicle is not used for extended periods of time.
Polestar Connect is available continuously for 3 days, and then once per hour for the following 14 days. After 17 days, the system disconnects to save battery power, and becomes fully available again as soon as the vehicle is started.

WARNING

The system's services only work in areas in which Polestar Connect's partners have cellular coverage and in markets where Polestar Connect is available.

Just as with cellular phones, atmospheric disturbances or areas with fewer transmitters, e.g. sparsely populated rural areas, can make connection impossible.

Polestar Connect markets

The following is a list of markets with Polestar Connect.

Belgium
Finland
France
Canada
China
Netherlands
Norway
Switzerland
United Kingdom
Sweden
Germany
USA

Latest information

Polestar Connect is becoming available in an increasing number of places. For the latest information on where Polestar Connect is available, contact Polestar Customer Support.

Buying and selling a vehicle with Polestar Connect

If the vehicle changes owners, it is important to reset all personal settings and user data in the vehicle to the original factory defaults.

Canceling the Polestar Connect service

If the vehicle changes owners, contact Polestar Customer Support to cancel the service. The subscription will then be terminated and the service history deleted. The service can also be canceled using the Polestar 1 app.

If the vehicle changes owners, it is important to reset all personal settings and user data in the vehicle to the original factory defaults. This is done via the Settings menu in the center display.

Polestar ID is personal and does not need to be changed or deleted when the vehicle is sold. However, ownership does need to be canceled and the link between the Polestar 1 app and the vehicle deleted.

Change of ownership to another country

When a vehicle is purchased and imported to another country, it is important that the owner visits a delivery center in the country in which the vehicle was purchased. The retailer will then delete all customer data in their systems. The owner should then contact a delivery center in the country in which the vehicle is imported for assistance starting the Polestar Connect service.

Starting the Polestar Connect service

If you purchase a previously owned vehicle with Polestar Connect:

The new owner should contact Polestar Customer Support to transfer the remaining time on the subscription to the new owner. If this has not already been done, Polestar Customer Support will delete all of the previous owner's information. All contact details must be updated for Polestar Connect to function and to ensure the previous owner is no longer authorized to use Polestar Connect services in the vehicle.

Polestar Customer Support will inform the new owner of the status of the vehicle's Polestar Connect subscription. The new owner will receive a personal four-digit PIN code that will be required for the owner (or another authorized person) to access certain services. If the owner doesn't already have a Polestar ID, this will need to be created so that the Polestar 1 app can then be linked to the vehicle.

Polestar Connect app

Data sharing for Polestar Connect

See Data sharing for Polestar Connect.

Sending a destination to the vehicle's navigation system via the Polestar 1 app

You can use the Polestar 1 app to send destinations, such as hotels, businesses, movie theaters, restaurants or gas stations, to your vehicle and make the destination available in your navigation system.

Sending destinations to the navigation system

To send a destination to the vehicle from the Polestar 1 app:

Go to the Map tab.
Search for a destination.
Select Send to vehicle.
The selected destination is sent to the vehicle's navigation system.

Information on the closest gas station

You can also send information about your nearest gas stations to the vehicle via the Polestar 1 app:

Go to the home tab.
Pull Range to the left.
Tap Find Gas Stations.
Select gas station and then tap Send to vehicle.
The selected destination is sent to the vehicle's navigation system.

Find parking near your destination

To find parking spaces in the vicinity of your destination:

Go to the Map tab.
Select the parking symbol.
Select parking and then tap Send to vehicle.
The selected destination is sent to the vehicle's navigation system.

Locking and unlocking the vehicle using the Polestar 1 app

In the Polestar 1 app, you can view the current lock status and lock and unlock the vehicle remotely.

Lock the vehicle

Go to the home tab.
Select Doors and locks. The current lock status of the vehicle can be viewed here.
Select Lock.
The vehicle's doors are locked.
When you lock the vehicle, the anti-theft alarm is armed. Note that for safety reasons the vehicle can still be opened from the inside.

Unlock the vehicle

Go to the home tab.
Select Doors and locks. The current lock status of the vehicle can be viewed here.
Select Unlock.
Enter your Polestar ID password. This is the same password that used to log in to the Polestar 1 app.
After confirming in the Polestar 1 app, press the door handle to unlock the vehicle.
Now the vehicle's doors can be opened.

Message

You can receive messages in the Polestar 1 app about the lock status of the vehicle, among other things.

Devices compatible with the Polestar 1 app

The Polestar 1 app is compatible with various mobile devices and operating systems.

Mobile devices

The Polestar 1 app is available for iPhone, iPad and Apple Watch as well as Android phones and wearables. You can download the app for free from Apple App Store or Google Play.

For the Polestar 1 app to work as well as possible, ensure that you have updated the app to the latest version available for your device. More information on technical requirements concerning version, as well as operating systems and compatibility for device models, is available when downloading apps.

> **NOTE**
> Polestar reserves the right to end the maintenance of older versions of apps and remove them from existing app stores at any time.

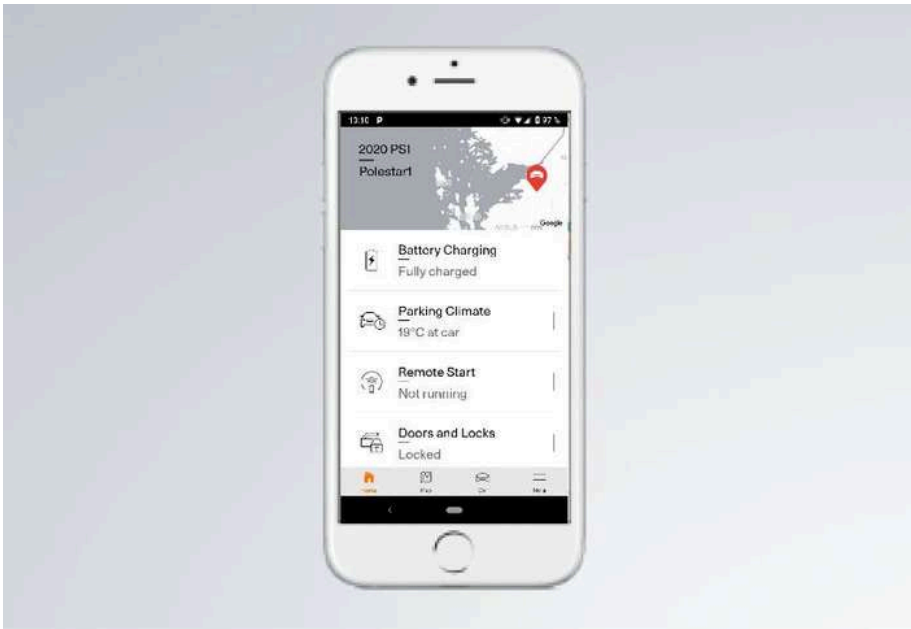
Internet connection

Because the app communicates with the vehicle via the Internet, your mobile device must have an Internet connection[1] to perform your commands.

1 There may be a charge for transmitting data over the Internet, depending on your service plan.

The Polestar 1 app

As a Polestar Connect user you have access to the Polestar 1 app, which enables you to keep in contact with your vehicle via different app functions1.



The Polestar 1 allows you to control certain functions in your vehicle using a mobile device.

These functions can provide information such as if a light bulb needs to be changed or if coolant needs to be filled. You can lock and unlock the vehicle, check the fuel level and find your nearest service station. Preconditioning can also be set and started by the vehicle's parking climate control or the engine remote start function .

Downloading the Polestar 1 app

The Polestar 1 app is continuously updated. You can test most of the app functions without connecting to a vehicle by downloading and running it in demo mode.

The Polestar 1 app is available for iOS and Android. Download it free of charge from Apple App Store or Google Play.

Internet connection required

When using the Polestar 1 app, your mobile device will send and receive data via the internet. If you do not have a data plan, then your cell phone carrier may charge you for that data. If you use your app abroad you may incur data roaming charges. For further information, contact your cell phone operator.

1 Both the vehicle and the mobile device must have cellular coverage or another Internet connection.

Connecting the Polestar 1 app to the vehicle

To use the services offered in the Polestar 1 app, the app must first be linked to the vehicle.
This procedure must be carried out in the vehicle.
Make sure your vehicle is positioned in an area with coverage and that your mobile device has an internet connection.

> **NOTE**
> Make sure that Vehicle Modem Internet is not selected as the Internet source in the vehicle. If it is selected, step 5 will not be possible and the app will not be able to link to the vehicle.

Have your four-digit Polestar 1 app PIN code, your Polestar ID and the vehicle identification number or registration number available. You can create a Polestar ID after logging in to the Polestar 1 app.
Sit in the driver's seat with your cellular phone and switch on the ignition. Do not start the engine.
Log in to the Polestar 1 app using your Polestar ID and then follow the instructions in the app.
When the message instructing you to press the ON CALL button is displayed in the Polestar 1 app, wait a few seconds before pressing the button to ensure that the vehicle is in verification mode.
Confirm the connection between the app and your vehicle by quickly pressing the ON CALL button in the roof of the vehicle once (do not hold the button in).
You can now start to use the app services.

Entering a vehicle nickname in the Polestar 1 app

You can specify or change the name of your vehicle in the Polestar 1 app.
Go to the Vehicle tab.
Select Vehicle information.
Under Nickname, tap Change.
Enter a name and then tap Save.

Available functions in the Polestar 1 app

The Polestar 1 app contains many functions and services.
Available functions:

- Driving statistics
- Vehicle status
- Find my vehicle
- Lights & Horn
- Lock status
- Lock/unlock doors
- Assistance
- Driving journal
- Account information
- Send Destination
- Temperature at vehicle
- Remote start of the vehicle[1]
- Preconditioning

1 Certain markets only.

Remote start of vehicle using the Polestar 1 app

Remote start of the vehicle[1] allows you to start your vehicle remotely via the Polestar 1 app in order to acclimatize it (cool down or warm up) before use.
Start by making sure the vehicle is parked where it can be started in accordance with local environmental regulations and laws. The vehicle doors must be locked and the transmission in park.
Go to the home tab.
Select Remote start.
Set how long you want the vehicle to be started (for heating/cooling).
Tap Start and enter your Polestar ID password.
The vehicle starts and the vehicle lights flash briefly, followed by a longer flash.

The function is activated (the time varies depending on the signal strength to your mobile device and vehicle).
It is possible to activate the function in the Polestar 1 app twice in succession. After that, the vehicle must be started using the key before you can activate the function via the app again.

Remote start of the vehicle also activates functions such as seat heating, heated rearview and door mirrors and rear window.

Things to bear in mind when using Engine Remote Start

The following requirements need to be met before the function is used:

- The vehicle is locked.
- None of the vehicle's keys are inside the vehicle.
- The hood is locked.
- The vehicle is parked and the transmission is in park.
- The engine is not running.
- The vehicle is under supervision.
- There are no people or animals in or around the vehicle.
- The vehicle is not parked inside a closed room/space without sufficient ventilation.
- There are no risks of anybody being in direct contact with the vehicle (e.g. during service work in a workshop or children playing near the vehicle).
- The function can be used at the specified time according to local law.

The system will also check the following before starting the vehicle:

- Engine status is OK (no critical diagnostic trouble codes).
- Sufficient fuel level (more than 8 liters (2.11 US gallons)).

User recommendations can be found in the Polestar 1 app.

> **NOTE**
> For safety reasons, it is not possible to drive the vehicle while it is remote-started via the Polestar 1 app. The function will be active until you depress the brake pedal and turn the start knob.

1 Only applies to vehicles with automatic transmission and in certain markets.

Remote start of heater using the Polestar 1 app

The heater can be started remotely using the Polestar 1 app so that the vehicle is heated at a selected time.
When the heater is started remotely, the vehicle's parking heater is used to heat the vehicle. You can either choose to specify when you want to leave so that the heater is started automatically depending on the outside temperature surrounding the vehicle, or you can choose to start the heater right away. If the heater is not allowed to start (e.g. due to low fuel level), this will be shown in the Polestar 1 app.

Conditions for remote start of the heater

The heater only starts under the following conditions:

- The outdoor temperature surrounding the vehicle is below 15 °C (59 °F).
- The vehicle has enough fuel.
- The vehicle has enough battery charge.
- The vehicle has cell coverage (i.e. it can receive the heater's start command).

Instant start/instant stop of heater

Go to the home tab.
Select Parking heater.
From here, you can select to start and stop your heater.
At instant start, the heater runs for 50 minutes or until it is shut-off.

Programming the heater

You can pre-program the heater to start at up to eight different set times:

Go to the home tab.
Select Parking heater.
Set the Timer for the times you want the vehicle to be heated.
Based on the outside temperature, the vehicle will calculate when the heater needs to be switched on for the vehicle to be warmed up at the selected time.
With instant start/instant stop of heater, you can stop the current pre-programmed start.

Shortcuts to the Polestar 1 app

You can create shortcuts to the functions offered in the Polestar 1 app.

Siri

On iOS devices, the Polestar 1 app offers support for Siri. Using Siri, you can control certain functions in the Polestar 1 app using your voice.

Widgets

If you use the Polestar 1 app in an Android or iOS device, it is possible to add Widgets (shortcuts) to more quickly access features such as remote start of heater, and see amount of fuel remaining.

3D Touch

Using 3D Touch you can get access to shortcuts to certain features in the Polestar 1 app1.

By pressing the app icon on your phone firmly, you can access shortcuts to the following functions:

- Starting the vehicle
- Starting the parking heater
- Starting the parking climate control
- Unlock Polestar
- Turn signals

Flic

Flic is a button-like accessory, which, via Bluetooth can be connected to your smartphone and with the Polestar 1 app. You can then use the Flic button to control functions in the vehicle, e.g. start/stop the remotely operated heater, allow the vehicle to honk and flash as well as lock the vehicle. Set the desired functions via Flic in the Polestar 1 app.

In order for Flic to work, a smart device with Bluetooth is required and the Flic app must be installed. The Flic button must be paired with your smart device and be set up to send commands to the Polestar 1 app.

Read more about Flic on the manufacturer’s website.

Sharing addresses to the Polestar 1 app

Some third party apps facilitate sharing addresses to the Polestar 1 app2.

1 Applies to certain iPhone models. See manufacturer's website for more information.

2 Varies according to phone model and operating system version.

Voice control in the Polestar 1 app

With a virtual assistant like Siri, you can use voice commands to control certain Polestar 1 app functions.

Requirements for using a virtual assistant

To be able to use voice control with Siri, the Polestar 1 app must be installed on an iOS device and the Siri service must be activated.

Functions that can be voice-controlled

Functions that can be voice controlled using Siri:

- Make sure the vehicle is locked.
- Lock the vehicle.
- Unlock the vehicle.
- Check the fuel level.
- Honk the horn to locate the vehicle.

> **NOTE**
> Voice control of the Polestar 1 app is available in all languages and markets for which Siri is available.

> **NOTE**
> The above instructions are general and concern third-party suppliers. Availability, design and functionality may change or vary.

Using voice control in the Polestar 1 app

With a virtual assistant like Siri, you can use voice commands to control certain Polestar 1 app functions. You can, for example, ask how much fuel is remaining or check that the doors are locked.

Voice control with Siri

To use a voice-controlled Polestar Connect function with Siri, start Siri and ask Siri to perform the function you want to use. For a list of possible phrases, start Siri in your smartphone, press the question mark at the bottom and select Polestar 1 in the list of apps shown.

For Siri, the service is available in all languages and markets that Siri is available for.

> **NOTE**
> The above instructions are general and concern third-party suppliers. Availability, design and functionality may change or vary.

Finding the vehicle using the Polestar 1 app

In the Polestar 1 app, you can see the location of your vehicle on a map. The map also shows your own position, i.e. the position of your mobile device. You can use the app to command the vehicle to honk the horn and/or flash the turn signals to make it easier to find the vehicle.

Finding the vehicle using the Lights & Horn function

Go to the Map tab.
Your position as well as your vehicle's position are marked on the map.
If you need further assistance to see the vehicle, for example in a large parking lot, you can get it to honk and/or flash by selecting one of the following:

- Lights to flash.
- Lights and horn to both honk and flash.

This activates the vehicle's horn and/or the hazard warning flashers for a few seconds. The function works within a radius of approximately 500 meters (547 yards) from the vehicle1.

Limitations for locating the vehicle with the Polestar 1 app

If the Polestar 1 app does not show an exact position for the vehicle, this may be due to the following:

- The vehicle's current location has poor or no view for GPS, e.g. in a garage. If this is the case, the last received location is used as its approximate location.
- The vehicle could not send data to the Polestar Connect servers when you last parked it. The position is sent to Polestar every time you park the vehicle. If the vehicle does not have any cell phone coverage, the last position has not been registered and it will not seen in the app either. This can occur if the vehicle is parked in e.g. a garage with poor cellular reception.
- Polestar Connect use GPS technology to locate the vehicle. The GPS coordinates are translated into addresses that are easy to understand, e.g. street name, which is why it may appear that the vehicle is parked on a street nearby if it is actually parked in an adjacent garage without GPS contact.
- The vehicle's position is not shown when the vehicle is not in use.

1 May vary depending on market.

Electric power functions in the Polestar 1 app

The Polestar 1 app contains functions that can e.g. show battery and charging status or can help you find the nearest charging station.

Battery and charge status

To view current battery level and get an estimate of how long you can drive on the existing charge:
Go to the home tab.
Select Battery charging or Fuel range.
The following information can be found here:

- Battery level: The status of the high voltage battery is displayed graphically.
- Range (miles): Estimate of how far you can drive on the battery alone.
- Charge status: Indicates whether the charging cable is connected or not.
- Vehicle's location.

My charging locations

The Polestar 1 app helps you find the nearest charging station and allows you to save eight charging locations in a favorites list. You can also make the following settings for each charging location:

- Add a reminder about charging if you stop at a charging location in your favorites list without charging.
- Message when charging is interrupted, e.g. due to power outage.

Settings for my charging locations

To create unique settings for your favorite charging locations:
Go to the home tab.
Select Battery charging or Fuel range.
Select a charging location (or add a new one).
You can define settings for your charging stations here by enabling or disabling charging reminders.

Preconditioning

You can control the vehicle's air conditioning from the app and cool or heat the passenger compartment to the desired temperature. To cool down your vehicle it needs to be plugged in.

To set preconditioning:
Go to the home tab.
Select Parking heater/Parking climate.
Program Timer 1 and Timer 2 by selecting the time you want Preconditioning to be complete.
The vehicle heats up or cools down the passenger compartment to achieve the desired indoor temperature. The desired temperature is the current setting you made for your climate system.
You can also control the climate with instant actions from the app. Tap Start or Stop under Parking heater/Parking climate. These commands cancel any set timers.

Displaying the vehicle identification number in the Polestar 1 app

When contacting Polestar Customer Support about e.g. a Polestar Connect subscription, you will need to provide your VIN (Vehicle Identification Number). One way to find this is through the Polestar 1 app.
Go to the Vehicle tab.
Select Vehicle information.
Read under Vehicle Identification Number (VIN).

Calendar function with the Polestar 1 app

With some cellular phones, it is possible to give the Polestar 1 app access to your calender and receive event reminders 24 hours in advance directly in the app. You can also send route guidance to the planned meeting from the app to the vehicle.

Activating the calendar function in the Polestar 1 app

Go to the More tab.
Select App settings.
Activate Calendar appointments.

Using the Send to vehicle function to receive route guidance

To use this function, the reminder must contain a complete address.
Press the reminder in the app.
Select Plan Trip.
Select Send to Car.
The Polestar 1 app sends the information on to the navigation system in your vehicle to give you route guidance to the destination.

Driving journal with the Polestar 1 app

The Polestar 1 app can automatically create a drive log which allows you to view a summary of your vehicle journeys. The data is visible from all the accounts connected to the vehicle.

Registration of trip information

The trip information is sent to the Polestar 1 app 30-60 seconds after the vehicle key has been removed. If you restart the engine within this time to continue driving, the journey that was in progress before the engine was switched off continues. In case of longer stops, e.g. refueling at a fuel station, two trips will be logged. You have the possibility to merge multiple trips into one via the app.

The travel information can then be downloaded and saved in Excel, a useful function if, for example, you have a company car.

Viewing driving journal

The Polestar 1 app stores information about the trips you have made in your vehicle over the last 100 days. To view a summary of your trips:

Go to the Vehicle tab.
Select Driving journal.
Select the trip you want more information about.
The following information about the selected trip appears in the app:

- Title
- Category
- Note
- Route (with start and stop positions)
- Time
- Distance
- Fuel consumption
- Electricity consumption
- Electrical regeneration
- Started (time when journey was started)
- Finished (time when journey was finished)
- Odometer reading

Managing driving journals with the Polestar 1 app

The Polestar 1 app can automatically create a drive log which allows you to view a summary of your vehicle journeys. It is possible, for example, to categorize and name trips, and to export the driving journal.

Activating or deactivating the driving journal

Go to the More tab.
Select App settings.
Select Settings for driving journal.
Select to turn your Driving journal on/off.
When your driving journal is activated, all users that are connected to your account can see the trips made with your vehicle. Journeys made over the last 100 days are saved. If the driving journal is deactivated, your vehicle stops sending information on new journeys. None of the phones connected to your account will be able to see new entries in the journal log.

Note that existing journeys are not deleted if the driving journal is disabled.

Export Driving journal

It is possible to transfer the data from the driving journal to other formats. This function can be used, for example, to create corporate car expense reports. It stores information about the trips made with your vehicle over the past 100 days. To avoid losing information about trips older than 100 days, it is advisable to export the driving journal to your email.

Go to the Vehicle tab.
Select Driving journal.
Tap Editing.
Mark the journey(s) you want to export.
Press the e-mail symbol.
You now have the option of sending the journal log as an Excel, CSV or text file. The file can be opened on the computer with programs such as Microsoft Excel, Apple Numbers, Google Docs or OpenOffice.org Calc.

Categorize trips

In the driving journal view it is possible to categorize trips according to Work, Private or Uncategorized. The trips can be filtered according to categories and you also have the possibility to choose the displayed range according to time interval.

Remove trip from Driving journal

Go to the Vehicle tab.
Select Driving journal.
Tap Editing.
Mark the journey(s) you want to delete.
Select the trash can symbol at the top of the screen and press Delete.
If you have several accounts connected to the vehicle, they will all show the same view based on the data that is collected and sent through the Polestar Connect data servers. This means that if you delete, rename or group trips on your phone, the change will also take effect for all users viewing the information.

Name trips

You can name your trips and also add notes.

Go to the Vehicle tab.
Select Driving journal.
Tap on the journey you want to edit.
Press Title and name the trip.
Tap Note to add your own notes.

Maintenance messages in the Polestar 1 app

Your Polestar 1 app allows you to view the status of various components in your vehicle. Maintenance messages can notify you if anything needs to be reviewed or rectified.

See maintenance messages in the Polestar 1 app

To see maintenance messages for your vehicle in the app:

Go to the Vehicle tab.
Select Maintenance.
You can now view the status of various components in your vehicle.

Maintenance messages

There are various messages about maintenance in the Polestar 1 app.

- A green tick means that the status of a component is approved.
- A yellow message indicates that a component will soon need inspection or action.
- A red message indicates that action is needed as soon as possible.

A link to the Manual can be displayed together with maintenance messages. Click the link for more information about maintenance of your vehicle. A link to your calendar can also be displayed at Service.

For more detailed instructions on various maintenance messages, see your vehicle's Manual or contact Polestar Customer Support.

Status unknown



If a question mark appears beside a component in the Polestar 1 app, this means that the status cannot be displayed for some reason. This may, for example, be because there is no Internet connection, or the app cannot read a value for some reason.

> **NOTE**
> If you see a question mark in the app you should check the car's driver display to investigate whether there is a maintenance message or other information.

Messages in the Polestar 1 app

You can receive messages on your cellular phone with the Polestar 1 app.
For example, you can receive information if something in the vehicle requires maintenance or if the vehicle alarm is activated. To select which type of messages you want to disable or re-enable:
Go to the More tab.
Select Notifications.
Select which categories of messages you want to read.

Language list for the Polestar 1 app

The Polestar 1 app is available in the following languages:

English (UK)
English (US)
Finnish
French
French (Canadian)
Italian
Chinese (simplified)
Dutch
Norwegian
Swedish
German

Change language via the general language settings in your mobile device.

Using the Polestar 1 app with wearables

The Polestar 1 app can be linked to a "wearable" device. With the app, you can perform operations such as starting the parking heater directly from a smart watch or other wearable.

Smart watch functions

The following functions are available for smart watches (Apple Watch and Android Wear)1:

- See battery level.
- Lock the vehicle.
- See the vehicle's location on a map.
- Start the parking heating.

If the app is installed on a cellular phone and linked to the vehicle, the app functions will automatically become available in the smart watch that is paired with the cellular phone.

Pairing a smart watch with a cellular phone

For information and instructions on pairing a smart watch with a cellular phone, as well as technical requirements for this, see the smart watch manufacturer's website.

Technical requirements

Technical requirements for operating system version and information about cell phone model compatibility can be found on the information page in the relevant app store.

1 Available functions can vary over time.

Removing link between vehicle and Polestar 1 app

Polestar ID is personal and does not need to be changed or deleted it if you sell your vehicle. However, you do need to end ownership, remove the link between the Polestar 1 app and your vehicle, and delete all personal user data from

the vehicle.
Log in to the Polestar 1 app. If you do not have access to the app, contact your Polestar Customer Support retailer and explain that you want to sell your vehicle.
Go to the More tab.
Select Connected vehicles.
Select the relevant vehicle.
Under Ending ownership, select I no longer own this Polestar and then enter your PIN code for Polestar Connect. This deletes your user history, your driving journal and other user accounts.
Contact Polestar Customer Support, who will delete your contact details in their system.
If possible, inform the buyer that they should contact Polestar Customer Support to reactivate the Polestar Connect subscription and provide their contact information.

Polestar Connect will remain active until the end of the subscription period.

Polestar Connect

See Polestar Connect.

Polestar Connect subscription

Polestar Connect is a subscription service. Your subscription includes emergency assistance and security services as well as app services.

Status of subscription

The status of your subscription is shown in the Polestar 1 app under Vehicle information in the Vehicle tab. The subscription can also be extended from here.

If you do not have access to the Polestar 1 app, contact Polestar Customer Support. They will help you to find information on the expiry date of the subscription. You then need to provide the vehicle identification number1.

Message to indicate that your subscription will soon be expiring

45 days before the Polestar Connect subscription is due to expire, the message Polestar Connect subscription expires soon will appear in the vehicle's display. Users of the Android or iOS version of the Polestar 1 app will also receive reminders in the app.

Deactivated subscription

When the subscription period has ended, the message Polestar Connect subscription has expired will appear on the vehicle's display. The message disappears when the subscription is reactivated.

You cannot use the Polestar Connect services or the Polestar 1 app when the subscription has expired. Though, the emergency services via the SOS button and automatic collision alert will continue to function. To use Polestar Connect again, you will need to renew your subscription.

Roadside assistance costs

Roadside Assistance costs are included for the first 3 years after purchase of a new Polestar. Once this time has passed, free roadside assistance is offered on most markets if the vehicle is serviced regularly. Polestar Customer Support can inform you of the status of your roadside assistance agreement.

Polestar Connect can help you get back on the road, even if your Roadside Assistance agreement has expired. If this is the case, you will be asked to pay the cost for the service that is sent out to you.

> **NOTE**
> If you do not have a valid road assistance agreement, additional recovery costs may apply.

1 Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

Polestar Connect messages

The following are examples of information messages that may appear when Polestar Connect is inoperative.

Discharged battery

If you receive a message that the vehicle's battery is discharged and waiting for the Polestar Connect system to wake up, this may be because the vehicle has not been used for a long period of time.

To save the battery when the vehicle is not used for prolonged periods, the Polestar Connect with Sensus Connect system is set to standby.

The Polestar Connect with Sensus Connect subscription is about to expire

45 days before the Polestar Connect subscription is due to expire, the message Polestar Connect subscription expires soon will appear in the vehicle's display. Users of the Android or iOS version of the Polestar 1 app will also receive reminders in the app.

Polestar Connect with Sensus Connect has been switched off

If your Polestar Connect subscription has expired and the Polestar Connect system has switched off, a message appears in the vehicle's display stating Polestar Connect subscription has expired.

Navigation

This section contains information on Sensus Navigation, symbols and messages in the navigation system, which settings you can adjust and how to activate and deactivate the system.

Entering a destination

Entering a destination directly on the map

A destination can be specified in different ways in the navigation system – tapping a point on the map with your finger is one of them.
It is often easiest to scroll to the desired position on the map and tap it.

1. Make sure the map is in full-screen mode.
2. Scroll to the desired location on the map.
3. Press and hold the location. An icon will be created and a menu will appear.
4. Select Go here to start guidance.

Deleting the icon

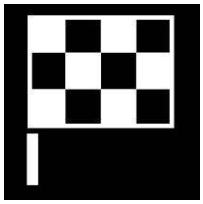
To delete the location's icon:
- Select Delete

Changing the icon's location

To change the location of the icon:
- Press and hold the icon, drag it to the desired location and then release it.

Entering a destination using an address

There are several ways to set a destination in the navigation system. Entering an address is one of them.
When the map appears, expand the toolbar using the down arrow on the left-hand side and tap Set dest.



The map will switch to free text search.
Tap Address.
It is not necessary to fill in all of the fields. For guidance to a city, for example, you only need to fill in the city and country. You will then be guided to the center of the city.
Select any available field and use the center display's keyboard to type:
- Country/State/Province
- City/Territory/Zip code
- Address
- Number
- Junction

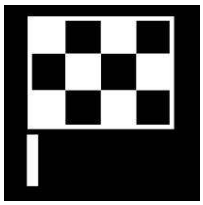
You can also send addresses and destinations to the vehicle's navigation system via the Polestar 1 app.

Entering a destination with a free text search

A destination can be set in different ways in the navigation system - with free text searching, for example, a search can be made using phone numbers, postal codes, streets, cities, coordinates and points of interest (POI1).

The center display's keyboard can be used to type most characters and to search for destinations.

When the map appears, expand the toolbar using the down arrow on the left-hand side and tap Set dest.



The map will switch to free text search.
Enter a search word in the search box or limit the search results by choosing a filter.
The search results will be listed as you type.
If the search provided the desired result – tap a search result to display its information card and select to continue using the search result.

If the search provided too many results – tap Advanced filter to select a position to search around and then select a search result to continue using it:

- Around vehicle
- Around destination – only displayed if a destination has been set.
- Along route – only displayed if a destination has been set.
- Around point on map

Coordinates

A destination can also be entered using map coordinates.

- Enter coordinates, e.g. "N 58.1234 E 12.5678" and tap Search.

Compass directions **N**, **E**, **S** and **W** can be entered in different ways, e.g.:

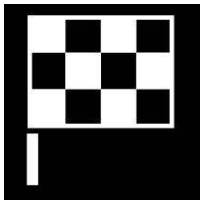
N 58,1234 **E** 12,5678 (with space)
N58,1234 **E**12,5678 (without space)
58,1234**N** 12,5678**E** (with compass directions **after** the coordinates)
58,1234-12,5678 (with hyphen **without** compass direction)

Either a dot [.] or a comma [] can be used.

1 Point of Interest

Entering a POI as a destination

A destination can be specified in different ways in the navigation system - selecting a point of interest (POI1) is one of them.
When the map appears, expand the toolbar using the down arrow on the left-hand side and tap Set dest.



The map will switch to free text search.
Tap POI.
Tap the desired filter (some alternatives are only shown when a destination or waypoint is specified):

- Near the vehicle
- Near the destination
- Near waypoint
- Along route
- Around point on map

Scroll to the desired POI and select it.
The information card will appear.
Select Start navigation or Add as waypoint.
Many POI (e.g. restaurants) have sub-categories (e.g. fast food).

Which POI are shown on the map can be changed via the map settings. This setting does not affect searches for POI to be used as destinations (even POI that have not been selected for display can be shown here as alternate destinations).

Certain POI will only appear on the map if the scale is greater than 1 km (1 mile).

> **NOTE**
>
> - The symbols, number and variants of POIs vary between different markets.
> - In connection with map data updating, some symbols may be added and others disappear – all symbols for the map system in question can be found through the menu system.

1 Point of Interest

Entering a destination using Recent/Favorites/Library

A destination can be specified in different ways in the navigation system - selecting from a list is one of them.
When the map appears, expand the toolbar using the down arrow on the left-hand side and tap Set dest.



The map will switch to free text search.
Select one of these lists at the top of the screen:

- Recent
- Favorites
- Library

After an option in a list has been marked, it can be added as a destination by tapping either the Start navigation or Add as waypoint button.

Recent

This is a list of previous searches. Scroll through the list and select.

This is also available as a menu option in the instrument panel and can be displayed using the right-side steering wheel keypad.

Use Edit to delete one or more items in the list.

Favorites

This is a list of the locations from the Library that have been set as favorites. Scroll through the list and select.

A position that has been deleted in Favorites will remain in Library, but with a grayed-out star. To return a position to Favorites, go to Library and mark the position's star again.

Use Set Home address to program a frequently used destination. An entered Home destination is also available as a menu option in the instrument panel and can be displayed using the right-side steering wheel keypad.

Use Edit to delete one or more items in the list.

Library

This is a list of saved locations and itineraries. The most recently saved will be shown at the top of the list.

Tap the location's star to select/deselect it as a favorite. A location with a selected (filled in) star will also be displayed under the Favorites heading.

If a location is deleted in Library, it will also be deleted in Favorites.

The Library can be sorted in various ways:

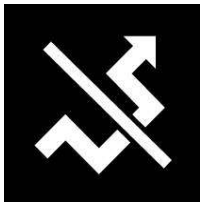
- Added - sort in chronological order.
- Name - sort in alphabetical order.
- Distance - sort according to distance from the vehicle's current location.
- Received - locations sent to the vehicle using the Send to Car function will be filtered out. New unread locations have a BLUE marker that is grayed out once the positions have been read.

Use Edit to delete one or more items in the list.

To edit a stored location in Library, mark the location in the list and select Edit position. You can, for example, change the name of the location, move it on the map by dragging and dropping it, or add a phone number or email address.

Selecting a detour in the navigation system

Select a detour to avoid the next section of the route, e.g. if the road is closed.
Expand the left-side toolbar using the down arrow and then the three dots.



Tap the Detour symbol to display an alternate route with information on the new distance and estimated travel time. Normally, only short detours are suggested to take you quickly back to your original itinerary.

To **accept** the suggested detour: Tap the sign with the detour information. The route is also accepted if you begin driving the suggested route. Once the suggestion has been accepted, guidance will resume using the detour as the new route. If you **do not accept** the suggestion, continue driving the original route.

Instead of choosing Detour, you can instead select another route and leave your itinerary's current route. The system will update the route automatically and continue guidance to your destination along the most suitable route.

It is also possible to display an alternative route while driving.

Itinerary and route

Information cards in the navigation system

All icons on the map, such as destinations, waypoints and stored favorites, have an information card that can be opened by tapping the icon.

Press the information card once to display a small card, and press twice to display a larger card with more information. The information and possible options vary depending on the type of icon.

For example, when a POI(1) is highlighted, the driver can select e.g.:

- Start navigation - save the location as a destination
- Add as waypoint - the position is saved as an intermediate destination (only displayed at the specified destination)
- Save - the position is saved in the library
- Remove from itinerary - the position is removed if it is included in the itinerary
- Nearby POI - points of interest close to the car's position are shown

1 Point of Interest

Viewing points of interest along the route

A list of points of interest (POI1) along your route can be displayed in the navigation system.



Tap Ahead.
Tap POI.
POIs along the route are displayed according to their distance from the vehicle.
If there are multiple POIs in the same location, they will be displayed as a group. Tap the group for a list of the POIs.
Select a POI.
Select one of the information card's options and follow the instructions.

1 Point of Interest

Itinerary

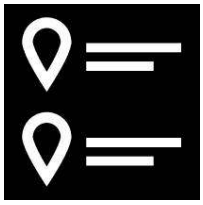
The itinerary is the route that the navigation system suggests when the user enters a destination.
The first location set will be the itinerary's **destination** (final destination).

The next locations set will be the itinerary's **waypoints** (intermediate stops along the route).

An itinerary and its destination and waypoints can be easily edited at any time.

Viewing alternative routes

It is possible to search for alternate routes in the navigation system while guidance is being provided.
Expand the toolbar using the down arrow first and then the three dots.



Tap the Itinerary symbol to open the itinerary.

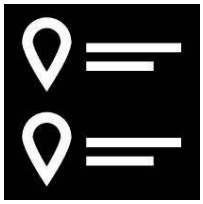
Tap Alternative routes.
Select an alternative route:

- Eco
- Fast
- Scenic

Tap the map.
The updated route will be displayed on the map and guidance will resume.

Editing or clearing an itinerary

It is possible to remove waypoints or the entire itinerary in the navigation system while guidance is being provided.
Expand the toolbar using the down arrow first and then the three dots.

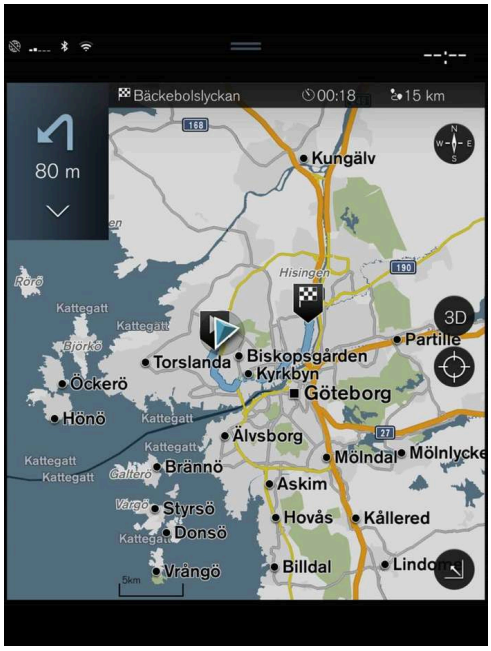


Tap the Itinerary symbol to open the itinerary.

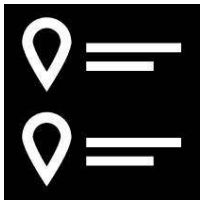
Tap the recycling bin to delete a waypoint from the itinerary or tap Clear itinerary to delete the entire itinerary.

Viewing an itinerary

It is possible to show the itinerary in the navigation system during road navigation.



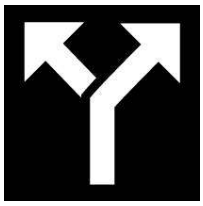
During guidance, expand the toolbar using the down arrow and then the three dots.



Tap the Itinerary symbol to open the itinerary.

Show guidance in the itinerary

A list of coming guidance points helps the driver prepare in advance for upcoming maneuvers, e.g. moving into the correct lane before making a turn.
To display a list of upcoming turns in the itinerary in the navigation system:
Expand the toolbar using the down arrow on the left-hand side.
Expand the toolbar further using the three dots.
Tap the Turn-by-Turn symbol (see image).



A list of guidance points on the itinerary will be displayed instead of the toolbar (you can scroll through the list). Tap the arrow pointing to the left to minimize the list.

The next guidance point is always shown at the top of the list.



Tap one of the guidance points in the list to show the location on the map. Tap the map's crosshairs (see image) to return to the map guidance view, where the map shows the vehicle's current location.

Selecting a detour in the navigation system

See Selecting a detour in the navigation system.

Traffic information

Information cards in the navigation system

See Information cards in the navigation system.

Selecting a detour in the navigation system

See Selecting a detour in the navigation system.

Traffic disruptions on map

The navigation system receives information on traffic events and traffic disruptions and displays these on the map.

> **NOTE**
>
> Traffic information is not available in all areas/countries.
>
> Coverage areas for traffic information is continuously extended.

It is possible to make settings to determine which traffic-related information is shown on the map.

Traffic disruptions, such as congested and slow-moving traffic, road work and accidents, are shown with different symbols when the map is zoomed in.



Road construction, for example, is indicated by this symbol. Sections of road with major traffic disruptions are also shown with a red line on the side of the road affected. The line also indicates which direction of traffic is affected. If the disruption affects both directions of traffic, the section of road is marked with red lines on both sides of the road.

Information on traffic disruptions

Tap the traffic disruption symbol.
An information card will be displayed. Information may include e.g. the location of the traffic disruption with the street name/road number and its type/extent/duration.

Avoiding traffic disruptions

If there are traffic disruptions along the route, the Avoid option can be selected. The system will then calculate an alternate route.

Real Time Traffic Information (RTTI)[1]

If the vehicle is connected to the Internet, enhanced traffic information can be retrieved using RTTI[2].

1 Only available in certain markets.

2 Real Time Traffic Information

Show traffic disruptions along the route

A list of traffic disruptions along the route can be shown when a destination has been entered in the navigation system. When the map appears, expand the left-side toolbar using the down arrow and then the three dots.



Tap Ahead.

Tap Traffic. If there are no traffic problems along your route, the traffic button will be grayed out.
Any traffic problems along the route will be displayed according to their distance from the vehicle.
For additional information about a traffic disruption, tap the row to open an information card. Select one of the information card's options and follow the instructions.
Tap Avoid to avoid the traffic disruption.
The route will be recalculated and guidance will begin for the new route.

Real Time Traffic Information (RTTI)

See Real Time Traffic Information (RTTI).

Activating and deactivating Real Time Traffic Information (RTTI)

When the vehicle is connected to the Internet, the driver can access enhanced traffic information (RTTI2) in the navigation system.
To activate or deactivate RTTI:
Tap Settings in the center display's Top view.
Tap Navigation → Traffic.
Select Real Time Traffic Information to activate (replace regular traffic information with RTTI) or deactivate RTTI.
One pop-up window with the heading Terms and conditions and one with the heading Data sharing will appear if RTTI is being used for the first time.
If the vehicle's Internet connection is lost when RTTI is activated, regular traffic information will be automatically activated. RTTI will be reactivated when the vehicle is once again connected to the Internet.

Deactivating green lines

To stop display of the green lines indicating that there are no traffic disturbances:

Tap Settings in the Top view.
Tap Navigation → Traffic and uncheck Show Free Flowing Traffic.

1 Certain markets only.

2 Real Time Traffic Information

Traffic information providers

Information on which companies deliver traffic information to your vehicle and its systems in different countries is found below.

Region	Country	RTTI1	RDS-TMC2	Sirius XM 3	VICS	T-DMB
Africa	South Africa	INRIX	Altech Netstar			
Asia	China	INRIX	Cennavi			
	Indonesia	INRIX				
	Japan				VICS	
	Korea					KBS
	Singapore	INRIX				
	Thailand	INRIX				
Europe	Austria	INRIX	ASFINAG4			
	Belgium	INRIX	Be-Mobile			
	Bulgaria		TrafficNav			
	Czech Republic	INRIX	4			
	Denmark	INRIX	4			
	Finland	INRIX	V-Traffic			
	France	INRIX	V-Traffic			

Region	Country	RTTI[1]	RDS-TMC[2]	Sirius XM [3]	VICS	T-DMB
	Germany	INRIX	4			
	Hungary	INRIX	TrafficNav			
	Ireland		TrafficNav			
	Italy	INRIX	Infoblue			
	Luxembourg	INRIX	Be-Mobile			
	Netherlands	INRIX	Be-Mobile			
	Norway	INRIX				
	Poland	INRIX	V-Traffic			
	Portugal	INRIX	Be-Mobile			
	Russia	INRIX	HERE			
	Slovakia	INRIX				
	Slovenia	INRIX	TrafficNav			
	Spain	INRIX	4			
	Sweden	INRIX	4			
	Switzerland	INRIX	4			
	Turkey	INRIX				
	United Kingdom	INRIX	ITIS (INRIX)			
Middle East	Bahrain	INRIX				
	Kuwait	INRIX				
	Oman	INRIX				
	Qatar	INRIX				
	Saudi Arabia	INRIX				
	United Arab Emirates	INRIX				
North America and Central America	Canada	INRIX		Sirius XM		
	Mexico	INRIX				
	USA	INRIX		Sirius XM		
Oceania and Pacific Ocean	Australia	INRIX	Suna Traffic			
	New Zealand	INRIX				
South America	Brazil		HERE			



1 Traffic information via the internet (requires internet connection)
2 Traffic information via the FM band.
3 Traffic information via Sirius satellite radio.
4 Free service only.

Navigation settings

Map settings

The following settings determine how the map is displayed in the navigation system.
Settings → Navigation → Map
Settings can be personalized in the following areas:

- Position Format
- Map Display Format
- Show Speed Cameras
- Show Favorites
- Point of Interest (POI)

Position Format

Select Position Format to designate/display the current location on the map using its address or its coordinates:

- Address
- Coordinates and Altitude

Map Display Format

Select Map Display Format to choose background lighting for the map:

- Day - bright colors.
- Night - dark colors for better night vision.
- Auto - the system will switch between Day and Night depending on the ambient light in the passenger compartment.

Speed cameras[1]

Select Show Speed Cameras to display speed cameras on the map.

Favorites

To display Favorites on the map, select.

Point of Interest (POI[2])

Select POIs to be displayed on the map under Point of Interest (POI). Tap on the desired category, e.g. "Transportation", and then select show all or specific sub categories. Tap Back or Close to exit the menu.

1 This function is not available on all markets.

2 Point of Interest

Navigation system settings

Select settings for how the route and other information should be presented in the navigation system.
Settings → Navigation
Settings can be personalized in the following areas:

- Map - manages the content and appearance of the map.
- Route and Guidance - handles guidance and how routes are calculated and displayed.
- Traffic - manages traffic information.

Route settings and guidance

Settings for how the route is calculated and how guidance is presented in the navigation system are selected here.

Adjust the volume by turning the volume knob while the voice is speaking.

Settings → Navigation → Route and Guidance
Settings can be personalized in the following areas:

- Arrival Time Format
- Voice Guidance Level
- Choose Default Route Type
- Route Learning
- Avoidance Settings
- Propose Gas Station

Arrival Time Format

Choose how arrival time will be displayed:

- ETA[1] (estimated time of arrival at the destination)
- RTA[2] (remaining time to arrival at destination)

Times are displayed according to the time zone of the destination.

Voice Guidance Level

Tap Voice Guidance Level.
Tap desired voice guidance:

- None (no automatic voice guidance, but guidance can be manually requested once)
- Low (only one message per guidance point)
- Medium (up to 3 messages per guidance point, with limited information provided)

- Full (up to 4 messages per guidance point and all available information provided)

Choose Default Route Type

Select the default type of route to be used:

- Fast
- Eco
- Scenic (highways/freeways are avoided whenever possible; note that this could lead to longer travel times)

It is also possible to display an alternative route while driving.

Route Learning

Select Route Learning to allow data to be collected to optimize route calculations.

Avoid

Tap Avoidance Settings to open a menu of options to automatically avoid (if possible) when calculating a route. Possible selections include tunnels, ferries, congestion charge zones, etc.

Suggest service station

Tap Propose Gas Station to activate or deactivate the display of suggestions for nearby service stations in the instrument panel when fuel level is low.

1 Estimated Time of Arrival

2 Remaining Time to Arrival

Traffic information settings

The following settings determine how traffic information1 is presented in the navigation system.
Settings → Navigation → Traffic
Settings can be personalized in the following areas:

- Show and Handle Traffic Events
- Avoid Traffic Events
- Show Free Flowing Traffic
- Real Time Traffic Information

Show & Handle Traffic Events

Select to display traffic events on the map and use this information to calculate routes:

- None
- Major
- All types

Avoid Traffic Events

Select to avoid traffic problems when calculating routes.

- Never
- Ask - (suggestions for alternate routes will be provided when available during the trip)
- Always

Show Free Flowing Traffic

Select Show Free Flowing Traffic to show this on the map.

Using RTTI[1]

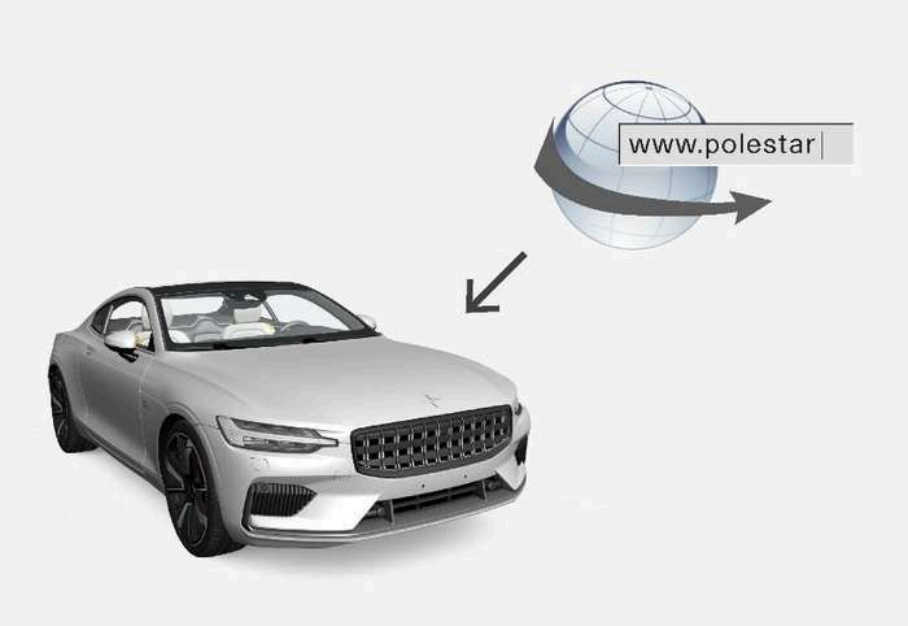
Select Real Time Traffic Information to use enhanced traffic information when the vehicle is connected to the Internet (RTTI).

1 Certain markets only.

Map updates

Updating maps from a vehicle with Internet connection

The navigation system's maps can be updated[1] when the vehicle is connected to the Internet.



Remote update procedure.

The vehicle must be connected to the Internet.



Tap Download Center in App view.
The app will start and a number shown near Maps indicates the number of available map updates for the specified home region. This number will be displayed until a new search for updates has been performed or until updates have been installed.
Tap Maps.
Tap Install and then Confirm.
The installation/update of the selected map will begin.
For further information, contact Polestar Customer Support.

Automatic map updates

Automatic home region updates can be selected in **Download Center**.
Tap Download Center in App view.

Tap Maps.
Automatic map updates can only be selected for your home region. If the home region is not already selected, tap the down-arrow to expand the region.
Detailed map information will be displayed.
Tap Set as home region.
Then scroll to the top of the list of regions, where your selected home region will now be shown.
Tap the down-arrow to expand the home region.
Check the Auto update: box.
When the vehicle is connected to the Internet and a map update is available, it will now be automatically downloaded to the vehicle.

If a map download is interrupted

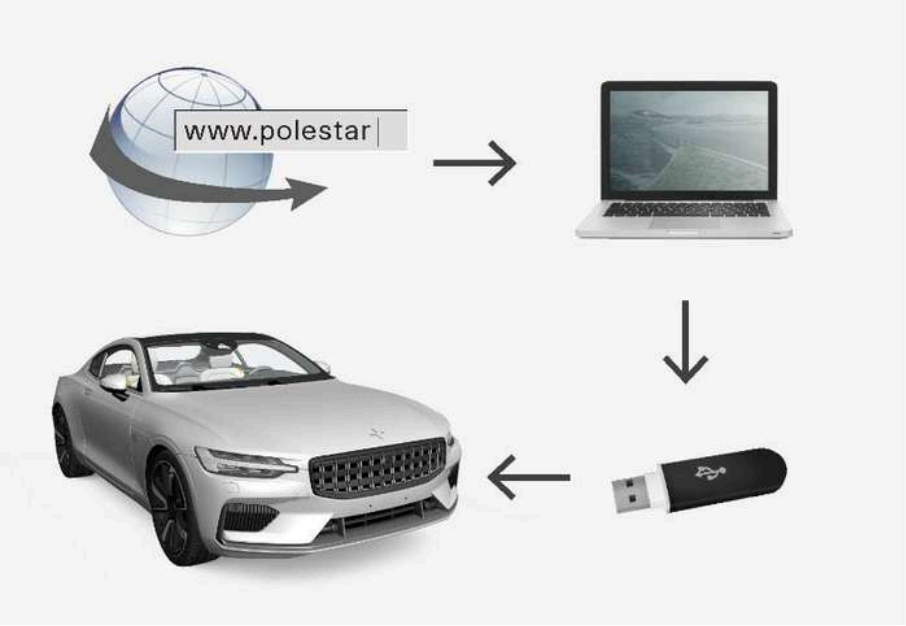
If a map download has begun but the vehicle was switched off before the download was finished, the process will be paused and then resumed automatically when the vehicle is started again and connected to the Internet.
If one or more updates were skipped or missed, the update files may be too large to be downloaded directly to the vehicle. In this case, the files can be downloaded to a USB flash drive and then transferred from the flash drive to the vehicle.

1 Only available in certain countries.

Updating maps with a computer and USB flash drive

New maps can be downloaded from the Internet to a USB flash drive and then transferred from the flash drive to the vehicle's navigation system.

Preparations



Computer/USB flash drive update

USB flash drive

For use in updates, the USB flash drive must meet the following requirements:

Parameter	Requirement
USB standard:	At least 2.0

Parameter	Requirement
File system:	FAT32, exFAT or NFTS
Capacity:	Up to 128 GB Map file size varies from market to market. See file size descriptions under "Detailed information" for your market at support.polestar.com.

Determining the current map version



Tap Download Center in App view.
Tap Maps
Available map regions are displayed.



Tap the arrow to expand the selected region.
Detailed map information will be displayed.
Make a note of the map information shown under the map image.

Downloading map data from the Internet to a USB flash drive

Make sure you have a USB flash drive and the map information you noted down.
Go to support.polestar.com on a computer connected to the Internet.
Select the maps, vehicle model and model year.
Tap the region to be updated.
A map containing information about the latest map data for the region will appear.
Verify that the map version is newer than the version in the vehicle.
Connect a USB flash drive to the computer and download the update to the USB flash drive.
The time required for the download varies depending on the size of the map and the speed of the Internet connection.
It is possible to verify that the data has been correctly downloaded to the USB flash drive before installing the map in the vehicle by selecting to check the download status in the downloading program.

It is not advisable to download using a mobile connection from a mobile device, or from a device using a subscription that may have a monthly limit on the amount of data that can be used.

Transferring map data from the USB flash drive to the vehicle

The time required to transfer data from the USB flash drive to the vehicle varies depending on the size of the map data file. The update can be done while driving. The navigation system can be used while updating a map region, but it cannot be used during the update of an entire map market, e.g. the EU. If the transfer has not been completed when the ignition is switched off, the update will continue the next time the vehicle is driven. It is not necessary to be driving during the update, but the ignition must be on. If the vehicle is not driven during the update, battery assistance is recommended.

Updating

Activate the navigation system.
Connect the USB flash drive to the vehicle's USB port. If there are two USB ports, the other port cannot be used at the same time.
The navigation system automatically detects that an update is available and, during the update of the whole map database, shows on the screen what percentage of the process is complete.
When individual regions are updated, the update will start immediately.

To start an update of the entire map database, tap Confirm. Tap Cancel to stop the installation.

Tap Confirm. The update of the entire map database will begin and progress information will be shown on the center display.
The center display will indicate when the update is finished. Remove the USB flash drive from the port.
Restart the infotainment system.
Verify that the correct map data has been transferred to the vehicle by repeating the steps described above under "Determining the current map version".

> **NOTE**
>
> In order for the installation to start, the following criteria must be met:
>
> - Selected region is included on the system map. For example, only the region Scandinavia can be downloaded if the system already has a Europe map. If a completely new map is downloaded, the previous map will be overwritten.
> - The version for the selected region is higher than that in the vehicle.
> - Selected region is compatible with the car's software. If the update is not compatible then new software will need to be downloaded.
> - Selected region is compatible with existing map. If the region is not compatible, the map must be replaced.

Interruptions

If an update is interrupted, an explanatory text will always appear in the center display.

What happens if...	Answer
the infotainment system is turned off while an update is in progress?	The process will pause and will continue automatically when the system is reactivated, e.g. when the engine is started.
The USB flash drive is removed from the USB port before the update is finished?	The process will pause and will continue automatically when the USB flash drive is reconnected to the USB port.

For additional information, see support.polestar.com or contact Polestar Customer Support.

Map updating

MapCare is a free map update service for all vehicles equipped with Sensus Navigation.

General update information

Map updates can be done 2-12 times per year (depending on market).

There are two ways to update maps. Either via a computer and USB flash drive or directly from the vehicle1 (if the vehicle has an Internet connection).

The vehicle's map is divided into a number of fixed regions. When updating map data, the driver does not need to update all of these regions, but can instead choose to update only one or more specific regions.

One or more regions can be updated when the vehicle has an Internet connection. However, updating a large number of regions or the entire map requires a significant amount of data, and it may be advisable to use a computer and USB flash drive instead.

> **NOTE**
> If an itinerary includes more than one region, all regions should have the same version number to enable the system to calculate the best route to the destination.

Updating the map structure

Changing the map structure may sometimes be necessary, e.g., if a region is added or if a large region is divided into smaller ones. If this is the case, normal updates of individual regions may not be possible and a message will be displayed explaining what has happened.

The entire map must be reinstalled instead, which is done using a USB memory stick. For further information, contact Polestar Customer Support.

Updating navigation system software

In addition to maps, the navigation system's own software is under constant development and needs to be updated occasionally. This could mean that a recently downloaded map is not supported by the current navigation system software. In such cases, a message will be displayed indicating that the navigation system software must be updated. Contact Polestar Customer Support for assistance with this and for help with the map update itself.

FAQs

Ask	Answer
Can the map data platform be changed from e.g. Europe to North America?	Yes, with some exceptions. Contact Polestar Customer Support for current information.
How long do map updates take?	This depends on the size of the file(s) and the speed of the Internet connection. Information about the size of the update (in MB) will be displayed on the screen.
How big is an update?	This varies from market to market. For detailed information on your market's map, see support.polestar.com.
The update is not working. What should I do?	Contact Polestar Customer Support.

1 Only available in certain countries.

Voice control commands for Sensus Navigation

See Voice control commands for Sensus Navigation.

Sensus Navigation

Sensus Navigation is a satellite-based traffic information and navigation system.
The system guides you to a destination and gives you information along the way, such as alternative routes to avoid accidents and roadwork.

You can set an itinerary, search for a POI1 along the route, save destinations, etc.

The system shows the exact location of the vehicle and can lead you back to the destination if you deviate from the set route.

In addition to its practical benefits, Sensus Navigation can also help contribute to a better environment by enabling you to reach your destination quickly and by the best route according to the driver's settings.

1 Point of Interest

Activating and deactivating the navigation system

The navigation system is automatically activated when the driver's door is opened and is deactivated when the driver locks and arms the vehicle.

Activating navigation





1. Navigation system tile

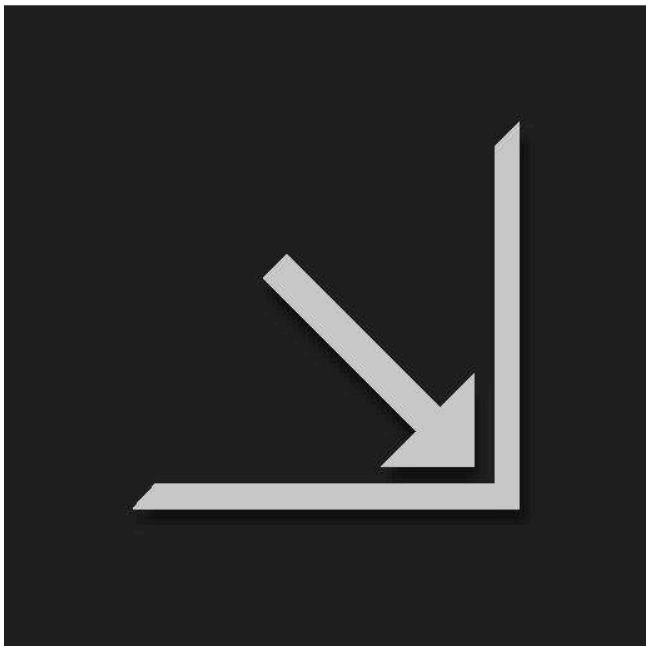


2. Home button

View the map on the center display by tapping the top tile (1) in Home view.

If the center display does not show the navigation system tile, press the Home button (2) once briefly and then tap the navigation system tile (1).

A map will appear of the surrounding area and the vehicle's current location (blue triangle).



Tap this symbol to display the map across the entire center display.

WARNING

Observe the following:

- Direct all your attention to the road and make sure that your concentration is focused on driving.
- Follow applicable traffic laws and use good judgment while driving.
- Road conditions can be affected by weather or season, which may make certain recommendations less reliable.

Deactivating navigation

While the ignition is switched on, the navigation system is always active in the background. It switches off automatically when the ignition is switched off and the vehicle is locked.

NOTE

The navigation system is available even when the engine is turned off. If the battery charge level becomes too low, the system will switch off.

Voice control for navigation system

See Voice control for navigation system.

Frequently Asked Questions regarding the navigation system

Here are answers to some frequently asked questions about the navigation system Sensus Navigation.

The vehicle's location on the map is not correct

The navigation system displays the vehicle's location with an accuracy of approximately 20 meters (65 ft).

Accuracy may be reduced slightly when driving on a road that is parallel with another road, winding roads, multi-level roads and long stretches of road with no distinct curves.

High mountains, buildings, tunnels, viaducts, interchanges, multi-level roads, etc. may also affect the satellite signal reception, which may also reduce the system's ability to accurately calculate the vehicle's location.

The system does not always calculate the fastest/shortest route

Route calculation takes into account factors such as distance, road width, type of road, traffic intensity and speed limits to find the theoretically best possible route. Familiarity with an area and experience may enable the driver to find a more efficient route.

The system uses e.g. toll roads or highways even though I have chosen to avoid them

When calculating longer routes over greater distances, the system may choose major roads for technical reasons.

If you have chosen to avoid toll roads and highways, these will be avoided whenever possible and only used when no other viable option is available.

After being transported, the vehicle's location on the map is not correct

If the vehicle is transported on e.g. a ferry or train, or if satellite signals have been blocked for some other reason, it may take up to 5 minutes before the vehicle's location can be accurately calculated.

The vehicle symbol moves erratically on the screen after changing tires

In addition to satellite signals, the vehicle's speedometer and a gyroscopic sensor are also used to calculate location, speed and direction of travel. If any of the tires are changed, e.g. a spare tire or snow tires have been installed, the system needs to "learn" the new tire dimensions.

To help ensure the system functions optimally, Polestar recommends driving for a short period on roads with good satellite reception (clear view).

The map does not represent actual road conditions

Because road changes/additions/rerouting, new traffic regulations, etc. are always being implemented, the map database may not be up to date.

The database is continuously being updated and improved. Check regularly for updates.

The vehicle symbol jumps around or spins

The system may need a few seconds to determine the vehicle's location before you start driving.

Switch off both the navigation system and the ignition. Restart but remain at a standstill for a moment before driving.

The map information is not up to date

See the next heading.

Is the most recent map version installed?

Map information is continuously being updated and improved. When updating maps via a computer and USB, the vehicle's current map version can be displayed. Check the map version in the vehicle and compare it with the available map version on support.polestar.com.

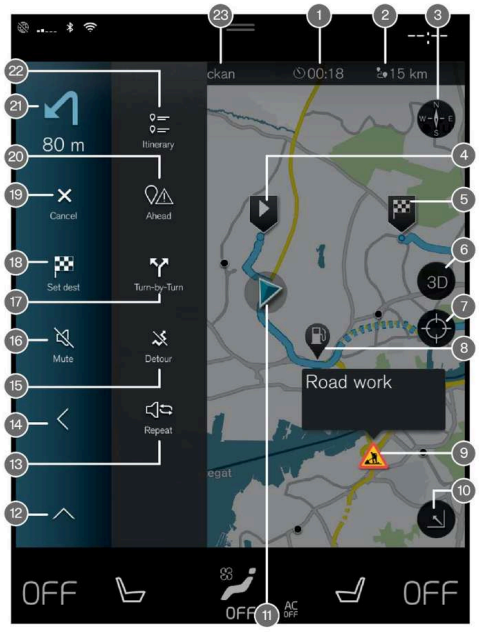
Current traffic information not shown

Activate enhanced traffic information (RTTI[1]) to continuously retrieve information on traffic congestion, closed roads and other events that may affect travel time. For continuous traffic information retrieval to be possible, the vehicle must be connected to the Internet and have reception.

1 Real Time Traffic Information

Navigation system symbols and buttons

The map in the center display displays symbols and colors that inform the driver of different roads and the area around the vehicle and along the route. A tool bar with different buttons for different settings is shown on the left.



Symbols and buttons on the map	
1	Estimated time of arrival/remaining time to arrival
2	Distance to destination
3	Compass/switches between north and vehicle's direction of travel up
4	Start
5	Destination
6	Switch map view from 2D to 3D
7	Reset map to follow the vehicle
8	Point of Interest (POI1)
9	Traffic information
10	Minimize (expanded view) or maximize the map (full screen)
11	The vehicle on the planned route
12	Minimize toolbar
13	Repeat most recent voice guidance
14	Minimize toolbar
15	Calculate a new route
16	Voice guidance temporarily On/Off
17	Display list of guidance points in the itinerary
18	Set a final destination/waypoint

19	Cancel guidance
20	Shows list of the itinerary's points of interest (POI1) and traffic information
21	Next maneuver
22	Itinerary and alternative route
23	Destination

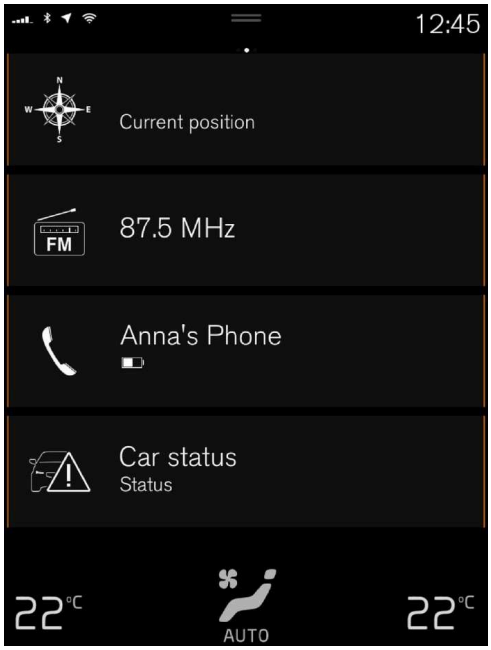
1 Point of Interest

Navigation license agreements

See Navigation license agreements.

Navigation system in center display

The navigation system can be presented and controlled in several different ways, e.g. via the center display.



All settings for the navigation system can be changed in the center display. The driver can select how the map should be displayed or enter a destination here.

If the map image is not shown in the center display, tap the top tile (for the navigation system).

Where am I?

What is the vehicle's current geographic location?

- Tap the vehicle symbol (blue triangle) on the map to display information directly on the map.

Find the vehicle symbol on the map



After zooming out/in or moving the map, it may be difficult to find the vehicle's location on the map again. Tap the crosshairs to reset the map to follow the vehicle symbol.

North or direction of travel facing up on the map





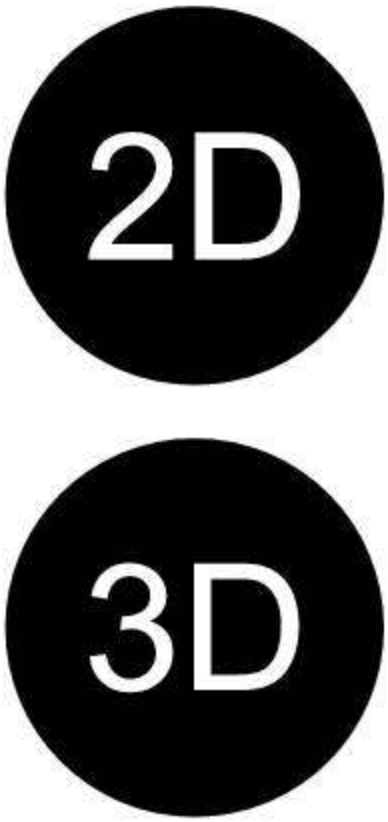
There are two ways to show the vehicle's movement in relation to the map. Tap the symbols to toggle between the vehicle's direction of travel or north shown facing up on the map.

When the map is shown with north facing up, the vehicle symbol moves in the actual compass direction on the map. If the vehicle is moving west, it will be shown moving left on the map (east is right, south is down, etc.).

When the vehicle symbol is pointing up, the map rotates under the vehicle symbol following the turns made by the vehicle. The compass symbol indicates which direction is north (N) on the map and the direction in which the front of the vehicle is pointing is shown in the center of the compass:

Compass symbols	Compass direction
N	North
NE	Northeast
E	East
SE	Southeast
S	South
SW	Southwest
W	West
NW	Northwest

2D or 3D view



Tap the symbols to toggle between 2D and 3D display.

With 3D display, the vehicle's direction of travel is always up. The map rotates under the vehicle symbols following the turns made by the vehicle. The compass indicates which direction is north (N) on the map and the direction in which the front of the vehicle is pointing is shown in the center of the compass: The map scale is not shown in 3D mode.

With 2D display, the map is shown with north facing up, and the vehicle symbols moves in the actual compass direction on the map.

Zoom in

To make the map larger, tap the center display twice in quick succession with one finger or place two fingers on the center display and move them apart ("stretch").

Zoom out

To make the map smaller, tap the center display once with two fingers or place two fingers on the center display and move them together ("pinch").

Scroll

Place one finger on the map, swipe in the desired direction and release. The scroll function is only possible with the map in maximized view, not minimized.

Change the headers displayed

Maximize the map and tap the map heading at the top of the center display. The following headers can be displayed on the map:

1. Destination Destination, arrival time (ETA) or remaining travel time (RTA) and distance to destination (Distance). For more information on selecting ETA or RTA, see "Route settings and guidance".
2. Current position as address (Address) or as coordinates (Coordinates). When coordinates are shown, altitude is also shown (Altitude). To choose between address and coordinates, see section "Map settings".

Navigation system in the instrument panel

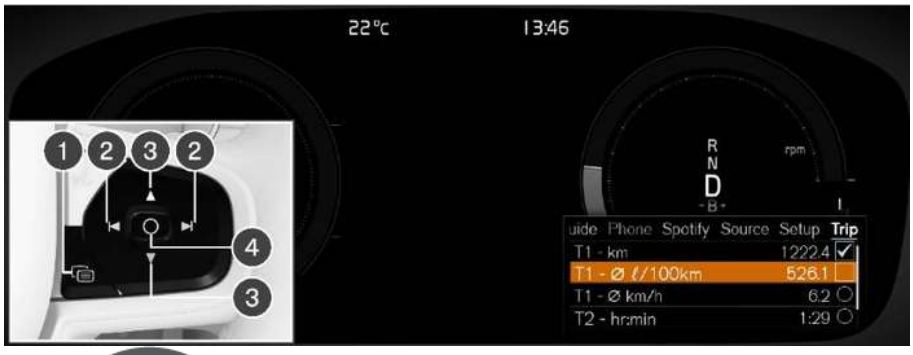
The navigation system can be presented and controlled in several different ways, e.g. via the instrument panel.



While driving, the driver receives voice guidance and instructions on the instrument panel. Map guidance in the instrument panel can also be activated without entering a destination.

The right-side steering wheel keypad and instrument panel

Some of the navigation system's functions, such as Take me home and Cancel guidance, can be controlled using the right-side steering wheel keypad. If a message is displayed in the instrument panel, it must be accepted or dismissed before the menu can be displayed.



1. Open/close the menu. The menu will close automatically after a period of inactivity or after certain selections.
2. Scroll among the menus.
3. Scroll among selections in a menu.
4. Confirm or mark a selection.

Activating and deactivating the navigation system in the instrument panel

The navigation system will be automatically displayed in the instrument panel when a destination is set. The navigation system can also be displayed without entering a destination.
Pull down the center display's Top view.
Tap Settings.
Tap My Car → Displays → Driver Display Information.
Tap the Show Map radio button to display the navigation system in the instrument panel without entering a destination.

Navigation system in head-up display

See Navigation system in head-up display.

Suggest new map information with Map Creator

The maps in your Polestar come from the map provider Here. If information is missing in a map, e.g. new addresses or rerouted roads, you can suggest changes to maps using the service Map Creator.
With an account, you can log in to Map Creator and suggest changes to maps. Instructions on how to do this are provided on the website.

Suggested changes are sent to Here for review. When the suggested changes have been verified and approved by Here, the information will be added to their maps. The changes will be available in the vehicle once the suggestion has been approved and implemented by Here and the vehicle's navigation system has been updated with the software update containing the changes.

Suggestions for map changes are reviewed and checked thoroughly before Here approves them and adds them to their maps. It can take up to twelve months before the changes reach the vehicle.

> **NOTE**
> Polestar does not have the opportunity to verify, approve or implement the requests for map changes that are sent to Here.

Wheels and tires

This section contains information about wheels and tires, how to check and adjust tire inflation pressure, and how to change wheels. You will also find information about the tire sealing system, tools, winter tires, snow chains, etc.

Changing a wheel

Changing wheels

Wheel changes must always be carried out correctly. The following instructions show how to remove and mount a wheel and what is important to keep in mind. Make sure that the tire dimension is approved for use on the vehicle.

WARNING

- If a tire must be changed near passing traffic, make sure all passengers move to a safe location.
- Use a jack intended for the vehicle when changing a wheel. For any other job, use stands to support the vehicle.
- Never crawl under or allow any part of your body to be extended under a vehicle supported by a jack.
- Never let anyone remain in the vehicle when it is raised on a jack.

IMPORTANT

- When the jack isn't used, it should be stowed in its designated spot in the charging cable storage bag.
- The jack provided with your vehicle is intended to be used only in temporary situations such as changing wheels in the event of a flat tire. Only the jack that came with your particular model should be used to lift the vehicle. If the vehicle needs to be lifted more frequently or for a prolonged period, using a garage jack or hoist is recommended. Always follow this device's instructions for use.

Removing a wheel

Read through the instructions below before you begin. Before raising the vehicle using a jack or lift, take out all the tools you will need.
Turn on the vehicle's hazard warning flashers if a wheel change must be performed in an area with traffic.

Apply the parking brake and put the gear selector in P.
Take out the jack, towing eye, lug wrench and tool for removing the wheel bolt cover, which are stowed in the foam block under the cargo compartment floor.
Place chocks in front of and behind the wheels that are still on the ground. For example, use heavy wooden blocks or large stones.
Using the lug wrench, screw the towing eye into place as far as possible. The towing eye must be screwed in to its fully tightened position.



Use the designated tool to remove the wheel bolt cover in the middle. Press the tool into the hole in the middle of the wheel bolt cover and pull to remove the cover.
With the vehicle still on the ground, use the lug wrench/towing eye to loosen the wheel bolts ½-1 turn by pressing downward (counterclockwise).
Follow these instructions for safe lifting of the vehicle using a jack.
Raise the vehicle until the wheel to be changed can move freely. Unscrew the wheel bolts and lift off the wheel.

Mounting wheels

The vehicle must be raised high enough so that the wheel you are removing can turn freely.
Clean the contact surfaces between the wheel and the wheel hub.
Lift the wheel into place. Tighten the wheel bolts securely.

Do **not** grease the wheel bolt threads.

Lower the vehicle so that the wheel cannot rotate.
Tighten the wheel bolts in a crisscross pattern (as shown in illustration). It is important that the wheel bolts are securely tightened. Tighten to 140 Nm (103 ft. lbs.). Use a torque wrench to check torque.



Replace the wheel bolt cover over the wheel bolts by aligning it with the guide marks and then pressing it into place.
Check the tire inflation pressure and store the new inflation pressure in the tire pressure monitoring system*.

WARNING

The wheel bolts may need to be tightened again several days after a wheel change. Temperature fluctuations and vibrations can cause them to loosen slightly.

NOTE

- After inflating a tire, always replace the valve cap to help prevent valve damage caused by gravel, dirt, etc.
- Use plastic valve caps only. Metal caps could corrode and become difficult to remove.

* Option/accessory.

Jack

The jack can be used to lift the vehicle to e.g. change a wheel.



IMPORTANT

- When the jack isn't used, it should be stowed in its designated spot in the charging cable storage bag.
- The jack provided with your vehicle is intended to be used only in temporary situations such as changing wheels in the event of a flat tire. Only the jack that came with your particular model should be used to lift the vehicle. If the vehicle needs to be lifted more frequently or for a prolonged period, using a garage jack or hoist is recommended. Always follow this device's instructions for use.

The jack needs to be cranked together to the correct position in order to fit.

For vehicles with Leveling Control*: If the vehicle is equipped with the optional pneumatic suspension, it must be turned off before the vehicle is lifted on a jack.

* Option/accessory.

Wheel bolts

The wheel bolts hold the wheel in place on the wheel hub.
Only use rims that have been tested and approved by Polestar and are included in Polestar's original product range.

Use a torque wrench to check that the wheel bolts are tightened correctly.

Do **not** grease the wheel bolt threads.

WARNING

The wheel bolts may need to be tightened again several days after a wheel change. Temperature fluctuations and vibrations can cause them to loosen slightly.

IMPORTANT

The wheel bolts should be tightened to 140 Nm (103 ft. lbs.). Over-tightening or under-tightening could damage the threaded joints.

Locking wheel bolts*

To loosen or tighten the locking wheel bolts, turn the wrench in the locking bolt until it fully engages in the code grooves. When removing a wheel, always start with the locking wheel bolts. When installing a wheel, attach using the locking wheel bolt.

IMPORTANT

Make sure you have a solid connection between bolt and wheel bolt key when loosening/tightening the wheel bolts. Applying force at an angle could damage the key groove in the wheel bolt and the wheel bolt key and make it impossible to install or remove the wheel.

When the wheel bolt key is not being used, it can be stored in its place in the trunk on the left-hand side behind the upper panel. This is important to remember so that the tool is available if the vehicle is taken to a workshop. If you lose the key, contact Polestar Customer Support.

* Option/accessory.

Snow chains

Using snow chains and/or snow tires can help improve traction in winter driving conditions.
Polestar recommends only using snow chains on the following wheel dimensions:

- Rims: 10x21x30
- Tires: 285/30R21

To ensure propulsion on rear wheels and for best possible traction, the drive mode Constant AWD should be used in combination with snow chains.

Snow chains must only be used on the rear wheels (also applies to all-wheel drive cars).

WARNING

Use Polestar genuine snow chains or equivalent snow chains that are suitable for the vehicle model and the tire and wheel sizes. Only **one-sided** snow chains are permitted.

Contact Polestar Customer Support if you have any questions regarding the use of snow chains. Use of the wrong snow chains could cause serious damage to the vehicle and result in an accident.

Using snow chains could result in malfunction of the system for monitoring of tire inflation pressures*1.

IMPORTANT

Snow chains can be used on the vehicle, with the following restrictions:

- Always follow the manufacturer's installation instructions carefully. Install chains as tightly as possible and retighten periodically.
- If accessory, aftermarket or "custom" tires and wheels with different dimensions than the original tires and wheels are used, snow chains in some cases may NOT be used. Sufficient distance between the chains and brakes, suspension and body components must be maintained.
- Check local regulations regarding the use of snow chains before installing.
- Never exceed the snow chain manufacturer's specified maximum speed limit. Under no circumstances should you exceed 50 km/h(30 mph).
- Avoid bumps, holes or sharp turns when driving with snow chains.
- Avoid driving on surfaces without snow as this wears out both the snow chains and the tires.
- The handling of the vehicle can be adversely affected when driving with chains. Avoid fast or sharp turns as well as locked wheel braking.
- Some types of strap-on chains affect brake components and therefore must NOT be used.

For more information about snow chains, contact Polestar Customer Support.

***** Option/accessory.

1 Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Snow tires

Snow tires are designed for winter driving conditions.
Polestar recommends snow tires with specific dimensions. The tire dimensions vary depending on engine type. When driving with snow tires, the correct type of tires must be mounted on all four wheels.

Contact Polestar Customer Support for assistance determining the most suitable rims and tires.

Tips for changing snow tires

When switching between regular tires and snow tires, mark the tires according to which side they were mounted on, e.g. **L** for left and **R** for right.

Studded tires

Studded tires should be broken in by driving 500–1000 km(300–600 miles) slowly and gently to help the studs settle properly in the tires. This gives the tire, and especially the studs, a longer service life.

NOTE

Legislation concerning the use of studded tires may vary. Always follow local laws and regulations.

Tread depth

Road conditions with ice, slush and low temperatures place considerably higher demands on tires than summer conditions. Polestar therefore recommends not driving on snow tires that have a tread depth of less than 4 mm (0.15 in.).

Flat tire

Turn on the hazard warning flashers if you get a flat tire near passing traffic.
Move the vehicle out of traffic if this can be done safely. Call road assistance if necessary.

If possible, exit the vehicle on the side with the least traffic.

Handling a flat tire

Your vehicle is equipped with a tire sealing system[1] for temporarily sealing a tire. Read the instructions before use.

1 Temporary Mobility Kit

Tool kit

Tools for e.g. towing or changing wheels are provided in the vehicle's trunk.



Examples of tools in the vehicle

1. Jack*
2. Tool for removing the wheel bolt cover
3. Funnel for refilling fluids
4. Wheel bolt key* and towing eye

The jack is located in the storage bag along with the charging cable. The funnel, tire sealing kit and tool for removing the wheel bolt cover are located in the storage compartment on the left-hand side. The towing eyelet and wheel bolt key are located under the trunk floor.

* Option/accessory.

Tires

Tire sidewall designations

The following information can be found on a tire's sidewall.



Federal law mandates that tire manufacturers place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires (see the illustration).

The vehicle has been certified with certain combinations of wheels and tires.

The following information is listed on the tire sidewall:

The tire designation:

> **NOTE**
> Please be aware that the following tire designation is an **example only** and that this particular tire may not be available on your vehicle.

1.	215: the width of the tire (in millimeters) from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. The larger the number, the wider the tire.
2.	65: The ratio of the tire's height to its width in percent.
3.	R: Radial tire (the designation RF and the ◎ symbol indicate that the vehicle is equipped with optional self-supporting run flat tires1.
4.	15: The diameter of the wheel rim (in inches).
5.	95: The tire's load index. In this example, a load index of 95 equals a maximum load of 1521 lbs (690 kg).
6.	H: The tire's speed rating, or the maximum speed at which the tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time, carrying a permissible load for the vehicle, and with correct inflation pressure. For example, H indicates a speed rating of 210 km/h (130 mph).

> **NOTE**
> The tire's load index and speed rating may not appear on the sidewall because they are not required by law.

7.	M+S or M/S = Mud and Snow, AT = All Terrain, AS = All Season
8.	U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN): This begins with the letters "DOT" and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers are the factory code where the tire was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was made. For example, 0717 means that the tire was manufactured during week 7 of 2017. The numbers in between are marketing codes used at the manufacturer's discretion. This information helps a tire manufacturer identify a tire for safety recall purposes.
9.	Tire Ply Composition and Material Used: Indicates the number of plies indicates or the number of layers of rubber-coated fabric in the tire tread and sidewall. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the ply materials in the tire and the sidewall, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others.
10.	Maximum Load: Indicates the maximum load in pounds and kilograms that can be carried by the tire. Refer to the vehicle's tire information placard located on the B-Pillar for the correct tire pressure for your vehicle.
11.	Treadwear, Traction, and Temperature grades.
12.	Maximum permissible inflation pressure: the greatest amount of air pressure that should ever be put in the tire. This limit is set by the tire manufacturer.

Speed Symbol

A tire's Speed Symbol (SS) indicates the maximum speed for which the tire has been certified and should be at least equivalent to the vehicle's top speed.

Winter tires, with or without studs, are exceptions and may use a lower SS. When winter tires are installed, the vehicle may not be driven faster than the tires' SS.

The vehicle's speed should always be determined by the posted speed limit and traffic and road conditions, not the tire's SS.

The following table indicates the maximum permissible speed for each SS.

M	130 km/h (81 mph)
Q	160 km/h (100 mph)
T	190 km/h (118 mph)
H	210 km/h (130 mph)
V	240 km/h (149 mph)
W	270 km/h (168 mph)
Y	300 km/h (186 mph)

WARNING

- The wheel and tire sizes for your Polestar are specified to meet stringent stability and handling requirements. Unapproved wheel/tire size combinations can negatively affect your vehicle's stability and handling.
- Any damage caused by installation of unapproved wheel/tire size combinations will not be covered by your new vehicle warranty. Polestar assumes no responsibility for fatalities, injuries or expenses that may result from such installations.

1 Self-supporting run flat tires may not be available on all models.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

ALL PASSENGER VEHICLE TIRES MUST CONFORM TO FEDERAL SAFETY REQUIREMENTS IN ADDITION TO THESE GRADES.
Quality grades can be found, where applicable, on the tire sidewall between the tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example:

Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A

TREADWEAR

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one half (1 ½) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and many depart significantly from the norm due to variation in driving habits, maintenance practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

TRACTION

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C, as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

> **WARNING**
> The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on braking (straight-ahead) traction tests and is not a measure of cornering (turning) traction.

TEMPERATURE

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a minimum level of performance that all passenger vehicle tires must meet under the Federal Motor Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

> **WARNING**
> The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, under-inflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and tire failure.

Tire terminology

The following is a glossary of tire-related terms.
The tire suppliers may have additional markings, notes or warnings such as standard load, radial tubeless, etc.

- Tire information placard: A placard showing the OE (Original Equipment) tire sizes, recommended inflation pressure, and the maximum weight the vehicle can carry.
- Tire Identification Number (TIN): A number on the sidewall of each tire providing information about the tire brand and manufacturing plant, tire size and date of manufacture.
- Inflation pressure: A measure of the amount of air in a tire.
- Standard load: A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a maximum load at 35 psi [37 psi (2.5 bar) for Metric tires]. Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tires load carrying capability.

- Extra load: A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a heavier maximum load at 41 psi [43 psi (2.9 bar) for Metric tires]. Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.
- kPa: Kilopascal, a metric unit of air pressure.
- PSI: Pounds per square inch, a standard unit of air pressure.
- B-pillar: The structural member at the side of the vehicle behind the front door.
- Bead area of the tire: Area of the tire next to the rim.
- Sidewall of the tire: Area between the bead area and the tread.
- Tread area of the tire: Area of the perimeter of the tire that contacts the road when mounted on the vehicle.
- Rim: The metal support (wheel) for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.
- Maximum load rating: a figure indicating the maximum load in pounds and kilograms that can be carried by the tire. This rating is established by the tire manufacturer.
- Maximum permissible inflation pressure: the greatest amount of air pressure that should ever be put in the tire. This limit is set by the tire manufacturer.
- Recommended tire inflation pressure: inflation pressure, established by Polestar, which is based on the type of tires that are mounted on a vehicle at the factory. This information can be found on the tire inflation placard(s) located on the driver's side B-pillar and in the tire inflation table.
- Cold tires: The tires are considered to be cold when they have the same temperature as the surrounding (ambient) air. This temperature is normally reached after the vehicle has been parked for at least 3 hours.

Approved tire pressure

The following tire pressures are recommended by Polestar for your vehicle. Refer to the tire inflation placard for information specific to the tires installed on your vehicle at the factory.

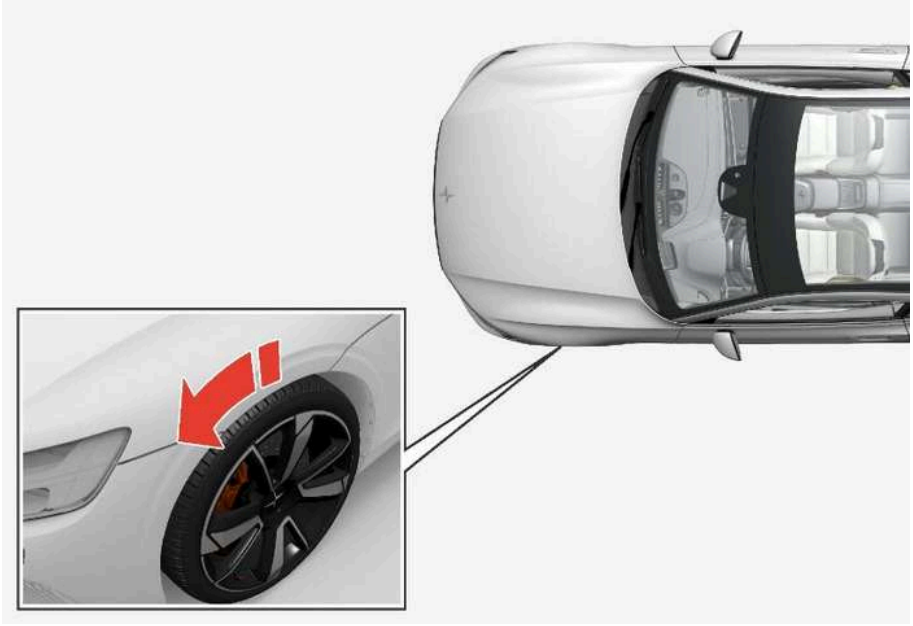
Tire dimensions	**Cold tire pressure for up to four persons**	
	Front **psi (kPa)**	**Rear** **psi (kPa)**
275/30 R21 295/30 R21	42 (290)	45 (310)
Temporary spare tire	N/A	N/A

IMPORTANT

Do not switch the front wheels with the rear wheels or vice versa.

Tire direction of rotation

Tires with tread designed to roll in only one direction are marked with an arrow on the sidewall.



The arrow shows the tire's direction of rotation.

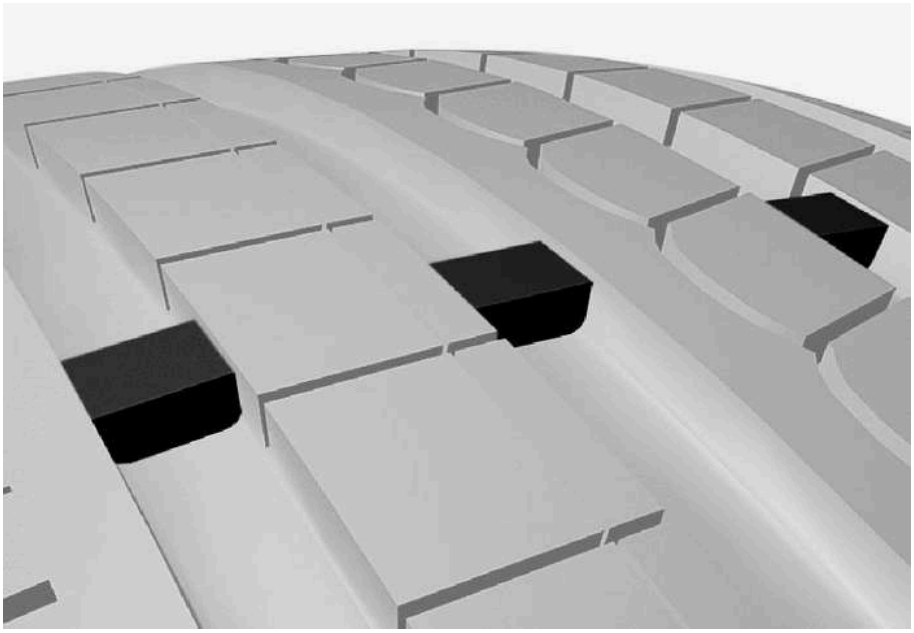
- The tire should maintain the same direction of rotation throughout its service life.
- Incorrectly mounted tires impair the vehicle's braking properties and ability to force aside rain, snow and slush.

NOTE

Use tires of the same type, dimensions and make (manufacturer) on each axle. Note that the front wheels have different dimensions than the rear wheels.

Tread wear indicator

The tread wear indicator shows the status of the tire's tread.



The tread wear indicator is a narrow elevated strip running across the tire's longitudinal tread grooves. The letters TWI (Tread Wear Indicator) are visible on the side of the tire. When approximately 1.6 mm (1/16 inch) is left on the tread,

the tread will be at the same height as the tread wear indicator. Replace the tire as soon as possible. Tires with low tread offer very poor traction in rain or snow.

Tire inflation pressure

Tire inflation pressure monitoring

Tire pressure monitoring system

The tire pressure monitoring system1 provides a warning symbol in the instrument panel if pressure is too low in one or more tires.



This symbol illuminates to indicate low inflation pressure. Check the inflation pressure in the Car Status app in the center display.

If there is a system malfunction, the inflation pressure warning symbol will flash for approximately one minute and then glow steadily.

System description

The tire pressure monitoring system measures differences in rotational speed between the wheels through the ABS system to determine if the tires are properly inflated. If inflation pressure in a tire is too low, its diameter (and consequently its rotational speed) changes. By comparing the tires with each other, the system can determine if the pressure in one or more tires is too low.

General information about the tire pressure monitoring system

In the following description, the tire monitoring system is generally referred to as TPMS.

Each tire, including the spare (if provided)2, should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure.

Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability. Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended.

TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly.

Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

To keep in mind

- Always save the new inflation pressure in the system after changing a tire or adjusting the inflation pressure.
- If you switch to a tire of another size than the factory-mounted tires, the system must be reset by storing a new inflation pressure for these tires to avoid false warnings.
- If a spare wheel is used, it is possible that the tire pressure monitoring system will not work correctly due to the differences between the wheels.
- The system does not replace the need for regular tire inspection and maintenance.
- It is not possible to deactivate the tire pressure monitoring system.

WARNING

- Incorrect inflation pressure could lead to tire failure, which could cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.
- The system cannot predict sudden tire damage.

1 Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

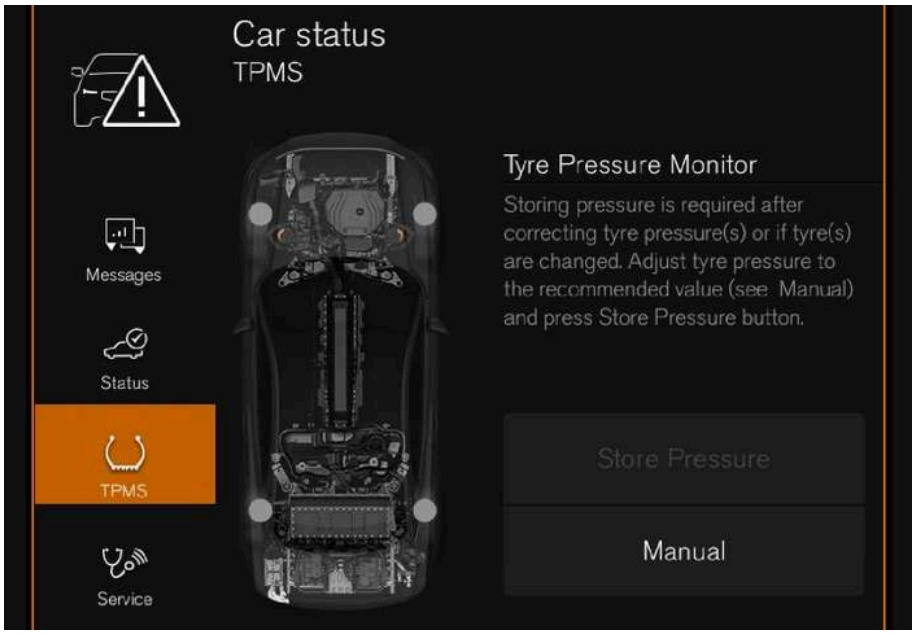
2 Not available on all models.

Viewing tire pressure status in the center display

With the system for tire pressure monitoring1, tire pressure status can be viewed in the center display.

Checking status

The vehicle may need to be driven for a few minutes at a speed above 35 km/h (22 mph) to activate the system.
Open the Car Status app in App view.
Tap TPMS to display the status of the tires.



1 Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Action when warned of low tire pressure

When the inflation pressure monitoring system1 detects low inflation pressure in a tire, immediate action is required.



If the system's indicator symbol illuminates and the message Tire pressure low is displayed, check the tire pressure and inflate if necessary.

Switch off the ignition.
Check the inflation pressure on all four tires using a tire pressure gauge.
Inflate the tire to the correct inflation pressure; see the tire pressure placard on the driver's side B pillar for recommended pressures for factory-mounted tires.
After the inflation pressure has been adjusted, always save the new inflation pressure in the system via the center display.

Please be aware that the indicator symbol will not go out until the low tire pressure has been corrected and a storing procedure has been started for the new inflation pressure.

NOTE

To help prevent incorrect inflation pressure, pressure should be checked when the tires are cold. The tires are considered to be cold when they have reached the same temperature as the ambient temperature (about 3 hours after the vehicle was last driven). After driving for a few kilometers, the tires will warm up and the pressure will increase.

NOTE

- After inflating a tire, always replace the valve cap to help prevent valve damage caused by gravel, dirt, etc.
- Use plastic valve caps only. Metal caps could corrode and become difficult to remove.

WARNING

- Incorrect inflation pressure could lead to tire failure, which could cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.
- The system cannot predict sudden tire damage.

1 Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Saving a new inflation pressure in the monitoring system

In order for the tire pressure monitoring system1 to function correctly, tire pressure reference values must be saved correctly. To help ensure that the system can correctly alert the driver of low inflation pressure, this must be done each time the tires are changed or the inflation pressure is adjusted.
For example, when driving with a heavy load or at high speeds (over 160 km/h (100 mph)), tire inflation pressure should be adjusted to the Polestar-recommended inflation pressure values. The system should then be reset by saving the new inflation pressure.

To store the new inflation pressure as a reference value in the system:
Switch off the ignition.
Inflate the tire to the correct inflation pressure; see the tire pressure placard on the driver's side B pillar for recommended pressures for factory-mounted tires.
Start the vehicle.
Open the Car Status app in App view.
Tap TPMS.

NOTE

The vehicle must be stationary for the Store Pressure button to be selectable.

Tap Store Pressure.
Tap OK to confirm that the tire pressure in all four tires has been checked and adjusted.
Drive the vehicle until the new inflation pressure has been saved. The new inflation pressure is stored when the vehicle is driven at speeds over 35 km/h (22 mph).
When enough data has been collected for the system to detect low inflation pressure, the animation showing the progress of the storing procedure will disappear from the center display. The system will not provide any other confirmation that calibration has been completed.
If storing cannot be performed, Storing pressure unsuccessful. Try again. will be displayed.

WARNING

The exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide, which is invisible and odorless but very poisonous. The procedure for saving a new inflation pressure must therefore always be performed outdoors or in a workshop with exhaust gas extraction.

1 Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Tire pressure monitoring messages

A number or messages related to the Tire Pressure Monitoring System1 can be shown. Several examples are provided below.

Instrument panel: Tire pressure lowCheck Car Status app in center display	The indicator symbol will illuminate to indicate that inflation pressure is low in one or more tires. See the Car Status app in the center display for more information.
Instrument panel: Tire pressure systemTemporarily unavailable	The indicator symbol will flash for about 1 minute and then glow steadily. The system is temporarily unavailable and will be activated momentarily.
Instrument panel: Tire pressure systemService required	The indicator symbol will flash for about 1 minute and then glow steadily. The system is not functioning correctly. Contact Polestar Customer Support.

1 Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Checking tire pressure

Correct inflation pressure helps improve driving stability, save fuel and increase the service life of the tires.
Tire pressure decreases over time, which is normal. Tire pressure also varies depending on the ambient temperature. Driving on under-inflated tires could cause the vehicle to overheat and lead to damage. Tire pressure affects traveling comfort, road noise and driving characteristics.

Check the pressure in the tires every month. Use the recommended inflation pressure for cold tires to help maintain good tire performance. Under-inflated or over-inflated tires could cause uneven tread wear.

Use an air pressure gauge and check the inflation pressure on all the tires at least once a month and before long trips. Polestar recommends buying a reliable air pressure gauge, as the automatic gauges provided at service stations may be inaccurate.

WARNING

- Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failure and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation, or "blow-out," with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury.
- Under-inflated tires reduce the load carrying capacity of your vehicle.

Cold tires

Inflation pressure should be checked when the tires are cold. The tires are considered to be cold when they have the same temperature as the surrounding (ambient) air. This temperature is normally reached after the vehicle has been parked for at least 3 hours.

After driving for approximately 1.6 km (1 mile), the tires are considered to be warm. If you need to drive longer than that to inflate the tires, check and record the inflation pressure of the tires first and inflate accordingly when you arrive at the pump.

When the ambient temperature changes, so does the inflation pressure. A 10-degree temperature drop causes a corresponding drop in inflation pressure of 1 psi (7 kPa). Check the inflation pressure of the tires regularly and adjust to

the correct pressure, which can be found on the vehicle's tire information decal or certification label.

If you check inflation pressure when the tires are warm, you should never release air. The tires become warm after driving and it is normal for warm tires to have an inflation pressure above the recommended pressure for cold tires. A warm tire with an inflation pressure equal to or under the recommended pressure for cold tires could be significantly under-inflated.

Adjusting tire pressure

Tire pressure decreases over time, which is normal. The tire pressure must therefore be adjusted to maintain the recommended tire pressure.
Use the recommended inflation pressure for cold tires to help maintain good tire performance and even wear.

> **NOTE**
>
> To help prevent incorrect inflation pressure, pressure should be checked when the tires are cold. The tires are considered to be cold when they have reached the same temperature as the ambient temperature (about 3 hours after the vehicle was last driven). After driving for a few kilometers, the tires will warm up and the pressure will increase.

Remove the valve cap from the tire and press the air pressure gauge firmly onto the valve.
Inflate the tire to the correct inflation pressure; see the tire pressure placard on the driver's side B pillar for recommended pressures for factory-mounted tires.
Screw the valve cap back on.

> **NOTE**
>
> - After inflating a tire, always replace the valve cap to help prevent valve damage caused by gravel, dirt, etc.
> - Use plastic valve caps only. Metal caps could corrode and become difficult to remove.

Visually inspect the tire to make sure there are no nails or other embedded objects that could puncture the tire and cause air leakage.
Check the sidewalls to make sure there are no gouges, cuts, bulges or other irregularities.
Repeat this for all tires.

> **NOTE**
>
> If you have overfilled the tire, release air by pushing on the metal stem in the center of the valve. Then recheck the pressure with your tire gauge.
>
> Some spare tires require higher inflation pressure than the other tires. Consult the tire inflation pressure table or the inflation pressure decal.

Recommended tire pressure

The tire pressure placard on the driver's side B pillar indicates tire pressure for different loads and speed conditions.



Location of tire pressure sticker

The decal specifies the designation for the factory-mounted tires on the vehicle, as well as load limits and inflation pressures.

> **NOTE**
> The decals shown in the Manual do not claim to be exact reproductions of those found in the vehicle. The purpose is to show approximately how they look and about where they are located on the vehicle. The information that applies for your vehicle in particular is found on the decal on the vehicle.

Temporary tire sealing

Tire sealing system

The temporary tire sealing system can be used to seal a puncture in a tire or to check and adjust the pressure in the tire.

> **WARNING**
> **California Proposition 65**
>
> Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

The tire sealing system consists of a compressor and a bottle containing sealing compound. The sealing functions as a temporary repair.

NOTE

The sealing compound effectively seals tires with punctures in the tread but should not be used to seal tires with punctures in the sidewall. Do not use the tire sealing system on tires with large tears, cracks or similar damage.

NOTE

The compressor is intended for temporary tire sealing and is approved by Polestar.

Location

The tire sealing system is located in the left-hand side of the trunk behind the panel.



Sealing compound expiration date

The sealing compound bottle must be replaced if its expiration date has passed (see the decal on the bottle). Handle the old bottle as hazardous waste.

Inflate tires with the compressor included in the tire sealing system

The vehicle's original tires can be inflated using the compressor in the tire sealing system.
The compressor must be switched off. Make sure that the switch is in the 0 (Off) position and take out the electrical cable and the hose.
Unscrew the tire's valve cap and screw the hose's valve connector as far as possible onto the valve.

Be sure the air release valve on the compressor's hose is completely closed.

Connect the electrical cable to the nearest 12 V outlet and start the vehicle.

WARNING

Inhaling exhaust fumes could lead to serious injury. Never leave the engine running in an enclosed space or a space without sufficient ventilation.

WARNING

Never leave children unattended in the vehicle while the engine is running.

Start the compressor by moving the switch to the I (On) position.

IMPORTANT

To help avoid overheating, the compressor should never be used for more than 10 minutes at a time.

Inflate the tire to the pressure specified on the tire pressure decal on the driver's side door pillar. If the inflation pressure is too high, use the air release valve to release air.
Switch off the compressor. Remove the hose and the electrical cable.
Screw the valve cap back onto the tire.

NOTE

- After inflating a tire, always replace the valve cap to help prevent valve damage caused by gravel, dirt, etc.
- Use plastic valve caps only. Metal caps could corrode and become difficult to remove.

NOTE

The compressor is an electric device. Follow local regulations for disposal.

Using the tire sealing system

The temporary tire sealing system (TMK1) can be used to seal a puncture in a tire. Read through all instructions before use.

Overview



1. Electrical cable
2. Hose
3. Air release valve
4. Protective hose cover

5. Speed limit sticker



6. Bottle holder (orange cover)



7. Air pressure gauge



8. Sealing compound bottle



9. Switch

Connecting



NOTE

Do not break the seal of the bottle before use. The seal is broken automatically when the bottle is screwed into place.

WARNING

Please keep the following points in mind when using the tire sealing system:

- The sealing compound bottle (no. 8 in the illustration) contains 1) rubber latex, natural and 2) ethanediol. These substances are harmful if swallowed.
- The contents of this bottle may cause allergic skin reactions or otherwise be potentially harmful to the respiratory tract, the skin, the central nervous system, and the eyes.

Precautions:

- Keep out of reach of children.
- Do not ingest the contents.
- Avoid prolonged or repeated contact with the skin. Remove any clothing that has come into contact with sealant.
- Wash thoroughly after handling.

First aid:

- Skin: Wash affected areas of the skin with soap and water. Get medical attention if symptoms occur.
- Eyes: Flush with plenty of water for least 15 minutes, occasionally lifting the upper and lower eyelids. Get medical attention if symptoms occur.
- Inhalation: Move the exposed person to fresh air. If irritation persists, get medical attention.
- Ingestion: Do NOT induce vomiting unless directed to do so by medical personnel. Get medical attention.
- Disposal: Dispose of this material and its container at a hazardous or special waste collection point.

WARNING

Do not remove the bottle or the air hose while the tire sealing system is being used.

Preparations

Turn on the vehicle's hazard warning flashers if the tire sealing system is to be used in an area with traffic.

If the puncture was caused by a nail or similar object, do not remove it. It will help seal the hole.

Peel off the speed limit sticker from the side of the compressor. Affix the decal to a clearly visible location on the windshield to remind the driver not to exceed this speed limit. Do not drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph) while using a tire that has been temporarily repaired with the tire sealing system.
Make sure the switch is in the 0 (Off) position and take out the electric cable and the hose.
Unscrew the orange cover on the compressor and unscrew the cap on the sealing compound bottle.
Screw the bottle onto the bottle holder as far as possible.

The bottle and the bottle holder are equipped with catches to help prevent the sealing compound from leaking. Once the bottle is screwed into place into the bottle holder, it cannot be unscrewed. Only a workshop may remove the bottle – contact Polestar Customer Support.

WARNING

Do not unscrew the bottle. It is equipped with a catch to prevent leakage.

Unscrew the tire's valve cap and screw the hose's valve connector as far as possible onto the valve.

Be sure the air release valve on the compressor's hose is completely closed.

Begin tire sealing

Connect the electrical cable to the nearest 12 V outlet and start the vehicle. Make sure none of the other 12 V outlets are in use while the compressor is running.

> **WARNING**
> Never leave children unattended in the vehicle while the engine is running.

> **WARNING**
> Inhaling exhaust fumes could lead to serious injury. Never leave the engine running in an enclosed space or a space without sufficient ventilation.

Start the compressor by moving the switch to the I (On) position.

When the compressor starts, the pressure can increase up to 6 bar (88 psi) but the pressure will drop after about 30 seconds.

> **WARNING**
> Never stand next to a tire being inflated with the compressor. If cracks, bulges, etc. form on the tire, switch off the compressor immediately. The vehicle should not be driven. Call roadside assistance to have the vehicle towed to a workshop for inspection/replacement of the tire. Contact Polestar Customer Support.

Inflate the tire for 7 minutes.

> **IMPORTANT**
> To help avoid overheating, the compressor should never be used for more than 10 minutes at a time.

Switch off the compressor and check the inflation pressure using the air pressure gauge. The inflation pressure should be between 1.8 bar (22 psi) and 3.5 bar (51 psi). If the inflation pressure is too high, use the air release valve to release air.

> **WARNING**
> If pressure falls below 1.8 bar (22 psi), the hole in the tire may be too large. The vehicle should not be driven. Call roadside assistance to have the vehicle towed to a workshop for inspection/replacement of the tire. Contact Polestar Customer Support.

Switch off the compressor and remove the electrical cable.
Unscrew the hose from the tire's valve and screw the valve cap back on.

> **NOTE**
> - After inflating a tire, always replace the valve cap to help prevent valve damage caused by gravel, dirt, etc.
> - Use plastic valve caps only. Metal caps could corrode and become difficult to remove.

Put the protective hose cover onto the hose to help prevent leakage of any residual sealing compound. Return the equipment to the trunk.
Immediately drive the vehicle at least 3 km (2 miles) at a maximum speed of 80 km/h(50 mph) to allow the sealing compound to seal the tire, and then recheck the inflation pressure.

WARNING

During the tire's first revolution, some sealing compound may spray out of the puncture hole. Before driving away, make sure that no one is near the vehicle who could be sprayed with sealing compound. Make sure no one is within 2 meters(7 feet) of the vehicle.

Rechecking the inflation pressure

Connect the hose to the tire's valve and screw the hose connector onto the valve as far as possible. The compressor must be switched off.

Check the inflation pressure on the air pressure gauge.

- If the pressure is under 1.3 bar (19 psi), the tire is not sufficiently sealed. The vehicle should not be driven. Call roadside assistance to have the vehicle towed.
- If the inflation pressure is higher than 1.3 bar (19 psi), the tire must be inflated to the inflation pressure specified on the tire pressure decal on the driver's side door pillar (1 bar = 100 kPa = 14.5 psi). If the inflation pressure is too high, use the air release valve to release air.

WARNING

Check inflation pressure regularly.

Polestar recommends driving to the nearest workshop2 to have the tire replaced/repaired. Inform the workshop that the tire contains sealing compound.

The sealing compound bottle and the hose must be replaced after use – contact Polestar Customer Support.

WARNING

After using the tire sealing system, the vehicle should not be driven farther than approximately 200 km (120 miles).

NOTE

The compressor is an electric device. Follow local regulations for disposal.

1 Temporary Mobility Kit

2 Contact Polestar Customer Support for assistance finding a workshop.

Driving in winter

Snow chains

See Snow chains.

Snow tires

See Snow tires.

Preparing for a long trip

See Preparing for a long trip.

Winter driving

See Winter driving.

Tires

The function of the tires is to carry loads, provide traction on road surfaces, reduce vibrations and protect the wheels from wear.
The tires significantly influence the vehicle's driving characteristics. The type, dimensions, tire pressure and speed rating have a considerable impact on how the vehicle performs.

Your vehicle is equipped with tires according to the vehicle's tire information placard on the B-pillar (the structural member at the side of the vehicle, at the rear of the driver's door opening).

WARNING

A damaged tire could cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.

IMPORTANT

Some models are equipped with an Ultra High Performance tire and wheel combination designed to provide maximum dry pavement performance with consideration for hydroplaning resistance. They may be more susceptible to road hazard damage and, depending on driving conditions, may achieve a tread life of less than 30,000 km (20,000 miles). Even if this vehicle is equipped with advanced AWD or stability systems, these tires are not designed for winter driving and should be replaced with winter tires when weather conditions dictate.

The tires have good road holding characteristics and offer good handling on dry and wet surfaces. It should be noted however that the tires have been developed to give these features on snow/ice-free surfaces.

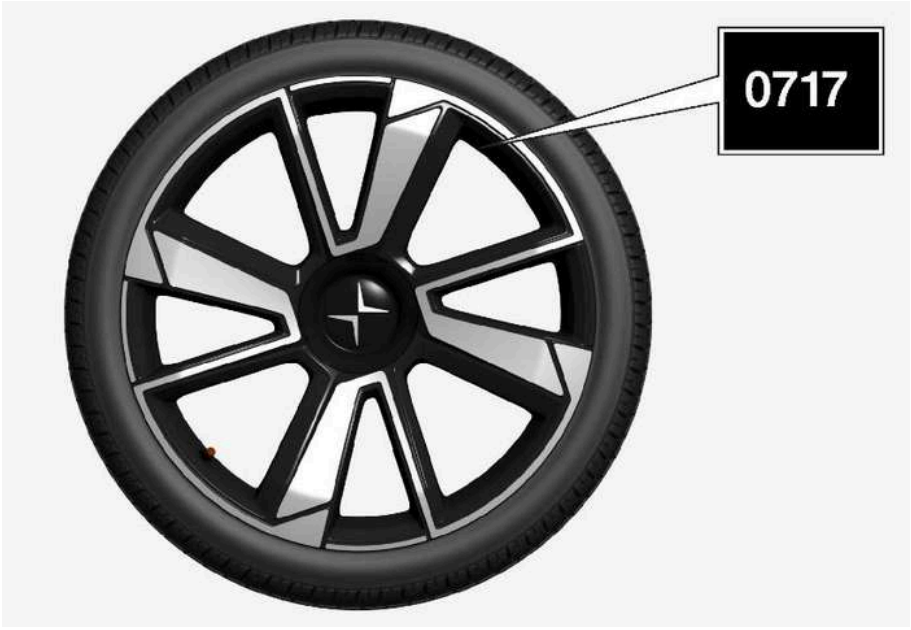
"All-season" tires provide a somewhat higher degree of roadholding on slippery road surfaces than tires without the "all-season" rating. However, for good roadholding on icy or snow-covered roads, Polestar recommends snow tires on all four wheels.

When replacing tires, be sure that the new tires are the same size designation, type (radial) and preferably from the same manufacturer, on all four wheels. Otherwise there is a risk of altering the vehicle's roadholding and handling characteristics.

Recommended tires

On delivery, the vehicle is equipped with Polestar original tires that have the VOL1 marking on the side of the tires. These tires have been designed specifically for your vehicle. It is therefore important when replacing tires that the new tires have this same marking to help maintain the vehicle's driving characteristics, comfort and fuel consumption.

New tires



Tires are perishable goods. After a few years, they will begin to harden and their friction properties will gradually deteriorate. Always replace tires with the freshest tires possible. This is particularly important for snow tires. A series of numbers is imprinted on the sidewall of the tire. The last four digits in the series is the Department of Transportation (DOT) stamp and indicates the week and year the tire was manufactured. The tire in the illustration has 0717 as the last four digits, which means it was manufactured week 7 of 2017.

Tire age

Tires degrade over time, even when they are not being used. Polestar recommends that tires generally be replaced after 6 years of normal service. Heat caused by hot climates, frequent high loading conditions or Ultra Violet (U.V.) exposure can accelerate the aging process. Even if a tire has never been used, it should still be replaced every seven years. A tire with e.g., visible cracks or discoloration should be replaced immediately.

Tire economy

- Maintain correct tire pressure.
- Avoid fast starts, hard braking and tire screeching.
- Tire wear increases with speed.
- Correct wheel alignment (four-wheel alignment) is very important.
- Unbalanced wheels impair tire economy and driving comfort.
- Tires must maintain the same direction of rotation throughout their lifetime.
- The tires on the rear wheels should have as much or more tread depth than the tires on the front wheels in order to reduce the risk of oversteer during hard braking.
- Hitting curbs or potholes can damage the tires and/or wheels permanently.

Tire rotation and tread depth

The vehicle's original tires cannot be changed from the front to rear wheel axle or vice versa.

Driving style, tire pressure, climate and road conditions affect how quickly the tires age and exhibit signs of wear. Maintaining the correct tire pressure helps keep tread wear evenly distributed.

Contact Polestar Customer Support if you need assistance determining the tread depth.

Storing wheels and tires

When storing complete wheels (tires mounted on rims), they should be suspended off the floor or placed on their sides on the floor.

Tires not mounted on rims should be stored on their sides or standing upright, but should not be suspended.

IMPORTANT

Tires should preferably be stored in a cool, dry, dark place, and should never be stored in close proximity to solvents, gasoline, oils, etc.

WARNING

- The wheel and tire sizes for your Polestar are specified to meet stringent stability and handling requirements. Unapproved wheel/tire size combinations can negatively affect your vehicle's stability and handling.
- Any damage caused by installation of unapproved wheel/tire size combinations will not be covered by your new vehicle warranty. Polestar assumes no responsibility for fatalities, injuries or expenses that may result from such installations.

1 This may vary for certain tire dimensions.

Determining the vehicle's permitted weight

Properly loading your vehicle will provide maximum return of vehicle design performance.

Weight designations

Before loading your vehicle, familiarize yourself with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight ratings, with or without a trailer, from the vehicle's Federal/Canadian Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (FMVSS/CMVSS) label, and the vehicle's tire information placard:

Curb weight

The weight of the vehicle including a full tank of fuel and all standard equipment. It does not include passengers, cargo, or optional equipment.

Capacity weight

All weight added to the curb weight, including cargo and optional equipment. When towing, towbar weight is also part of cargo weight.

Permissible axle weight

The maximum allowable weight that can be carried by a single axle (front or rear). These numbers are shown on the Federal/Canadian Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (FMVSS/CMVSS) label. The total load on each axle must never exceed its maximum permissible weight.

Gross vehicle weight (GVW)

The vehicle's curb weight + cargo + passengers.

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit

Locate the statement "the combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs." on your vehicle's placard.
Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.

The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1400 - 750 (5 × 150) = 650 lbs.)
Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult the Manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

WARNING

- Exceeding the permissible axle weight, gross vehicle weight, or any other weight rating limits can cause tire overheating resulting in permanent deformation or catastrophic failure.
- Do not use replacement tires with lower load carrying capacities than the tires that were original equipment on the vehicle because this will lower the vehicle's GVW rating. Use only tires with the correct load carrying capacity. Contact Polestar Customer Support for more information.

Loading, storage and passenger compartment

This section contains information on the interior, electrical sockets and USB ports, storage compartments, warning triangle, trunk, loading recommendations, etc.

Loading

Loading recommendations

There are a number of things that are important to consider when carrying loads in or on the vehicle.
Load-carrying capacity is determined by the vehicle's curb weight. The total weight of all passengers and any installed accessories reduces the vehicle's load-carrying capacity by the corresponding amount.

WARNING

The vehicle's driving characteristics change depending on the weight and position of the load.

Loading the trunk

Keep the following in mind when loading:

- Position objects so they are pressing against the front wall of the trunk.
- Heavy objects should be positioned as low as possible.
- Cover sharp corners with a soft cloth or similar to help prevent damage to the upholstery.
- Use the load anchoring eyelets and tensioning straps or similar to secure all objects.

WARNING

In a head-on collision at a speed of 50 km/h (30 mph), an unsecured object weighing 20 kg (44 pounds) can reach a projectile weight equivalent to 1000 kg (2200 pounds).

WARNING

If objects are loaded higher than the upper edge of the side windows, leave a 10 cm (4 in.) space between the objects and the window. Objects placed closer to this could impede the function of the inflatable curtain concealed inside the headlining.

WARNING

Always secure the load. Otherwise, it may shift during heavy braking and injure people in the vehicle.

Cover sharp edges and sharp corners with something soft.

Turn off the engine and apply the parking brake when loading/unloading long objects. Otherwise, it is possible for the load to reach the gear lever or gear selector and move it to a drive position – which could cause the vehicle to begin rolling.

Determining the vehicle's permitted weight

See Determining the vehicle's permitted weight.

Load anchoring eyelets

The cargo anchoring eyelets in the trunk can be used to secure objects with straps, a net, etc.



WARNING

Hard, sharp and/or heavy objects in or protruding from the vehicle can cause injury in the event of hard braking.

Always secure large and heavy objects with a seat belt or cargo retaining straps.

Cargo compartment/trunk

Trunk

Loads can be secured in the trunk to keep them in place while driving.
Load anchoring eyelets are provided to help secure objects in place.

The towing eyelet and tire sealing system are located under the cargo compartment floor.

Load anchoring eyelets

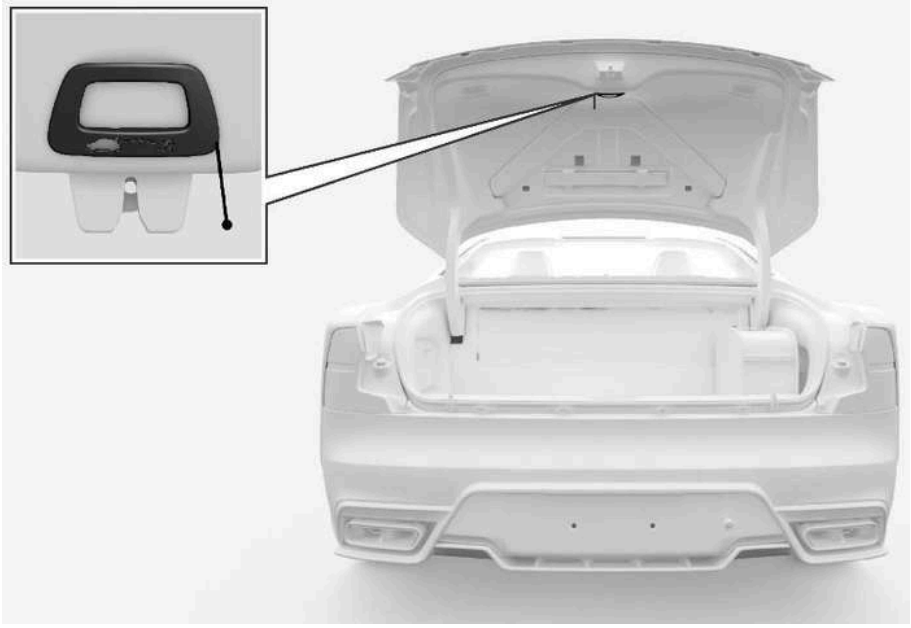
See Load anchoring eyelets.

Unlocking the trunk lid using the key

See Unlocking the trunk lid using the key.

Opening the trunk lid from inside the trunk

The vehicle is equipped with a fluorescent handle on the inside of the trunk lid that can be used in an emergency to open the trunk lid from the inside.



Pull the handle downward to release the trunk lid.
The trunk lid will open.
After use, the handle must be pushed back to its original position before the trunk lid can be closed.

NOTE

The handle is not intended to be used to secure the trunk lid, e.g. when transporting long objects.

WARNING

- Lock the doors and trunk lid when the vehicle is parked and keep the keys out of reach of children. Unsupervised children could lock themselves in the trunk and be injured.
- On hot days, the temperature in the trunk and inside the vehicle could rise very quickly. Exposure to these high temperatures, even for a short time, could lead to heat-related injury or fatality. Small children are particularly at risk.

1 US market only.

Unlocking the trunk lid from inside the vehicle

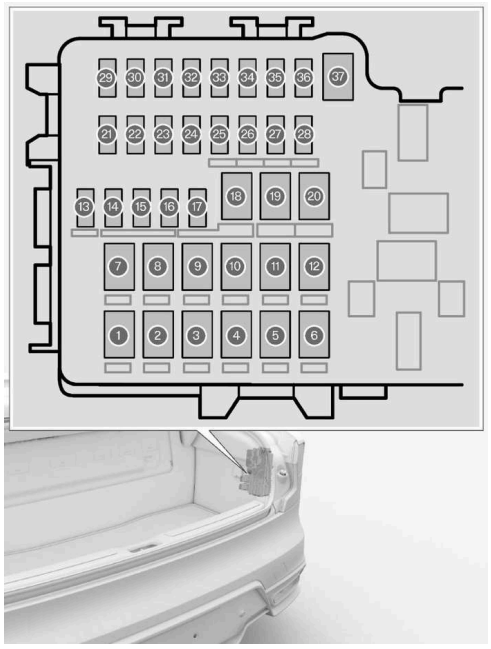
See Unlocking the trunk lid from inside the vehicle.

Keyless unlocking of the trunk lid using a foot movement

See Keyless unlocking of the trunk lid using a foot movement.

Fuses in the trunk

The fuses in the trunk protect electrical components such as the power seats, airbags and seat belt tensioners.



Location of fuse box

Fuse pliers are provided on the inside of the fuse box cover to assist in removing and inserting fuses.

There are also spaces for several extra fuses in the **distribution box in the engine compartment**.

Positions

There is a decal with a diagram of the locations of the fuses on the inside of the cover.

	Function	Ampere	Type
1	–	–	MCase1
2	Central electrical module	40	MCase1
3	–	–	MCase1
4	–	–	MCase1
5	–	–	MCase1
6	–	–	MCase1
7	Power front passenger seat	20	MCase1
8			MCase1
9	Power trunk release	25	MCase1
10	Door module right side, front	20	MCase1
11	–	–	MCase1
12	Seat belt tensioner module (right side)	40	MCase1
13	Internal relay windings	5	Micro
14	Power driver seat	20	Micro
15	–	–	Micro

	Function	Ampere	Type
⑯	–	–	Micro
⑰	Digital Key	5	Micro
⑱	–	–	MCase[1]
⑲	Door module left side, front	20	MCase[1]
⑳	Seat belt tensioner module (left side)	40	Micro
㉑	Park Assist Camera Wide-angle view module	5	Micro
㉒	–	–	Micro
㉓	–	–	Micro
㉔	–	–	Micro
㉕	Feed when ignition is on	10	Micro
㉖	–	–	Micro
㉗	–	–	Micro
㉘	–	–	Micro
㉙	–	–	Micro
㉚	Blind Spot Information (BLIS); Exterior reverse signal control module	5	Micro
㉛	–	–	Micro
㉜	Modules for seat belt tensioners	5	Micro
㉝	Emissions system actuator (gasoline, certain engine variants)	5	Micro
㉞	Active spoiler	10	Micro
㉟	–	–	Micro
㊱	–	–	Micro
㊲	–	–	MCase

1 This type of fuse should only be replaced by a workshop – contact Polestar Customer Support.

Storage and passenger compartment

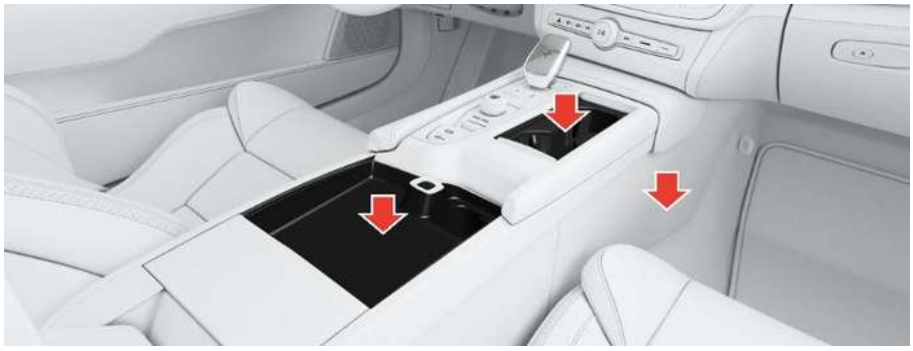
Passenger compartment interior

Overview of the passenger compartment interior and storage spaces.

Front seats

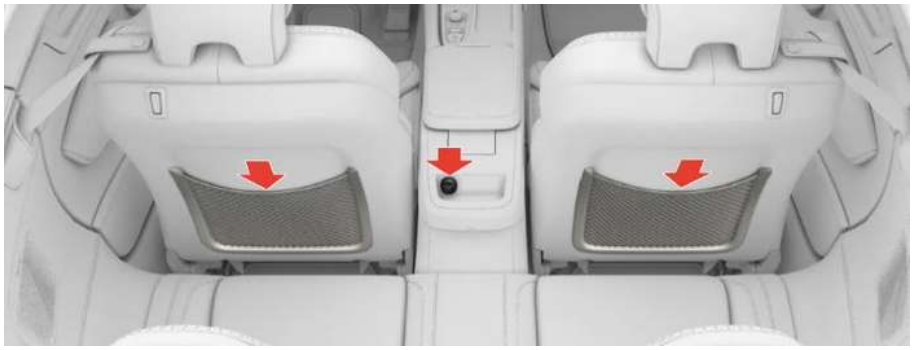


Glove compartment and door panel storage compartment



Storage compartments with cup holders, electrical outlets, net pocket and USB ports in the tunnel console.

Rear seat



Storage pockets in the front seat backrests and 12 V socket in the tunnel console.

WARNING

Store loose objects, such as a cell phone, camera, remote control for extra equipment, etc., in the glove compartment or another compartment. Otherwise, these could injure people in the vehicle in the event of hard braking or a collision.

IMPORTANT

Keep in mind that glossy surfaces can be easily scratched by e.g. metal objects. Do not place keys, phones or similar items on sensitive surfaces.

Electrical outlets

There are two 12-volt electrical sockets and one 12-volt electrical socket in the trunk.

If you experience any problems with a socket, contact Polestar Customer Support.

12 V outlets



12 V outlet in the tunnel console, front seat.



12 V outlet in the tunnel console, rear seat.



12-volt socket in the trunk.

The 12 V outlets can be used for devices intended for this such as MP3 players, coolers and cellular phones.

Using the electrical outlets

The 12 V outlet can be used for devices intended for this such as MP3 players, coolers and cellular phones.
The ignition must be in at least mode I for the outlets to supply current. The outlets will then be active as long as there is sufficient charge in the start battery.

If the engine is turned off and the vehicle is locked, the outlets will be deactivated. If the engine is turned off and the vehicle remains unlocked, the sockets will remain active for up to 7 minutes.

NOTE

Bear in mind that using the electrical outlets when the engine is off could cause the starter battery to have too low of a charge level, which could limit other functionality.

Accessories connected to the electrical outlets can be activated even when the vehicle electrical system is off or if preconditioning is used. For this reason, disconnect plugs when they are not in use to prevent the starter battery from becoming discharged.

WARNING

- Do not use accessories with large or heavy plugs – they could damage the outlet or come loose while you are driving.
- Do not use accessories that could cause disruptions to e.g. the vehicle's radio receiver or electrical system.
- Position the accessory so that there is no risk of it injuring the driver or passengers in the event of heavy braking or a collision.
- Pay attention to connected accessories as they can generate heat that could burn passengers or the interior.

Using 12 V outlets

Remove the stopper (tunnel console) or fold down the cover (trunk) over the socket and plug in the device.

Unplug the device and put the stopper back in (tunnel console) or fold up the cover (trunk) when the socket is not in use or left unattended.

IMPORTANT

The maximum power is 120 W (10 A) per outlet.

WARNING

- Only use accessories that are not damaged or malfunctioning. The accessories must be CE marked, UL marked or have an equivalent safety marking.
- New let outlets, plugs or accessories come into contact with water or another fluid. Do not touch or use the outlet if it appears damaged or has been in contact with water or another fluid.
- Do not connect power strips, adapters or extension cords to the outlet has this could cause the outlet's safety functions to malfunction.

Failure to follow the above could lead to severe or fatal electrical shocks.

Using the glove compartment

The glove compartment is located on the passenger side. The glove compartment can be used to store the Manual, etc. There is also room for a pen and a card holder.



Locking and unlocking the glove box

The glove compartment can be locked when the vehicle is left at a workshop, hotel, etc. The glove compartment can then only be locked/unlocked with the glove compartment key.



Storage compartment for the key.



1
Insert the key into the lock on the glove compartment.

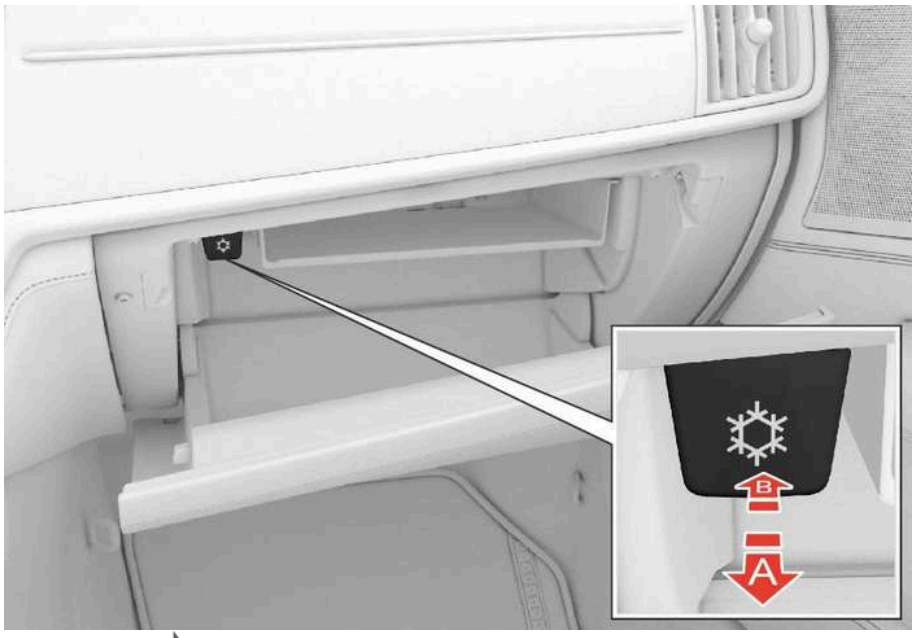
2
Turn the key 90 degrees clockwise.

3
Remove the key from the lock.

To unlock, perform the above steps in reverse.

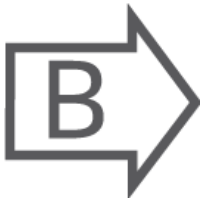
Using the glove box as a cooled area

The glove compartment can be used to cool e.g. drinks or food. Cooling is possible when the climate system is active (i.e. when the ignition is in mode II or when the engine is running).





1. Activate cooling



2. Deactivate cooling

Activate or deactivate cooling by moving the control as far as possible toward the passenger compartment/glove compartment.

Sun visors

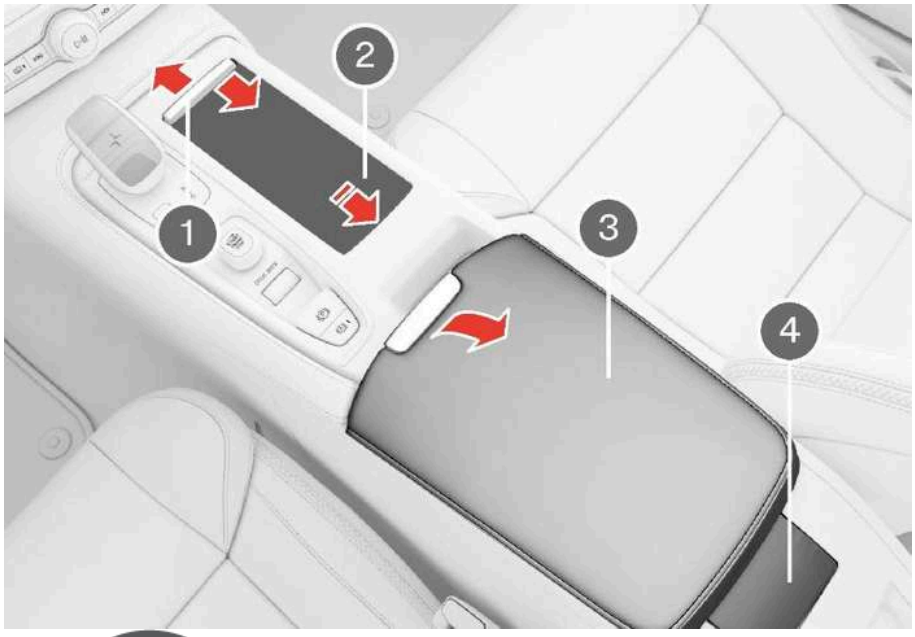
There are sun visors that can be folded down in the ceiling in front of the driver's and front passenger's seats.



There is also a mirror integrated in the passenger-side sun visor.

Tunnel console

The tunnel console is located between the front seats.



1. Storage compartment with cover. The cover can be opened/closed by pressing the handle.
2. Storage compartment with cup holder and 12 V socket.
3. Storage compartment and USB port under the armrest.
4. 12 V socket and storage compartment. The cover can be opened/closed by pressing the handle.

WARNING

Store loose objects, such as a cell phone, camera, remote control for extra equipment, etc., in the glove compartment or another compartment. Otherwise, these could injure people in the vehicle in the event of hard braking or a collision.

IMPORTANT

Keep in mind that glossy surfaces can be easily scratched by e.g. metal objects. Do not place keys, phones or similar items on sensitive surfaces.

NOTE

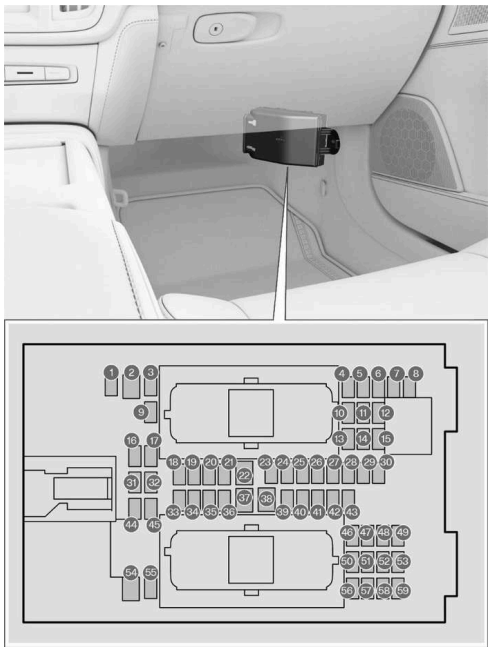
One of the sensors for the alarm is located under the cup holder in the center console. Avoid placing coins, keys and other metal objects in the cup holder as this could trigger the alarm.

NOTE

The USB socket can be used to charge e.g. a cellular phone or tablet or to play media through the vehicle's audio system.

Fuses under the glove compartment

Fuses under the glove compartment provide protection for e.g. electrical outlets, displays and door modules.



Fuse pliers are provided on the inside of the fuse box cover to assist in removing and inserting fuses.

There are also spaces for several extra fuses in the **distribution box in the engine compartment**.

Positions

There is a decal with a diagram of the locations of the fuses on the inside of the cover.

	Function	Ampere	Type
1	–	–	Micro
2	–	–	MCase1
3	–	–	Micro
4	Movement sensor*	5	Micro
5	–	–	Micro

	Function	Ampere	Type
⑥	Instrument panel	5	Micro
⑦	Center console buttons	5	Micro
⑧	Sun sensor	5	Micro
⑨	–	–	Micro
⑩	–	–	Micro
⑪	Steering wheel module	5	Micro
⑫	Module for start knob and parking brake controls	5	Micro
⑬	Heated steering wheel* module	15	Micro
⑭	–	–	Micro
⑮	–	–	Micro
⑯	–	–	Micro
⑰	–	–	Micro
⑱	Climate system control module	10	Micro
⑲	–	–	Micro
⑳	Data link connector OBD-II	10	Micro
㉑	Center display	5	Micro
㉒	Climate system blower module (front)	40	MCase1
㉓	USB HUB	5	Micro
㉔	Instrument lighting; Interior lighting; Rearview mirror auto-dim function; Rain and light sensors; Rear tunnel console keypad, rear seat*; Power front seats; Rear door control panels; Climate system blower module left/right	7.5	Micro
㉕	Control module for driver support functions	5	Micro
㉖	–	–	Micro
㉗	Head-up-display	5	Micro
㉘	Passenger compartment lighting	5	Micro
㉙	–	–	Micro
㉚	Ceiling console display (seat belt reminder/front passenger side airbag indicator)	5	Micro
㉛	–	–	Micro
㉜	–	–	Micro
㉝	Controls in driver's door	20	Micro
㉞	–	–	Micro
㉟	Control module for Internet-connected vehicle; Control module for Polestar Connect	5	Micro

	Function	Ampere	Type
36	Controls in passenger's door	20	Micro
37	Infotainment control module (amplifier)	40	MCase1
38	–	–	MCase1
39	Multi-band antenna module	5	Micro
40	Front seat massage function*	5	Micro
41	–	–	Micro
42	–	–	Micro
43	Fuel pump control module	15	Micro
44	Relay windings for distribution box in engine compartment; Relay windings for transmission oil pump	5	Micro
45	Opening the trunk lid using a foot movement	5	Micro
46	Driver's seat heating	15	Micro
47	Front passenger's seat heating	15	Micro
48	Coolant pump	7.5	Micro
49	–	–	Micro
50	Controls in left-side door	20	Micro
51	–	–	Micro
52	–	–	Micro
53	Sensus control module	10	Micro
54	–	–	MCase1
55	–	–	Micro
56	Controls in right-side door	20	Micro
57	–	–	Micro
58	–	–	Micro
59	Circuit breaker for infotainment	15	Micro

1 This type of fuse should only be replaced by a workshop – contact Polestar Customer Support.

***** Option/accessory.

Maintenance and service

This section contains information about service programs, vehicle status, Download Center, engine compartment, checking and refilling fluids, batteries, fuses, cleaning, washing, changing wiper blades, etc.

Vehicle care

Interior cleaning

Cleaning the center display

Marks, stains, finger smudges etc. on the center display may affect its performance and readability. Clean the screen regularly with a microfiber cloth.



Turn off the center display by pressing and holding the Home button.
Wipe the screen clean with the microfiber cloth provided or use another microfiber cloth of similar quality. Wipe the screen with a clean, dry microfiber cloth using small, circular motions. If necessary, moisten the cloth slightly.
Reactivate the display by pressing the Home button briefly.

IMPORTANT

The microfiber cloth must be free of sand and dirt when cleaning the center display.

IMPORTANT

When cleaning the center display, apply only light pressure to the screen. Pressing too hard could damage the screen.

IMPORTANT

Do not spray liquid or corrosive chemicals directly onto the center display. Do not use window cleaners, cleaning agents, aerosol sprays, solvents, alcohol, ammonia or detergents that contain abrasives.

Never use abrasive cloths, paper towels or tissue paper, as these may scratch the center display.

Cleaning the head-up display

See Cleaning the head-up display.

Cleaning the leather steering wheel

Contact Polestar Customer Support for information on recommended cleaning agents and car care products. Clean regularly and treat stains immediately. It is important to vacuum before using a cleaning agent.
Leather needs to breathe. Never cover the leather steering wheel with a plastic protector. For recommendations on cleaning the leather steering wheel, contact Polestar Customer Support. First, remove dirt, dust, etc. with a damp sponge or cloth.

IMPORTANT

Sharp objects such as rings could damage the leather on the steering wheel.

Treating stains on the steering wheel:

Type 1 (ink, wine, coffee, milk, sweat or blood)
Use a soft cloth or sponge. Wipe the steering wheel using a solution of 5% ammonia. For blood stains, mix approximately 2 dl(1 cup) of water with 25 g (one ounce) of salt and wipe the stain.
Type 2 (grease, oil, sauces or chocolate)
Same procedure as for Type 1 stains.
Finish by wiping the wheel with an absorbent paper or towel.
Type 3 (dry dirt or dust)
Remove the dirt/dust using a soft brush.
Same procedure as for Type 1 stains.

Cleaning the seat belt

Contact Polestar Customer Support for information on recommended cleaning agents and car care products. Clean regularly and treat stains immediately. It is important to vacuum before using a cleaning agent.
Use water and a synthetic laundry detergent. Contact Polestar Customer Support for information about special textile detergents. Make sure the belt is dry before it is retracted.

Cleaning the interior

Only use cleaning agents and car care products recommended by Polestar. Clean regularly and treat stains immediately. It is important to vacuum before using a cleaning agent.

IMPORTANT

- Some colored clothing (for example, dark jeans and suede garments) may stain the upholstery. If this occurs, it is important to clean and treat these parts of the upholstery as soon as possible.
- Never use strong solvents such as washer fluid, gasoline, mineral spirit or concentrated alcohol to clean the interior as this can damage the upholstery as well as other interior materials.
- Never spray cleaning agent directly onto components that have electrical buttons and controls. Wipe instead with a damp cloth with cleaning agent.
- Sharp objects and Velcro can damage the car's textile upholstery.
- Only use cleaning agent on the type of material it is intended for.

Cleaning floor mats and inlay mats

Contacting Polestar Customer Support for information on recommended cleaning agents and car care products. Clean regularly and treat stains immediately. It is important to vacuum before using a cleaning agent.
Remove the inlay mats to clean the floor mats and inlay mats separately. Each inlay mat is secured into place with pins.
Remove the inlay mat by grasping it at each pin and lifting the mat straight upward.
Use a vacuum to remove dust and dirt.

NOTE

Do not swing or strike the inlay mats violently against another object to remove dirt as this could damage the mats.

After vacuuming, a specially designed textile cleaning agent should be used to remove stains on floor mats. Contact Polestar Customer Support for information on recommended cleaning agents for floor mats.
After cleaning, put the inlay mat back into place by pressing it in at each pin.

WARNING

- Never use more than one inlay mat at a time on the driver's floor. If any other type of floor mat is used, remove the original mat from the driver's seat floor before driving. All types of mats must be securely anchored in the attachment points in the floor. Make sure the floor mat does not impede the movement of the brake pedal or accelerator pedal in any way, as this could be a serious safety hazard.
- Polestar's floor mats are specially manufactured for your vehicle. They must be properly secured in the attachment points in the floor to help ensure they cannot slide and become trapped under the pedals.

Cleaning interior plastic, metal and wood surfaces

Contact Polestar Customer Support for information on recommended cleaning agents and car care products. Clean regularly and treat stains immediately.
A lightly dampened microfiber cloth is recommended for cleaning interior details and surfaces. Contact Polestar Customer Support for information on suitable cleaning tools.

Never scrape or rub a stain. Never use strong stain removers.

IMPORTANT

Do not use solvent containing alcohol to clean the instrument panel glass.

IMPORTANT

Keep in mind that glossy surfaces can be easily scratched. Wipe these surfaces with a clean and dry microfiber cloth using small, circular motions. If necessary, moisten the cloth lightly with clean water.

Cleaning leather upholstery

Contact Polestar Customer Support for information on recommended cleaning agents and car care products. Clean regularly and treat stains immediately. It is important to vacuum before using a cleaning agent.
Polestar's leather upholstery is treated to protect its original appearance. Over time, sunlight, grease, dirt, etc. could break down the protective layer. This could result in scratches and cracking.

Leather upholstery is a natural product that changes and acquires a beautiful patina over time. Regular cleaning and treatments are required to preserve the qualities and color of the leather. Contact Polestar Customer Support for recommendations on products for cleaning and treating leather upholstery to maintain the leather's protective coating.

Cleaning the leather upholstery

Apply the leather cleaner to a damp sponge and squeeze it until the cleaner foams.
Move the sponge in circular motions to apply the foam to the stain.
Dampen the stain thoroughly with the sponge. Let the sponge absorb the stain and do not rub.
Dry the stain using a soft towel and let the leather dry completely.

Protecting the leather upholstery

Apply a small amount of leather protector to a cloth and then apply the protector to the leather using light circular movements.
Let it dry for approximately 20 minutes.
Protecting the leather upholstery makes it better able to withstand sunlight's harmful UV rays.

Exterior cleaning

Cleaning wiper blades

The vehicle should be washed as soon as it becomes dirty. The longer the dirt remains, the more difficult it will be to keep the vehicle clean. It could also lead to paint damage. Wash the vehicle in a car wash or garage with an oil separator. Use a car washing detergent.
Asphalt, dust and salt residue on wiper blades, as well as insects, ice etc. on the windshield, shorten the service life of wiper blades.

When cleaning, put the wiper blades in the service position.

NOTE

Wash the wiper blades and windshield regularly with a lukewarm soap solution or vehicle shampoo. Do not use strong solvents.

Paintwork

The paintwork consists of multiple layers. It is an important part of the vehicle's surface protection and therefore needs to be checked regularly.
The most common types of paint damage are minor stone chips, scratches and damage to e.g. the edges of fenders, doors and bumpers. To help prevent further damage to the paintwork, damage should be rectified immediately.

Care and treatment of matte paintwork

To help preserve the matte paintwork, the vehicle should be washed by hand as soon as it becomes dirty. This will make the vehicle easier to clean because the dirt will not adhere as strongly. Wash the vehicle in a car wash or garage with an oil separator. Contact Polestar Customer Support for recommendations on cleaning agents and car care products.

Important instructions for hand washing a vehicle with matte paint

- Hose down the entire vehicle and remove any loose dirt, droppings etc. to reduce the risk of scratches from washing. Do not spray directly onto locks. Be particularly careful when using a high-pressure wash. Hose down the underbody, including the wheel housings and bumpers.
- Wash the vehicle with a microfiber wash mitt, a vehicle shampoo, and plenty of lukewarm water.
- Remove bird droppings from paintwork as soon as possible. It contains chemicals that affect and discolor paintwork very quickly.
  1. Wet the area.
  2. Rinse off.
  3. Wash with vehicle shampoo for matte paint and use a wash mitt.

  Contact Polestar Customer Support for information on removing discoloration.
- Insects, grease stains and fingerprints are most effectively removed using a detergent specially designed for matte paint. Apply the detergent using a microfiber cloth and gentle pressure.
- Dry the vehicle with a clean, soft microfiber cloth. Water stains may appear on the paintwork if water droplets are left to dry in strong sunlight.
- Remember to remove dirt and debris from the drain holes in the doors and sills after washing the vehicle.
- Paint repairs should only be performed by an authorized workshop. Contact Polestar Customer Support for workshop recommendations.
- In areas with heavy industrial emissions, more frequent washing of the vehicle's exterior is recommended.

IMPORTANT

Ensure that doors, windows and hatches are closed during high-pressure washing.

IMPORTANT

Never polish matte paintwork. Polishing causes the paint to become glossy.

IMPORTANT

Do not use paint cleaners, abrasives, polishing products or gloss protection, e.g. wax for high-gloss paint. These products are only designed for high-gloss surfaces. Using these products on matte paint will lead to shiny spots on the paintwork.

IMPORTANT

- Avoid getting resin, sap, grease or oil on the vehicle's paintwork. These can leave residues. Remove immediately with a cleaning agent designed for matte paint.
- Asphalt stains on the paint surface can be removed with a vegetable-based asphalt remover. Contact Polestar Customer Support for product recommendations.

Wipe carefully and do not press too hard on the paint surface.

IMPORTANT

Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight. This could cause the cleaning agent to dry too quickly and form a patchy surface layer on a vehicle with matte paintwork.

IMPORTANT

Do not rub the paintwork when washing and drying the vehicle. This could destroy the matte effect and make the paint permanently glossy.

IMPORTANT

Do not affix decals to painted surfaces. Glue reside could damage the paintwork.

Color codes

Color code

The color code decal is located at the top of the vehicle's left-side B-pillar.



Sample color code: US models.



1. Exterior color code



2. Secondary exterior color code (if applicable)



Sample color code: Canadian models.



1. Exterior color code



2. Secondary exterior color code (if applicable)

It is important to use the right color.

Touching up minor paint damage

The paintwork is an important part of the vehicle's surface protection and therefore needs to be checked regularly. The most common types of paint damage are minor stone chips, scratches and damage to e.g. the edges of fenders, doors and bumpers.
To help prevent further damage to the paintwork, damage should be rectified immediately.

IMPORTANT

Paint damage on vehicles with matte paint should be repaired by a workshop. Contact Polestar Customer Support for information on workshops.

NOTE

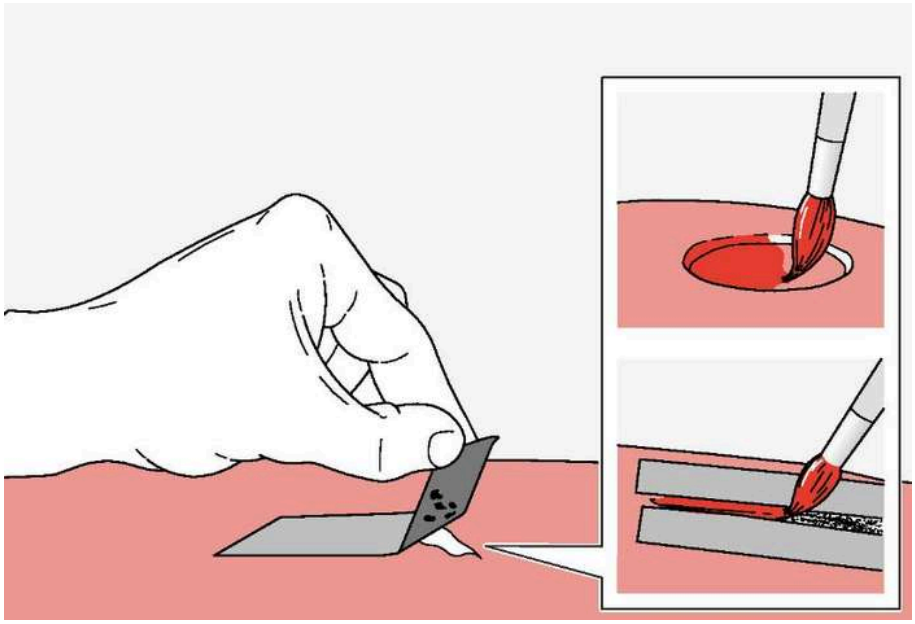
Make sure the surface is clean and dry before performing any touch-ups to the paint. The surface temperature should be at least 15 °C (59 °F).

Materials that might be needed

- Primer – special adhesive primer is available in a spray can for e.g. plastic-covered bumpers.
- Base coat and clear coat – available in spray cans or as a touch-up pen/stick[1].
- Masking tape.
- Fine-grain sandpaper.

Applying touch-up paint to a damaged surface

If the damage has not reached all the way down to the bare carbon fiber, then touch-up paint can be applied immediately after the surface has been cleaned.



Place a strip of masking tape over the damaged surface. Pull the tape off so that any loose flakes of paint adhere to it.

If the damage goes down to the bare carbon fiber, you may need to use primer first. If the paint damage is on a plastic surface, an adhesive primer should be used for better results. Spray the primer into the lid of the spray can and brush on thinly.

Light sanding with a very fine-grained sandpaper or similar may be required before painting (e.g. if there are uneven edges). Clean the area carefully and let it dry.
Thoroughly mix the primer and apply it with a small brush, toothpick or similar. When the primer is dry, apply one or more coats of paint and then a clear coat, letting the paint dry between each application.
If there is a longer scratch, follow the same procedure as above, but first mask off the surrounding area to protect the undamaged paint.

Contact Polestar Customer Support for information about touch-up pens/sticks and spray paint for touching up paint damage.

> **NOTE**
> If the stone chip has not gone down to the carbon fiber surface and an undamaged coat of paint remains, apply base coat and clear coat immediately after cleaning the surface.

1 Follow the instructions on the packaging for the touch-up pen/stick carefully.

Cleaning the exterior

The vehicle should be washed as soon as it becomes dirty. This makes the vehicle easier to clean because dirt does not attach as strongly. It also reduces the risk of scratches and keeps the vehicle looking new. Wash the vehicle in a car wash or garage with an oil separator and use car washing detergent.

Corrosion protection

For the metal parts of the body, the corrosion protection consists of metal protective coatings on the sheet metal, a high-quality painting process and abrasion protection. In the chassis, exposed components of the wheel suspension are made of corrosion-resistant cast aluminum.

Inspection and maintenance

The vehicle's corrosion protection does not normally require maintenance. The use of strong alkaline or acidic cleaning fluids should be avoided on shiny body components.

Automatic car washes

The vehicle should be washed as soon as it becomes dirty. The longer the dirt remains, the more difficult it will be to keep the vehicle clean. It could also lead to paint damage.
Washing your vehicle in an automatic car wash is a fast and easy way to keep your vehicle clean, but it does not reach all areas of the vehicle. Polestar recommends washing your vehicle by hand or supplementing automatic car washes with a hand wash.

> **NOTE**
> Polestar recommends not washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash during the first few months; the paintwork on new vehicles takes some time to fully harden.

> **IMPORTANT**
> Information on how to help prevent damage to vehicles with matte paint is provided in a separate section.

> **IMPORTANT**
> Before driving the vehicle into a car wash, deactivate the Automatic Braking when Stationary and Automatic Parking Brake Application functions. If the functions are not deactivated, the brake system will seize when the vehicle is stationary and the vehicle will not be able to roll.

IMPORTANT

For automatic car washes in which the vehicle is pulled forward on rolling wheels:

1. Before washing the vehicle, make sure that the automatic rain sensor is deactivated. If it is not deactivated and inadvertently starts, the wiper arms could be damaged.
2. To help prevent damage from the automatic car wash machinery, make sure that the door mirrors are folded in, antennas retracted or removed, and any auxiliary lights secured.
3. Turn off the "Automatic Braking when Stationary" function using the Ⓐ button in the tunnel console.
4. Turn off the "Automatic Parking Brake Application" function in the center display's Top view.
5. Drive into the automatic car wash.
6. Put the gear selector in position N.
7. Turn off the engine by turning the start knob in the tunnel console clockwise. Hold the knob in position for at least 2 seconds.

The vehicle is now ready for the automatic car wash.

IMPORTANT

The system will automatically change to P mode if the above steps are not followed. In P mode, the wheels are locked, which they should not be when the vehicle is being washed in a car wash.

NOTE

Note that the keyless locking and unlocking function could cause the vehicle to lock/unlock when it is being washed if the key is within range.

Cleaning exterior plastic, rubber and trim components

The vehicle should be washed as soon as it becomes dirty. The longer the dirt remains, the more difficult it will be to keep the vehicle clean. It could also lead to paint damage. Wash the vehicle in a car wash or garage with an oil separator and use car washing detergent.
A special cleaning agent is recommended for the cleaning and care of colored plastic parts, rubber and trim components, e.g. glossy trim. Contact Polestar Customer Support for more information. Follow the usage instructions for the cleaning agent carefully.

IMPORTANT

Avoid washing the vehicle with cleaner with a pH value below 3.5 or above 11.5. This could cause discoloration of anodized aluminum components such as around the side windows.

Never use metal polishing agent on anodized aluminum components. This could cause discoloration and destroy the surface treatment.



Components that should be washed with a cleaning product with a pH value between 3.5 and 11.5.

IMPORTANT

Avoid waxing and polishing plastic and rubber.

If using degreaser on plastic and rubber, only rub (if necessary) with slight pressure. Use a soft sponge.

Polishing glossy trim moldings can wear away or damage the glossy surface layer.

Polish containing abrasives must not be used.

Cleaning rims

The vehicle should be washed as soon as it becomes dirty. The longer the dirt remains, the more difficult it will be to keep the vehicle clean. It could also lead to paint damage. Wash the vehicle in a car wash or garage with an oil separator and use car washing detergent.
Strong rim cleaning agents could damage the surface and stain the chromed aluminum rims and other details on the tires. To avoid damage, only use rim cleaning agents or car washing detergent recommended by Polestar.

IMPORTANT

To prevent discoloration, always use car washing detergent to clean the gold valve caps*.

* Option/accessory.

Hand washing

The vehicle should be washed as soon as it becomes dirty. This makes the vehicle easier to clean because dirt does not attach as strongly. It also reduces the risk of scratches and keeps the vehicle looking new. Wash the vehicle in a car wash or garage with an oil separator and use car washing detergent.

Keep the following points in mind when hand-washing the vehicle

IMPORTANT

Information on how to help prevent damage to vehicles with matte paint is provided in a separate section.

- Avoid washing the vehicle in direct sunlight. This could cause the detergent or wax to dry out and become abrasive.
- Remove bird droppings from paintwork as soon as possible. It contains chemicals that affect and discolor paintwork very quickly. Use e.g. soft paper or a sponge soaked in lots of water. Contact Polestar Customer Support for information on removing discoloration.
- Hose down the underbody, including the wheel housings and bumper.
- Hose down the entire vehicle and remove any loose dirt, droppings etc. to reduce the risk of scratches from washing. Do not spray directly onto locks.
- If necessary, use cold degreaser on heavily soiled surfaces. Note that in such cases the surfaces must not be hot from the sun.
- Wash using a sponge, car washing detergent and plenty of lukewarm water.
- Clean the wiper blades with lukewarm soap solution or car washing detergent.
- Dry the vehicle using a clean, soft chamois or a squeegee. Try not to let drops of water dry in strong sunlight. This could cause water drying stains that may need to be polished out.
- In areas with heavy industrial emissions, more frequent washing of the vehicle's exterior is recommended.
- Tar spots from asphalt may remain even after washing. Use a tar remover to remove these spots after washing the vehicle.

WARNING

Always entrust engine washing to a workshop. If the engine is hot, there is a risk of fire.

IMPORTANT

Dirty headlights do not work as well. Clean them regularly, e.g. when refueling.

Do not use corrosive cleaners. Use water and a non-abrasive sponge.

NOTE

Exterior lighting such as headlights and taillights may develop temporary condensation on the inside of the lens. This is normal. All exterior lighting is designed to resist this. Condensation is normally vented out of the lamp housing once the light has been lit for some period of time.

IMPORTANT

- Never use abrasive polishing agents on the panoramic roof.
- Never use wax on the rubber seals around the panoramic roof.

IMPORTANT

Remember to remove dirt from the drain holes in the doors and sills after washing the vehicle.

High-pressure washing

The vehicle should be washed as soon as it becomes dirty. The longer the dirt remains, the more difficult it will be to keep the vehicle clean. It could also lead to paint damage. Wash the vehicle in a car wash or garage with an oil separator. Use a car washing detergent.

IMPORTANT

Be particularly careful when using a high-pressure wash on vehicles with matte paint.

IMPORTANT

To preserve the matte paint, high-pressure wash should only be used with caution to remove loose particles before hand-washing the vehicle.

If washing the vehicle with a high-pressure wash, use sweeping movements and keep the nozzle at least 30 cm (13 in.) from the vehicle. Do not spray directly onto locks.

Polishing and waxing

Polish and wax the vehicle when the paint has lost its shine or to provide extra protection. The vehicle does not need to be polished until it is at least a year old. However, it can be waxed during the first year. Do not polish or wax the vehicle in direct sunlight. The surface of the vehicle should not be warmer than 45 °C (113 °F).

IMPORTANT

Never polish or wax a vehicle with matte paint. This could destroy the paint's matte effect and make the paint permanently glossy where it has been polished or waxed.

- Wash and dry the vehicle very carefully before polishing or waxing. Remove asphalt and tar stains with asphalt remover or paint thinner. More stubborn stains can be removed with a grinding paste designed for vehicle paint.
- Use polish first and then liquid or paste wax. Follow the instructions on the package carefully. Many products contain both polish and wax.
- A wide range of polymer-based waxes can be purchased today. These waxes are easy to use and produce a long-lasting, high-gloss finish that protects the bodywork against oxidation, road dirt and fading.

IMPORTANT

Avoid waxing and polishing plastic and rubber.

If using degreaser on plastic and rubber, only rub (if necessary) with slight pressure. Use a soft sponge.

Polishing glossy trim moldings can wear away or damage the glossy surface layer.

Polish containing abrasives must not be used.

IMPORTANT

Only use paintwork treatments recommended by Polestar. Contact Polestar Customer Support for information. Other treatments, such as preservation, sealing, protection, luster sealing or similar, could damage the paintwork. Paintwork damage caused by such treatments are not covered by Polestar's warranty.

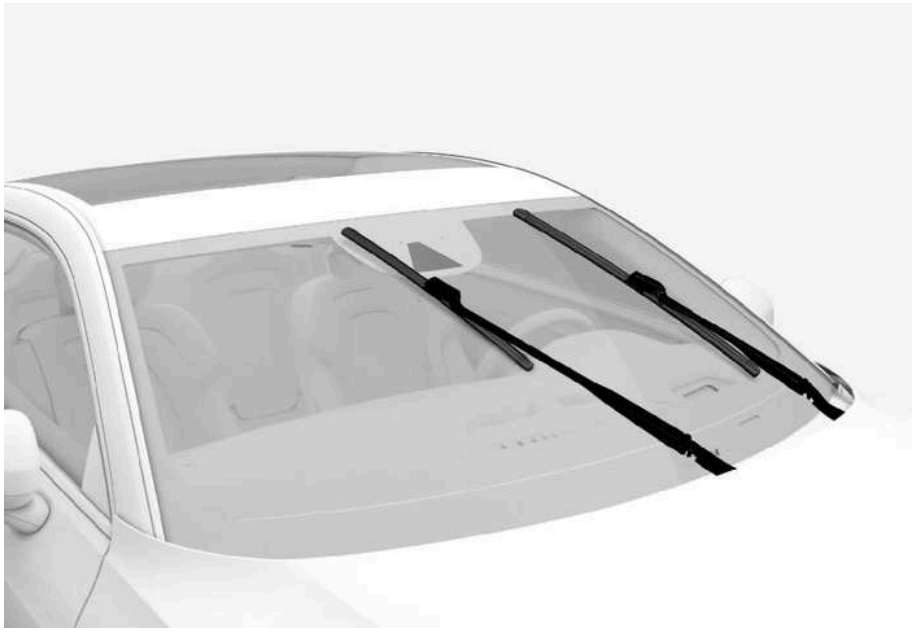
Wiper blades and washer fluid

Wiper blades and washer fluid

See Wiper blades and washer fluid.

Putting the wiper blades in service position

The windshield wiper blades must be in the service (vertical) position for certain operations, e.g. replacing the blades.



Windshield wipers in the service position.

The windshield wipers must be in the service position when replacing, washing or lifting the blades (e.g. to scrape ice or snow from the windshield).

> **IMPORTANT**
> Before placing the wipers in service position, ensure that they have not frozen to the windshield.

Activating/deactivating service position

The service position can be activated/deactivated when the vehicle is stationary and the windshield wipers are switched off. Service position is activated/deactivated via Function view in the center display:



Tap the Wiper Service Position button. The indicator light in the button will illuminate when service position is activated. The wipers will move to the service position when activated. To deactivate the service position, tap Wiper Service Position once. The indicator light in the button will go out when service position is deactivated.

The wiper blades will also move out of the service position if:

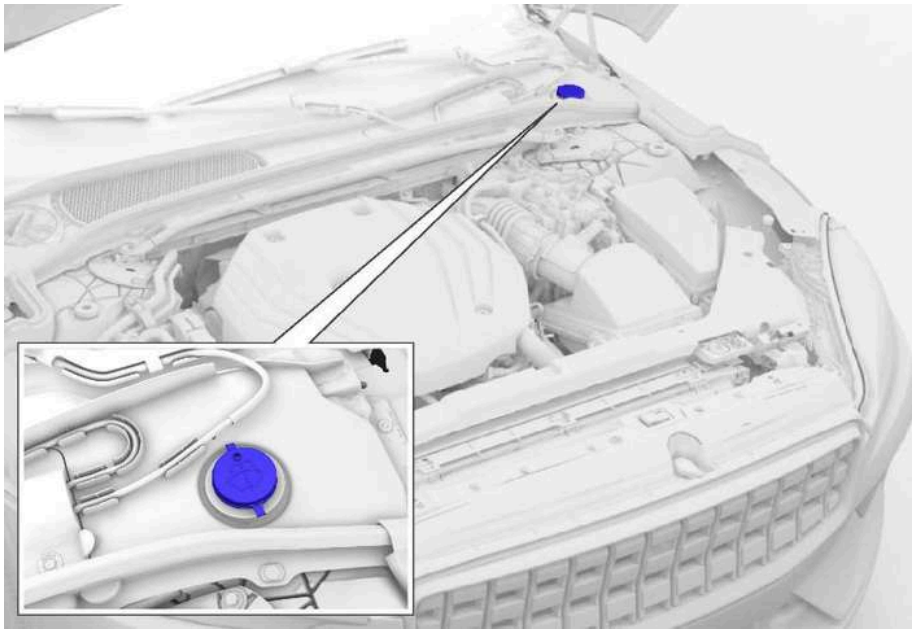
- The windshield wipers are turned on.
- The windshield washers are turned on.
- The rain sensor is activated.
- The vehicle begins moving.

IMPORTANT

If the wiper arms in service position are raised from the windshield, they must be folded back against the windscreen before activating wiping, washing or rain sensor as well as before departure. This is to prevent scratching the paint on the hood.

Filling washer fluid

Washer fluid is used to help keep the headlights and windshield clean. Washer fluid containing anti-freeze should be used in very cold weather (below-freezing temperatures).



Fill washer fluid into the reservoir with the blue cover. The reservoir is used for both the windshield washer and the headlight washer.

NOTE

When there is approximately 1 liter (1 qt) of washer fluid remaining, the message Washer fluid Level low, refill and the symbol will be displayed in the instrument panel.

Recommended grade: Washer fluid recommended by Polestar, with frost protection during cold weather and temperatures below the freezing point.

IMPORTANT

Use washer fluid with the recommended pH value between 6 and 8, diluted as recommended, e.g. in a 1:1 solution with pH-neutral water.

IMPORTANT

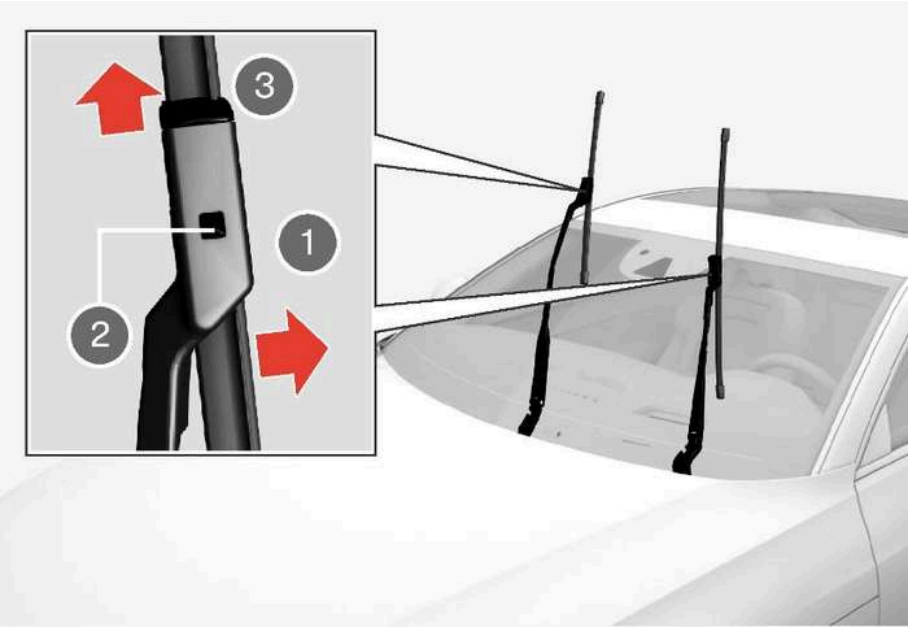
Use washer fluid with anti-freeze when temperatures are below the freezing point to help keep the pump, reservoir and hoses from freezing.

Volume:

The washer fluid reservoir has a volume of 5 liters (5.3 qts).

Replacing windshield wiper blades

The wiper blades help remove water from the windshield. Along with the washer fluid, they are designed to clean the glass and help improve visibility while driving. The wiper blades can be replaced.



Raise the wiper arms to the service position. Service position is activated/deactivated via the function view in the center display when the car is stationary and the windshield wipers are not on.

(1)

Put the wiper blade in removal position by folding it out from the wiper arm until it clicks.

(2)

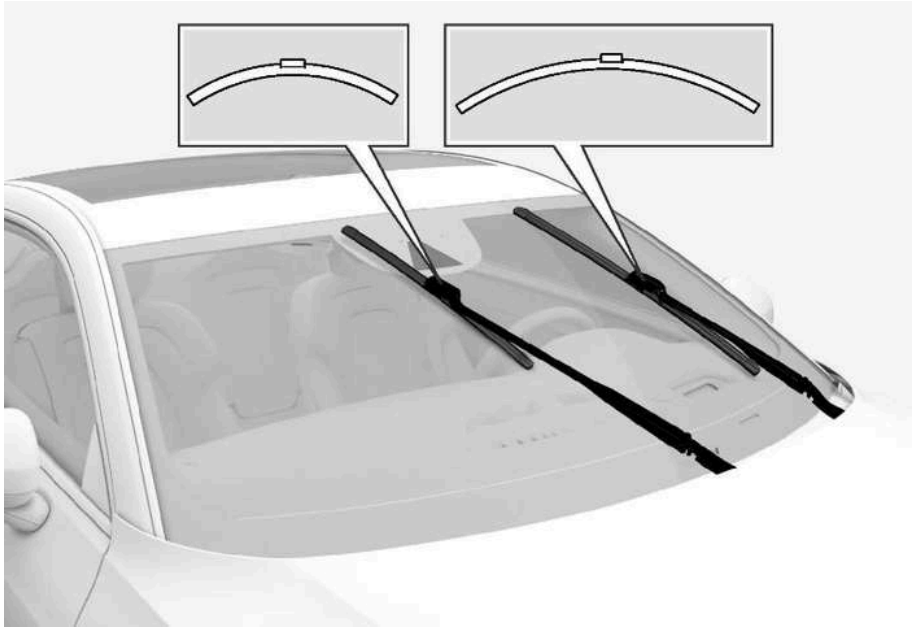
Press and hold the lock button on the wiper blade attachment.

(3)

While holding the button down, pull the blade straight out, parallel with the wiper arm.

Slide in the new wiper blade until it clicks into place.
Fold the blade back toward the arm until it clicks into place. The blade is no longer in its removal position and can once again be moved.
Check to make sure the wiper blade is securely in place.
Press the wiper blade back against the windshield.

Wiper blades come in varying lengths



NOTE

When changing wiper blades, make sure that the blades are of different lengths. The blade on the driver's side is longer than the one on the passenger side.

Replacing bulbs

Replacing bulbs

This vehicle is equipped with only LED[1] lights, which means it does not have any replaceable bulbs. Contact Polestar Customer Support if you experience any problems with the lighting.

If there is a problem with an LED[1] light, the entire lamp unit will normally need to be replaced.

NOTE

Exterior lighting such as headlights and taillights may develop temporary condensation on the inside of the lens. This is normal. All exterior lighting is designed to resist this. Condensation is normally vented out of the lamp housing once the light has been lit for some period of time.

1 LED (Light Emitting Diode)

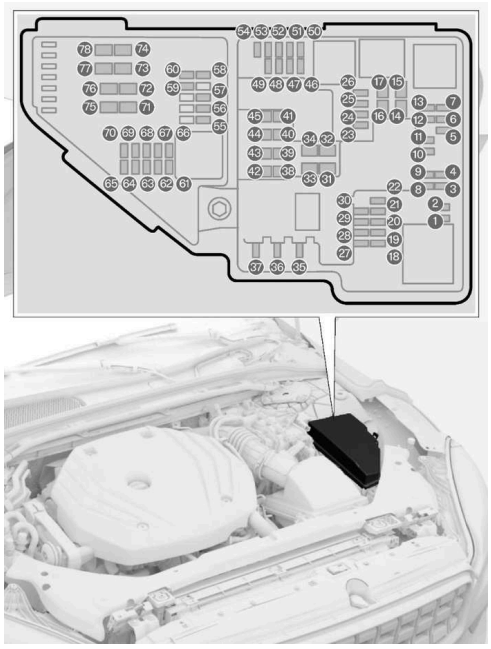
Engine compartment

Filling washer fluid

See Filling washer fluid.

Fuses in the engine compartment

The fuses in the engine compartment help protect electrical components such as engine and brake functions.



Fuse pliers are provided on the inside of the fuse box cover to assist in removing and inserting fuses.

There are also spaces for several extra fuses in the fusebox.

Positions

There is a decal with a diagram of the locations of the fuses on the inside of the cover.

	Function	Ampere	Type
1	–	–	Micro
2	–	–	Micro
3	–	–	Micro
4	Control module for actuator for engaging/changing gears, automatic transmission	5	Micro
5	High-voltage coolant heater control module High-voltage contactor boxes, right and left	10	Micro
6	Control module for A/C; heat exchanger cut-off valve; cut-off valve for coolant through the climate system	5	Micro
7	Hybrid battery control module; high-voltage converter for combined high-voltage generator/front starter motor with 500 V–12 V voltage converter Control module for rear axle electric motors	10	Micro
8	–	–	Micro
9	Converter for controlling feed to rear axle electric motors	10	Micro
10	Hybrid battery control module; high-voltage converter for combined high-voltage generator/front starter motor with 500 V–12 V voltage converter	10	Micro

	Function	Ampere	Type
⑪	Charge module	5	Micro
⑫	Cut-off valve for hybrid battery coolant; high-voltage battery rear	7.5	Micro
⑬	Coolant pump for electric drive system	20	Micro
⑭	Hybrid component cooling fan	25	MCase1
⑮	Coolant pump for high-voltage battery	25	MCase1
⑯	–	–	MCase1
⑰	–	–	MCase1
⑱	Calculation module	5	Micro
⑲	–	–	Micro
⑳	High-Voltage Battery	5	Micro
㉑	–	–	Micro
㉒	–	–	Micro
㉓	–	–	Micro
㉔	12 V outlet in tunnel console, front	15	Micro
㉕	12 V outlet in tunnel console between rear seats 12 V outlet in tunnel console, between rear seats; USB ports in tunnel console between rear seats	15	Micro
㉖	–	–	Micro
㉗	–	–	Micro
㉘	Left-side headlight	15	Micro
㉙	Right-side headlight	15	Micro
㉚	–	–	Micro
㉛	–	–	MCase1
㉜	–	–	MCase1
㉝	Headlight washers	25	MCase1
㉞	Windshield washer	25	MCase1
㉟	–	–	Micro
㊱	Horn	20	Micro
㊲	Alarm siren	5	Micro
㊳	Brake system control module (valves, parking brake)	40	MCase1
㊴	Wipers	30	MCase1
㊵	High-voltage contactor boxes, right and left	25	MCase1
㊶	–	–	MCase1

	Function	Ampere	Type
42	Parking heater*	20	MCase1
43	–	–	MCase1
44	–	–	MCase1
45	–	–	MCase1
46	Fed when ignition is on: Engine control module; transmission components, electrical power steering, central electrical module	5	Micro
47	Exterior vehicle sound (certain markets)	5	Micro
48	Right-side headlight	15	Micro
49	–	–	Micro
50	–	–	Micro
51	–	–	Micro
52	Airbags; Passenger weight sensor	5	Micro
53	Left-side headlight	15	Micro
54	Accelerator pedal sensor	5	Micro
55	Transmission control module; gear selector control module	15	Micro
56	Engine control module	5	Micro
57	–	–	Micro
58	–	–	Micro
59	–	–	Micro
60	–	–	Micro
61	Engine control module; actuator; throttle unit; turbo-charger valve	20	Micro
62	Solenoids; valve; engine cooling system thermostat	10	Micro
63	Vacuum regulator; Electric bypass valve: Ventilation valve	7.5	Micro
64	Spoiler damper control module; Cooler damper control module	5	Micro
65	–	–	Micro
66	Heated oxygen sensor front and rear	15	Micro
67	Oil pump solenoid; A/C magnetic coupling; heated oxygen sensor front, center and rear	15	Micro
68	–	–	Micro
69	Engine control module	20	Micro
70	Ignition coils; spark plugs	15	Micro
71	–	–	MCase1
72	–	–	MCase1
73	Transmission oil pump control module	30	MCase1

	Function	Ampere	Type
74	–	–	MCase1
75	Transmission actuator	25	MCase1
76	–	–	MCase1
77	–	–	MCase1
78	–	–	MCase1

1 This type of fuse should only be replaced by a workshop – contact Polestar Customer Support.

***** Option/accessory.

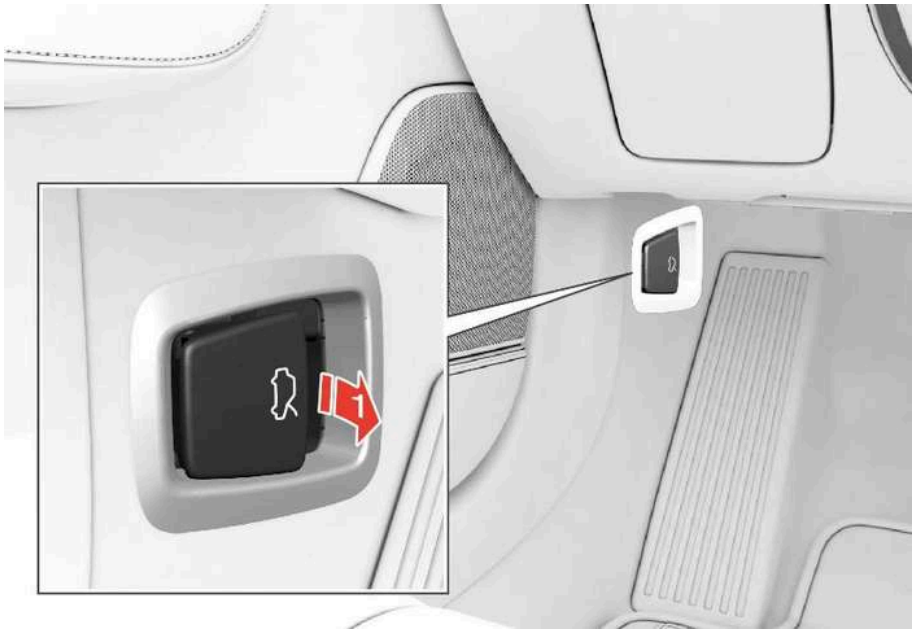
Brake fluid specifications

See Brake fluid specifications.

Opening and closing the hood

To open the hood, pull the lever in the passenger compartment and then turn the handle under the hood.

Opening the hood



1	Pull the handle to the left of the brake pedal to release the hood from its fully closed position.



2	Turn the handle under the front edge of the hood counterclockwise to release the catch and lift the hood.

Warning - hood not closed



When the hood is released, a warning symbol and graphic will be displayed in the instrument panel and an audible signal will sound. If the vehicle begins to roll, the audible signal will be repeated several times.

NOTE

Contact Polestar Customer Support if the warning symbol is illuminated or the warning signal sounds even if the hood is properly closed.

Closing the hood

Press down the hood until it begins to close under its own weight.

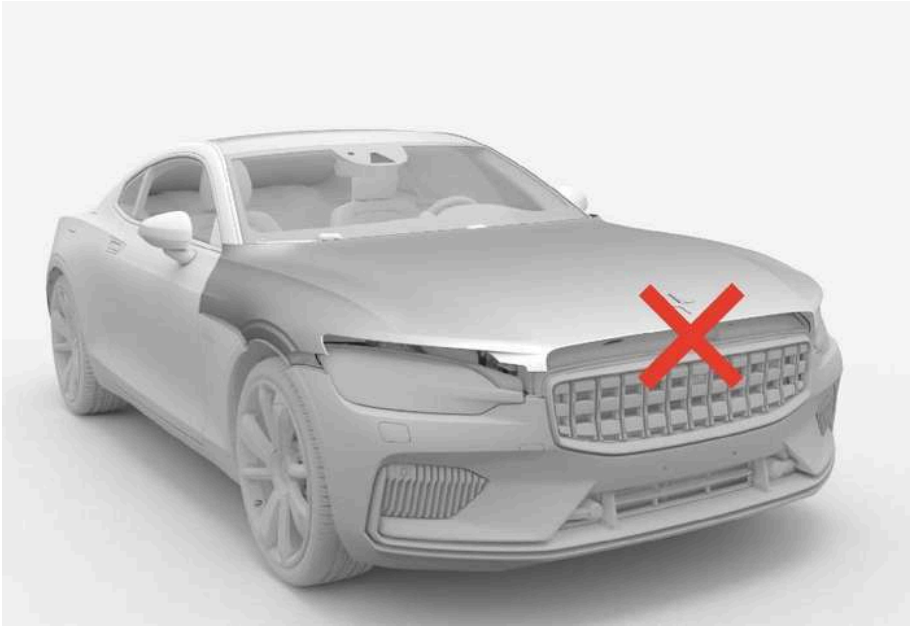
When the hood reaches the catch at the handle in the front edge of the vehicle, press down on the hood to close it completely.

WARNING

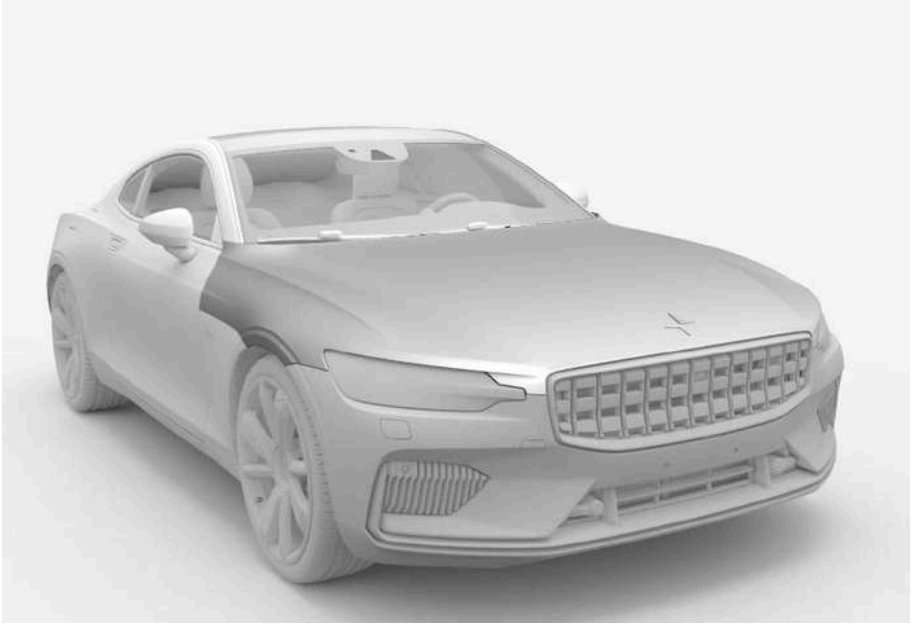
Risk of injury! When closing, make sure that the hood is completely unobstructed and that no one can be injured.

WARNING

Make sure the hood locks securely after closing. It must audibly lock on both sides.

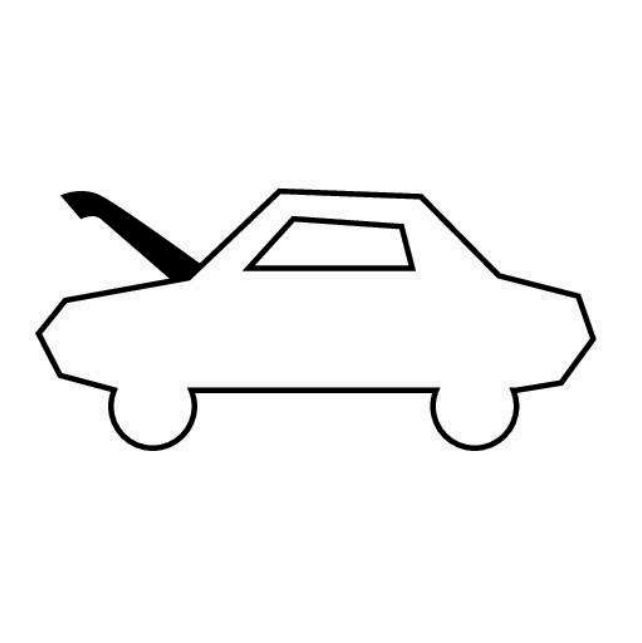


Hood not completely closed.



Hood completely closed.

WARNING



Never drive with the hood open!

If this symbol appears, or anything else indicates that the hood is not completely closed while driving, stop immediately and close it properly.

Engine compartment overview

This overview shows some service-related components.
Some of the components included in the vehicle's electric drive system are located in the engine compartment.
Exercise caution when accessing the engine compartment and only touch what is required for normal maintenance.

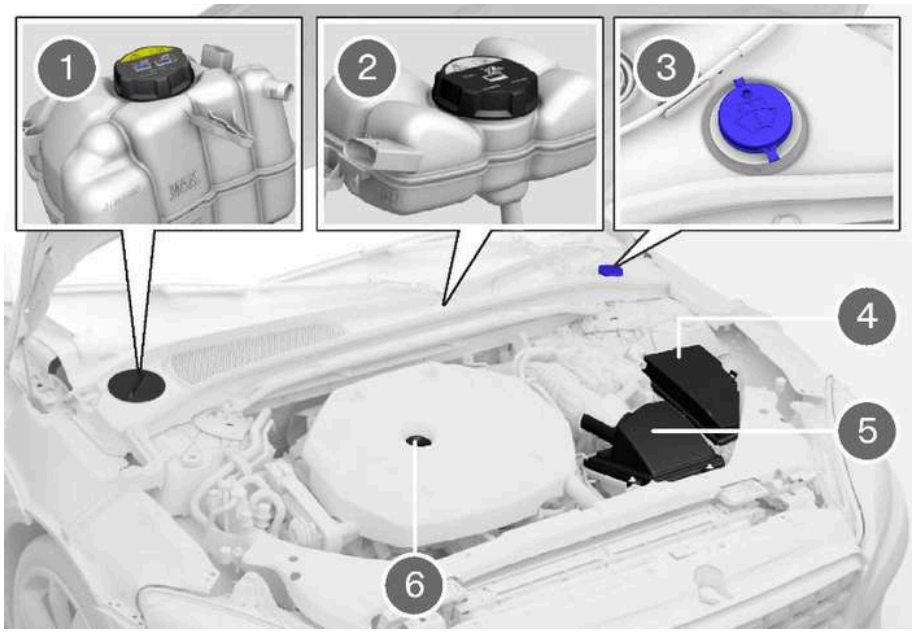
WARNING

Orange wiring may only be handled by qualified personnel.

WARNING

A number of electrical components in Twin Engine Plug-in Hybrid vehicles use high-voltage current and can be extremely dangerous if handled incorrectly.

- Do not touch anything that is not clearly described in the Manual.
- Be careful when checking/filling fluids in the engine compartment.



The layout of the engine compartment may vary depending on engine variant.

1. Coolant expansion tank
2. Brake fluid reservoir (located on the driver's side)
3. Washer fluid filler pipe
4. Fusebox
5. Air filter



6. Engine oil filler pipe



Location of engine compartment warning decal. The layout of the engine compartment may vary depending on model and engine variant.

NOTE

The decals shown in the Manual do not claim to be exact reproductions of those found in the vehicle. The purpose is to show approximately how they look and about where they are located on the vehicle. The information that applies for your vehicle in particular is found on the decal on the vehicle.

WARNING

Bear in mind that the cooling fan (located at the front of the engine compartment behind the radiator) may start or continue running automatically up to about 6 minutes after the engine is turned off.

If engine washing is required, contact Polestar Customer Support. If the engine is hot, there is a risk of fire.

WARNING

The ignition system works with extremely high and dangerous voltages. The vehicle electrical system should always be in ignition mode 0 when work in being performed in the engine compartment.

Do not touch any spark plugs or ignition coils when the vehicle electrical system is in ignition mode II or when the engine is warm.

Refilling coolant

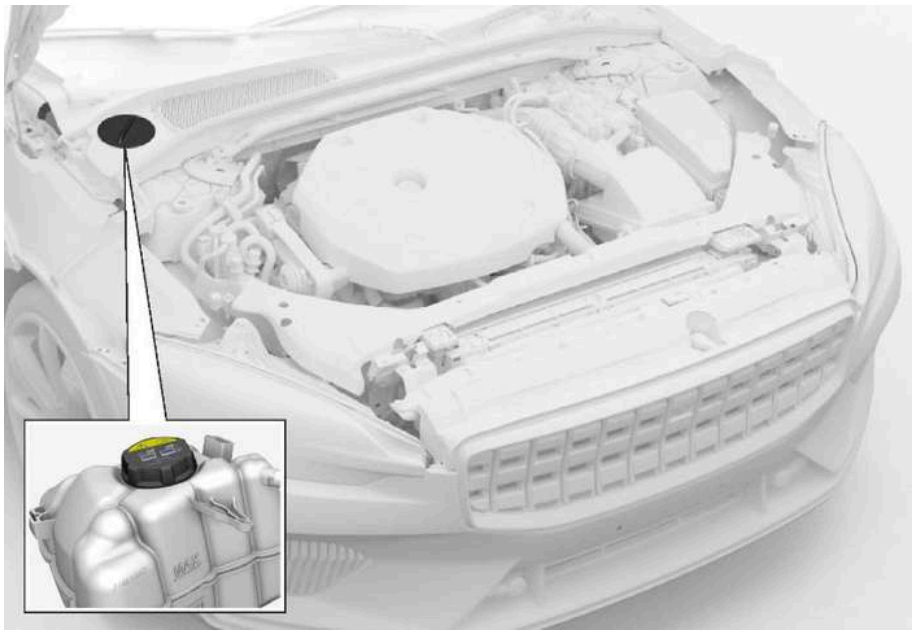
Coolant helps keep the combustion engine at the right operating temperature. The heat transferred from the engine to the coolant can be used to warm the passenger compartment.

When refilling coolant, follow the instructions on the package. Never fill the cooling system with only water. The risk of freezing is increased with too low or too high amounts of coolant.

If there is coolant under the vehicle, smoke from the cooling system, or if more than 2 liters (about 2 quarts) of coolant has been added to the system, there could be something wrong with the cooling system and starting the vehicle could damage the engine. Call a tow truck and do not attempt to start the engine.

WARNING

The coolant may be very hot. Never unscrew the cap when the coolant is hot. If coolant must be filled, unscrew the expansion tank cap slowly to relieve overpressure.



Location of coolant expansion tank



1

Unscrew the cover in the plastic covering.



2

Unscrew the expansion tank cap and fill coolant as needed. The level should not exceed the yellow MAX mark inside the expansion tank.

Put the components back in place in the reverse order.

IMPORTANT

- Do not ingest the contents. May cause damage to organs (kidneys).
- Use premixed coolant according to Polestar's recommendations. If concentrated coolant is used, make sure that the coolant mixture is 50% coolant and 50% water of acceptable quality.
- Do not mix different types of coolant.
- To help ensure sufficient corrosion protection in the system, only use new coolant when replacing larger components in the cooling system.
- Never run the engine unless the cooling system is properly filled. An improperly filled cooling system could lead to high temperatures and cracks in the cylinder heads.
- High levels of chlorine, chlorides and other salts may cause corrosion in the cooling system.

Coolant specifications

Recommended grade: Polestar-approved premixed coolant. If concentrated coolant is used, mix with 50% water of acceptable quality (i.e. not salt water, etc.). Contact Polestar Customer Support if you are unsure.

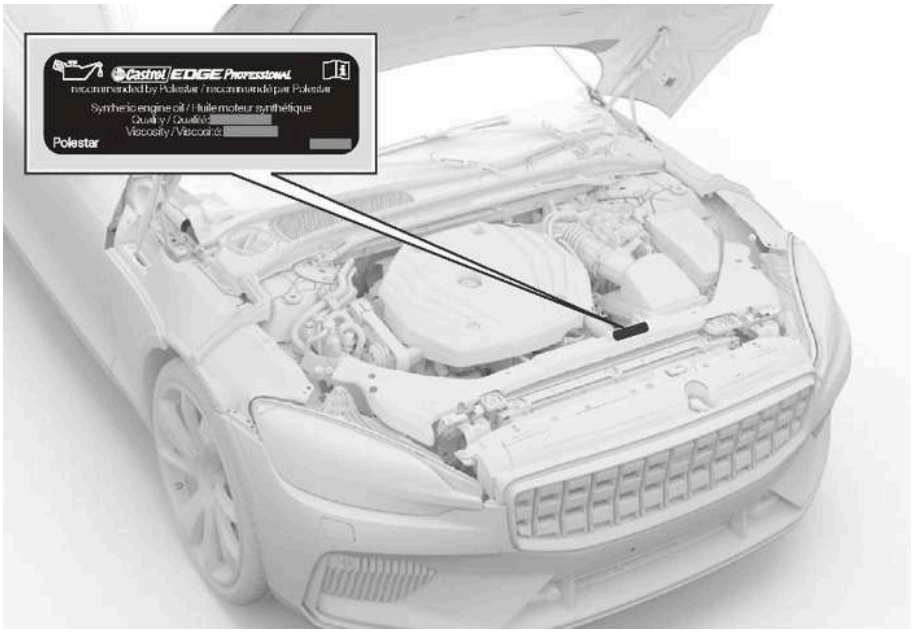
To avoid deterioration of the cooling system, engine trouble, etc., only approved Polestar coolant should be used.

WARNING

Coolant is hazardous if ingested and could cause damage to organs (kidneys). The product contains ethylene glycol, inhibitor, emetic, water, etc.

Engine oil

For the recommended service intervals and warranties to be applied, an approved engine oil must be used.



Polestar recommends:

Castrol™ EDGE™ PROFESSIONAL

NOTE

The decals shown in the Manual do not claim to be exact reproductions of those found in the vehicle. The purpose is to show approximately how they look and about where they are located on the vehicle. The information that applies for your vehicle in particular is found on the decal on the vehicle.

IMPORTANT

- If the engine oil is not checked regularly and the level becomes too low, this could cause serious engine damage.
- For the recommended service intervals to apply, an approved engine oil must be used. Only use the prescribed oil grade to top off or change the oil. Otherwise, there is a risk of the vehicle's service life, startability, fuel consumption and environmental impact being affected.
- Failure to use engine oil of the prescribed grade and viscosity could cause damage to engine-related components. Polestar disclaims warranty liability for such type of damage.

To meet the engine's service schedule requirements, all engines are filled at the factory with a specially designed synthetic engine oil. The oil has been chosen with great care, taking into account useful life, start performance, fuel consumption and environmental impact.

Change the engine oil and oil filter according to the schedule specified in the Status and Warranty booklet. Oils of a higher grade than that specified may be used. If the vehicle is driven in adverse conditions, Polestar recommends using an oil with a higher grade than that specified.

Polestar recommends contacting Polestar Customer Support for oil changes.

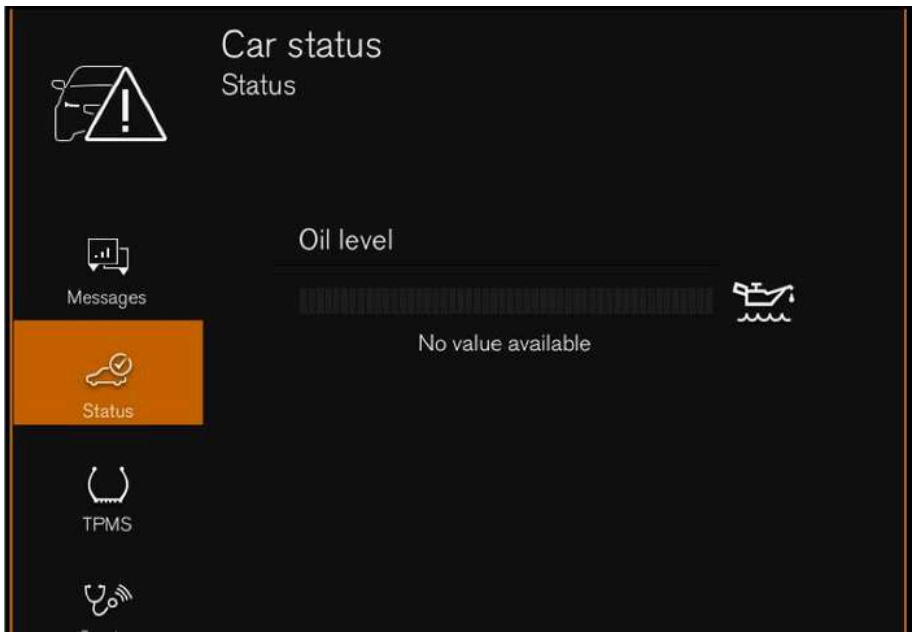
Symbols for low oil level

Polestar uses different systems to warn if the oil level is too low/high or the oil pressure is low. For oil pressure sensors, a warning symbol is displayed in the instrument panel when oil pressure is low . For oil level sensors, the warning symbol in the instrument panel and display messages are used to alert the driver. Contact Polestar Customer Support for more information.

Checking and filling engine oil

The oil level is detected using an electronic oil level sensor and should be checked regularly.

Viewing oil level in the center display



Oil level graphic in the center display

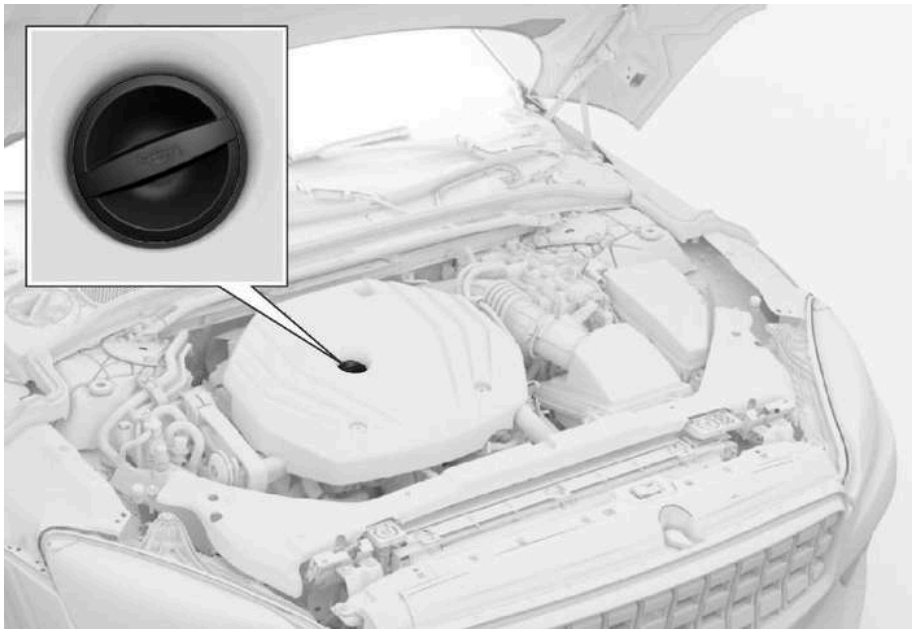
The oil level can be viewed using the electronic oil level gauge in the center display once the vehicle has been started.

Open the Car Status app from App view in the center display.
Tap Status to display the oil level.

> **NOTE**
> The system cannot directly detect changes when the oil is filled or drained. The vehicle must have been driven approximately 30 km (20 miles) and have been stationary 5 minutes on a level surface and with the engine off before the correct oil level will be displayed.

> **NOTE**
> If the conditions for measuring oil level are not properly fulfilled (time after engine shutdown, vehicle inclination, ambient temperature, etc.) the message No value available will be shown in the center display. This does **not** mean that anything is wrong in the vehicle systems.

Filling engine oil

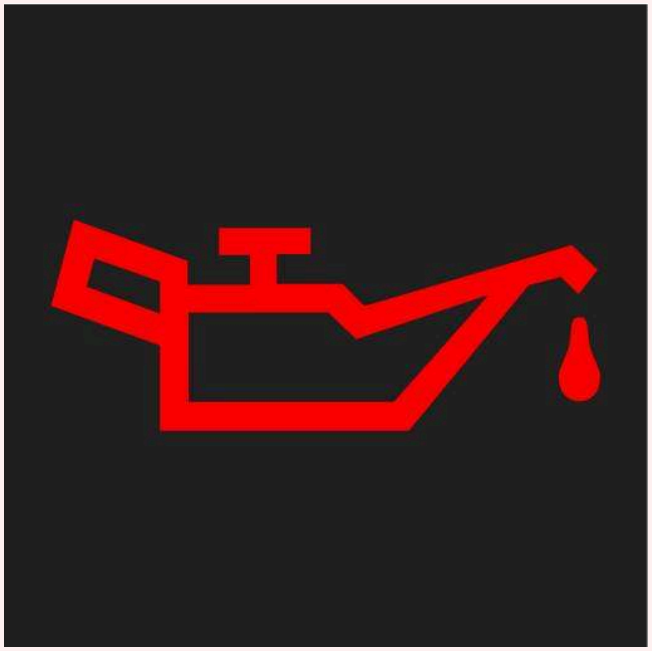


Filler pipe1

It may be necessary to top up engine oil between regularly scheduled services.

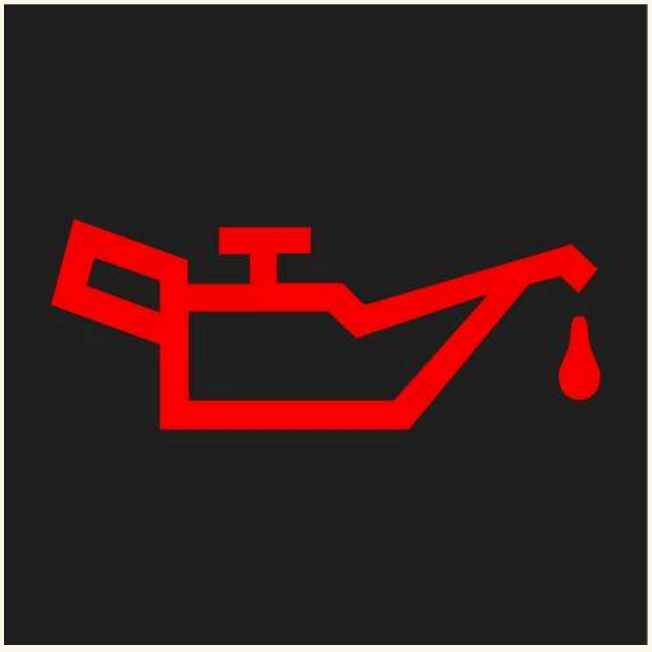
No action is necessary with regard to engine oil level until a message appears in the instrument panel.

WARNING



If this symbol is shown along with the message Engine oil levelService required, contact Polestar Customer Support. The oil level may be too high.

IMPORTANT



If this symbol is shown together with a message about low oil level, for example Engine oil level lowRefill 1 liter, fill only with the indicated volume, e.g. 1 liter (1 quart).

WARNING

Do not spill oil on the hot exhaust pipes as this could cause a fire.

IMPORTANT

If the engine oil is not checked regularly and the level becomes too low, this could cause serious engine damage.

1 Engines with an electronic oil level sensor do not have a dipstick.

Engine oil specifications

Engine oil of type VCC RBS0-2AE 0W-20 must be used. Lower oil grades may not offer the same fuel economy, engine performance or engine protection.

Polestar recommends:



General

See the Status and Warranty booklet for information about oil change intervals.

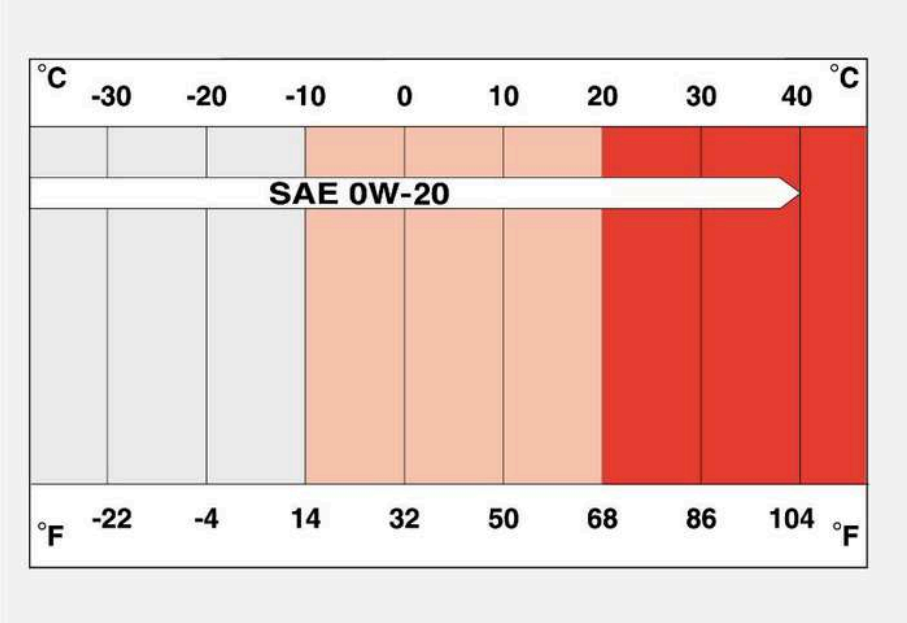
NOTE

This vehicle is delivered from the factory with synthetic oil.

Do not use oil additives.

Oil viscosity

The wrong oil viscosity can shorten engine service life during normal use. VCC RBS0-2AE 0W-20 provides good fuel economy and engine protection. See the viscosity chart.



Viscosity chart

Oil volume

The oil volume for the engine is:	
Liter (approx)	5.6
US qts (approx)	5.9

Tools and accessories

Jack

See Jack.

Tire sealing system

See Tire sealing system.

Tool kit

See Tool kit.

Fuses

Fuses in the engine compartment

See Fuses in the engine compartment.

Fuses and fuseboxes

All electrical functions and components are protected by a number of fuses in order to protect the vehicle's electrical system from damage by short circuiting or overloading.

WARNING

Never use a foreign object or a fuse with a higher amperage than that specified to replace a fuse. This could cause significant damage to the electrical system and possibly lead to a fire.

WARNING

Orange wiring may only be handled by qualified personnel.

WARNING

A number of electrical components in Twin Engine Plug-in Hybrid vehicles use high-voltage current and can be extremely dangerous if handled incorrectly.

Do not touch anything that is not clearly described in the vehicle's Manual.

If any electrical component or function is not responding, the component may have blown a fuse due to temporary overload. If the same fuse blows repeatedly, there may be a problem with the component. Contact Polestar Customer Support for assistance.

Location of fuseboxes



1	Engine compartment
2	Under the glove compartment
3	Trunk/cargo compartment

Replacing fuses

All electrical functions and components are protected by a number of fuses in order to protect the vehicle's electrical system from damage by short circuiting or overloading.

Refer to the fuse diagram to locate the fuse.
Pull out the fuse and examine it from the side to determine if the curved metal wire in the fuse is intact.
If the wire is broken, replace the fuse with a new fuse of the same color and amperage.

WARNING

Never use a foreign object or a fuse with a higher amperage than that specified to replace a fuse. This could cause significant damage to the electrical system and possibly lead to a fire.

WARNING

For fuses that aren't described in the Manual, contact Polestar Customer Support. If fuse replacement is performed incorrectly, significant damage can be caused to the electrical system.

Fuses under the glove compartment

See Fuses under the glove compartment.

Fuses in the trunk

See Fuses in the trunk.

Battery

Replacing the key's battery

See Replacing the key's battery.

Battery drain

See Battery drain.

Batteries

Your vehicle has several different batteries to enable electric power and propulsion in various ways. The vehicle has a single-pole electrical system that uses the chassis and engine mount as conductors.

Start battery

The start battery is used to start the electrical system and power electrical equipment in the vehicle. The hybrid battery is used to start the combustion engine.

Hybrid batteries

For electric propulsion, the vehicle is equipped with two hybrid batteries. One is located under the tunnel console and one is located behind the rear seat in the trunk. These are maintenance-free and rechargeable lithium-ion batteries.

Extra 12 V battery

This battery is used for electric power in the front seats so that passengers in the rear seat can exit the vehicle even when no other electrical power sources are available.

NOTE

Contact Polestar Customer Support for assistance with battery replacements.

Battery recycling

See Battery recycling.

Battery symbols

There are warning symbols and information on the batteries.

	Wear protective goggles.
	See the vehicle's Manual for additional information.

	Keep batteries away from children.
	Batteries contain corrosive acid.

	Avoid smoking, open flames, and/or sparks.
	Risk of explosion.

	Recycle properly.

Hybrid batteries

See Hybrid batteries.

Start battery

The start battery is used to start the electrical system and power electrical equipment in the vehicle. The hybrid battery is used to start the combustion engine.
The start battery is a 12 V AGM (Absorbed Glass Mat) battery, dimensioned for regenerative charging and to support the function of the vehicle's various systems.

- Never disconnect the start battery while the engine is running.
- Make sure the cables to the start battery are correctly connected and the clamps are securely tightened.

WARNING

- Batteries generate hydrogen gas, which is flammable and explosive. A spark caused by an incorrectly connected jumper cable could be enough to make the battery explode.
- Do not connect the jumper cable to any part of the fuel system or to any moving parts. Avoid touching hot manifolds.
- Battery fluid contains sulfuric acid. Do not allow battery fluid to contact eyes, skin, fabrics or painted surfaces.
- If contact occurs, flush the affected area immediately with water. Obtain medical help immediately if eyes are affected.
- Never expose the battery to open flame or electric spark. Do not smoke near the battery. Failure to follow the instructions for jump starting can lead to injury.

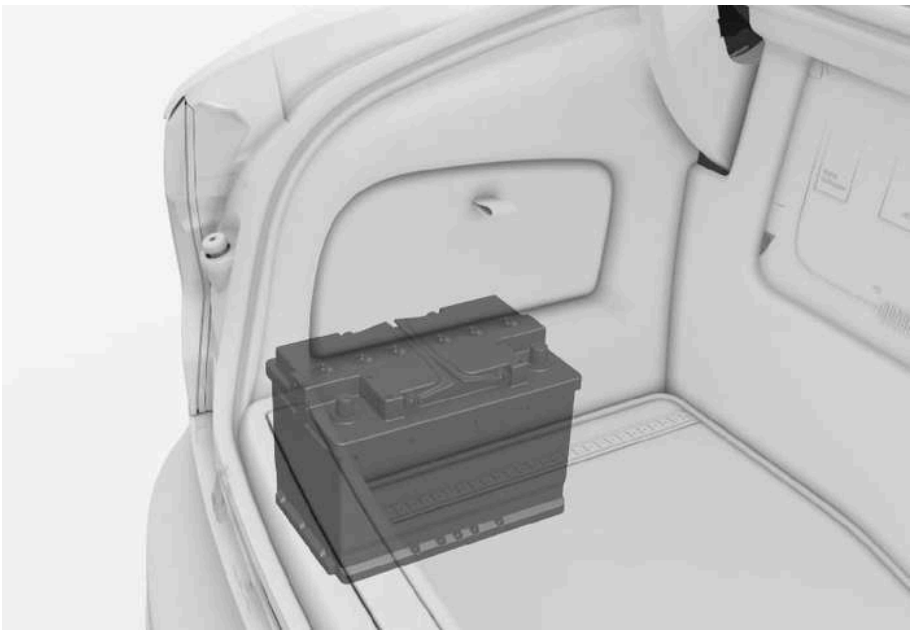
Start battery service life and capacity

The service life of the start battery is affected by several factors, including number of starts, battery discharges, driving style, driving conditions, climate, etc. The capacity of the start battery reduces gradually over time and the battery

therefore needs to be charged if it isn't use for a prolonged period of time or if it is only driven for short distances. Extreme cold further limits start capacity. Many discharges will adversely affect the service life of the start battery.

To help keep the start battery in good condition, drive at least 15 minutes per week or connect the battery to a battery charger with automatic maintenance charging. A start battery that is always fully charged maintains its maximum service life.

Location



The start battery is located in the trunk.

WARNING

If the starter battery is disconnected, the function for automatic opening and closing must be reset to function correctly. A reset is required in order for the pinch protection to work.

IMPORTANT

If the battery is secured using a tensioning strap, make sure that the strap is always securely tightened.

Specifications for start battery

Battery type	H6 AGM
Voltage (V)	12
Cold start capacity1 - CCA2 (A)	760
Dimensions, L×W×H	277.70×174.40×188.50 mm (10.9×6.9×7.4 inches)
Capacity (Ah)	70

IMPORTANT

If replacing the battery, make sure you replace it with a battery of the same size, cold start capacity and type as the original battery (see the decal on the battery).

NOTE

Contact Polestar Customer Support for assistance with battery replacements.

1 According to EN standard.

2 Cold Cranking Amperes.

Service

Climate control system service

See Climate control system service.

Polestar service program

To keep the vehicle as safe and reliable as possible, follow the Polestar service program specified in the Status and Warranty booklet.

WARNING

California Proposition 65

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

Contact Polestar Customer Support for assistance finding a recommended workshop for service and maintenance. These workshops have the staff, service literature and special tools that can provide the highest quality of service.

IMPORTANT

To ensure Polestar's warranty is not invalidated, check and follow the information provided in the Status and Warranty booklet.

Service and repairs

Service the vehicle regularly. Follow Polestar's recommended service intervals.

Detailed inspection and repairs may only be performed by a workshop authorized by Polestar.

WARNING

Do not make any repairs on this vehicle yourself. Electrical cables and/or components that have come loose may only be corrected by an authorized workshop – contact Polestar Customer Support.

Introduction

The maintenance services contain several checks that require special instruments and tools and therefore must be performed by a qualified technician. To keep your Polestar in top condition, specify time-tested and proven Genuine Polestar Parts and Accessories.

The Federal Clean Air Act - U.S.

The Federal Clean Air Act requires vehicle manufacturers to furnish written instructions to the ultimate purchaser to assure the proper servicing and function of the components that control emissions. These services, which are listed in the Status and Warranty booklet, are not covered by the warranty. You will be required to pay for labor and material used.

Maintenance

Your Polestar passed several major inspections before it was delivered to you, in accordance with Polestar specifications. The maintenance procedures outlined in the Status and Warranty booklet, many of which will positively affect your vehicle's emissions, should be performed as indicated. It is recommended that receipts for vehicle emission maintenance be retained in case questions arise concerning maintenance. Inspection and maintenance should also be performed anytime a malfunction is observed or suspected.

Applicable warranties - U.S./Canada

In accordance with applicable U.S. and Canadian regulations, the following list of warranties is provided.

- New Vehicle Limited Warranty
- Parts and Accessories Limited Warranty
- Corrosion Protection Limited Warranty
- Seat Belt and Supplemental Restraint Systems Limited Warranty
- Emission Design and Defect Warranty
- Emission Performance Warranty

These are federal warranties; other warranties are provided as required by state/provincial law. Refer to your separate Status and Warranty booklet for detailed information concerning each of the warranties.

Periodic maintenance helps minimize emissions

NOTE

- Refer to your Status and Warranty booklet for a comprehensive service and maintenance schedule up to 150,000 miles (240,000 km). This program contains inspections and services necessary for the proper function of your vehicle and includes components that affect vehicle emissions.
- The Status and Warranty booklet also contains detailed information concerning the warranties that apply to your vehicle.

On-board Diagnostic System

OBD II is part of your vehicle's computerized engine management system. It stores diagnostic information about your vehicle's emission controls. It can light the Check Engine light (MIL) if it detects an emission control "fault." A "fault" is a component or system that is not performing within an expected range. A fault may be permanent or temporary. OBD II will store a message about any fault.

Emission inspection readiness

How do states use OBD II for emission inspections?

Many states connect a computer directly to a vehicle's OBD II system. The inspector can then read "faults." In some states, this type of inspection has replaced the tailpipe emission test.

How can my vehicle fail OBD II emission inspection?

Your vehicle can fail OBD II emission inspection for any of the following reasons:

- If your Check Engine (MIL) light is lit, your vehicle may fail inspection.

- If your vehicle's Check Engine light was lit, but went out without any action on your part, OBD II will still have a recorded fault. Your vehicle may pass or fail, depending on the inspection practices in your area.
- If you had recent service that required disconnecting the battery, OBD II diagnostic information may be incomplete and "not ready" for inspection. A vehicle that is not ready may fail inspection.

How can I prepare for my next OBD II emission inspection?

- If your Check Engine (MIL) light is lit – or was lit but went out without service, have your vehicle diagnosed and, if necessary, serviced by a qualified technician. Contact Polestar Customer Support.
- If you recently had service for a lit Check Engine light, or if you had service that required disconnecting the battery, a period of driving is necessary to bring the OBD II system to "ready" for inspection. Two half-hour trips of mixed stop-and-go/highway driving are typically needed to allow OBD II to reach readiness. Polestar Customer Support can provide you with more information on planning a trip.
- Maintain your vehicle in accordance with your vehicle's maintenance schedule.

Owner maintenance

Periodic maintenance requirements and intervals are described in your vehicle's Status and Warranty booklet.

The following points can be carried out between the normally scheduled maintenance services.

Each time the vehicle is refueled:

- Check the engine oil level.
- Clean the windshield, windshield wipers, headlights, and taillights.

Monthly:

- Check cold tire pressure in all tires. Inspect the tires for wear.
- Check that engine coolant and other fluid levels are between the indicated "min" and "max" markings.
- Clean interior glass surfaces with a glass cleaner and soft paper towels.
- Wipe driver information displays with a soft cloth.
- Visually inspect battery terminals for corrosion. Corrosion may indicate a loose terminal connector, or a battery near the end of its useful service life. Consult Polestar Customer Support for additional information.

As needed:

Wash the vehicle, including the undercarriage, to reduce wear that can be caused by a buildup of dirt, and corrosion that can be caused by salt residues.

Clean leaves and twigs from air intake vents at the base of the windshield, and from other places where they may collect.

Vehicle status

Vehicle status

The general status of the vehicle can be shown in the center display.



The Car Status app is started from the center display's App view and has three tabs:

- Messages - status messages
- Status - engine oil level check
- TPMS - tire inflation pressure check

Book service and repair

If your vehicle is in need of service or repairs, contact Polestar Customer Support.
When it is time for service and in certain cases when the vehicle is in need of repairs, Polestar will contact you. You are also welcome to contact Polestar Customer Support if, for example, a message is displayed in the instrument panel or at the top of the center display. The time for service is determined by how much time has elapsed, the number of hours the engine has run, or the distance driven since the last service.

Let your workshop know if there is anything extra you would like performed during the visit or if there is any other important information they should be aware of.

After the service is completed, the message saying the vehicle needs service will no longer be shown.

Download Center

Download Center

With the vehicle connected to the Internet1, updates for a number of the vehicle's systems can be downloaded from the center display.



The Download Center app is started from the center display and makes it possible to:

- search for and update system software
- update Sensus Navigation map data
- download, update and delete apps.

1 There may be a charge for transmitting data over the Internet, depending on your service plan.

Handling system updates via Download Center

Functions for Internet-connected vehicles and infotainment can be updated via Download Center. Updates can be done one at a time or all at the same time.

Searching for update



If an update is available, the message New software updates available See Download Center will be displayed in the center display's status field.
In order for system updates to be possible, the vehicle must have an Internet connection1.
Go to Download Center in the center display's App view.
If no search has been performed since the last time the infotainment system was started, a search will be initiated. No search will begin if a software download is in progress.

A number in System updates shows how many updates are available. Tap to display a list of updates that can be installed in the vehicle.

> **NOTE**
> Data downloading can affect other services such as transfer data, e.g. web radio. If the affect on other services is experienced as problematic, the download can be interrupted. Alternatively, it may be appropriate to switch off or cancel other services.

> **NOTE**
> An update can be interrupted when the ignition is switched off and the vehicle is left.
>
> However, the update does not have to be completed before the vehicle is left as the update is resumed the next time the vehicle is used.

Updating all system software

Select Install all at the bottom of the list.
To avoid displaying a list, select Install all via System updates.

Updating individual system software

Select Install to choose the software you would like to download.

Canceling software download

Tap the checkbox in the activity indicator that replaced Install when the download began.
Note that only a download can be cancelled. An installation cannot be cancelled once it has begun.

Deactivating the background search for software update

Automatic searching for software updates is activated as the default factory setting, but the function can be deactivated.

Tap Settings in the center display's Top view.
Tap System → Download Center.
Tap to deselect Auto Software Update.

1 There may be a charge for transmitting data over the Internet, depending on your service plan.

Tips for problems with updates are available via Download Center

When the vehicle has an Internet connection1, several of the vehicle's systems can be updated directly from the center display. Some Frequently Asked Questions are summarized here.

No connection to the service

If the No connection to service message appears, there is a problem with the connection to the service. There may be several reasons for the connection not working. Below are some possible causes and solutions.

Your vehicle has no internet connection

Ensure that your vehicle is connected to the internet by one of the following:

- Wi-Fi
- Bluetooth-connected phones
- Vehicle modem (P-SIM)

Then restart the app by going back to the home view and pressing Download Center.

Connection to the internet works but the service of remote updates is temporarily unavailable

Restart the app by going back to the home view and pressing Download Center. A new search is triggered and the request is sent to the remote updates function. If the error message appears repeatedly for more than 12 hours, the service may be temporarily unavailable or down for maintenance. If the fault remains for more than 48 hours, contact Polestar Customer Support for further assistance.

The service has been inactive for 12 months

If the Download Center service has not been used in 12 months, the service will take longer the next time it is used (approx. 60 seconds). The next time remote updates is started, if the service has been used within 12 months, the service will be faster to start.

The vehicle loses internet connection during updating

The vehicle loses internet connection when updating is in progress, check the internet connection and restart the function.

If an update or download in progress stops responding despite restarting the vehicle

If you experience that an update or download in progress stops responding despite having restarted the vehicle, please contact Polestar Customer Support to have this rectified.

Installation of too many apps

The space for apps is a maximum of 10 GB. If the memory has been filled it is not possible to perform updates from the vehicle. The memory may be full if you store a lot of music offline, for example. Free up memory by deleting an app or stored offline music lists, for example.

Further assistance

If you are unable to find answers to your questions and need more help, contact Polestar Customer Support.

> **NOTE**
>
> An update can be interrupted when the ignition is switched off and the vehicle is left. However, the update does not have to be completed before the vehicle is left as the update is resumed the next time the vehicle is used.
>
> Data downloading can affect other services such as transfer data, e.g. web radio. If the affect on other services is experienced as problematic, the download can be interrupted. Alternatively, it may be appropriate to switch off or cancel other services.

1 There may be a charge for transmitting data over the Internet, depending on your service plan.

Recommended camera and radar sensor maintenance

See Recommended camera and radar sensor maintenance.

Maintenance of the brake system

See Maintenance of the brake system.

Recommendations for long-term storage

See Recommendations for long-term storage.

Data transfer between vehicle and workshop over Wi-Fi

Some workshops have a designated Wi-Fi network for data transfer between your vehicle and the workshop. Your visit to the workshop will be easier and more effective when diagnostics information and software can be transferred over the workshop's network.
At the workshop, your service technician can connect your vehicle to the workshop's Wi-Fi network to perform troubleshooting and download software. For this type of communication, the vehicle only connects to a workshop's network. It is not possible to connect the vehicle to another Wi-Fi network (e.g. your home network) in the same way as to a workshop's network.

Connecting to the Internet using the key

Connection is usually managed by the service technician, who will use the key buttons. It is therefore important to bring a key with buttons with you when you visit the workshop. Pressing the lock button on the key three times will connect the vehicle to the workshop's Wi-Fi network.

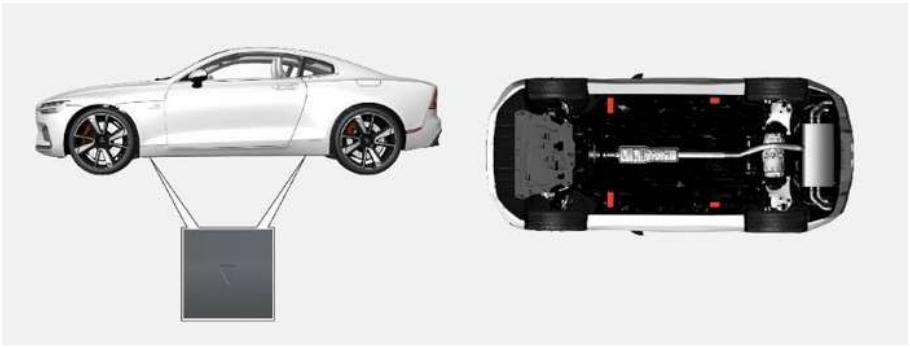
When the car is connected to a Wi-Fi network, the symbol appears in the center display.

WARNING

The vehicle may not be driven when it is connected to the workshop's networks and systems.

Hoisting the vehicle

When hoisting the vehicle, it is important that the jack is positioned on the designated points under the vehicle.



The triangles in the plastic covering indicate where the jack attachment points/lifting points (red areas) are located.

NOTE

Polestar recommends only using the jack intended for your specific vehicle model. If a jack other than that recommended by Polestar is used, follow the instructions included with the equipment.

The vehicle's ordinary jack is only intended to be used in temporary situations for short periods of time, such as when changing wheels in the event of a flat tire. If the vehicle needs to be lifted more frequently or for a prolonged period, using a garage jack or hoist is recommended. Always follow this device's instructions for use.

WARNING

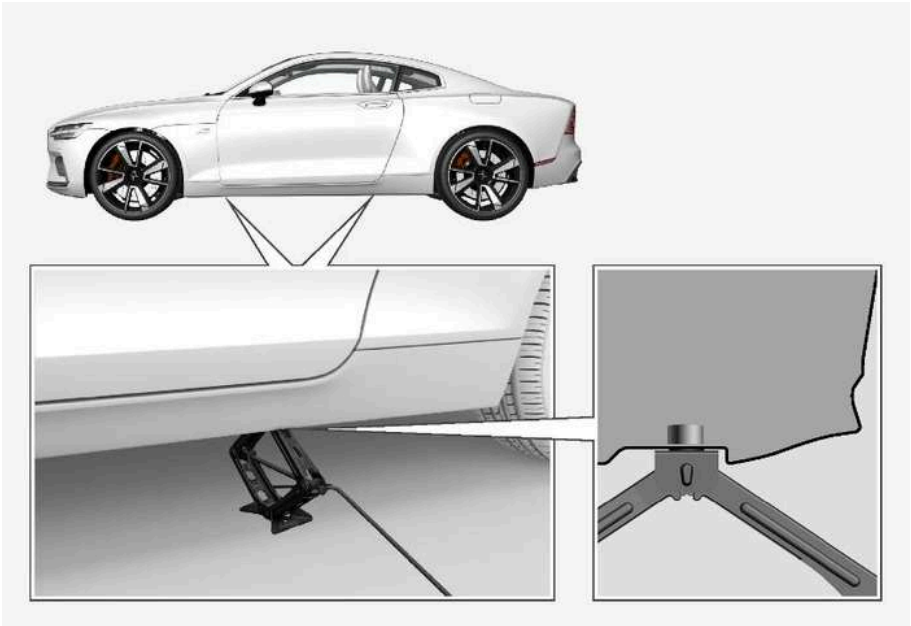
- Check that the jack is not damaged, the threads are properly lubricated and it is free from dirt.
- Be sure the jack is on a firm, level, non-slippery surface and that it is upright and not leaning.
- No objects should be placed between the base of the jack and the ground, or between the jack and the attachment bar on the vehicle.
- Never let anyone remain in the vehicle when it is raised on a jack.
- If you need to, for example, change a tire near passing traffic, make sure all passengers move to a safe location.
- Use a jack intended for the vehicle when changing a wheel. For any other job, use stands to support the vehicle.
- Never crawl under or allow any part of your body to be extended under a vehicle supported by a jack.

WARNING

If the vehicle is lifted on a garage jack, the jack must be placed under one of the four lifting points. Make sure that the vehicle is correctly positioned on the jack and that it cannot slide off. Make sure the jack plate has a rubber pad to help keep the vehicle stable and prevent damage. Always use axle stands or similar.

Read through the instructions below before you begin. Before raising the vehicle using a jack or lift, take out all the tools you will need.
Turn on the vehicle's hazard warning flashers if e.g. a wheel needs to be changed near passing traffic.

Apply the parking brake and put the gear selector in P.
Place chocks in front of and behind the wheels that are still on the ground. For example, use heavy wooden blocks or large stones.
Position the jack or the lift arms at the designated points under the vehicle. The triangle markings on the plastic cover indicate where the jack attachment points/lifting points are located. There are two jack attachment points on each side of the vehicle. There is a groove for the jack at each attachment point.



Position the jack under the attachment point being used, ensuring that the surface is firm, flat and not slippery.
Crank it up until it is properly aligned and it is in contact with the vehicle's jack attachment point. Make sure the top of the jack (or the garage lift arms) is correctly positioned in the attachment point, with the bump on the top of the jack in

the recess in the attachment point and the jack base positioned vertically under the attachment point.
Turn the jack so that the crank is as far as possible from the side of the vehicle, which will position the jack's arms perpendicular to the vehicle's direction of movement.
Lift the vehicle to a suitable height for the operation you will perform.

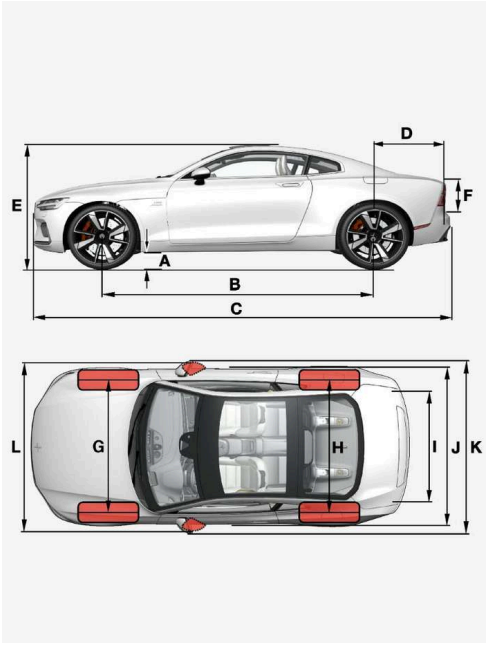
Specifications

This section contains information about decals, dimensions, weights, motor specifications, fluid and oil specifications, fuel tank volume, fuel consumption, approved wheel and tire dimensions and inflation pressure, etc.

Dimensions and weights

Dimensions

The vehicle's length, height, etc. are shown in the table.



	Dimensions	mm	inches
A	Ground clearance1	138	5.4
B	Wheelbase	2742	108.0
C	Length	4623	182.0
D	Load length, floor	391	15.4
E	Height2	1352	53.2
F	Load height	679	26.7
G	Wheel track, front	1645	64.8
H	Wheel track, rear	1657	65.2
I	Load width, floor	1095	43,1
J	Width	1958	77,1
K	Width incl. rearview mirrors	2023	79.6
L	Width incl. folded rearview mirrors	1970	77.6

1 At curb weight + 1 person. (Varies slightly depending on tire dimensions, chassis, etc.)

2 At service weight.

Weights

The following table lists important weight data for your vehicle.

Category	USA (lbs)	Canada (kg)
Gross vehicle weight	5885	2670
Capacity weight	725	330
Permissible axle weights, front	2755	1250
Permissible axle weights, rear	3265	1480
Curb weight	5180–5190	2340–2350

IMPORTANT

- When loading the vehicle, the maximum gross vehicle weight and permissible axle weights may not be exceeded.

Engine specifications

Engine specifications

Engine specifications (output, etc.) for each engine variant are shown in the table below.

The vehicle is powered by a gasoline engine and two electric motors.

Engine code1		B4204T25
Output	kW/rps	240/100
	hp/rpm	322/6000
Torque	Nm/rps	435/60–70
	ft. lbs./rpm	321/3600–4200
Number of cylinders		4

Electric motor

Max. output:	kW	85
	hp	116
Torque:	Nm	240

1 The engine code, component and manufacturer serial numbers can be found on the engine.

Coolant specifications

See Coolant specifications.

Engine oil specifications

See Engine oil specifications.

Specifications for fluids and lubricants

Filling washer fluid

See Filling washer fluid.

Air conditioning specifications

The climate system in the vehicle uses a freon-free R134a refrigerant. For information regarding the refrigerant, refer to the decal located on the inside of the hood.

The prescribed grades and volumes for fluids and lubricants in the air conditioning system are shown below.

A/C Decal

Decal for R134a



Refrigerant

The refrigerant amount (charge level) is printed on a decal on the inside of the hood.

Vehicles with R134a refrigerant



1. Refrigerant amount.

WARNING

The air conditioning system contains the refrigerant R134a under pressure. Service and repairs to the system should only be done by an authorized workshop.

Compressor oil

Volume	Prescribed grade
100 ml (3.38 fl. oz.)	PAG SP-A2

Evaporator

Never repair or replace the A/C system's evaporator with a previously used evaporator. New evaporators must be certified and labeled in accordance with SAE J2842.

IMPORTANT

The A/C system evaporator must never be repaired or replaced with a previously used evaporator. The new evaporator must be certified and labeled in accordance with SAE J2842.

Brake fluid specifications

See Brake fluid specifications.

Transmission fluid specifications

Under normal driving conditions, the transmission fluid will not need to be changed during the transmission's service life. However, it may need to be changed if the vehicle is driven frequently in adverse driving conditions.

Automatic transmission

Prescribed transmission fluid:	AW-1

Fuel tank volume

See Fuel tank volume.

Coolant specifications

See Coolant specifications.

Engine oil specifications

See Engine oil specifications.

Specifications for wheels and tires

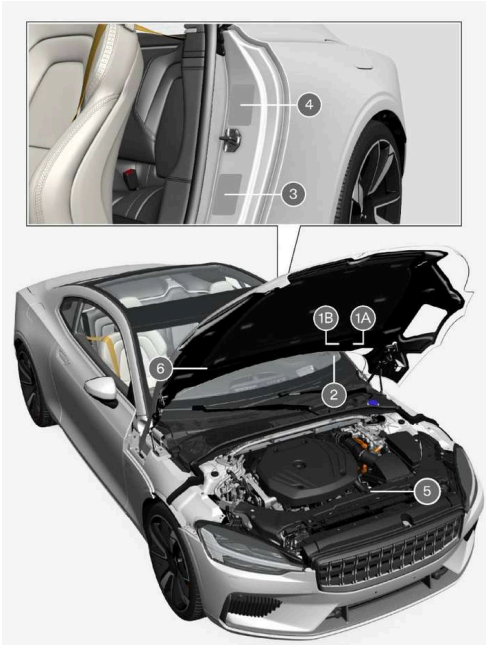
Approved tire pressure

See Approved tire pressure.

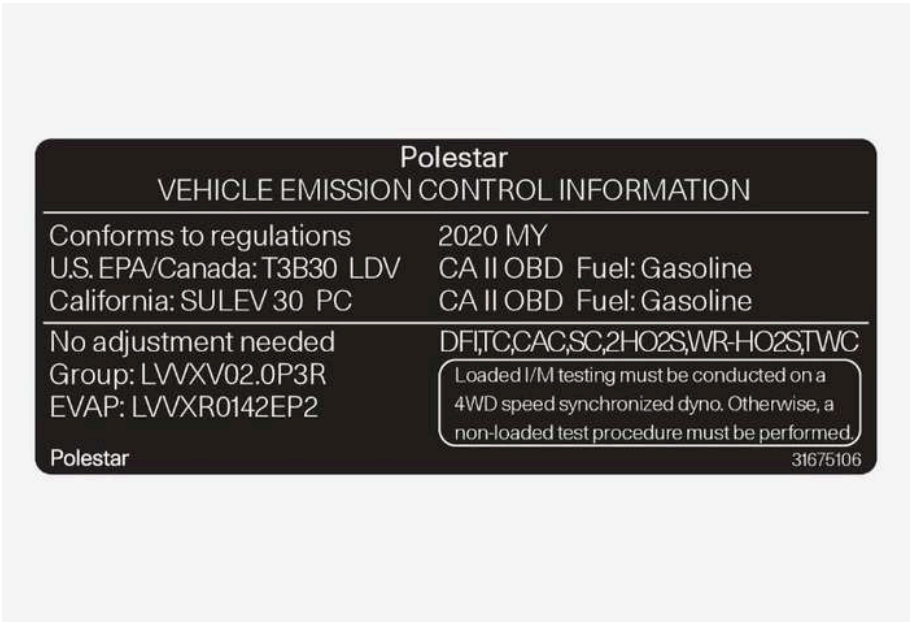
Type designations

The decals in the vehicle contain information such as chassis number, type designation, color code, etc.

Location of decals



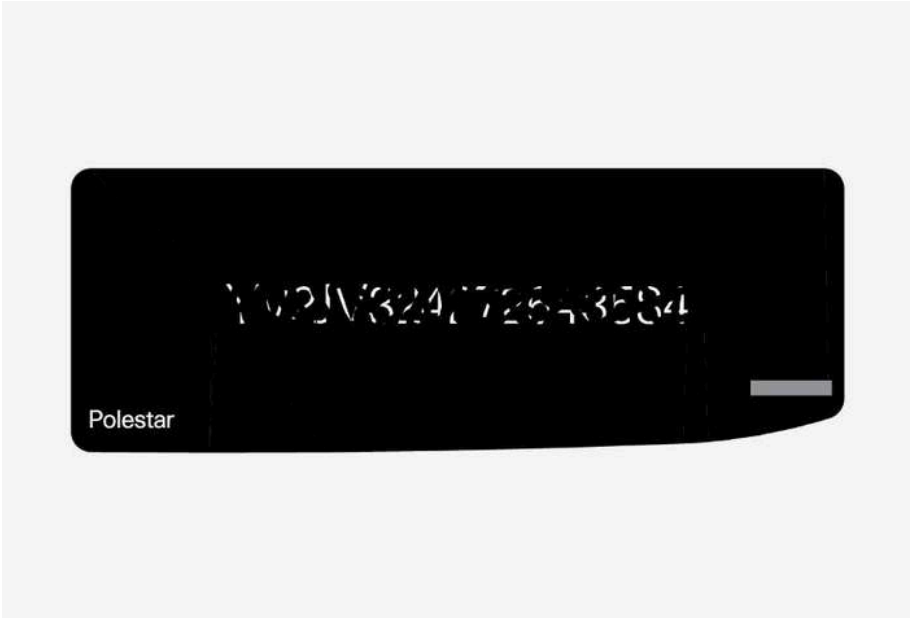
The illustration is general and details may vary depending on market and model.



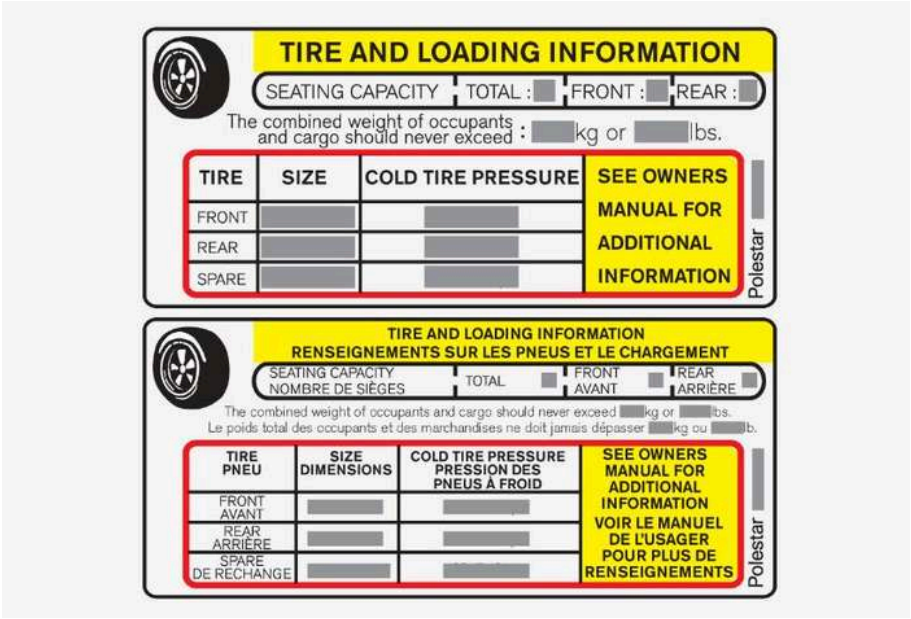
1A **Vehicle Emission Control Information. US models.** Your Polestar is designed to meet all applicable emission standards, as evidenced by the certification label on the underside of the hood. For further information regarding these regulations, please consult Polestar Customer Support.



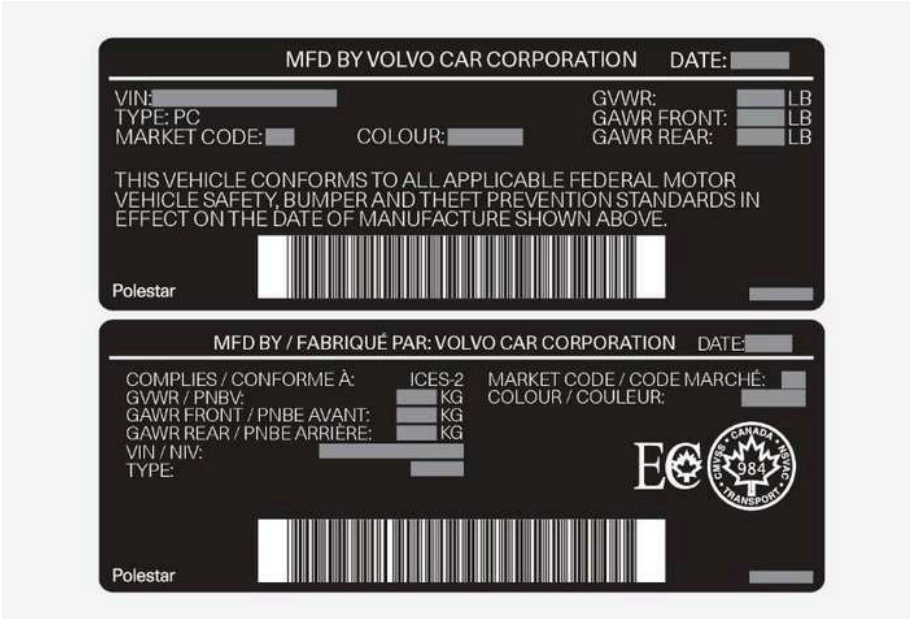
1B **Vehicle Emission Control Information. Canadian models.** Your Polestar is designed to meet all applicable emission standards, as evidenced by the certification label on the underside of the hood. For further information regarding these regulations, please consult Polestar Customer Support.



2 **Vehicle Identification Number (VIN).** The VIN plate is located on the top left surface of the dashboard. The vehicle identification number (VIN) should always be quoted in all correspondence concerning your vehicle with Polestar Customer Support and when ordering parts.



③**Tire inflation pressures.** This label indicates the correct inflation pressures for the tires that were on the vehicle when it left the factory.



④**Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (FMVSS) specifications (USA) and Ministry of Transport (CMVSS) standards (Canada).** Your Polestar is designed to meet all applicable safety standards, as evidenced by the certification label on the driver's side B-pillar (the structural member at the side of the vehicle, at the rear of the driver's door opening). This label also includes codes for paint color, etc. For further information regarding these regulations, please consult Polestar Customer Support. U.S. models have the upper decal; Canadian models have the lower one.



5 **Engine oil.** This label contains the recommended engine oil specifications.



6 **Decal A/C.** Refrigerant R134a.

> **NOTE**
>
> The decals shown in the Manual do not claim to be exact reproductions of those found in the vehicle. The purpose is to show approximately how they look and about where they are located on the vehicle. The information that applies for your vehicle in particular is found on the decal on the vehicle.

Services

This section contains information about various services such as In-car Logistics.

Data sharing for services

See Data sharing for services.

Polestar Assistance – a friend on the road

With Polestar Assistance, you can count on help if the unexpected occurs.



Our goal is to enable you to continue your journey as soon as possible, so we start by providing on-site roadside assistance. If we are unable to repair your vehicle at the roadside, we will arrange Roadside Recovery and your travel home or overnight accommodation.

Polestar Assistance is included with the purchase of a new vehicle for three years calculated from the initial registration date.

Polestar Assistance:

You have access to Polestar Assistance around the clock, 365 days a year across the USA and Canada.

Polestar Assistance provides assistance in the event of a breakdown or if the vehicle unexpectedly becomes immobilized. Polestar Assistance is valid for immobilization due to mechanical, technical or electrical breakdown that was unexpected and not due to lack of maintenance.

Polestar Assistance covers the owner or owner-authorized driver of a Polestar who is covered by the limited new vehicle warranty or the extended service agreement for a vehicle sold in the United States or Canada. Polestar Assistance is transferred upon resale of a Polestar for the remainder of the covered period, providing that Polestar is notified and sufficient proof of change of ownership is presented. If the vehicle is not purchased directly from Polestar, it is the new owner's responsibility to notify Polestar of the change of ownership and present sufficient proof of ownership.

The following situations are also covered by Polestar Assistance:

- tire problems – puncture and flat tire
- discharged battery
- fuel problems – lack of fuel, incorrect fuel or contaminated fuel
- key problems – locked out, lost or broken vehicle key.

In the event of a puncture, you can use the accompanying repair kit in your Polestar for assistance.

If it is not possible to repair the vehicle on-site, it will be recovered to the nearest Polestar Authorized Service Point.

Polestar Assistance is also valid in the event of a road traffic accident where the vehicle is immobilized, attempted theft or vandalism where the vehicle is immobilized, theft (where the vehicle is stolen) and fire.

If the vehicle cannot be repaired within four hours on the same day, you will be offered transport home or to your destination, hotel accommodation or a replacement vehicle as per 1.3 in other terms and conditions for Polestar Assistance.

Contact

If you experience a vehicle breakdown or accident and you cannot continue your journey, contact Polestar Assistance.

Contacting Polestar Assistance directly is a requirement for the validity of Polestar Assistance.

Press the Polestar ON CALL button in the ceiling. You will then be connected to our operator, who can see your geographic position and other information that allows us to provide you with optimal assistance. You can also request assistance using the Polestar 1 app.

If the vehicle's owner has not been updated with Polestar after a change of ownership, a copy of the vehicle's registration must be presented to ensure cost-free assistance or vehicle recovery.

When contacting Polestar Assistance, please provide the following information to help us assist you:

- your name and address
- the vehicle's license plate number and VIN
- the model and color of the vehicle
- your location, with as much detail as possible
- a description of the problem
- cellular phone number and/or email address

> **NOTE**
>
> You must report the immobilization of the vehicle immediately (within 24 hours) to Polestar Assistance. Service that is not provided or handled by Polestar Assistance, or that has been delivered without the pre-approval of Polestar Assistance, will not be reimbursed.

Other terms and conditions for Polestar Assistance

1.1 Roadside repair

We will provide help on the spot to try to get your vehicle moving again. If we cannot repair your vehicle at the roadside, we will recover it to the nearest Polestar Authorized Service Point, or if you prefer, to your regular Polestar Authorized Service Point within a range of 110 km (70 miles).

1.1.1 Discharged battery

In the case of a discharged battery, a jumpstart will be provided.

For electric vehicles: if the battery is discharged, the vehicle will be recovered to the nearest charging station or Polestar Authorized Service Point.

1.1.2 Lack of fuel or incorrect fuel

If possible, fuel will be transported to your vehicle's location or the vehicle will be transported to the nearest Polestar Authorized Service Point.

1.1.3 Lock or key-related problems

If possible, lock opening will be attempted and/or a spare key will be shipped if the vehicle's key is not working.

1.2 Roadside Recovery

Recovery is carried out when required for safety reasons or if repair on site is not possible. If the distance between the vehicle's location and the local Polestar Authorized Service Point is less than 110 km (70 miles), the vehicle will be recovered to the workshop. For distances greater than 110 km (70 miles), the vehicle will be recovered to the nearest Polestar Authorized Service Point if it is closer. Polestar pays the cost of recovery up to a distance of 240 km (150 miles) from the nearest Polestar Authorized Service Point.

1.3 If further assistance is required

In the event that the vehicle cannot be repaired at the service point within four hours on the same day, you and your passengers may select one of the following options below to continue your journey. Note that you may only select one of the options, 1.3.1, 1.3.2 or 1.3.3.

1.3.1 Onward travel

Polestar Assistance covers travel by rail or bus, air travel or taxi, for a value of up to USD 600 per person, for driver, passengers, pets and luggage, which makes it possible to either travel home or continue to the destination if this is within the area covered and is not more expensive for Polestar Assistance. The transport of persons and recovery of vehicles must take place by the most inexpensive means possible.

1.3.2 Hotel accommodation

If the distance to your home is more than 110 kilometers (70 miles), hotel accommodation is offered locally for the duration of the repair for driver and passengers for up to five nights to a maximum value of USD 200 per person and night. This alternative can only be selected while the vehicle is in the service point for repair or awaiting repair.

1.3.3 Rental car

If you instead prefer a rental car while your vehicle is being repaired, Polestar Assistance will cover the cost of a standard-equipped vehicle of equivalent size to your vehicle. You will be reimbursed for a rental car for a maximum of five working days. Other expenses, such as fuel, etc. are not covered by Polestar Assistance. For car rentals outside the country, you will be reimbursed for a rental car for up to 10 working days. If Polestar Assistance is unable to acquire a vehicle of the same size as your vehicle, or if a rental car cannot be provided due to local circumstances, Polestar Assistance cannot be held responsible.

1.4 Vehicle collection

If the Polestar Authorized Service Point where your vehicle is undergoing repair is located more than 110 km (70 miles) from your locality, Polestar Assistance covers 1st class one-way travel by train for one person. If the train trip will take more than 6 hours, you will be offered the option of a plane ticket instead.

1.5 Recovery of vehicle from outside the country

If you are on your way outside the country with your vehicle, Polestar Assistance will pay to have your vehicle recovered home if it cannot be repaired within 3 days. You may choose between two options:

- repair at local Polestar Authorized Service Point as well as compensation of up to USD 250 for expenses and rental car for local usage covered if no recovery, or
- reimbursement for a rental car for a maximum of 10 working days.

If you are traveling back from a trip outside the country with your vehicle, Polestar Assistance will pay to have your vehicle recovered home if it cannot be repaired within 24 hours. You may choose between two options:

- repair at local Polestar Authorized Service Point as well as compensation of up to USD 250 for expenses and rental car for local usage covered if no recovery, or
- reimbursement for a rental car abroad for a maximum of 10 working days.

Expenses on site could, as an example, be restaurant, amusement park, museum and extra days with the replacement car. Remember to keep all your payment receipts.

1.6 Commercial vehicles[2]

Taxis, rental cars, police cars, ambulances, driving school cars, etc. are only covered for roadside repair, Roadside Recovery and off-road recovery – 1.1 and 1.2.

Polestar Assistance does not cover:

- competition or practicing for competition
- deliberate violation of law in connection with driving the vehicle
- war or risk of war, revolution, riot, strike, terrorist act, radioactivity, earthquake, atmospheric disturbances or other event that could be classified as force majeure
- assistance, ordered by the vehicle owner or other person, without prior contact and authorization by Polestar Assistance
- loss of property or cost of downtime.
- VAT (value-added tax) when you or the vehicle owner/lessor is liable to declare for such tax
- vehicles that are registered as non-operational (non-op)
- repair and spare parts costs
- emergency vehicles
- costs for consequential damage, repairs and spare parts in connection with tire punctures are not covered
- Vehicles that have been modified with aftermarket parts and accessories that are not approved by Polestar. Vehicles demonstrated or delivered by a retailer or used with car for sale or export signs. Deterioration of the high-voltage battery, including but not limited to the use of correct charging equipment. All other exceptions or limitations described in the vehicle's Status and Warranty booklet.
- Polestar Assistance is not valid for damage covered by another warranty or which the supplier or another party is responsible for by law or similar commitment
- Polestar Assistance does not cover the costs of tires or spare parts necessary for repairs, regardless of whether vehicle recovery is required or not
- Polestar Assistance does not cover the costs of draining and refilling with the correct type of fuel, nor the cost of the fuel itself or any repair or spare part, nor the alternatives listed under 1.3.

1 These terms and conditions apply from 1 December 2019 onwards

2 Coverage only applies for vehicles less than 37 months old.